TABLE OF CONTENTS

SECTION 100 – GENERAL INFORMATION

SECTION 200 – STRUCTURE SUBMISSIONS

SECTION 300 – DETAIL DESIGN

SECTION 400 – REHABILITATION AND MAINTENANCE

SECTION 500 – TEMPORARY STRUCTURES

SECTION 600 – TYPICAL GENERAL NOTES

SECTION 700 – TYPICAL DETAIL NOTES

SECTION 800 – NOISE BARRIERS

SECTION 900 – BRIDGE LOAD RATING

SECTION 1000 - ODOT SUPPLEMENT TO THE LRFD BRIDGE DESIGN SPECIFICATIONS
SECTION 100 – GENERAL INFORMATION
101 INTRODUCTION .............................................................................................................................. 1-1
101.1 BDM FORMAT .............................................................................................................................. 1-1
101.2 BDM AUDIENCE ............................................................................................................................ 1-1
101.3 PURPOSE .................................................................................................................................. 1-1
101.4 COORDINATION WITH CONTRACT DOCUMENTS .................................................................. 1-2
101.5 TABLE OF ORGANIZATION ....................................................................................................... 1-2
101.6 ABBREVIATIONS ......................................................................................................................... 1-2
101.7 DEFINITIONS ............................................................................................................................... 1-4
102 PREPARATION OF PLANS ............................................................................................................. 1-5
102.1 BRIDGE PLAN PREPARER QUALIFICATIONS ........................................................................... 1-6
102.2 COMPUTER AIDED DRAFTING STANDARDS ......................................................................... 1-6
102.3 DESIGNER, CHECKER, REVIEWER INITIALS BLOCK ................................................................ 1-7
102.4 TITLE BLOCK .............................................................................................................................. 1-7
102.5 ESTIMATED QUANTITIES ............................................................................................................ 1-11
102.6 STANDARD BRIDGE DRAWINGS ............................................................................................. 1-11
102.7 SUPPLEMENTAL SPECIFICATIONS .......................................................................................... 1-11
102.8 PROPOSAL NOTES ....................................................................................................................... 1-12
102.9 SPECIAL PROVISIONS ............................................................................................................... 1-12
102.10 SUPPLEMENTS .......................................................................................................................... 1-12
103 BRIDGE PLAN SHEET ORDER .................................................................................................... 1-12
SECTION 100 – GENERAL INFORMATION

101 INTRODUCTION

101.1 BDM FORMAT

Where the BDM is written in two-column format, the left column represents ODOT structural design specifications and the right column represents commentary. The commentary may include background information; design guidance; or other supplemental information related to a corresponding specification item. Where the BDM is written in full page width format, all content represents ODOT structural design specifications. ODOT structural design specification items shall apply unless the Owner provides a waiver of the item in writing.

101.2 BDM AUDIENCE

The requirements of the two-column format ODOT Bridge Design Manual (BDM) are written to the “Designer of Record” as defined in BDM Section 101.4. The sentences that direct the Designer of Record to perform work are written as commands. For example, a requirement to design bridges for HL-93 loading would be expressed as, “Design all bridges for an HL-93 loading,” rather than “The Designer of Record shall design all bridges for an HL-93 loading.” In the imperative mood, the subject, “the Designer of Record” is understood.

All requirements to be performed by others have been written in the active voice. Sentences written in the active voice identify the party responsible for performing the action. For example, “The Office of Structural Engineering will review designs for non-standard bridge railings.”

Sentences that define terms; describe a product or desired result; or describe a condition that may exist are written in indicative mood. These types of sentences use verbs requiring no action. For example, “All reinforcing steel shall be epoxy coated.”

101.3 PURPOSE

The BDM establishes ODOT policy for the following:

A. The analysis, design and rating of new and existing bridges.

B. The analysis and design of new and existing retaining walls and noise walls.

C101.1

The design values, specifications, practices, etc. established in the BDM promote uniform, safe and sound designs for bridges and structures in the State of Ohio. During the normal staged review process, the Owner has the authority to require the Designer of Record to justify or otherwise seek recommendation from the Office of Structural Engineering (OSE) when deviation from the design values, specifications, practices, etc. is necessary.
Consider the practicability of construction with reference to each detail of design.

Constructability is especially critical when new ideas are considered.

### C101.4

**COORDINATION WITH CONTRACT DOCUMENTS**

Ohio Department of Transportation bridge designs shall be in conformance with the following publications listed in descending order of precedence:

A. Scope of Services
B. ODOT Bridge Design Manual
D. Proposal Notes and Special Provisions
E. Supplemental Specifications
F. ODOT Construction and Materials Specifications
G. AASHTO LRFD Bridge Design Specifications and AASHTO LRFD Bridge Construction Specifications

Where complete description or instruction is not provided in the C&MS, provide the description or instruction in the plans to ensure clarity both from a structural and contractual viewpoint.

### 101.5 TABLE OF ORGANIZATION

An organizational chart for the various sections in the ODOT OSE and a list of bridge contacts is available on the office’s website.

### 101.6 ABBREVIATIONS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Full Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AASHTO</td>
<td>American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADT</td>
<td>Average Daily Traffic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADTT</td>
<td>Average Daily Truck Traffic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AISC</td>
<td>American Institute of Steel Construction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AREMA</td>
<td>American Railway Engineering and Maintenance-of-way Association</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASTM</td>
<td>American Society for Testing and Materials</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AWS</td>
<td>American Welding Society</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BDM</td>
<td>ODOT Bridge Design Manual</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CADD</td>
<td>Computer-Aided Drafting and Design</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLP</td>
<td>County Log Point</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C&amp;MS</td>
<td>ODOT Construction and Material Specifications</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CVN</td>
<td>Acceptable Charpy V-Notch impact testing of steel material is required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DBT</td>
<td>Design-Build Team</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEC</td>
<td>District Environmental Coordinator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EPA</td>
<td>Environmental Protection Agency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FHWA</td>
<td>Federal Highway Administration</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Three coat steel coating system consisting of Inorganic Zinc primer coat, Epoxy intermediate coat and Urethane finish coat. Typically used for new steel members.

Load and Resistance Factor Design. When used in combination with AASHTO, this refers to the current edition of the AASHTO LRFD Bridge Design Specifications. References to specific AASHTO LRFD sections throughout this manual will be italicized (e.g. LRFD 11.10.5)

Mechanically Stabilized Earth. Typically used as earth retaining wall systems.

National Cooperative Highway Research Program

Non-Destructive Testing

Ohio Department of Transportation

Office of Environmental Services

Office of Environmental Services – Waterway Permits Unit

Ordinary High Water Mark

Ohio Administrative Code

ODOT Office of Materials Management

Ohio Revised Code

ODOT Office of Structural Engineering

Three coat steel coating system consisting of Organic Zinc primer coat, Epoxy intermediate coat and Urethane finish coat. Typically used for existing steel members.

Project Identification Number

Proposal Note

USACE Regional General Permit for ODOT projects impacting Waters of the U.S.

Supplement

Structure File Number

Specifications for Geotechnical Explorations published by the ODOT Office of Geotechnical Engineering

Straight Line Mileage

Special Provisions Package

Supplemental Specification

Standard Temporary Discharge

Temporary Access Fill

U.S. Army Corps of Engineers

U.S. Coast Guard

United States Geological Survey

Value Engineering Change Proposal
101.7 DEFINITIONS

Bridge – The ORC 5501.47(B)(1)(c) defines a bridge as any structure of ten feet or more clear span or ten feet or more in diameter on, above, or below a highway. Refer to the ODOT Structure Inventory Coding Guide for more specific information.

Bridge Limits – The distance between the bridge ends of the approach slabs measured to the nearest hundredth of a foot along the Centerline of Construction.

Centerline of Construction – The reference line used for construction of a project. Normally located at the median centerline on a divided highway or at the normal crown point location on an undivided highway.

Checker – The Checker is an individual employed by the Design Agency responsible for ensuring correctness, constructability and completeness of designs detailed in the Contract Documents.

Contract Documents – Refer to definition provided in C&MS 101.03.

Culvert – Unless otherwise noted, a culvert shall be defined herein as a buried structure type, regardless of span, placed on, above or below a highway.

Design Agency – The firm, partnership, association, limited liability company, government entity or corporation that employs the Designer of Record in accordance with ORC 4733.

Designer – The Designer is an individual employed by the Design Agency responsible for preparing designs detailed in the Contract Documents.

Designer of Record – The Designer of Record is the individual that professionally endorses (signs and seals) the design in the Contract Documents in accordance with OAC 4733-23-01(C) and as specified in the L&D, Vol. 3 Section 1302.6.1.

Haunch – The distance between the top of a beam/girder and the bottom of the deck.

Normal Water Elevation – The water elevation in the stream which has not been affected by a recent heavy rain runoff and could be found in the stream most of the year.

Ordinary High Water Mark – Defined by the USACE Regulatory Letter No. 05-05 which is available at: www.usace.army.mil/Missions/CivilWorks/RegulatoryProgramandPermits/GuidanceLetters.aspx. This elevation marks the jurisdictional limit of the USACE.

Owner – The Owner shall be defined as the duly authorized agent of the government agency sponsoring the project. For ODOT sponsored projects, the sponsoring District shall be considered the Owner.

Proposal Notes – Specifications that supplement and supersede Supplemental Specifications and the C&MS.

Reference Line – A chord drawn from centerline to centerline of abutment bearings at the Centerline of Construction or an extension of a line tangent to the Centerline of Construction at the centerline of abutment bearings.

Rehabilitation – Title 23 Part 650 Section 403 of the Code of Federal Regulations (i.e. 23 CFR 650.403) defines “Rehabilitation” as the major work required to restore the structural integrity of a bridge as well as work necessary to correct major safety defects. Examples include: deck replacement, fatigue retrofit, structural patching, bearing replacement and railing upgrade.

Reviewer – The Reviewer is an individual employed by the Design Agency responsible for the overall evaluation of the design in the Contract Documents for completeness, consistency, continuity, constructability, general design logic and quality.
Skew angle – The skew angle is the angle of deviation of the substructure unit from perpendicular to the centerline of construction or reference chord.

Supplemental Specifications – Specifications that supplement and supersede the C&MS.

Supplements – Individually numbered documents describing necessary information such as laboratory test methods and certification or pre-qualification procedures for materials.

Temporary Access Fill – A fill or structure that allows a contractor access to work on roads or bridges located within bodies of water. Examples of TAF’s include: cofferdams; temporary structures for maintaining traffic; causeways and work pads; and demolition debris.

Thalweg – The line defining the points of lowest elevation along the length of a river bed. Also, commonly referred to as the Flow Line.

102 PREPARATION OF PLANS

Draw all detail views to a scale large enough to be easily read on 11-in x 17-in sheets. Views shall not be crowded on the sheet and shall fit within the prescribed borderlines.

Do not state the scale of the views on the drawings. Reproduction of the drawing prints may distort the scale resulting in inaccuracies.

Place a North Arrow symbol on the Site Plan, General Plan and all plan views. The north arrow is useful for orienting field personnel using the plan and may eliminate possible construction errors.

Show Elevation views of piers and the forward abutment looking forward along the stationing of the project. Show the rear abutment in the reverse direction. Detail rear and forward abutments on separate plan sheets for staged construction projects or for other geometric conditions that produce asymmetry between abutments.

When describing directions or locations of various elements of a highway project, use the centerline of construction and stationing as a basis for these directions and locations.

Elements are located either left or right of the centerline and to the rear and forward with respect to station progression [e.g. rear abutment; forward pier; left side; right railing; left forward corner].

Number sheets in the bridge plans in accordance with BDM Figure 102-4.

Elements are located either left or right of the centerline and to the rear and forward with respect to station progression [e.g. rear abutment; forward pier; left side; right railing; left forward corner].

For structures on a horizontal curve, provide a Reference Line. Show the Reference Line on the General Plan/Site Plan view with the stations of the points where the Reference Line intersects the curve. Provide skews, dimensions of substructure elements and superstructure elements from this Reference Line, both on the General Plan /Site Plan and on the individual detail sheets. Do not providing dimensions from the curve. Dimension the distances between the curve and Reference Line at each substructure units.

The purpose for dimensioning the distance between the Reference Line and centerline of the substructure units is to make a check available to the contractor.
For each substructure unit, show the skew angle with respect to the centerline of construction or, for curved structures, to a Reference Line. Measure the skew angle from the centerline of construction or Reference Line to a line perpendicular to the centerline of the substructure unit or from a line perpendicular to the centerline of construction or Reference Line to the centerline of the substructure unit as shown in BDM Figure 102-1.

In placing dimensions on the drawings, provide sufficient overall dimensions so that it will not be necessary for a person reading the drawings to add up dimensions to determine the length, width or height of an abutment, pier or other element of a structure.

Do not show a detail or dimension in more than one place on the plans.

If, because of lack of space on a particular sheet, it is necessary to place a view or a section on another sheet, provide cross references on both sheets.

Define all abbreviations in a legend provided on the General Notes sheet.

Plan sheets shall be 22-in x 34-in. Margins shall be 2-in on the left edge and 1/2-in on all other edges.

Keep design and check calculations neat and orderly.

**102.1 BRIDGE PLAN PREPARER QUALIFICATIONS**

The Design Agency shall be prequalified in accordance with the “Consultant Prequalification Requirements and Procedures” published by ODOT’s Office of Consultant Services.

**102.2 COMPUTER AIDED DRAFTING STANDARDS**

For drafting standards, refer to [L&D, Vol. 3](#).
102.3 DESIGNER, CHECKER, REVIEWER INITIALS BLOCK

Provide individual Designer, Checker and Reviewer initials and the date of the final review in the title block of each sheet.

102.4 TITLE BLOCK

See BDM Figure 102-2 for example Site Plan sheets. See BDM Figure 102-3 for example Detail Plan sheet. See BDM Figure 102-4 for example title blocks for 22-in x 34-in sheets.

Provide the project name in CO-Route-Section format. Show the Section as SLM to the nearest 1/100 of a mile.

Provide the bridge number in CO-Route-CLP format. Show the CLP of the structure written without the decimal point.

A Station is defined as 100-ft. Show Stations to the nearest 1/100 of a foot.

Show the correct SFN in the Existing Structure Block and Title blocks for the existing and proposed structures respectively.

Provide the PID below the project name in the Title Block.

Include the name and address of the Design Agency in the Title Block.

Example: MER-707-16.92

Example: MER-707-1692

Refer to the ODOT Structure Management System (SMS) Structure Inventory Coding Guide, Ohio Item 200 for more information about determining the CLP for a structure.

Example: STA 895+08.75

The SFN for the existing structure should be included in the Scope of Services. If not, it may be obtained from the Owner.

If a new SFN is required for a proposed structure, contact the Office of Structural Engineering, Bridge Management Section.

It is the Designer of Record’s responsibility to contact and confirm the correct SFN with the appropriate office.
Figure 102-4
102.5 ESTIMATED QUANTITIES

Provide plan quantities separately for each bridge SFN. Do not incorporate common bid items between multiple bridge structures in a project.

Furnish electronic files of the structure quantity calculations in accordance with the L&D, Vol. 3. Prepare neat, accurate and complete quantity calculations on standard computation sheets. Arrange the calculations in an orderly fashion so that a person examining them will be able to follow the calculation sequence. Someone other than the original Designer shall independently check the calculations. The Designer and Checker shall each prepare separate sets of calculations to minimize risk of error. Reconcile the two sets of calculations and select one set (either the Designer's or the Checker's) as the official set. Both the Designer and Checker shall initial and date each sheet of the calculations. The results of this official set shall correspond to the quantities shown on the plans.

Provide the Bridge Number; SFN; the date; the individual Designer and Checker initials; and subject on each sheet of quantity calculations.

102.6 STANDARD BRIDGE DRAWINGS

Where required by the Scope of Services and/or BDM, follow current Standard Bridge Drawings. Provide reference to Standard Bridge Drawings using the Drawing Number and latest date of revision or the approval date if there has been no revision. If standards are not adequate for a particular design, then modify the standards, as necessary, by supplying pertinent details, dimensions or material specifications in the plans.

Reference Standard Bridge Drawings on the General Notes sheet and the project plan’s Title Sheet.

Do not reference a standard drawing if only one or two small details on the standard are applicable. In such instances, include the required details in the project plans. Do not reference more than one standard drawing for a individual bridge component.

102.7 SUPPLEMENTAL SPECIFICATIONS

Supplemental Specifications are specifications that supplement and supersede the C&MS.

C102.5

Summation of common items cannot be done due to computer tracking of quantities based on Structure File Number.

Since this information may be useful to contractors preparing bids, the Department provides it as a courtesy at the time of advertisement. This information is not considered part of the bidding documents and is for information only.

C102.6

Standard Bridge Drawings provide common details and requirements for structures in Ohio. Most of the drawings require fully detailing the items in the plans to provide clear and bid-worthy plans. The Designer shall be familiar with the standards and know if they are adequate for the particular design situation being addressed. Standard Bridge Drawings can be downloaded from ODOT’s Office of Structural Engineering website.

Reference to a standard drawing when very little of the drawing applies to a project can be confusing and lead to contract disputes.

C102.7

Supplemental Specifications are available on ODOT’s Division of Construction Management website.
Modifications to Supplemental Specifications require plan notes and “As Per Plan” pay items.

List Supplemental Specifications, like standard bridge drawings, on the General Notes plan sheet. (See BDM Section 600). List Supplemental Specifications referenced on the General Notes sheet on the project plan’s Title Sheet.

102.8 PROPOSAL NOTES

Proposal Notes are specifications that supplement and supersede Supplemental Specifications and the C&MS.

Do not revise Proposal Notes.

Reference Proposal Notes in the table of Estimated Quantities by adding a note to the end of the applicable bid item (See Proposal Note). Do not refer to Proposal Notes by number.

102.9 SPECIAL PROVISIONS

Special Provisions are project specific specifications with the same order of precedence in the Contract as Proposal Notes. Provide the title and date for all Special Provisions on the Title Sheet of the Plans.

102.10 SUPPLEMENTS

Supplements are individually numbered documents describing necessary information such as laboratory test methods and certification or pre-qualification procedures for materials.

Do not reference Supplements in the bridge plan General Notes or the project plan’s Title Sheet.

103 BRIDGE PLAN SHEET ORDER

A set of completed bridge plans shall conform to the following order:

A. Site Plan
B. General Plan – A General Plan sheet is required for any of the following:
   1. Bridges with variable width and/or curved alignment
   2. Bridges with staged construction
   3. Bridge deck overlay projects

The purpose of the General Plan sheet is to provide bridge information that can get lost in the clutter of information typically shown on a site plan. The General Plan sheet does not require an elevation view.
C. General Notes
D. Estimated Quantities
E. Phase Construction Details
F. Abutments
G. Piers
H. Superstructure
I. Railing Details
J. Expansion device details
K. Non-standard approach slab details
L. Reinforcing Steel List
SECTION 200 – STRUCTURE SUBMISSIONS

201  STRUCTURE TYPE STUDY ................................................................................................................... 2-1
  201.1  GENERAL ......................................................................................................................................... 2-1
  201.2  STRUCTURE TYPE STUDY SUBMISSION REQUIREMENTS .................................................. 2-1
         201.2.1  PROFILE FOR BRIDGE ALTERNATIVE .............................................................................. 2-1
         201.2.2  STRUCTURE TYPE STUDY SITE PLAN ........................................................................... 2-2
         201.2.3  NARRATIVE OF BRIDGE ALTERNATIVES ........................................................................ 2-6
         201.2.4  COST ANALYSIS .................................................................................................................... 2-6
         201.2.5  FOUNDATION RECOMMENDATION .................................................................................. 2-6
         201.2.6  PRELIMINARY MAINTENANCE OF TRAFFIC PLAN ....................................................... 2-7

202  BRIDGE PRELIMINARY DESIGN REPORT – STAGE 1 ..................................................................... 2-8
  202.1  BRIDGE PRELIMINARY DESIGN REPORT SUBMISSION REQUIREMENTS ........................ 2-8
         202.1.1  FINAL STRUCTURE SITE PLAN ........................................................................................... 2-8
                  202.1.1.1  PLAN VIEW .......................................................................................................................... 2-8
                  202.1.1.2  PROFILE VIEW .................................................................................................................... 2-9
         202.1.2  FINAL MAINTENANCE OF TRAFFIC PLAN ..................................................................... 2-10
         202.1.3  STRUCTURE FOUNDATION EXPLORATION REPORT .................................................. 2-10
                  202.1.3.1  SPREAD FOOTING REPORT REQUIREMENTS ............................................................ 2-11
                  202.1.3.2  PILE FOUNDATION REPORT REQUIREMENTS ..................................................... 2-11
                  202.1.3.3  DRILLED SHAFT FOUNDATION REPORT REQUIREMENTS ...................................... 2-11
                  202.1.3.4  MICROPILES FOUNDATION REPORT REQUIREMENTS .................................... 2-12
                  202.1.3.5  CONTINUOUS FLIGHT AUGER (CFA) PILE FOUNDATIONS REPORT REQUIREMENTS ........................................... 2-12
                  202.1.3.6  MSE WALL REPORT REQUIREMENTS ......................................................................... 2-13
         202.1.4  SUPPLEMENTAL SITE PLAN FOR RAILWAY CROSSINGS ................................................. 2-13

203  WATERWAY PERMIT DETERMINATION ........................................................................................ 2-14
  203.1  BRIDGE AND WATERWAY PERMITS ...................................................................................... 2-14
  203.2  TEMPORARY ACCESS FILLS ..................................................................................................... 2-15

204  DETAIL DESIGN – STAGE 2 ............................................................................................................... 2-18
  204.1  PROPRIETARY RETAINING WALLS ......................................................................................... 2-19

205  DETAIL DESIGN – STAGE 3 ............................................................................................................... 2-28

206  FINAL TRACINGS ................................................................................................................................. 2-28
SECTION 200 – STRUCTURE SUBMISSIONS

201  STRUCTURE TYPE STUDY

201.1  GENERAL

Where a bridge is the most appropriate structure for a particular site, then perform the Structure Type Study to determine the appropriate bridge type.

Refer to BDM Section 101.7 for the definition of what qualifies as a bridge per the ORC. Study the project site in detail to determine the best structure alternative. Conducting a site visit is highly recommended. In many cases, it can be readily determined whether a bridge or culvert structure should be chosen for a particular site.

201.2  STRUCTURE TYPE STUDY SUBMISSION REQUIREMENTS

A Structure Type Study submission shall include the following:

A. Profile for each bridge alternative, see BDM Section 201.2.1
B. Preliminary Structure Site Plan for preferred bridge alternative, see BDM Section 201.2.2
C. Hydrology and Hydraulics (H&H) Report, see L&D Vol. 2.
D. Narrative of Bridge Alternatives, see BDM Section 201.2.3
E. Cost Analysis, see BDM Section 201.2.4
F. Foundation Recommendation, see BDM Section 201.2.5
G. Preliminary Maintenance of Traffic Plan, see BDM Section 201.2.6

Include the Structure Type Study in the review submission made directly to the District Office.

201.2.1  PROFILE FOR BRIDGE ALTERNATIVE

Draw the profile for each bridge alternative being considered to the same scale as the corresponding plan.

Include the following for each profile:

A. Existing and proposed profile grade lines
B. Existing ground line
C. An outline of the structure
D. Bridges conveying riverine streams or channels require the following hydraulic information:

Refer to BDM Section 101.7 for Normal Water Elevation, OHWM and Thalweg definitions.
1. Cross-section of waterway channel
2. Highest known high-water mark
3. Normal water elevation
4. OHWM
5. Thalweg elevation
6. Scour Information
   Examples of scour information would be scour history, scour holes, etc.
7. Design and 100-year water surface elevations (WSE)
8. Overtopping flood elevation and frequency
E. Bridges conveying waterbodies that have controlled outlets or spillways require:
   1. Cross-section of the channel
   2. Summer pool elevation
   3. Winter pool elevation
   4. Surveillance pool elevation
   5. Record pool elevation
   6. Spillway elevation
   7. Top of dam elevation
F. Existing and proposed profile grade elevations at 25-ft increments
G. Minimum and required vertical and lateral clearances.
H. Spans dimensioned as follows:
   1. Spans on straight (tangent) alignments: measure from center to center of bearings along the centerline of construction.
   2. Spans on curved alignments: measure along the Reference Line.
   3. Spans for standard concrete slab bridges: measure from a line 1-ft behind the face of abutment substructure or breastwall.

201.2.2 STRUCTURE TYPE STUDY SITE PLAN

The Site Plan scale shall be 1-in = 20-ft. For structures with bridge limits exceeding 400-ft, match-mark the site plan across multiple sheets at the same scale.

For bridges where the 1-in = 20-ft scale is too small to clearly show the Site Plan details, a 1-in = 10-ft scale may be considered.

The following general information shall be shown on the Preliminary Structure Site Plan:
A. The plan view shall show:
   1. Existing structures (using dashed lines)
   2. Contours at 2-ft intervals showing the existing surface of the ground (for steep slopes contours at 5-ft or greater intervals are acceptable)
   3. Existing utility lines and their disposition. Identify and accurately locate all utilities. Indicate the disposition of existing utilities (e.g. whether they are to remain in place, be relocated or be removed, and for the latter two, by whom).
   4. Proposed structure
   5. Proposed temporary bridge
   6. Proposed channel improvements
   7. North arrow
   8. Required minimum and actual minimum lateral and vertical clearances and their locations.
   9. All other pertinent features concerning the existing topography and proposed work.

B. A profile as described in BDM Section 201.2.1. The profile scale shall be the same as the plan view.

C. Horizontal and vertical curve data.

D. Bridges conveying riverine streams or channels require the following information:
   1. Elevations described in BDM Section 201.2.1.D.
   2. Size of drainage area
   3. Design year flood frequency, discharge and velocity
   4. 100-yr discharge and velocity. Label discharge as “FIS” when taken from a FEMA Flood Insurance Study.
   5. Clearance from the lowest elevation of the bottom of the superstructure to the design year water surface elevation (i.e. freeboard)

Avoid placing utilities on bridges where possible. The request to allow utilities on the bridge shall be made through the ODOT District Utilities Coordinator. Refer to the ODOT Utilities Manual. For specific detail requirements refer to BDM Section 310.4.

For a bridge over a railway, the vertical clearance shall be measured from a point level with the top of the highest rail and 6-ft from the centerline of those tracks, or greater if specified by the individual railroad. Reference shall be made to Chapter 15, Section 1.2.6(a), AREMA Specifications for increased lateral clearances required when tracks are on a horizontal curve.
E. Bridges conveying waterbodies that have controlled outlets or spillways require the following information:
   1. Elevations described in BDM Section 201.2.1.E.
   2. Size of drainage area
   3. Water body name
   4. Owner of outlet or spillway
   5. Include a note indicating that the pool elevation is controlled by the outlet or spillway

F. Buried culvert bridges with an invert require the design service life (75 years), water pH, and abrasion level (1-6)

G. Proposed Structure block: Located in the lower right-hand corner of the sheet. The block shall be 6-1/2-in wide on a 22-in x 34-in sheet. The block shall include the following information:
   1. Type: provide a brief description of proposed bridge type
   2. Span(s): provide the span lengths and how measured (c/c of bearings, f/f of abutments)
   3. Roadway: provide the roadway and sidewalk widths and how measured (t/t of barrier, t/t of curb, or f/f of railing)
   4. Design Loading: provide the design loading including allowance for future wearing surface (k/ft²)
      See BDM Section 201.2.1.H for additional information.
   5. Skew: provide the skew angle and how measured (right forward or left forward)
   6. Approach Slabs: provide the length, thickness and standard drawing number.
   7. Alignment: provide description of horizontal alignment across the bridge (e.g. tangent or degree of curvature and how measured)
   8. Crown or Superelevation: provide the rate of cross-slope
   9. Coordinates: provide the latitude and longitude for the proposed structure as defined in the ODOT Structure Inventory Coding Guide and measured to the nearest 0.01 seconds.
   10. Deck Area as defined in the ODOT Structure Inventory Coding Guide and taken to the nearest 1-ft².
H. Existing Structure block: Located in the lower right-hand corner of the sheet above the Proposed structure block. The block shall be 6-1/2-in wide on a 22-in x 34-in sheet. The block shall include the following information:

1. Type: provide a brief description of existing bridge type
2. Span(s): provide the span lengths and how measured (c/c of bearings, f/f of abutments)
3. Roadway: provide the roadway width and how measured (t/t of barrier, t/t of curb, or f/f of railing)
4. Design Loading: provide the original design loading
5. Skew: provide the skew angle and how measured (right forward or left forward)
6. Wearing Surface: provide the type and thickness of the existing wearing surface
7. Approach Slabs: provide known information regarding length, thickness, standard drawing number.
8. Alignment: provide description of horizontal alignment across the bridge (e.g. tangent or degree of curvature and how measured)
9. Crown or Superelevation: provide the rate of cross-slope
10. Structure File Number: provide the SFN
11. Date built: provide the year built and year of any major rehabilitations
12. Disposition: provide the disposition of the existing bridge after the completion of the project

I. A cross section of the proposed superstructure, including an elevation of the proposed pier type(s) if applicable.

J. The design and current average daily traffic (ADT) and the design average daily truck traffic (ADTT).

K. In the profile view, for each substructure unit where a bearing is to be used, designate the bearing condition as fixed (FIX), expansion (EXP) or integral (INT).

L. Navigational clearances

M. A cross section sketch at the abutments to verify bridge limits.

This may be shown on a separate sheet and should not be included in subsequent submittals on the site plan.

Designate Semi-integral substructures as expansion (EXP) and integral as (INT).

This may be shown on a separate sheet and should not be included in subsequent submittals on the site plan.
201.2.3 NARRATIVE OF BRIDGE ALTERNATIVES

Include a brief narrative in the Structure Type Study identifying the structure alternatives and their costs. If applicable, include information regarding the use of non-standard bridge railing.

The purpose of the Narrative is to provide insight into why the particular proposed structure was chosen. Factors that need to be considered in selecting a structure for a particular site include geometry, economics, maintainability, constructability, right-of-way constraints, disruption to the traveling public, waterway crossing requirements or grade separations requirements, clearances for railway and highway crossings, foundation considerations, historical and environmental concerns, debris and ice flow problems and appearance.

201.2.4 COST ANALYSIS

Include a cost analysis in the Structure Type Study comparing alternative structures. The cost analysis shall consider the initial construction cost and all major future rehabilitation and maintenance costs, converted to present dollars.

Sufficient preliminary design is necessary for an accurate cost analysis. Construction cost data is available from the ODOT Office of Estimating.

201.2.5 FOUNDATION RECOMMENDATION

Include a written Foundation Recommendation in the Structure Type Study that consists of the following items:

A. General foundation type (e.g. Drilled Shafts, Friction Piles, Bearing Piles or Spread Footings)
B. Preliminary estimates of nominal and factored resistances

In addition to the above recommendations, include all pertinent geotechnical information gathered for the study area that forms the basis for the Foundation Recommendation.

The primary purpose of the foundation recommendation is to identify the probable foundation type for the preferred structure alternative. Specific foundation information such as pile size, estimated pile length, ultimate bearing values, shaft diameter, rock socket dimensions and footing dimensions may be provided, but is not required at this stage.

Performing drilling operations at this stage is not always necessary. Reasonable foundation assumptions for a Structure Type Study may be developed based on existing information gathered during the Office Reconnaissance detailed in the ODOT SGE. There may be project locations where sufficient geotechnical information is not available to render an accurate recommendation of foundation type or resistances. For such locations, boring, sampling and field testing according to the ODOT SGE will be necessary at this stage of the project development process.

When the foundation recommendation for the preferred alternative includes MSE wall supported abutments, provide estimates for factored bearing pressure and factored bearing resistance for the in-situ material below the MSE wall.

Refer to BDM Section 204.1 for additional MSE wall supported abutment considerations.
When considering retaining walls on a project, perform a Retaining Wall Justification, per ODOT L&D, Vol. 3, Section 1407.2, for all retaining walls other than abutments and culvert headwalls. Include an evaluation of feasible retaining wall types in the Retaining Wall Justification.

201.2.6 PRELIMINARY MAINTENANCE OF TRAFFIC PLAN

Include a Preliminary Maintenance of Traffic Plan in the Structure Type Study.

The various stages of the bridge construction shall match those of the approach roadway, and the nomenclature used to identify the various stages (phases) of construction shall be the same for the roadway and the bridge (Stage 1 and Stage 2 or Phase 1 and Phase 2).

This Plan shall include a transverse section(s) defining all stages of removal and construction with the following information:

A. The existing superstructure and substructure layout with overall dimensions (field verified) and color photographs.

B. Type of temporary railing or barrier.

C. Proposed temporary lane widths, measured as the clear distance between temporary barriers.

D. Location of cut lines.

E. Temporary modifications to superelevated sections (existing and/or proposed) on the deck and/or shoulder in order to accommodate the traffic from the phase construction.

F. Width of closure pour.

G. Profile grade, alignment, approximate location and width of temporary structures

H. Location of temporary shoring

I. Lane closure exceptions.

For projects that affect ODOT’s Permitted Lane Closure Schedule, evaluate Accelerated Bridge Construction (ABC) techniques to mitigate negative impacts to the travelling public. Access to the Permitted Lane Closure Schedule (maintained by the Office of Roadway Engineering) is available at:

http://plcm.dot.state.oh.us/

Additional information regarding ABC techniques is available on FHWA’s Accelerated Bridge Construction Website:

http://www.fhwa.dot.gov/bridge/abc/

For information regarding temporary MOT geometrics refer to ODOT’s Traffic Engineering Manual, Section 640-2.

Evaluate the existing structure to determine where the cut-line can be made to maintain structural integrity.

Refer to BDM Section 404.5 for additional information on cutline locations for early concrete slab bridges.

Refer to BDM Section 309.3.8.5 for more information regarding closure pours.

Present alternative concepts when exceptions to the Department’s permitted lane closures are necessary.
202.1 BRIDGE PRELIMINARY DESIGN REPORT SUBMISSION REQUIREMENTS

The Bridge Preliminary Design Report shall contain the following:

A. Final Structure Site Plan, see BDM Section 202.1.1
B. Final Maintenance of Traffic Plan, see BDM Section 202.1.2
C. Foundation Report, see BDM Section 202.1.3
D. Supplemental Site Plan for Railway Crossings, see BDM Section 202.1.4
E. Disposition of comments from the Structure Type Study
F. Non-standard bridge railing, see BDM Section 309.4.1

202.1.1 FINAL STRUCTURE SITE PLAN

In addition to the Preliminary Structure Site Plan requirements of BDM Section 201.2.2, the Final Structure Site Plan shall include the information in the following sections.

202.1.1.1 PLAN VIEW

The Final Structure Site Plan shall include the following information in the Plan View:

A. Bridge width and approach pavement widths, showing curb or parapet lines and outer limits of the superstructure and substructure units
B. Skew angle of each substructure unit
C. The directional bearing of the centerline of construction for tangent alignments or the directional bearing of the Reference Line for curved alignments.

Provide a baseline/workline for structures located on a curve, spiral, or having other complex geometry in the plans along with enough information for the fabricator to meet the requirements of C&MS 513.

D. Lateral clearances (both the minimum required and the actual) with respect to railroad tracks and/or highways under the proposed structure
E. Location of minimum vertical clearance
F. Treatment of slopes around the ends and under the bridge (location and length of rock channel protection)

G. Channel changes

H. Soil boring locations

I. Centerline of temporary structure and temporary approach pavement

J. Stationing of Bridge Limits

K. Limits of channel excavation shown by crosshatching with a description provided in a legend

L. The location and description of bench marks

M. The following earthwork note: EARTHWORK limits shown are approximate. Actual slopes shall conform to plan cross sections.

N. Guardrail stationing
   When providing guardrail stationing: for bridges with twin steel tube bridge railing, station the centerline of the first top mounted post on the bridge, for bridges with deep beam railing and concrete barrier railing, station the centerline of the first guardrail post off the bridge. Stationing shall be given to the nearest 1/100th of a foot.
   Guardrail stationing is subject to change during the detail design phase. The Site Plan shall be revised accordingly.
   This information coincides with the Method of Measurement defined in C&MS Item 517. These stations are used to determine pay length of roadway approach guardrail which is typically given in multiples of standard w-beam lengths.

202.1.1.2 PROFILE VIEW

The Final Structure Site Plan shall include the following information in the Profile view:

A. Profile gradient percent

B. Embankment slopes and top of slope elevations

C. Proposed bottom of footing elevations

D. Type of foundations

E. Top of bedrock elevations at each boring location (if necessary)

F. Shaded areas of the bridge that represent the new bridge components.

202.1.1.3 SUPERELEVATION TRANSITION

Provide a superelevation transition table or diagram similar to BDM Figure 309-11, if the bridge crown changes across the structure. When detailing the typical bridge transverse section, provide a reference to the table or diagram.

202.1.2 C202.1.2

Refer to BDM Section 201.2.2 for additional site plan profile view information.
202.1.2 FINAL MAINTENANCE OF TRAFFIC PLAN

In addition to the Preliminary Maintenance of Traffic Plan requirements of BDM Section 201.2.6, the Final Maintenance of Traffic Plan shall include the following information:

A. Plan view
B. Temporary barrier anchorage details and requirements
C. Location and type of temporary shoring (See BDM Section 310.1)
D. Location of structural members that require strengthening
E. Temporary structure design information (See BDM Section 500)
F. Additional notes and/or details that will be necessary to perform the work

202.1.3 STRUCTURE FOUNDATION EXPLORATION REPORT

Include a Structure Foundation Exploration Report in accordance with the ODOT SGE in the Bridge Preliminary Design Report. The Structure Foundation Exploration Report shall include:

A. Summary of Exploration
B. Investigational Findings
C. Analyses and Recommendations
D. Boring Logs
E. Test Data

For the scour evaluation, performed in accordance with the L&D, Vol. 2, provide D50 values from the particle size analysis. Where the scour evaluation has identified a potential problem, accommodate the probable scour depths, calculated in accordance with L&D, Vol. 2, for: the design of the substructures; the location of the bottom of footings; the minimum tip elevations for piles and drilled shafts; and the factored side resistance of piles and drilled shafts.

Where downdrag has been identified as a potential contributor to the total factored load, include the estimated downdrag load in the report.

Specific design considerations for each foundation type are presented in BDM Section 305.
202.1.3.1  SPREAD FOOTING REPORT
REQUIREMENTS

For spread footings, provide the size of the footing, external stability analyses, predicted settlement, eccentric load limitations, factored sliding resistance, Service I Limit State bearing pressure, maximum Strength Limit State bearing pressure, and the factored bearing resistance; provide all supporting calculations for these values. Also provide all relevant plan notes for the footing installation including necessary waiting periods.

202.1.3.2  PILE FOUNDATION REPORT
REQUIREMENTS

For driven pile foundations, provide the size and type of driven piles analyzed, the estimated and order length per pile, the nominal and factored loads per pile, the nominal and factored geotechnical and structural resistance per pile, predicted settlement (magnitude and time-rate), horizontal deflections, and the pile driving hammer minimum rated energy and maximum driving stresses. For the geotechnical resistance, provide the following:

A. Nominal unit tip resistance, qp (ksf)
B. Nominal unit side resistance, qs for each soil layer contributing to the nominal pile side resistance (ksf)
C. Design methodologies used to determine unit tip and unit side resistances

Provide supporting calculations for all of the above. Also provide all relevant plan notes for the pile installation including necessary waiting periods.

202.1.3.3  DRILLED SHAFT FOUNDATION
REPORT REQUIREMENTS

For drilled shaft foundations, provide the nominal dimensions and the size and type of reinforcement for the drilled shafts analyzed, the nominal and factored loads per shaft, the nominal and factored geotechnical and structural resistance per shaft, predicted settlement (magnitude and time-rate), and horizontal deflections. For the geotechnical resistance, provide the following:

A. Nominal unit tip resistance, qp (ksf)
B. Nominal unit side resistance, qs for each soil layer contributing to the nominal shaft side resistance (ksf)
C. Design methodologies used to determine unit tip and unit side resistances

For friction piles, the nominal axial geotechnical resistance is referred to as Ultimate Bearing Value (UBV).
D. Resistance factor from LRFD Table 10.5.5.2.4-1 for each calculated unit resistance.

E. Integrity testing methods (if applicable). Provide a justification when specifying drilled shaft integrity testing methods other than CSL, such as Gamma-Gamma Logging (GGL) and Pile Integrity Testing (PIT), or if specifying CSL testing for drilled shafts of less than 84-in nominal diameter.

Provide supporting calculations for all of the above. Also provide all relevant plan notes for the drilled shaft installation.

**202.1.3.4 MICROPILES FOUNDATION REPORT REQUIREMENTS**

For micropile foundations, provide for review the nominal dimensions and the size and type of reinforcement for the micropiles analyzed, the nominal and factored loads per pile, the nominal and factored geotechnical and structural resistance per pile, predicted settlement (magnitude and time-rate), and horizontal deflections. For the geotechnical resistance, provide the following:

A. Nominal unit tip resistance, qp (ksf)

B. Nominal unit side resistance, qs for each soil layer contributing to the nominal pile side resistance (ksf)

C. Design methodologies used to determine unit tip and unit side resistances

D. Resistance factor from LRFD Table 10.5.5.2.5-1 for each calculated unit resistance.

Provide supporting calculations for all of the above. Also provide all relevant plan notes for the drilled shaft installation.

**202.1.3.5 CONTINUOUS FLIGHT AUGER (CFA) PILE FOUNDATIONS REPORT REQUIREMENTS**

For Continuous Flight Auger pile foundations, provide for review the nominal dimensions and the size and type of reinforcement for the CFA piles analyzed, the nominal and factored loads per pile, the nominal and factored geotechnical and structural resistance per pile, predicted settlement (magnitude and time-rate), and horizontal deflections. For the geotechnical resistance, provide the following:

A. Nominal unit tip resistance, qp (ksf)
B. Nominal unit side resistance, qs for each soil layer contributing to the nominal pile side resistance (ksf)

C. Design methodologies used to determine unit tip and unit side resistances

D. For LRFD designs, provide the resistance factor for each calculated unit resistance.

Provide supporting calculations for all of the above. Also provide all relevant plan notes for the CFA pile installation.

202.1.3.6 MSE WALL REPORT REQUIREMENTS

For MSE wall supported abutments provide findings for external stability (LRFD 11.10.5) and settlement. Also provide soil reinforcement lengths, and all construction constraints, such as soil improvement methods, that will be required.

Provide supporting calculations for all of the above. Also provide all relevant plan notes for the MSE wall installation.

202.1.4 SUPPLEMENTAL SITE PLAN FOR RAILWAY CROSSINGS

For Railway-Highway grade separation structures, provide a Supplemental Site Plan with the Final Site Plan.

Show the following information in the Supplemental Site Plan:

A. A 1-in = 100-ft scale plan of the alignment of the railroad and the highway extended at least 1000-ft each way from the proposed point of intersection, taken from actual surveys.

B. Profile of top of all rails, extending at least 1000-ft each way from the proposed intersection.

C. Minimum lateral and vertical clearances to all tracks.

D. Sufficient cross sections along the railroad and highway to determine approximate earthwork limits and encroachment on railroad property.

E. Drainage.

F. Intersection angle between highway centerline and railroad centerline.

G. Highway stationing and railroad mile post stationing at intersection.

H. Railroad right-of-way lines.
I. Railroad pole lines, signal control boxes, communications relay houses, signal standards and drainage structures.

J. Centerlines of all tracks and location of switch points.

K. Location of buildings or other structures within the railroad right-of-way.

L. Railroad traffic counts including type of movements and speed.

M. Location of all utilities occupying railroad right-of-way and the names of the owners of these utilities.

203 WATERWAY PERMIT DETERMINATION

203.1 BRIDGE AND WATERWAY PERMITS

Impacts to bridges or waterways may require legal authorization in the form of permits or certifications issued by various regulatory agencies, including:

A.1. U.S. Army Corps of Engineers – Section 404, Section 408 and/or Section 10 Permit

B.1. U.S. Coast Guard – Section 9 Bridge Permit

C.1. Ohio EPA – Section 401 Water Quality Certification and/or Isolated Wetland Permit

The U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (USACE) has jurisdiction over “Waters of the United States” and, as noted in ODOT C&MS 101.03, this includes: rivers, streams, jurisdictional ditches, lakes and wetlands. For rivers, streams and jurisdictional ditches, the jurisdiction begins at the OHWM. The OHWM is defined by the USACE Regulatory Letter No. 05-05 and is available at the following website:

https://usace.contentdm.oclc.org/utils/getfile/collection/p16021coll9/id/1253

Coordinate with the DEC and the OES-WPU throughout the waterway permit process to ensure that the final waterway permit applications are indicative of the final project design. For more information refer to the Waterway Permits Manual available on the ODOT Office of Environmental Services website.

Confirm with the project manager that the bridge design plans meet the requirements in the project waterway Special Provisions (SP) and ensure the project waterway SP is submitted with the Final Plan Package.

The ODOT Office of Environmental Services – Waterway Permits Unit (OES-WPU) assumes the responsibility for determining which types of waterway permits apply to ODOT projects, such as, but not limited to, Nationwide Permits (NWP) or ODOT’s Regional General Permit (RGP).

Special Provisions are the method ODOT uses to attach the waterway permit conditions to the project construction plans. The waterway permits Special Provisions is prepared by the OES-WPU and may contain the following:
A2. All pertinent waterway permit conditions
B2. Plan sheets and mapping approved by the regulatory agencies
C2. Impact quantities authorized in aquatic resources
D2. Section 404 Completion Certification form

203.2 TEMPORARY ACCESS FILLS

A Temporary Access Fill (TAF) is a fill or structure that allows a contractor access to work on roads or bridges located within bodies of water. Examples of TAF’s include: cofferdams; temporary structures for maintaining traffic; causeways and workpads; and demolition debris. The placement of all TAF’s in “Waters of the United States” must be performed in accordance with the special provisions for waterway permits.

A contractor’s means and methods of construction will dictate the TAF required for a project. However, the Department must estimate the potential impacts to “Waters of the United States” during project development to enable all permits to be in-place during contract letting. For most projects, the waterway permits are in place prior to sale. There may be instances where unforeseen delays dictate that the waterway permits will not be acquired until after sale and/or award; however, the Department will still provide Waterway Permit Special Provisions prior to project sale indicating anticipated conditions and the pending permit authorizations. In those instances, it is imperative that the waterway permits be obtained prior to the contractor beginning any work within any Waters of the United States. Furthermore, it is incumbent upon the Department that these permits provide all bidding contractors the ability to construct the project without resulting in expensive delays, change orders or fines.
Use the following requirements to estimate the size of TAF’s:

A. The TAF shall provide access to all piers located within the OHWM of the waterway from at least one bank of the waterway.

In the case of staging, the permit application shall reflect the construction stage that impacts the largest area of the waterway.

B. Locate the TAF directly beneath the superstructure. The surface width of the TAF shall be equal to the out-to-out width of the superstructure plus 50-ft outboard on one side of the structure and 20-ft outboard on the other side of the structure.

C. Extend the TAF at least 40-ft beyond the furthest pier accessed by the TAF.

D. The side slopes of the TAF shall be no steeper than 1.5:1 (H:V).

E. Locate the top surface of the TAF at least 1-ft above the OHWM.

F. Design the TAF to maintain the Standard Temporary Discharge (STD) as detailed in L&D, Vol. 2, Section 1012.

The Department partnered with the Ohio Contractor’s Association to develop these requirements. This information is intended for permit application purposes only and should not be included in the project plan set. However, to assist the OES-WPU in the determination process, Designers should calculate worst case scenario TAF impacts, including linear footage from upstream to downstream and acreage, to submit in the Permit Determination Request to OES. An example Plan, Profile and Cross-section using the guidance provided above are shown in BDM Figure 203-1. These quantities should be provided to the DEC along with a completed copy of the checklist shown on the OES Waterway Permit Determination Request website. The minimum flow to be maintained during construction should be calculated according to BDM Section 203.2.F. Designers will need to estimate whether this flow can be maintained through conduits or if open channels will be required.

Access may be provided by construction staging of the TAF. When considering the constructability of staged TAF’s, typical superstructure erection plans for lifting lengths of 50-ft or more require two cranes. Unless the access for member delivery is from an adjacent structure, the TAF must provide access to each end of the lift from one bank.
Figure 203-1
The Stage 2 structure submission for bridges, retaining walls and noise walls shall include a disposition of the comments from the previous submission and the items listed below.

A. Include the following in the Bridge Plans:
   1. Site Plan in compliance with all Stage 1 review comments
   2. General Plan (if required)
   3. General Notes
   4. Estimated Quantities showing all pay items and item extensions. Quantity values are not required at this stage.
   5. Phase Construction Details (if required)
   6. Foundation Plan (if required)
   7. Abutment Details with all dimensioning, bar sizes, bar shapes and bar spacings properly shown
   8. Pier Details with all dimensioning, bar sizes, bar shapes and bar spacings properly shown (if required)
   9. Superstructure Details with all dimensioning, bar sizes, bar shapes and bar spacings properly shown
   10. Approach Slab Details with all dimensioning, bar sizes, bar shapes and bar spacings properly shown (if necessary)
   11. Reinforcing Steel Schedules. Bar marks, dimensions, quantities and weights are not required at this stage.
   12. Other Details as necessary

B. Include the following in the Retaining Wall Plans:
   1. General Notes
   2. Retaining wall details
   3. Other Details as necessary

C. Noise Barrier Plans in accordance with BDM Section 800.

D. Special Provisions

E. Load Rating Reports for bridges

F. Signed Office of Structural Engineering Bridge Stage 2 Plan Review Checklist

Bridge plans at this stage are essentially complete except for Estimated Quantity values and Reinforcing Steel Schedules. To avoid the potential of wasted effort, completion of these two plan items which are subject to change based on the Stage 2 Plan Review is deferred to Stage 3.

Not every item listed will apply to every project.
204.1 PROPRIETARY RETAINING WALLS

Provide sufficient information in the plans such that, prior to submitting a bid, the Contractor can select a proprietary company to design the internal stability of the wall after the project is awarded. Detail each wall on a project separately. As a minimum, provide the following information in the project plans for each wall location:

A. Plan View of the wall showing: (Refer to BDM Figure 204-1)
   1. For each critical point: station and offset with respect to the centerline of construction
   2. All complex geometry information
   3. Pay limits for wall and roadway quantities
   4. North Arrow
   5. Locations of typical sections for (C.) below
   6. Locations of abutment footing, piles, utilities, catch basins, and other possible obstructions (Refer to BDM Section 309.7 for drainage and BDM Section 310.4.1 for utility locations)
   7. Parapet/barrier locations
   8. Limits of proposed wall excavation
   9. Locations of sheeting and bracing
      If sheeting and bracing is required according to BDM Section 310.1, provide a pay item for ITEM 503 – COFFERDAMS AND EXCAVATION BRACING
   10. Select Granular Backfill drainage locations
      Locate perforated plastic pipe, C&MS 707.33, wrapped with geotextile fabric as low as possible within the select granular backfill while still providing positive gravity flow in the pipe to an outlet. Locate pipe near the back side of the leveling pad and near the free end of the soil reinforcement. The pipe shall be continuous and sloped to provide a positive gravity flow to an outlet. Show the approximate location of the outlet on the plan view. Use drainage pipe without perforations outside the limits of the select granular backfill. If the proprietary wall supports an abutment, provide backfill drainage in accordance with BDM Section 306.2.3.1.
B. Elevation of the wall showing: (Refer to BDM Figure 204-1)
   1. Station and elevation for each critical point on the wall
   2. Finished ground surface elevations for each critical point on the wall
   3. Leveling pad showing the minimum dimension from the finished ground line to the top of the pad.
   4. Locations of abutment footing, piles, utilities, catch basins, and other possible obstructions
   5. Backfill drainage
   6. Approximate locations of slip joints

C. Typical Sections showing: (Refer to BDM Figure 204-2, Figure 204-3, Figure 204-4, Figure 204-5, & Figure 204-6)
   1. Coping details
   2. Parapet and sleeper slab details
   3. Abutment footing details including the dimensions from the back of the proprietary wall to the centerline of bearing at the abutment, dimensions from the back of the proprietary wall to the toe of the abutment footing, and dimensions from the back of the proprietary wall to the centerline of the nearest row of piles.
   4. Minimum clearance between the bottom of the footing/sleeper slab and the uppermost wall reinforcement strap.
   5. Locations of abutment footing, piles, utilities, catch basins, and other possible obstructions
   6. Backfill drainage
   7. Soil reinforcements attached to abutments.

Regardless of abutment type and foundation type, one row of soil reinforcements shall be attached to the backside of the abutment footing.

8. Limits of select granular material
   Show the limit of the select granular. The top elevation of the select granular backfill shall be at least 6-in above the uppermost layer of soil reinforcement, but not lower than 6-in above the bottom of the abutment footing.

The preferred dimension is 6-in.

These additional reinforcements are necessary to resist horizontal bridge and backwall forces and prevent load transfer to the coping and facing panels. To estimate select granular backfill quantities, Designers may assume these additional reinforcements are the same length as those attached to the facing panels.
9. Limits of wall excavation
   SS840 requires a minimum 1-ft undercut beneath the leveling pad elevation for all MSE walls. If more undercut is required, show it on the plans. The backfill material is specified in SS840.

10. Pay limits of wall and roadway quantities

11. Pile sleeves (if required)
   Show pile sleeves extending from the bottom of the abutment footing to the bottom of the wall excavation

12. Location of sheeting and bracing (if required)

13. Limits of concrete sealer

D. Requirements for wall surface textures or other aesthetic treatments
   Provide the panel size and shape restrictions specific to the project in the plans

E. Wall design criteria including:
   1. Factored bearing resistance at the base of the reinforced soil mass
   2. The following factored loads applied to the reinforced soil mass from the bridge: vertical dead and live loads, horizontal loads and total bearing load.
      Plan notes are provided in BDM Section 605.5.

F. Final copy of the Special Provisions for proprietary wall types other than MSE walls.

G. Estimated Quantities Table (list each wall on a project separately)
   Include all pay items listed in SS840. Also include as necessary; ITEM 203 – EMBANKMENT; ITEM 512 – SEALING OF CONCRETE SURFACES (EPOXY URETHANE); and ITEM 503 – COFFERDAMS AND EXCAVATION BRACING.
Figure 204-3
Figure 204-4
Figure 204-5
205 DETAILS DESIGN – STAGE 3

The Stage 3 structure submission for bridges and retaining walls shall include final plans, a disposition of Stage 2 comments and a signed Office of Structural Engineering Bridge Stage 3 Checklist. Estimated Quantities and Reinforcing Steel Schedules shall be complete at this stage. Submit Load Rating Reports for qualifying bridge and project types according to BDM Section 900.

Resolve all Stage 2 comments to the satisfaction of the owner.

206 FINAL TRACINGS

The structural submission for final tracings shall include the final bridge plans and any special provisions along with a copy of the Estimated Quantity calculations in accordance with BDM Section 102.5 and LD-4 Estimating Information form in accordance with the L&D, Vol. 3.
SECTION 300 – DETAIL DESIGN

301 DESIGN SPECIFICATIONS ................................................................................................................. 3-1
302 BRIDGE GEOMETRICS ......................................................................................................................... 3-1
302.1 VERTICAL CLEARANCE ...................................................................................................................... 3-1
302.2 BRIDGE WIDTH ................................................................................................................................. 3-1
302.3 LATERAL CLEARANCE ....................................................................................................................... 3-1
302.4 INTERFERENCE DUE TO EXISTING SUBSTRUCTURE ......................................................................... 3-2
302.5 BRIDGE STRUCTURE, SKEW, CURVATURE AND SUPERELEVATION .................................................. 3-2
303 LOADING REQUIREMENTS .................................................................................................................... 3-2
303.1 HIGHWAY BRIDGES ......................................................................................................................... 3-2
303.1.1 LIVE LOAD ................................................................................................................................... 3-2
303.1.2 FUTURE WEARING SURFACE ...................................................................................................... 3-2
303.1.3 LONGITUDINAL FORCES ........................................................................................................... 3-2
303.1.4 SEISMIC ...................................................................................................................................... 3-3
303.1.4.1 SEISMIC PERFORMANCE ZONE 1 ............................................................................................ 3-3
303.1.4.1.a MINIMUM SUPPORT LENGTH REQUIREMENTS ................................................................. 3-3
303.1.4.1.b HORIZONTAL CONNECTION FORCE ................................................................................. 3-5
303.1.4.1.c REQUIREMENTS FOR BEARINGS ......................................................................................... 3-6
303.1.4.2 EXISTING STRUCTURES .......................................................................................................... 3-6
303.1.4.2.a SUPERSTRUCTURE ............................................................................................................. 3-6
303.1.4.2.b SUBSTRUCTURE .................................................................................................................. 3-6
303.2 PEDESTRIAN AND BIKEWAY BRIDGES ......................................................................................... 3-7
303.3 RAILROAD BRIDGES ....................................................................................................................... 3-8
304 MATERIALS ........................................................................................................................................ 3-9
304.1 STRUCTURAL STEEL ......................................................................................................................... 3-9
304.2 CONCRETE, CAST-IN-PLACE ........................................................................................................... 3-9
304.2.1 CONCRETE DESIGN STRENGTHS ............................................................................................. 3-9
304.2.2 CONCRETE FOR BRIDGES AND STRUCTURES ........................................................................ 3-9
304.2.3 CONSTRUCTION JOINTS ............................................................................................................. 3-10
304.3 CONCRETE, PRESTRESSED ............................................................................................................ 3-10
304.4 REINFORCING STEEL ......................................................................................................................... 3-10
304.4.1 MAXIMUM LENGTH ..................................................................................................................... 3-11
304.4.2 BAR MARKS ............................................................................................................................... 3-11
304.4.3 LAP SPLICES ............................................................................................................................... 3-13
304.4.4 MECHANICAL SPLICES ............................................................................................................... 3-15
304.4.5 CALCULATING LENGTHS AND WEIGHTS OF REINFORCING .................................................... 3-16
304.4.6 BAR LIST .................................................................................................................................. 3-18
304.4.7 CORROSION PROTECTION ........................................................................................................ 3-19
304.4.8 MINIMUM CONCRETE COVER FOR REINFORCING ................................................................. 3-19
304.4.9 MINIMUM REINFORCING STEEL .............................................................................................. 3-19
304.5 PRESTRESSING STEEL .................................................................................................................. 3-20
304.5.1 TYPE & SIZE ............................................................................................................................. 3-20
304.5.2 STRESSES .................................................................................................................................. 3-20
305 FOUNDATIONS .................................................................................................................................. 3-20
305.1 GENERAL DISCUSSION ...................................................................................................................... 3-20
305.1.1 OVERALL STABILITY .................................................................................................................. 3-20
305.1.2 LATERAL LOADING ON DEEP FOUNDATIONS .......................................................................... 3-21
305.1.3 VERTICAL AND HORIZONTAL MOVEMENTS .......................................................................... 3-21
305.1.4 GROUND IMPROVEMENTS ........................................................................................................ 3-23
305.1.5 SEISMIC DESIGN ......................................................................................................................... 3-23
305.1.6 SCOUR ...................................................................................................................................... 3-25
305.2 SPREAD FOOTINGS ......................................................................................................................... 3-25
305.2.1 GENERAL DISCUSSION .............................................................................................................. 3-25
305.2.1.1 SETTLEMENT .......................................................................................................................... 3-25
305.2.1.2 MINIMUM DEPTH AND SCOUR CONSIDERATIONS ................................................................. 3-26
305.7.3 SPECIAL LOAD TESTS ................................................................. 3-66
306 SUBSTRUCTURE ........................................................................... 3-67
306.1 GENERAL ............................................................................... 3-67
306.1.1 FOOTING ELEVATIONS ......................................................... 3-67
306.1.2 SEALING OF CONCRETE SURFACES, SUBSTRUCTURE .... 3-67
306.2 ABUTMENTS ........................................................................... 3-72
306.2.1 GENERAL ........................................................................... 3-72
306.2.1.1 BEARING SEAT WIDTH ................................................. 3-72
306.2.1.2 BEARING SEAT REINFORCEMENT ......................... 3-72
306.2.1.3 PHASED CONSTRUCTION JOINTS ............................ 3-72
306.2.1.4 EARTH BENCHES & SLOPES ...................................... 3-73
306.2.2 TYPES OF ABUTMENTS ..................................................... 3-74
306.2.2.1 FULL HEIGHT ABUTMENTS ........................................ 3-74
306.2.2.1.a COUNTERFORTS FOR FULL HEIGHT ABUTMENTS ... 3-74
306.2.2.1.b SEALING STRIP FOR FULL HEIGHT ABUTMENTS ... 3-75
306.2.2.2 ABUTMENTS SUPPORTED ON MSE WALLS ............ 3-75
306.2.2.3 STUB ABUTMENTS ......................................................... 3-75
306.2.2.4 CAPPED PILE ABUTMENTS ....................................... 3-76
306.2.2.5 INTEGRAL ABUTMENTS ............................................ 3-76
306.2.2.6 SEMI-INTEGRAL ABUTMENTS .................................. 3-80
306.2.3 ABUTMENT DRAINAGE .................................................... 3-84
306.2.3.1 BACKWALL DRAINAGE ............................................. 3-84
306.2.3.1.a POROUS BACKFILL ................................................. 3-84
306.2.3.1.b PREFABRICATED GEOCOMPOSITE DRAIN (PGD) ... 3-85
306.2.3.2 BRIDGE SEAT DRAINAGE ......................................... 3-87
306.2.3.3 WEEP HOLES ............................................................... 3-88
306.2.4 WINGWALLS .................................................................... 3-88
306.2.5 EXPANSION & CONTRACTION JOINTS ......................... 3-88
306.3 PIERs ...................................................................................... 3-88
306.3.1 GENERAL ........................................................................... 3-88
306.3.2 FOOTING WIDTH ................................................................. 3-89
306.3.3 TYPES OF PIERS ................................................................. 3-89
306.3.3.1 CAP & COLUMN PIERS .............................................. 3-89
306.3.3.1.a CAP & COLUMN PIERS ON PILES ......................... 3-90
306.3.3.1.b CAP & COLUMN PIERS ON DRILLED SHAFTS ... 3-90
306.3.3.1.c CAP & COLUMN PIERS ON SPREAD FOOTINGS .... 3-91
306.3.3.2 CAPPED PILE PIERS .................................................... 3-91
306.3.3.3 T-TYPE PIERS ............................................................... 3-92
306.3.4 BEARING SEAT WIDTHS ................................................... 3-93
306.3.5 POST-TENSIONED CONCRETE PIER CAPS .............. 3-93
306.3.6 STEEL CAP PIERS ............................................................ 3-93
306.3.7 PIERS ON NAVIGABLE WATERWAYS ......................... 3-94
306.3.8 PIER CAP REINFORCING STEEL STIRRUPS ................. 3-94
306.4 BEARINGS ............................................................................. 3-94
306.4.1 GENERAL ........................................................................... 3-94
306.4.2 BEARING TYPES ............................................................... 3-94
306.4.2.1 ELASTOMERIC BEARINGS ....................................... 3-94
306.4.2.2 HIGH LOAD MULTI ROTATIONAL (HLMR) BEARINGS . 3-96
306.4.3 GUIDELINES FOR FIXED ELASTOMERIC BEARINGS ... 3-96
306.5 SLOPE PROTECTION ............................................................... 3-97
307 RETAINING WALLs .................................................................. 3-97
307.1 GENERAL DISCUSSION ......................................................... 3-97
307.1.1 LOADING ........................................................................... 3-99
307.1.2 OVERALL STABILITY ....................................................... 3-102
307.1.3 RESISTANCE TO HORIZONTAL FORCES .................... 3-102
307.1.4 LIMITING ECCENTRICITY AND OVERTURNING RESISTANCE . 3-103
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Topic</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>307.1.5</td>
<td>BEARING RESISTANCE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>307.1.6</td>
<td>VERTICAL AND HORIZONTAL MOVEMENTS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>307.1.7</td>
<td>SEISMIC DESIGN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>307.2</td>
<td>RIGID GRAVITY AND SEMIGRAVITY WALLS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>307.2.1</td>
<td>RIGID GRAVITY WALLS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>307.2.2</td>
<td>CANTILEVER WALLS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>307.2.3</td>
<td>COUNTERFORT WALLS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>307.2.4</td>
<td>PRECAST GRAVITY AND SEMIGRAVITY WALLS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>307.3</td>
<td>PREFabricated modular WALLS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>307.3.1</td>
<td>ModuleAL BLOCK WALLS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>307.3.2</td>
<td>BIN WALLS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>307.3.3</td>
<td>CRIB WALLS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>307.3.4</td>
<td>GABION WALLS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>307.4</td>
<td>MSE WALLS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>307.4.1</td>
<td>TWO-Stage MSE WALLS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>307.4.2</td>
<td>GRS-IBS AButMENTS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>307.5</td>
<td>REINFORCED SOIL SLOPES</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>307.6</td>
<td>DRILLED SHAFT WALLS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>307.6.1</td>
<td>TANGENT DRILLED SHAFT WALLS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>307.6.2</td>
<td>SECANT DRILLED SHAFT WALLS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>307.6.3</td>
<td>SOLDIER PILE WALLS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>307.6.4</td>
<td>LANDSLIDE DRILLED SHAFTS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>307.7</td>
<td>STEEL SHEET PILE WALLS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>307.7.1</td>
<td>CANTILEVER SHEET PILE WALLS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>307.7.2</td>
<td>CELLULAR SHEET PILE WALLS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>307.8</td>
<td>ANCHORED WALLS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>307.9</td>
<td>SOIL NAIL WALLS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>307.10</td>
<td>TEMPORARY WALLS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>307.10.1</td>
<td>WIRE FACED MSE WALLS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>307.10.2</td>
<td>FABRIC WRAPPED WALLS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>308</td>
<td>SUPERSTRUCTURE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>308.1</td>
<td>SPAN ARRANGEMENTS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>308.2</td>
<td>SUPERSTRUCTURE TYPES</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>308.2.1</td>
<td>CONCRETE SLAB BRIDGES</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>308.2.1.1</td>
<td>CS-1-08</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>308.2.2</td>
<td>STRUCTURAL STEEL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>308.2.2.1</td>
<td>PRELIMINARY CONSIDERATIONS &amp; GENERAL INFORMATION</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>308.2.2.1.a</td>
<td>ATTACHMENTS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>308.2.2.1.b</td>
<td>STEEL FABRICATION QUALIFICATION</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>308.2.2.1.c</td>
<td>MAXIMUM AVAILABLE LENGTH OF STEEL MEMBER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>308.2.2.1.d</td>
<td>STRUCTURAL STEEL COATINGS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>308.2.2.1.d.1</td>
<td>PRIMARY COATING SYSTEMS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>308.2.2.1.d.2</td>
<td>ALTERNATIVE COATING SYSTEMS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>308.2.2.1.e</td>
<td>OUTSIDE MEMBER CONSIDERATIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>308.2.2.1.f</td>
<td>CAMBER &amp; DEFLECTIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>308.2.2.1.g</td>
<td>FATIGUE DETAIL CATEGORY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>308.2.2.1.h</td>
<td>TOUGHNESS TESTS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>308.2.2.1.i</td>
<td>STANDARD END CROSS-FRAMES</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>308.2.2.1.j</td>
<td>BOLTED SPLICES</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>308.2.2.1.j.1</td>
<td>BOLTS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>308.2.2.1.j.2</td>
<td>EDGE DISTANCES</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>308.2.2.1.j.3</td>
<td>LOCATION OF FIELD SPLICES</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>308.2.2.1.k</td>
<td>INTERMEDIATE EXPANSION DEVICES</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>308.2.2.1.l</td>
<td>SHEAR CONNECTORS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>308.2.2.2</td>
<td>ROLLED BEAMS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>308.2.2.2.a</td>
<td>INTERMEDIATE STIFFENERS &amp; CONNECTING PLATES</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
308.2.2.2.b INTERMEDIATE CROSS-FRAMES & DIAPHRAGMS ........................................... 3-136
308.2.2.2.c WELDS ..................................................................................................... 3-138
308.2.2.2.c.1 MINIMUM SIZE OF FILLET WELD ...................................................... 3-139
308.2.2.2.c.2 NON-DESTRUCTIVE INSPECTION OF WELDS ................................. 3-139
308.2.2.2.d MOMENT PLATES .............................................................................. 3-139
308.2.2.2.e INTERMEDIATE CROSS-FRAMES ...................................................... 3-139
308.2.2.2.f WELDS ..................................................................................................... 3-139
308.2.2.2.f.1 WELD TYPES ......................................................................................... 3-139
308.2.2.2.f.2 MINIMUM SIZE OF FILLET & COMPLETE PENETRATION WELDS, PLAN
   REQUIREMENTS ................................................................................................. 3-139
308.2.2.2.f.3 INSPECTION OF WELDS, WHAT TO SHOW ON PLANS .................... 3-139
308.2.2.2.f.4 CURVED GIRDER DESIGN REQUIREMENTS ..................................... 3-139
308.2.2.3 PRESTRESSED CONCRETE BEAMS ...................................................... 3-139
308.2.2.3.a TRANSPORTATION & HANDLING CONSIDERATIONS ..................... 3-140
308.2.2.3.b LENGTH ADJUSTMENTS ..................................................................... 3-140
308.2.2.3.c BOX BEAMS .............................................................................................. 3-140
308.2.2.3.d DEBONDED STRANDS .......................................................................... 3-140
308.2.2.3.e STRAND SPACING .................................................................................... 3-140
308.2.2.3.f COMPOSITE DESIGN ............................................................................. 3-140
308.2.2.3.g NON-COMPOSITE DESIGN .................................................................... 3-140
308.2.2.3.h CAMBER .................................................................................................. 3-140
308.2.2.3.i VERTICAL GRADE ADJUSTMENT (Bx) .................................................. 3-140
308.2.2.3.j SACRIFICIAL HAUNCH DEPTH (C) .......................................................... 3-140
308.2.2.3.k BEAM CAMBER ADJUSTMENT (Dx,k) ...................................................... 3-140
308.2.2.3.l HAUNCH ADJUSTMENT (E) ..................................................................... 3-140
308.2.2.3.m ANCHORAGE ......................................................................................... 3-140
308.2.2.3.n TIE RODS .................................................................................................. 3-140
308.2.2.3.o I-BEAMS .................................................................................................. 3-140
308.2.2.3.p STRANDS .................................................................................................. 3-140
308.2.2.3.q SPACING .................................................................................................. 3-140
308.2.2.3.r DEBONDED STRANDS .......................................................................... 3-140
308.2.2.3.s DRAPING .................................................................................................. 3-140
308.2.2.3.t CAMBER .................................................................................................. 3-140
308.2.2.3.u VERTICAL GRADE ADJUSTMENT (Bx) .................................................. 3-140
308.2.2.3.v SACRIFICIAL HAUNCH DEPTH (C) .......................................................... 3-140
308.2.2.3.w BEAM CAMBER ADJUSTMENT (Dx,k) ...................................................... 3-140
308.2.2.3.x HAUNCH ADJUSTMENT (E) ..................................................................... 3-140
308.2.2.3.y ANCHORAGE ......................................................................................... 3-140
308.2.2.3.z DIAPHRAGMS ............................................................................................ 3-140
309 DECK ..................................................................................................................... 3-140
309.1 WEARING SURFACE TYPES ............................................................................. 3-140
309.2 CONCRETE DECK PROTECTION ..................................................................... 3-140
309.2.1 SEALING OF CONCRETE SURFACES, SUPERSTRUCTURE ....................... 3-140
309.3 REINFORCED CONCRETE DECK ON LONGITUDINAL MEMBERS ............ 3-140
309.3.1 DECK THICKNESS ......................................................................................... 3-140
309.3.2 CONCRETE DECK DESIGN .......................................................................... 3-140
309.3.3 DECK ELEVATION REQUIREMENTS ............................................................. 3-140
309.3.3.1 SCREED ELEVATIONS ............................................................................... 3-140
309.3.3.2 TOP OF HAUNCH ELEVATIONS ................................................................ 3-140

3-v
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>309.3.3.3</td>
<td>FINAL DECK SURFACE ELEVATIONS</td>
<td>3-172</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>309.3.4</td>
<td>REINFORCEMENT</td>
<td>3-172</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>309.3.4.1</td>
<td>LONGITUDINAL</td>
<td>3-172</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>309.3.4.2</td>
<td>TRANSVERSE</td>
<td>3-173</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>309.3.5</td>
<td>HAUNCHED DECK REQUIREMENTS</td>
<td>3-173</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>309.3.6</td>
<td>TRANSVERSE DECK SECTION</td>
<td>3-175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>309.3.6.1</td>
<td>SUPERELEVATION</td>
<td>3-175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>309.3.6.1.a</td>
<td>SUPERELEVATION TRANSITIONS</td>
<td>3-178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>309.3.7</td>
<td>STAY IN PLACE FORMS</td>
<td>3-178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>309.3.8</td>
<td>CONCRETE DECK PLACEMENT CONSIDERATIONS</td>
<td>3-178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>309.3.8.1</td>
<td>FINISHING MACHINES</td>
<td>3-179</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>309.3.8.2</td>
<td>SOURCES OF GIRDER TWIST</td>
<td>3-182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>309.3.8.2.a</td>
<td>GLOBAL SUPERSTRUCTURE DISTORTION</td>
<td>3-182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>309.3.8.2.b</td>
<td>OIL-CANNING</td>
<td>3-185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>309.3.8.2.c</td>
<td>GIRDER WARping</td>
<td>3-186</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>309.3.8.3</td>
<td>DETERMINING EFFECT OF GIRDER TWIST</td>
<td>3-190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>309.3.8.4</td>
<td>SLAB DEPTH OF CURVED BRIDGES</td>
<td>3-191</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>309.3.8.5</td>
<td>STAGED CONSTRUCTION</td>
<td>3-191</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>309.4</td>
<td>RAILING</td>
<td>3-192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>309.4.1</td>
<td>GENERAL</td>
<td>3-192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>309.4.2</td>
<td>STANDARD RAILING TYPES</td>
<td>3-194</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>309.4.3</td>
<td>WHEN TO USE</td>
<td>3-195</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>309.4.3.1</td>
<td>NEW JERSEY SHAPE CONCRETE BRIDGE RAILING (36-in BR-1-13)</td>
<td>3-195</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>309.4.3.2</td>
<td>NEW JERSEY SHAPE CONCRETE BRIDGE RAILING (42-in BR-1-13)</td>
<td>3-195</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>309.4.3.3</td>
<td>BRIDGE SIDEWALK RAILING (BR-2-15)</td>
<td>3-196</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>309.4.3.4</td>
<td>DEEP BEAM BRIDGE GUARDRAIL (DBR-2-73)</td>
<td>3-196</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>309.4.3.5</td>
<td>DEEP BEAM BRIDGE RETROFIT RAILING (DBR-3-11)</td>
<td>3-197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>309.4.3.6</td>
<td>PORTABLE CONCRETE BARRIER (PCB-91 &amp; RM-4.2)</td>
<td>3-197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>309.4.3.7</td>
<td>SINGLE SLOPE CONCRETE BRIDGE RAILING (SBR-1-20)</td>
<td>3-198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>309.4.3.8</td>
<td>57-in SINGLE SLOPE COCNRETE MEDIAN BRIDGE RAILING (SBR-2-13)</td>
<td>3-198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>309.4.3.9</td>
<td>TWIN STEEL TUBE BRIDGE RAILING (TST-1-99)</td>
<td>3-199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>309.5</td>
<td>FENCING</td>
<td>3-199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>309.5.1</td>
<td>GENERAL</td>
<td>3-199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>309.5.2</td>
<td>WHEN TO USE</td>
<td>3-199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>309.5.3</td>
<td>FENCING CONFIGURATIONS</td>
<td>3-200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>309.5.4</td>
<td>SPECIAL DESIGNS</td>
<td>3-204</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>309.5.5</td>
<td>FENCE DESIGN REQUIREMENTS</td>
<td>3-205</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>309.5.5.1</td>
<td>GENERAL</td>
<td>3-205</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>309.5.5.2</td>
<td>WIND &amp; PEDESTRIAN LOADS</td>
<td>3-205</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>309.5.6</td>
<td>TEMPORARY VANDAL PROTECTION FENCING</td>
<td>3-205</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>309.6</td>
<td>EXPANSION DEVICES</td>
<td>3-206</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>309.6.1</td>
<td>GENERAL</td>
<td>3-206</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>309.6.1.1</td>
<td>PAY ITEM</td>
<td>3-207</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>309.6.1.2</td>
<td>EXPANSION DEVICES WITH SIDEWALKS</td>
<td>3-207</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>309.6.1.3</td>
<td>EXPANSION DEVICES WITH STAGE CONSTRUCTION</td>
<td>3-207</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>309.6.2</td>
<td>EXPANSION DEVICE TYPES</td>
<td>3-207</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>309.6.2.1</td>
<td>EXPANSION JOINTS USING POLYMER MODIFIED ASPHALT BINDER</td>
<td>3-207</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>309.6.2.2</td>
<td>STRIP SEAL EXPANSION DEVICES</td>
<td>3-208</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>309.6.2.3</td>
<td>COMPRESSION SEAL EXPANSION DEVICES</td>
<td>3-208</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>309.6.2.4</td>
<td>MODULAR EXPANSION DEVICES</td>
<td>3-208</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>309.6.2.5</td>
<td>TOOTH TYPE, FINGER TYPE OR NON-STANDARD SLIDING PLATE EXPANSION DEVICES</td>
<td>3-208</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>309.6.3</td>
<td>EXPANSION DEVICE USES – BRIDGE OR ABUTMENT TYPE</td>
<td>3-210</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>309.7</td>
<td>BRIDGE DECK DRAINAGE</td>
<td>3-210</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>309.8</td>
<td>SIDEWALKS &amp; SHARED USE FACILITY</td>
<td>3-212</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310</td>
<td>MISCELLANEOUS</td>
<td>3-213</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
310.1 TEMPORARY SHORING ............................................................................................................ 3-213
  310.1.1 SUPPORT OF EXCAVATIONS .......................................................................................... 3-213
   310.1.1.1 ESTIMATED QUANTITIES ......................................................................................... 3-213
   310.1.1.2 EXCAVATION BRACING PLAN WARRANTS ............................................................ 3-213
   310.1.1.3 DESIGN REQUIREMENTS ....................................................................................... 3-214
   310.1.1.4 DESIGN CONSIDERATIONS ................................................................................... 3-214
  310.1.2 SUPPORT OF EXISTING STRUCTURE ............................................................................ 3-215
  310.2 APPROACH SLABS .............................................................................................................. 3-215
   310.2.1 STANDARD BRIDGE DRAWING – AS-1-15 .................................................................. 3-215
     310.2.1.1 PLAN REQUIREMENTS FOR STANDARD APPROACH SLABS ............................... 3-216
     310.2.1.2 PLAN REQUIREMENTS FOR NON-STANDARD APPROACH SLABS .......................... 3-216
   310.2.2 STANDARD BRIDGE DRAWING – AS-2-15 ................................................................. 3-217
  310.3 PRESSURE RELIEF JOINTS .................................................................................................. 3-217
  310.4 UTILITIES ................................................................................................................................ 3-217
   310.4.1 UTILITIES ATTACHED TO BEAMS AND GIRDERS ...................................................... 3-218
  310.5 AESTHETICS ............................................................................................................................ 3-218
    310.5.1 GENERAL ...................................................................................................................... 3-218
    310.5.2 LETTERING AND LOGO POLICY ON ODOT FACILITIES ............................................ 3-219
  310.6 RAILWAY BRIDGES .............................................................................................................. 3-220
  310.7 BICYCLE BRIDGES ............................................................................................................... 3-221
  310.8 PEDESTRIAN BRIDGES ........................................................................................................... 3-221
  310.9 MAINTENANCE AND INSPECTION ACCESS ................................................................. 3-221
  310.10 SIGN SUPPORTS ................................................................................................................. 3-221
  310.11 STRUCTURAL GROUNDING & LIGHTING ....................................................................... 3-222
SECTION 300 – DETAIL DESIGN

301 DESIGN SPECIFICATIONS

Develop Ohio Department of Transportation bridge designs in conformance with the latest edition of the American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO) LRFD Bridge Design Specifications.

Refer to BDM Section 101.1 for additional contract document requirements.

C301

ODOT’s supplement to the AASHTO LRFD specifications are documented in BDM Section 1000.

302 BRIDGE GEOMETRICS

302.1 VERTICAL CLEARANCE

Show the “Required Minimum” and “Actual Minimum” Vertical Clearances and their locations on the Preliminary Structure Site Plan, BDM Section 201.2.2.

For grade separation structures over a roadway, the “Required Minimum” Vertical Clearance shall not be less than specified in L&D, Vol. 1, Section 302 unless otherwise specified in the Scope of Services. Prepare a Design Exception in accordance with Section 105 of L&D, Vol. 1 when the “Actual Minimum” Vertical Clearance is less than the L&D Manual minimum clearance.

302.2 BRIDGE WIDTH

Establish bridge superstructure widths in accordance with L&D, Vol. 1, Section 302, unless specified in the Scope of Services.

302.3 LATERAL CLEARANCE

Provide divided highways having four or more lanes crossing under an intersecting highway with a minimum lateral clearance of 30-ft from the edge of traveled lane to the nearest obstruction.

Establish lateral clearances for other roadway classifications in accordance with L&D, Vol. 1, unless specified in the Scope of Services.

C302.1

The “Actual Minimum” Vertical Clearance is the theoretical overhead clearance provided by the design plans.

C302.3

An obstruction would be a traffic barrier, wall, column or a non-traversable slope. For a non-traversable 2:1 slope, measure the lateral clearance to the point where the 2:1 back slope intersects the radius at the toe of the 2:1 slope. Refer to L&D, Vol. 1, Figure 307-2E for an illustration of safety grading for ditch sections.
302.4 INTERFERENCE DUE TO EXISTING SUBSTRUCTURE

Do not locate a new substructure unit where an existing substructure or its foundation would interfere with the foundation or construction of the proposed substructure unit.

This applies particularly where piles are to be driven. It is desirable to avoid the difficulty and expense of removing deep underground portions of the existing substructure and to avoid the resultant disturbance of the ground. Obstructions within the footprint of the new substructure shall be completely removed to avoid interference.

Where existing substructure units are shown on the Site Plan, place the locations precisely. Show the existing substructure configuration based on existing plans or field verified dimensions. Misrepresentation of the location of the existing substructure units has resulted in expensive change orders during construction.

Label existing dimensions as (+/-) plus or minus in the contract documents.

302.5 BRIDGE STRUCTURE, SKEW, CURVATURE AND SUPERELEVATION

During preliminary engineering, investigate alternatives that eliminate the presence of skew angles that exceed 30°, horizontal curves and superelevation transitions within the actual bridge limits.

Skews, curves and superelevation transitions add complexity which can increase costs and also result in poor ride quality.

303 LOADING REQUIREMENTS

303.1 HIGHWAY BRIDGES

303.1.1 LIVE LOAD

Design all bridges that carry highway traffic for an HL-93 loading as specified in LRFD 3.6.1.2.1.

303.1.2 FUTURE WEARING SURFACE

Design all bridges that carry highway traffic for a future wearing surface (FWS) of 0.060-ksf except as noted in BDM Section 401.3.

303.1.3 LONGITUDINAL FORCES

Assume force effects transferred through bearings to the substructure occur at the bearing seat elevation.

Bearings that permit rotation (e.g. elastomeric bearings, rocker bearings, etc.) will develop eccentricities resulting in applied moments as defined in LRFD 14.6.3.2. Typically, these eccentricities are negligible with respect to the design of the substructures that support the bearings and may be ignored.
The total factored longitudinal loading applied to the substructure at each expansion bearing shall be the larger of:

A. The Frictional Force acting on the substructure if the bearing slides.

B. The bearing’s nominal (i.e. unfactored) resistance to longitudinal loading.

303.1.4  SEISMIC

All bridges in the State of Ohio are located within Seismic Performance Zone 1.

Refer to BDM Section 305.1.5 for Seismic Geotechnical requirements.

303.1.4.1  SEISMIC PERFORMANCE ZONE 1

Seismic analysis is not required except as noted in BDM Sections 303.1.4.1.a and 303.1.4.1.b.

For bridges founded at locations with $0.10 \leq S_{D1} < 0.15$, specify the transverse reinforcement requirements at the top and bottom of columns in accordance with LRFD 5.11.4.1.4 and 5.11.4.1.5.

303.1.4.1.a  MINIMUM SUPPORT LENGTH REQUIREMENTS

Size the bearing supports according to LRFD 4.7.4.4.

A properly designed expansion bearing will utilize friction in lieu of mechanical anchorage to prevent the bearing from sliding under lateral loading. For these bearings, the maximum lateral loading on the substructure unit will be in the form of Friction, LRFD 3.13.

For bearings that require mechanical anchorage, the bearing’s resistance to lateral loading represents the maximum lateral load on the substructure unit. Resistance in this instance is nominal because it is applied to the substructure as a loading.

C303.1.4

This provision is based on Ohio’s seismologic data which is explained in BDM Section 305.1.5.

303.1.4.1.a

Bridges designed according to the Strength and Service Limit States of the AASHTO LRFD Bridge Design Specifications are assumed to have sufficient capacity to resist Seismic Performance Zone 1 design loads applied at the Extreme Limit State.

C303.1.4.1

This provision exists to prevent the partial or complete collapse of the superstructure during seismic events.

Refer to BDM Figure 303-1 for the application of support length requirements to a typical expansion elastomeric bearing at an abutment.
MINIMUM SUPPORT LENGTH MEASUREMENTS

ABUTMENT BEARING @ 60° F
SKEW ANGLE (Θ)

BEARING LOAD

A

A

BEARING SEAT WIDTH

TYPICAL ABUTMENT BEARING - PLAN VIEW
(STEEL GIRDER SHOWN, PRESTRESSED BEAM SIMILAR)

ΔX

COS Θ

SECTION A-A

NOTES:
ΔX IS THE MAXIMUM MOVEMENT ALLOWED BY THE ELASTOMERIC BEARING BEFORE SLIDING OCCURS.
N AS DEFINED BY LRFD EQ. 4.7.4.4-1.

Figure 303-1
303.1.4.1.b  HORIZONTAL CONNECTION FORCE

All structures shall have some mechanism to transfer horizontally applied superstructure loads (e.g. vehicular braking force, centrifugal force, vehicular collision force, friction load, water load, wind load, and wind load on live load) to the substructure to ensure structural stability. During a seismic event, design these mechanisms, that prevent the free lateral translation of the superstructure in any direction relative to the substructure, to transfer an applied horizontal connection force at the Extreme Event I Limit State. Only provide additional restraint for seismic loads (e.g. seismic pedestals) where the mechanisms noted above do not provide sufficient capacity. Refer to BDM Section 303.1.4.1.c for bearing requirements.

The magnitude of the connection force shall be 0.15 or 0.25 times the tributary permanent load at the location of the restraint as determined in LRFD 3.10.9.2. If sufficient geotechnical information is not available to determine Site Class, assume the magnitude of the connection force is 0.25 times the tributary permanent load.

For restraint provided in multiple directions, LRFD 3.10.8 applies.

Because a structure in Seismic Performance Zone 1 is assumed to be able to carry the loads within the elastic strength range of its members or is assumed to be properly detailed to prevent collapse beyond the elastic strength range of its members, analysis of the superstructure, substructure and foundation for the load effects resulting from the connection force is not required.

Provide cross-frames, designed to resist Strength and Service load combinations, to create a direct load path from the point of horizontal connection force application to the deck.

Examples of mechanisms include fixed bearings, bearing guides, abutment diaphragms, diaphragm guides, wing walls and wind locks.

The load factor for live load, γEQ, may be taken as 0.0.

The tributary permanent load defined in LRFD 3.10.9.2 represents the factored dead load of the superstructure applying load to the device or object providing the directional restraint. If every bearing supporting the superstructure provides transverse restraint, the tributary permanent load applied to each restraint would equal the factored dead load reaction at each bearing. If only one transverse restraint was provided at each substructure unit, the tributary permanent load applied to each restraint would equal the sum of the factored dead load reactions for each bearing at the substructure unit. If only one transverse restraint was provided for the entire superstructure unit, the tributary permanent load applied to the restraint would equal the sum of the factored dead load reactions of every bearing. Longitudinal restraint connection forces would be determined similarly.

These cross-frame do not need to be designed for Extreme Event limit state loading.
303.1.4.1.c  REQUIREMENTS FOR BEARINGS

The Department will permit unrestrained bearings that sustain irreparable damage during a seismic event provided loss of span is prevented by the design for the Horizontal Connection Force in BDM Section 303.1.4.1.b.

303.1.4.2  EXISTING STRUCTURES

Evaluate the seismic vulnerability of an existing structure for rehabilitation projects requiring complete deck or superstructure replacements. Design new substructure units in accordance with LRFD 3.10.9.2, 4.7.4.4 and BDM Section 303.1.4.2.b. If sufficient geotechnical information is not available, assume:

A. $A_s > 0.05$
B. $S_{di} < 0.10$

303.1.4.2.a  SUPERSTRUCTURE

For projects where seismic vulnerability is evaluated, at bearing locations that will transmit the horizontal connection force from the substructure to the superstructure, provide cross-frames to resist Strength and Service load combinations to create a direct load path to the deck. For supports not in compliance with LRFD 4.7.4.4, provide seismic restrainers designed for the Horizontal Connection Force, specified in BDM Section 303.1.4.1.b.

303.1.4.2.b  SUBSTRUCTURE

For projects where seismic vulnerability is considered, concrete columns at piers that transfer the seismic horizontal connection force, according to BDM Section 303.1.4.1.b, shall meet the spiral and tie ductility requirements of LRFD Eq. 5.11.4.1.4-1 and LRFD 5.10.4. Do not use LRFD Eq. 5.6.4.6-1.

C303.1.4.2.b

Designers may consider releasing restraint provided by existing pier bearings as a viable seismic retrofit provided the abutments can accommodate the additional horizontal Strength and Service loadings. Otherwise, provide the required confinement of the primary steel in the axially loaded substructure members.

LRFD Eq. 5.6.4.6-1 provides erroneous results based on the ratio of $A_g/A_c$. As the concrete cover increases, impractical areas of transverse reinforcement are required. LRFD Eq. 5.11.4.1.4-1 provides the volumetric reinforcement requirements for confinement of primary steel at locations where plastic hinges are formed during seismic events.
One acceptable method to increase the amount of confinement provided in an existing concrete column is through the use of Fiber Reinforced Polymer (FRP) wrap systems.

For bridges located in regions with an acceleration coefficient, $S_{DI} < 0.10$, specify a confining stress due to FRP jacket ($f_1$) of 0.150-ksi for the entire height of the column from the top of the footing/drilled shaft to the bottom of the cap. For bridges located in regions with an acceleration coefficient, $S_{DI} \geq 0.10$, specify a confining stress due to FRP jacket ($f_1$) of 0.300-ksi in the plastic hinge regions as defined in LRFD 5.11.4.1.5 and 0.150-ksi in the remaining portions of the columns. The plans shall include an elevation view of the columns with these confining stress regions clearly defined.

These systems are a viable alternative for dry columns supported on pile caps, spread footings and drilled shafts. Research has shown that providing a confining stress of 0.300-ksi in regions where plastic hinges may form at the top and bottom of columns as defined in LRFD 5.11.4.1.5 and providing a confining stress of 0.150-ksi outside of the plastic hinge regions is sufficient to prevent buckling of the longitudinal reinforcement.

PN 519 for Composite Fiber Wrap Systems references the International Code Council Evaluation Service website (www.icc-es.org) for acceptable FRP wrap products. Refer to the Designer Notes for plan information associated with this work.

### 303.2 PEDESTRIAN AND BIKEWAY BRIDGES

Design pedestrian and bikeway bridges in accordance with the latest edition of the AASHTO LRFD Guide Specifications for the Design of Pedestrian Bridges and this Manual.

Where sidewalks, pedestrian, and/or bicycle bridges are intended to be used by maintenance and/or other incidental vehicles, include an H15-44 vehicle, as shown in BDM Figure 303-2, in the design loading. Do not include the H15-44 lane loading. Do not place the vehicle live load in combination with the pedestrian live load and do not apply the dynamic load allowance to the H15 vehicle.

The H15-44 vehicle accommodates the largest emergency vehicles that may access a pedestrian facility.
303.3 RAILROAD BRIDGES

Design facilities, that are operated and maintained by the railroad, according to the specifications and design standards used by the railroad in its normal practice. Facilities that are operated and maintained by ODOT or other local agency shall conform to the AASHTO LRFD Bridge Design Specifications and this Manual.
304 MATERIALS

304.1 STRUCTURAL STEEL

Select structural steel material from the following list:

A. ASTM A709 Grade 50W
B. ASTM A709 Grade 50
C. High Performance Steel (HPS), ASTM A709 Grade 70W

Grade 50W shall be utilized for un-coated weathering steel applications. Grade 50 shall be utilized for coated steel bridges. Grade 70W is an un-coated weathering steel that is most economical when used in the flanges of hybrid girders. Consult the Office of Structural Engineering for recommendations prior to specifying its use. A plan note is available from the Office of Structural Engineering.

304.2 CONCRETE, CAST-IN-PLACE

304.2.1 CONCRETE DESIGN STRENGTHS

Use the following 28-day concrete strengths (f’c) for design purposes:

A. Substructure Concrete (Class QC1) ........... 4.0-ksi
B. Superstructure Concrete (Class QC2) ........ 4.5-ksi
C. Drilled Shaft Concrete (Class QC5) .......... 4.0-ksi

The concrete used for drilled shafts is a 4.5-ksi mix design. However, since there is the potential for issues that cause a reduction in strength to arise during placement, a 500-psi reduction in the concrete strength shall be considered for design purposes.

304.2.2 CONCRETE FOR BRIDGES AND STRUCTURES

The following ODOT concrete types are available for substructure concrete sold under Item 511:

A1. Class QC1 Concrete
B1. Class QC1 Concrete with QC/QA
C1. Class QC3 Special Concrete
D1. Class QC4 Mass Concrete

The following ODOT concrete types are available for superstructure concrete sold under Item 511:

A2. Class QC2 Concrete
B2. Class QC2 Concrete with QC/QA
C2. Class QC3 Special Concrete
D2. Class QC4 Mass Concrete

The following ODOT concrete types are available for drilled shaft concrete sold under Item 524:

A3. Class QC4 Mass Concrete

ODOT also has classes of concrete available for moderate setting (Class QC MS) and fast setting (Class QC FS) mixes which are primarily used in pavement applications. For projects where these mix designs may be necessary, use an Item 511 CONCRETE, MISC. pay item and provide a plan note to clarify the project requirements.
B. Class QC5 Concrete

Specify “Concrete with QC/QA” for the class of concrete when the total concrete quantity for that class exceeds 150-yd³.

Specify Class QC3 Special Concrete when concrete strengths and/or permeability other than the QC1 or QC2 are necessary.

Specify Class QC4 Mass Concrete when the minimum dimension for a concrete component is 5-ft or greater or the diameter of a drilled shaft is 7-ft or greater.

304.2.3 CONSTRUCTION JOINTS

Design Construction Joints to transfer all loads.

304.3 CONCRETE, PRESTRESSED

Select a 28-day compressive strength ranging from 5.5-ksi to 7.0-ksi. Provide the 28-day compressive strength in the contract plan General Notes.

Select a compressive strength at the time of release ranging from 4.0-ksi to 5.0-ksi. Provide the release strength in the contract plan General Notes.

Cast-in-place concrete used in prestressed concrete superstructures (composite decks, pier diaphragms, intermediate diaphragms, etc.) shall be Class QC2 or Class QC2 with QC/QA.

304.4 REINFORCING STEEL

Reinforcing steel shall be Grade 60, Fy = 60-ksi.

Provide epoxy coated reinforcing steel except as noted in BDM Section 405.2.

The total volume for a class of concrete (which may occur in multiple pay items) used in a single bridge is to be included when determining the need for QC/QA. For example, the Class QC1 concrete from the abutments and piers would need to be quantified together and considered for QC/QA.

Specifying QC/QA for smaller quantities may be cost prohibitive.

C304.2.3

Construction joints should be anticipated and provided for in the detail plans. Joint locations should be selected such that they are aesthetically least objectionable; allow construction to be properly performed; and are at locations of minimum stress.

304.3

In order to specify a release or 28-day concrete strength that deviates from the ranges provided, contact the Ohio Prestressers Association and/or the PCI Central Region to request documentation that the deviation is acceptable and can be produced within the project timeframe by at least two independent producers prequalified under S1079. ODOT may request verification of this documentation during project reviews.

Select Class QC2 or Class QC2 with QC/QA according to BDM Section 304.2.2.

C304.4

Refer to C&MS 509.02 for material specifications.
304.4.1 MAXIMUM LENGTH

The maximum fabricated length of reinforcing steel is 60-ft.

The practical maximum length of reinforcing steel is 40-ft. This limit is for both transit purposes and construction convenience. To facilitate an economical design using 60-ft bar stock, where multiple sets of lapped bars are required (i.e. longitudinal slab reinforcement) consideration should be given to using multiple sets of 30-ft long bars.

For bent or radial bars, the maximum dimension from a straight line between the ends of the bar and the apex of the bar shall not exceed 7.5-ft, See BDM Figure 304-1.

![Radial Bar](image)

![Bent Bar](image)

Figure 304-1

304.4.2 BAR MARKS

Provide unique Bar Marks on detail plans to identify the bar's size and general location and to reference the bar to the reinforcing bar list.

Incorporate letters into the bar marks to help identify their location in the detail plans: "A" for abutments, "P" for piers, "S" for superstructure, “SP” for spirals, “DS” for drilled shafts, etc.

Provide a note or legend with the bar list to describe each Bar Mark's meaning. See BDM Figure 304-2

C304.4.1

Examples:

An A501 bar mark represents a #5 abutment bar.

An SP501 bar mark represents a #5 spiral bar.

A DS901 bar mark represents a #9 drilled shaft bar.
### Table: Dimensions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MARK</th>
<th>NUMBER</th>
<th>REAR</th>
<th>FWD</th>
<th>TOTAL</th>
<th>LENGTH (F.L.)</th>
<th>WEIGHT (LBS.)</th>
<th>TYPE</th>
<th>DIMENSIONS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SP401</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>28'- 3&quot;</td>
<td>373</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>2'- 4&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SP402</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>13'- 3&quot;</td>
<td>175</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>2'- 4&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P501</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>7'- 6&quot;</td>
<td>110</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>6'- 4&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P502</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>7'- 9&quot;</td>
<td>97</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>7'- 9&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P601</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>20'- 0&quot;</td>
<td>511</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>5'- 0&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P602</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5'- 10&quot;</td>
<td>131</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>5'- 2&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P603</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>7'- 6&quot;</td>
<td>205</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2'- 11&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DP601</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>2'-10&quot;</td>
<td>119</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>2'-10&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DP602</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>3'- 3&quot;</td>
<td>78</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>3'- 3&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>TOTAL: 1879</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A401</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>10'-5&quot;</td>
<td>112</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0'-11&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A402</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>10'-0&quot;</td>
<td>53</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>10'-0&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A501</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>12'-0&quot;</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>12'-0&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A502</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>10'-9&quot;</td>
<td>78</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>10'-9&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A601</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>28'- 8&quot;</td>
<td>677</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>28'- 8&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A602</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>8'- 5&quot;</td>
<td>203</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1'- 0&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>TOTAL: 1423</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S401</td>
<td>61</td>
<td>61</td>
<td>61</td>
<td>61</td>
<td>30'- 0&quot;</td>
<td>1224</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>30'- 0&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S402</td>
<td>61</td>
<td>61</td>
<td>61</td>
<td>61</td>
<td>13'- 4&quot;</td>
<td>543</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>13'- 4&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S501</td>
<td>532</td>
<td>532</td>
<td>532</td>
<td>532</td>
<td>41'- 6&quot;</td>
<td>2294</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>41'- 6&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S502</td>
<td>466</td>
<td>466</td>
<td>466</td>
<td>466</td>
<td>5'-10½&quot;</td>
<td>2845</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>5'-10½&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S801</td>
<td>240</td>
<td>240</td>
<td>240</td>
<td>240</td>
<td>3'- 8&quot;</td>
<td>2350</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>3'- 8&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S802</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>8'- 4&quot;</td>
<td>356</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>8'- 4&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>TOTAL: 41259</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Diagrams:

**Type 1, Type 5, Type 6, Type 12, Type 17, Type 18**

---

**Figure 304-2**

(*The bar size number is specified on the plans in the bar mark column. The first digit where three digits are used, and the first two digits where four are used, indicates the bar size number. For example, P601 is a #6 bar. Bar dimensions shown are out to out unless otherwise indicated. R indicates inside radius. Unless otherwise noted, “STD” written in place of a dimension indicates a standard bend at the end of the bar.*

*All reinforcing steel to be epoxy coated*
304.4.3  LAP SPLICES

Detail bar splice lengths on the plans.

Development and splice lengths shall conform to AASHTO requirements.

Where a horizontal construction joint is used in a column or pier, the reinforcement should be continuous, and splices avoided if at all possible. An exception to this is the construction joint between a column and a footing, where the reinforcement should be discontinuous and adequate splice length should be furnished.

For compression splice lengths, see BDM Figure 304-3.

For tension splice lengths, see BDM Figure 304-4.

For development length requirements for reinforcing steel, see BDM Figure 304-3, Figure 304-4 & Figure 304-5.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BAR NO.</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>9</th>
<th>10</th>
<th>11</th>
<th>14</th>
<th>18</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>COVER</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TIES</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>26</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. VALUES SHOWN ARE FOR NORMAL-WEIGHT CONCRETE WITH $f'_c = 4$ KSI AND $f_y = 60$ KSI. IF LIGHT-WEIGHT CONCRETE IS USED, THEN CALCULATE DEVELOPMENT LENGTH FOR STANDARD HOOKS IN TENSION PER LRFD 5.10.8.2.4.

2. FOR UN-COATED REINFORCING STEEL, VALUES SHALL BE DIVIDED BY 1.2.

Figure 304-3
### Tension Lap Splice Lengths for Epoxy-Coated Bars (in.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bar Size</th>
<th>1.5&quot; Clear Cover</th>
<th>2&quot; Clear Cover</th>
<th>2.5&quot; Clear Cover</th>
<th>3&quot; Clear Cover</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>3.50</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>3.63</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>48</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>3.75</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>63</td>
<td>56</td>
<td>3.88</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>71</td>
<td>4.00</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>99</td>
<td>87</td>
<td>4.13</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>121</td>
<td>107</td>
<td>4.27</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>144</td>
<td>127</td>
<td>4.41</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes:**

A = Tension lap splice length for horizontal reinforcement, placed such that more than 12" of fresh concrete is cast below the reinforcement, and with c/c bar spacing greater than or equal to "C".

B = Tension lap splice length for vertical reinforcement or horizontal reinforcement, placed such that no more than 12" of fresh concrete is cast below the reinforcement, and with c/c bar spacing greater than or equal to "C".

C = Critical c/c bar spacing. If actual c/c bar spacing is less than critical c/c bar spacing, then do not use the table above. Calculate lap splice lengths per LRFD 5.10.8.2.1a and 5.10.8.4.3a.

1. Values shown are for Class B lap splices per LRFD 5.10.8.4.3a with f'c = 4 ksi and fy = 60 ksi.
2. The table above applies to normal-weight concrete. If light-weight concrete is used, then calculate lap splice lengths per LRFD 5.10.8.2.1a and 5.10.8.4.3a.
3. The table above assumes that Atr = 0, where Atr is the cross-sectional area of transverse reinforcement which crosses the potential plane of splitting. If such transverse reinforcement is present, and the designer wishes to account for this, then calculate lap splice lengths per LRFD 5.10.8.2.1a and 5.10.8.4.3a. One example of such reinforcement is shear stirrups.
4. Where reinforcement is in excess of that required by analysis, the values shown in the table above may be reduced per LRFD Eq. 5.10.8.2.1c-4.

**Figure 304-4**
**304.4.4 MECHANICAL SPLICES**

Mechanical splices are an acceptable alternative to lap splices. Mechanical splices shall be in accordance with the requirements of C&MS 509.

When mechanical splices are required, designate which bar(s) will have mechanical splice(s) in the bar list.

Consider additional extension for bars extending through a vertical construction joint to allow for placement tolerance.

When specifying mechanical splices in congested areas, consider staggering splice locations in order to meet the minimum spacing of reinforcing steel according to LRFD 5.10.3.1.

---

**Table:** Development Lengths for Epoxy-Coated Bars in Tension (in.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bar Size</th>
<th>1.5&quot; Clear Cover</th>
<th>2&quot; Clear Cover</th>
<th>2.5&quot; Clear Cover</th>
<th>3&quot; Clear Cover</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>3.50</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>3.63</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>3.75</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>49</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>3.88</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>62</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>4.00</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>76</td>
<td>67</td>
<td>4.13</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>93</td>
<td>82</td>
<td>4.27</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>111</td>
<td>98</td>
<td>4.41</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes:**

**A =** Development length for horizontal reinforcement, placed such that more than 12" of fresh concrete is cast below the reinforcement, and with c/c bar spacing greater than or equal to "C".

**B =** Development length for vertical reinforcement or horizontal reinforcement, placed such that no more than 12" of fresh concrete is cast below the reinforcement, and with c/c bar spacing greater than or equal to "C".

**C =** Critical c/c bar spacing. If actual c/c bar spacing is less than critical c/c bar spacing, then do not use the table above. Calculate development lengths per LRFD 5.10.8.2.1a.

1. Values shown are for f_c = 4 ksi and F_y = 60 ksi.
2. The table above applies to normal-weight concrete. If light-weight concrete is used, then calculate development lengths per LRFD 5.10.8.2.1a.
3. The table above assumes that A_f = 0, where A_f is the cross-sectional area of transverse reinforcement which crosses the potential plane of splitting. If such transverse reinforcement is present, and the designer wishes to account for this, then calculate development lengths per LRFD 5.10.8.2.1a. One example of such reinforcement is shear stirrups.
4. Where reinforcement is in excess of that required by analysis, the values shown in the table above may be reduced per LRFD Eq. 5.10.8.2.1c-4.

Figure 304-5

Lap spliced reinforcement shall extend through a phased construction joint at least the required splice length.

Do not extend reinforcing steel through expansion and contraction joints.

Consider additional extension for bars extending through a vertical construction joint to allow for placement tolerance.
Specify only mechanical type splices for #14 and #18 bars. The Department will not permit lap splices for these bar sizes.

The Department will not permit splicing of reinforcing by welding unless otherwise noted.

### 304.4.5 CALCULATING LENGTHS AND WEIGHTS OF REINFORCING

Calculate reinforcing steel lengths to the nearest 1-in. Use the criteria specified in C&MS 509 to calculate standard bend lengths.

Calculate and include the weight of the additional 1-1/2 coils of spiral required at the end by LRFD 5.10.4.2 in the estimated quantities.

The length or height of a spiral is defined as the distance out-to-out of coils, including the finishing turns at top and bottom.

For one, #4 spiral with a 4-1/2-in pitch, the weight, including the 1½ coils at each end, is given by the following formula:

\[
W = 0.148\pi H \left( \frac{4.5}{2} \right)^2 + (D - 0.5)^2 + 0.167\pi(D - 0.5)
\]

Where:
- \(W\) = Spiral Weight (lb)
- \(D\) = Outside Diameter of the Spiral (in)
- \(H\) = Height or Length of the Spiral (ft)

See BDM Figure 304-6 for area, weight and diameter of standard reinforcing. See BDM Figure 304-7 for bar bending data. See BDM Figure 304-8 for standard bar length deductions of common bends.
### ASTM STANDARD REINFORCING BARS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BAR SIZE DESIGNATION</th>
<th>NOMINAL AREA SQUAR INCHES</th>
<th>NOMINAL WEIGHT POUNDS PER FT.</th>
<th>NOMINAL DIAMETER INCHES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>* 3</td>
<td>0.11</td>
<td>0.376</td>
<td>0.375</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* 4</td>
<td>0.20</td>
<td>0.668</td>
<td>0.500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* 5</td>
<td>0.31</td>
<td>1.043</td>
<td>0.625</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* 6</td>
<td>0.44</td>
<td>1.502</td>
<td>0.750</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* 7</td>
<td>0.60</td>
<td>2.044</td>
<td>0.875</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* 8</td>
<td>0.79</td>
<td>2.670</td>
<td>1.000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* 9</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>3.400</td>
<td>1.128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* 10</td>
<td>1.27</td>
<td>4.303</td>
<td>1.270</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* 11</td>
<td>1.56</td>
<td>5.313</td>
<td>1.410</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* 14</td>
<td>2.25</td>
<td>7.65</td>
<td>1.693</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* 18</td>
<td>4.00</td>
<td>13.60</td>
<td>2.257</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Figure 304-6**

### BAR BENDING DATA (DIMENSIONS IN INCHES)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BAR NO.</th>
<th>180° Bend</th>
<th>90° Bend</th>
<th>135° Bend</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>D A H C</td>
<td>D A J J-A</td>
<td>D A H</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 2/4</td>
<td>5 4 3</td>
<td>2/4 5</td>
<td>1/2 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 3</td>
<td>6 4/2 4</td>
<td>3 7 8 1</td>
<td>2 4 3 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 3 3/4</td>
<td>7 5 5</td>
<td>3 3/4 8</td>
<td>10 1 1/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 4 1/2</td>
<td>8 5 3/4 6</td>
<td>4 1/2 10</td>
<td>12 2 5/2 3 3/4 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 5/4</td>
<td>10 7 1/2 7</td>
<td>5/4 12 14</td>
<td>2 13/2 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 6</td>
<td>11 8 8</td>
<td>6 13/2 16</td>
<td>2 1/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 5/2</td>
<td>15 10 11/2</td>
<td>9/2 15/2 19</td>
<td>3/2 -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 10 3/4</td>
<td>17 11/2 13/4</td>
<td>10 3/4 18 22</td>
<td>4 -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 12</td>
<td>19 12 1/4 14 3/4</td>
<td>12 20 24 4</td>
<td>- -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14 13/4</td>
<td>27 17 1/4 21 3/4</td>
<td>13/4 25 31 6</td>
<td>- -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18 24</td>
<td>36 23 3/4 22 1/2</td>
<td>24 33 41 8</td>
<td>- -</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**BENDING TOLERANCES: Refer to Section CMS 509**

**Figure 304-7**
304.4.6 BAR LIST

Include the following in the bar lists:

A. Bar Mark
B. Number of bars required
C. Overall length of each bar
D. Total Weight for each bar mark
E. Column for type/shape of bar:
   1. "ST" for straight, or
   2. Number assigned to “Bending Diagram"
F. "Number" and "Series" for series bars

Identify each bent bar by a unique number and illustrate in the “Bending Diagram”. Define dimensions for the bent bars by letters A through Z.

Also include spiral reinforcing in the detail plan’s bar list. Provide the following information on the bar list:

---

3-18
A. Core diameter
B. Pitch
C. Mark
D. Number
E. Height
F. Weight

304.4.7 CORROSION PROTECTION

Except as noted in BDM Section 405.2, provide epoxy coated reinforcing steel in all cast-in-place concrete.

Provide epoxy coated reinforcing steel for all approach slabs.

304.4.8 MINIMUM CONCRETE COVER FOR REINFORCING

The minimum concrete cover shall be as follows:

A. Bridge decks*, slab bridges* and sidewalks (top surface) .................................................... 2.50-in
B. Bridge decks and slab bridges (bottom surface) ........................................................................ 1.50-in
C. Footings (bottom surface) .......................... 3-in
D. Approach slabs (top & bottom surfaces) ...... 3-in
E. Column ties or spirals ........................................ 3-in
F. Drilled shaft ties/spirals (dia. ≤ 3-ft)............ 3-in
G. Drilled shaft ties/spirals (3-ft < dia. < 5-ft).... 4-in
H. Drilled shaft ties/spirals (dia. ≥ 5-ft)......... 6-in
I. Prestressed I-beams & Box beams (side & bottom surfaces) .............................................. 1.25-in
J. Prestressed Box Beams (inside surfaces) ...... 1-in
K. All other concrete surfaces ......................... 2-in

* - The 1.0-in monolithic wearing surface is included in the minimum cover shown

Provide clearances in the detail plans for areas not defined in C&MS 509.04, C&MS 524 or referenced Standard Bridge Drawing.

304.4.9 MINIMUM REINFORCING STEEL

Near exposed surfaces of walls and slabs not otherwise reinforced, provide minimum reinforcement for shrinkage and temperature according the AASHTO requirements.
304.5 PRESTRESSING STEEL

304.5.1 TYPE & SIZE

Use the following type and size strand for prestressed box beam members:

Low-relaxation 0.520-in diameter \((A_S = 0.167\text{-in}^2)\) seven wire uncoated strands, ASTM A416, Grade 270.

Use the following type and size strand for prestressed I-beam members:

Low-relaxation, 0.600-in diameter \((A_S = 0.217\text{-in}^2)\) seven wire uncoated strands, ASTM A416, Grade 270.

Provide the prestressing strand type and size in the contract plan General Notes.

304.5.2 STRESSES

Initial prestressing loads for low-relaxation strand shall be as follows:

Initial stress .................................. \(0.75 f_s = 202.5\text{-ksi}\)

Initial tension load:

A. \(A_S = 0.167\text{-in}^2\) ............................. 33.750-kip/strand

B. \(A_S = 0.217\text{-in}^2\) ............................. 43.950-kip/strand

305 FOUNDATIONS

305.1 GENERAL DISCUSSION

Analyze all structure foundations for external stability in the Strength Limit State and for vertical and horizontal movements in the Service Limit State according to \(LRFD\) Section 10 or 11, as applicable.

Meet all the subsurface exploration requirements for structures according to Section 300 of the Specifications for Geotechnical Explorations (SGE).

305.1.1 OVERALL STABILITY

Analyze overall (global) stability for each structure at critical locations according to \(LRFD\) 10.5.2.3.

Design all bridge substructure units and tiered retaining wall systems for overall stability using a resistance factor of \(\varphi = 0.65\).

Design all other retaining walls for overall stability using a resistance factor of \(\varphi = 0.75\).

C305.1

External stability analyses include: bearing resistance; eccentric load limitations; overturning analyses; sliding resistance; and overall stability.

C305.1.1

Resistance factors as shown in \(LRFD\) 11.6.2.3 should be taken as the inverse of the following factors of safety (FS) for the case of limit equilibrium slope stability analysis only:

A. \(\varphi = 0.75\) corresponds to FS = 1.3

B. \(\varphi = 0.65\) corresponds to FS = 1.5
305.1.2 LATERAL LOADING ON DEEP FOUNDATIONS

Perform a $P-y$ analysis when analyzing deep foundations (such as driven piles, drilled shafts, micropiles, or continuous flight auger piles) under lateral loading.

For deep foundation elements spaced closer than 5 diameters center to center, include group effects. Apply group effects only within the soil overburden length of the deep foundation. Do not apply to rock sockets.

When lateral loads are controlling the design of drilled shafts, perform lateral load testing according to the Scope of Services.

To evaluate lateral deflection in the Strength Limit State (overturning resistance) see BDM Section 307.1.4. Do not analyze deep foundations with the “Geotechnical Strength Limit State” analysis, per publication FHWA-NHI-10-016, Geotechnical Engineering Circular 10 (GEC 10) “Drilled Shafts: Construction Procedures and LRFD Design Methods,” Section 12.3.3.3.1.

To evaluate lateral deflection in the Service Limit State, see BDM Section 305.1.3.

305.1.3 VERTICAL AND HORIZONTAL MOVEMENTS

Analyze foundation settlement according to LRFD 10.5.2.2.
In addition to the requirements for serviceability provided in LRFD C10.5.2.2, use the following criteria to establish acceptable settlement criteria:

Consider the following methods for remediation to limit structural deformations due to settlement: increasing the foundation dimensions, excavating and replacing the foundation soils, adjusting the construction sequence, specifying waiting periods, application of surcharge loads, the use of deep foundations, or ground improvement. Wick drains or other subsurface drainage may be utilized to accelerate the rate of settlement. Select the method for settlement remediation based on the type of structure and time, space, and cost considerations. Refer to BDM Section 600 for applicable plan notes. A Special Provision for Installation of Wick Drains is available from the Office of Geotechnical Engineering.

A. The angular rotation caused by differential settlement between adjacent substructures shall not exceed 0.004 radians.

B. The maximum differential settlement (Δ) between adjacent substructures supporting continuous steel superstructures shall be:

\[ \Delta = 0.55 \frac{L}{S} - 2.6 < 8.0 \]

In which:

- \( \Delta \) = Maximum differential settlement (in)
- \( L \) = Shortest adjacent span length (ft)
- \( S \) = Beam/Girder spacing (ft)

C. The maximum differential settlement (Δ) between adjacent substructures supporting prestressed concrete beams with a continuous deck shall be:

\[ \Delta = 0.13 \frac{L}{S} - 0.17 < 2.5 \]

In which:

- \( \Delta \) = Maximum differential settlement (in)
- \( L \) = Shortest adjacent span length (ft)
- \( S \) = Beam/Girder spacing (ft)

If long-term settlements encroach upon the required minimum vertical clearance, make necessary adjustments to the vertical profile.

Vertical and horizontal movements of abutment walls shall meet the limits of BDM Section 307.1.6.

For lateral displacement of foundations that support bridge structures, bridge serviceability limits shall control.

Reference:


Http://www.trb.org/Publications/Blurbs/177297.aspx

The limiting values of 8.0-in and 2.5-in are provided due to the range of applicability noted in the report referenced above for the equations shown.
305.1.4 GROUND IMPROVEMENTS

If analyses demonstrate inadequate foundation stability (bearing, sliding, or lateral resistance; overall stability; or settlement) consider using ground improvement techniques to improve the foundation soils. Refer to the Transportation Research Board SHRP2 Geotech Tools website at http://www.geotechtools.org/ for a comprehensive list of ground improvement techniques. Refer to FHWA-NHI-16-027/028, Geotechnical Engineering Circular 13 (GEC 13) “Ground Modification Methods Reference Manual” for guidance on design for ground improvement techniques. Consider ground improvements for resistance of horizontal forces for structures with shallow foundations only after the improvements recommended in BDM Section 305.2.1.3 or BDM Section 307.1.3 are found to be not cost effective. Consult with the Office of Geotechnical Engineering if considering ground improvement techniques.

305.1.5 SEISMIC DESIGN

Analyze soil borings to identify overlying soil profiles that can amplify ground motion propagating from underlying rock and use the Site Class Definition as specified in LRFD 3.10.3.1 for determination of seismic design parameters on a site-by-site basis. Use blow counts corrected to an equivalent rod energy ratio of 60%, N60, as defined in the SGE for the average SPT blow count \( N \). In the absence of sufficient geotechnical information, assume Site Class D for the project soil profile. Refer to BDM Section 303.1.4.1 for additional design requirements for bridges located in Site Class D, E or F.

Use the Seismic maps, LRFD Figures 3.10.2.1-1 through 3.10.2.1-3 or the USGS US Seismic Design Maps web application using latitude and longitude to determine the seismologic data for a project location \((PGA, S_s, \text{ and } S_l)\). Use the Site Factors for Site Class D in lieu of the Site Factors provided in LRFD 3.10.3.2 for Site Class E and F. In other words, for the entire State of Ohio, assume \( F_{pga} \leq 1.6, F_s \leq 1.6, \text{ and } F_V \leq 2.4 \). The site-specific procedure, per LRFD 3.10.2.2, is not required for Ohio. For all other Site Class types, use Site Factors as defined in LRFD 3.10.3.2.

The entire State of Ohio is assumed to have a Peak Ground Acceleration Coefficient \((PGA)\) above 0.03g but less than 0.06g, a Short-Period Horizontal Response Spectral Acceleration Coefficient \((S_s)\) above 0.072g but less than 0.134g, and a Long-Period Horizontal Response Spectral Acceleration Coefficient \((S_l)\) above 0.03g but less than 0.05g. In other words, per the provisions of LRFD 3.10.3.2, \( PGA < 0.10, S_s < 0.25, \text{ and } S_l < 0.1 \) for the entire State of Ohio.
If sufficient geotechnical information is not available to determine Site Class for new substructure units, and the project is located in areas where $S_i \geq 0.042$, then assume $0.1 \leq S_{DI} < 0.15$. Otherwise, assume $S_{DI} < 0.10$ and $A_S \geq 0.05$. For Ohio, only areas where $S_i \geq 0.042$, as shown in BDM Figure 305-1, and Site Class D, E or F exist, will $0.10 \leq S_{DI} < 0.15$. In Seismic Performance Zone 1, for $0.10 \leq S_{DI} < 0.15$, according to LRFD 5.11.2, refer to BDM Section 303.1.4.1 for additional connection and reinforcement detailing requirements. In Seismic Performance Zone 1, according to LRFD 3.10.9.2, the magnitude of the horizontal design connection force in the restrained directions is defined in relation to whether $A_S$ is greater or less than 0.05.

Figure 305-1
If sufficient geotechnical information is not available to determine Site Class for rehabilitation projects refer to BDM Section 303.1.4.2.

See BDM Section 303.1.4.1 for additional seismic analysis and design requirements.

### 305.1.6 SCOUR

All foundation requirements shall be satisfied for the changes in conditions resulting from the design flood at the strength and service limit states and the check flood at the extreme event limit states.

Determine the design flood frequency and the check flood frequency for scour, in accordance with L&D, Vol. 2, Section 1008.10.1. Ignore Rock Channel Protection in the prediction of scour depths.

### 305.2 SPREAD FOOTINGS

#### 305.2.1 GENERAL DISCUSSION

Design spread footings for piers in accordance with LRFD Section 10. Design spread footings for abutments and retaining walls in accordance with LRFD Section 11. Optimize spread footing dimensions for the controlling Limit State.

Refer to BDM Section 202.1.3 for information to include in the Structure Foundation Exploration Report.

In LRFD Equation 10.6.3.1.2a-1, take the value of $\gamma$ as follows: in the surcharge ($q$) component, $\gamma = \gamma_q = \text{total (moist) unit weight of soil above the bearing depth of the footing (kcf)}$; in the bearing soil self-weight ($\gamma$) component, $\gamma = \gamma_f = \text{total (moist) unit weight of soil below the bearing depth of the footing (kcf)}$.

For the calculation of the depth correction factor $d_q$ used in LRFD Equation 10.6.3.1.2a-3, use the following equation:

$$d_q = 1 + 2 \tan \phi_f (1- \sin \phi_f) \arctan \left( \frac{D_f}{B} \right)$$

Where:

- $d_q = \text{depth correction factor (dim)}$
- $\phi_f = \text{angle of internal friction of soil (deg.)}$
- $D_f = \text{footing embedment depth (ft)}$

LRFD Equation 10.6.3.1.2a-1 has three terms: soil cohesion ($c$), surcharge ($q$), and bearing soil self-weight ($\gamma$). The $q$ term assumes a surcharge weight of soil above the bearing depth of the footing; the $\gamma$ term assumes the use of the (self) unit weight of the bearing soil (below the bearing depth of the footing).

The equation is per “A Revised and Extended Formula for Bearing Capacity” (Hansen, 1970).
\[ B = \text{footing width (ft)} \]
\[
\arctan \left( \frac{D_f}{B} \right) \text{ is in radians.}
\]

Use this equation without any limits on the values of \( \phi_f, D_f, B, \) or \( D_f/B \), regardless of the limits imposed in LRFD 10.6.3.1.2a.

For the case of vertical or inclined eccentric loading, assume the values of \( i_c = i_q = i_{\gamma} = 1.00 \). For the case of inclined centric loading, use LRFD Equations 10.6.3.1.2a-5 through 10.6.3.1.2a-9 for the calculation of \( i_c, i_q, \) and \( i_{\gamma} \).

Do not use of spread footing supported structures on MSE walls.

Provide elevation reference monuments for all spread footings not founded on bedrock. See BDM Section 600 for notes and additional guidance.

### 305.2.1.1 SETTLEMENT

For all spread footings, perform a settlement analysis according to LRFD 10.6.2.4. See BDM Section 305.1.3 for limits on vertical movement with respect to a supported bridge structure.

### 305.2.1.2 MINIMUM DEPTH AND SCOUR CONSIDERATIONS

#### 305.2.1.2.a SPREAD FOOTING ELEVATIONS FOR FOUNDATIONS LOCATED OUTSIDE THE LIMITS OF THE 100-YR FLOOD PLAIN

The following requirements apply to spread footings located outside of the plan view limits of the 100-yr flood plain:

A. For footings founded on rock, key the bottom of footings at least 3-in into rock.
B. Embed the tops of footings founded on soil at least 1-ft from the nearest soil surface.
C. Embed the bottoms of footings founded on soil at least 4-ft from the nearest soil surface.
D. Embed the bottoms of footings founded on embankment fill at least 5-ft from the nearest soil surface. See BDM Figure 305-2.
E. In no case shall the bottom of the footings in existing soil or on embankment fills be above the frost line.

Refer to BDM Figure 305-3 to determine the frost line.

Spread footings are susceptible to loss of bearing caused by erosion during the service life of the structure.

Elevation reference monuments are for the purpose of measuring footing elevations during and after construction to document the performance of the spread footings, both short term and long term.
_depth at the project site in inches. If the project site lies between two contour lines, choose the contour line with the greater frost penetration depth.
Figure 305-3
305.2.1.2.b  SPREAD FOOTING ELEVATIONS FOR FOUNDATIONS INSIDE THE LIMITS OF THE 100-YR FLOOD PLAIN

The following requirements apply to spread footings located inside of the plan view limits of the 100-yr flood plain:

A. Locate the footings for 3-Sided Flat Top and Arch Section Culvert structure types (C&MS 706.051 and 706.052) according to L&D, Vol. 2, Section 1008.9.

B. Except as noted in BDM Section 305.2.1.2.a.(A), locate the bottom of footings directly on scour resistant rock. If footings require lateral restraint, provide drilled and grouted steel anchors. Scour resistant rock shall have the following properties to an elevation at least 4-ft below the Thalweg:

1. Unconfined compressive strength, \( Q_u \geq 2500\)-psi, per ASTM D7012, Method C

2. Slake Durability Index, SDI \( \geq 90\% \), per ASTM D4644

3. Rock Quality Designation, RQD \( \geq 65\% \), per SGE Section 6

4. Total Unit weight \( \geq 150\)-pcf

5. Rock Mass Strength Properties:
   a. Rock Mass Rating, RMR \( \geq 75 \) or
   b. Geologic Strength Index, GSI \( \geq 75 \) with Very Good or Good Joint Surface Conditions and Massive or Blocky Structure

6. Erodibility Index, \( K \geq 100 \), per publication FHWA-HIF-12-003 (HEC 18) “Evaluating Scour at Bridges,” Section 4.7.2, where:
   a. \( K = (M_s)(K_b)(K_d)\), \( K_b = RQD/J_n \), and \( K_d = J_r/J_n \)
   b. For the Intact Rock Mass Strength Parameter, \( M_s \), use the following equations:
      i. \( M_s = Q_u \) for \( Q_u \geq 10\)-MPa, or
      ii. \( M_s = (0.78) Q_u^{1.05} \) for \( Q_u < 10\)-MPa, where
      iii. \( Q_u \) is in units of MPa, per USBR publication "Best Practices in Dam and Levee Safety Risk Analysis," Chapter IV-1.
c. If the Rock Joint Set Number, \( J_n \), cannot be determined from observation or bore hole data, then assume \( J_n = 5 \).

d. If the Joint Roughness Number, \( J_r \), cannot be determined from observation or bore hole data, then assume \( J_r = 1 \).

e. If the Joint Alteration Number, \( J_a \), cannot be determined from observation or bore hole data, then assume \( J_a = 5 \).

f. If the Relative Joint Orientation Parameter, \( J_s \), cannot be determined from observation or bore hole data, then assume \( J_s = 0.4 \).

7. For interbedded rock formations, consider only the weaker material.

8. No Ordovician bedrock formation may be considered as scour resistant rock.

C. Except as noted in BDM Section 305.2.1.2.b.(A), locate the bottom of footings founded on non-scour resistant rock at least one foot below the rock scour depth as calculated according to HEC 18. If historical evidence of scour deeper than the calculated depth in the rock foundation material at or near the footing location is available, spread footings foundations shall not be used.

D. Except as noted in BDM Section 305.2.1.2.b.(A), footings founded on soil are prohibited. Substructures shall be founded on driven piles or on drilled shafts extending at least 15-ft below the Thalweg elevation.

E. At the design flood scour condition, evaluate the foundations at the Strength I Limit State for structural strength and external stability.

305.2.1.2.c SPREAD FOOTING ELEVATIONS FOR FOUNDATIONS INSIDE THE LIMITS OF THE 500-YR FLOOD PLAIN

The following requirements apply to spread footings located inside of the plan view limits of the 500-yr flood plain:

A. At the check flood, evaluate the foundations at the Extreme Event II Limit State for structural strength and external stability.

B. Include live loads on the structure and foundations (LL and LS), and water load from stream pressure (WA).
C. Include the maximum estimated scour depth at the check flood, considering any streambed or bank material displaced by scour from the check flood.

D. All Resistance Factors shall be assumed to be 1.00 for the Extreme Event II Limit State analysis with the check flood.

305.2.1.3 RESISTANCE TO HORIZONTAL FORCES

If the sliding resistance of the foundation material is inadequate to withstand the horizontal forces, as determined in accordance with LRFD 10.6.3.4, provide additional resistance using one or more of the following means, listed in order of preference:

A. Increase the footing width.

B. Use a footing shear key and utilize only the passive pressure acting on the key. Locate the shear key within the middle two-thirds of the footing width.

C. Use deep-foundation supported footings.

D. Use ground anchors, struts, deadmen, or soil reinforcements. Extend these elements outside the active failure wedge of the footing or retaining wall. Use only the portion of the horizontal resistance located outside of the active wedge.

E. Use steel sheet piling rigidly attached to the footing. Project the steel sheet piling below the bottom of the footing a minimum of 5-ft. If the sheet piling is placed in front of battered bearing piles, also specify it to be battered. Anchor the sheet piles to the footing by not less than two #6 reinforcing bars attached near the top of each individual sheet pile section, included with the sheet piling for payment. The #6 bars shall be long enough to be fully developed in bond. Show the minimum required section modulus on the plans. In this case, include the plan note from Section 700 for Steel Sheet Piling Left in Place.

305.2.1.4 REINFORCING STEEL

Locate bottom transverse footing reinforcement (i.e. reinforcement parallel to the centerline of the substructure) at the minimum concrete cover. Locate bottom longitudinal footing reinforcement (i.e. reinforcement perpendicular to the centerline of the substructure) above the bottom transverse footing reinforcement.

Soil reinforcements are generally geogrids or metallic reinforcements that are typically used for mechanically stabilized earth structures.

Footings for this provision include spread footings and footings supported on deep foundations. Refer to BDM Section 304.4.8 for concrete cover requirements.
Locate the hooks for footing dowels in the plane of the bottom mat of footing reinforcing steel.

Footing dowels are the reinforcement that laps with the primary (vertical) steel in the substructure unit. This provision provides a location to tie the footing dowel reinforcement.

For piers located within embankment slopes, the minimum footing dowel reinforcement ratio shall be 0.79-in²/ft. Otherwise the minimum footing dowel reinforcement ratio shall be 0.44-in²/ft.

Provide a minimum reinforcement ratio of 0.20 in²/ft at the following footing locations:

A. The bottom of the toe and the top of the heel of a spread footing for a cantilever retaining wall or abutment.
B. The top of all pier footings.

305.2.1.5 DESIGN CONSIDERATIONS

For cap and column piers on spread footings placed on existing soils or on embankment fills, provide continuous footings which extend beyond the center of the end column a distance equal to approximately 1/3 of the distance between the end column and the adjacent column.

The continuous footing requirement provides resistance to differential settlement between columns. The footing dimension requirement provides approximately balanced moments.

For cap and column piers with spread footings on bedrock provide separate footings under each column.

For grade separation structures, locate the top of pier footings in accordance with BDM Section 305.2.1.2.

The spread footing width for a pier shall not be less than one-fourth the height of the pier where founded on soil and not less than one-fifth the height of the pier where founded on bedrock.

Measure the pier height from the bottom of the footing to the top of the highest beam seat.

The minimum width of abutment and retaining wall spread footings founded on soil shall be one-half the wall height (H). There is no minimum width for abutment and retaining wall spread footings founded on bedrock.

Refer to LRFD Figure 11.6.3.2-1 for a definition of (H). For semi-integral abutments, measure the height to the beam seat for this purpose.

305.2.2 SPREAD FOOTINGS ON COHESIONLESS SOILS

For spread footings founded on cohesionless soils, determine settlement due to the incremental loading during the construction sequence.
305.2.3  SPREAD FOOTINGS ON COHESIVE SOILS

Do not found spread footings for piers and abutments on cohesive soils with Undrained Shear Strength ($S_u$) less than 2.0-ksf. There is no limitation on $S_u$ for foundation soils under spread footings for all other types of retaining walls.

Do not found spread footings on cohesive soils when secondary settlements will directly affect the performance of the structure over its service life.

305.2.4  SPREAD FOOTINGS ON BEDROCK

Use $\phi_s = 0.9$ as the sliding resistance factor for pier footings founded on weak or very weak bedrock ($Q_s < 1.5$-ksi).

A sliding resistance check may be non-performed for footings keyed 3-in into slightly strong or stronger bedrock.

305.3  DRIVEN PILES

305.3.1  GENERAL DISCUSSION

Design driven piles in accordance with *LRFD 10.7* and install in accordance with *C&MS 507 and 523*.

Refer to BDM Section 202.1.3 for information to include in the Structure Foundation Exploration Report.

For the piles in each substructure unit, provide the following in the structure general notes:

A. For piles driven to refusal on bedrock, the total factored load in axial compression.

B. For friction piles, the Ultimate Bearing Value (UBV).

C. For laterally loaded piles, externally applied lateral loads and bending moments, and maximum values of internal shear and moment.

305.3.1.1  PILE TYPES

Steel H-piles shall meet the requirements of ASTM A572 Grade 50.

The commonly available steel H-pile sizes are HP10x42, HP12x53, and HP14x73. Refer to the AISC Steel Construction Manual for section properties of available H-piles.
Cast-in-place (CIP) reinforced concrete pipe piles shall meet the requirements of ASTM A252 for steel pipe piles Grade 2 ($F_y = 35\text{-ksi}$) or Grade 3 ($F_y = 45$-ksi). Do not use Grade 1 steel pipe piles. Closed-end CIP reinforced concrete pipe piles shall not exceed 24-in nominal diameter. The Department will define large-diameter open-ended pipe piles as having a minimum 36-in nominal outside diameter.

Specify the wall thickness and Grade of closed-end CIP reinforced concrete pipe piles. The minimum wall thickness is 0.25-in. Increase the wall thickness as necessary to avoid overstressing the pile during driving, as determined by the wave equation drivability analysis required in BDM Section 305.3.1.2.

Detail large-diameter open-ended pipe piles as filled with Class QC1 concrete to the clean out elevation shown on the plans, after pile installation. Increase the wall thickness as necessary to avoid overstressing the pile during driving, as determined by the wave equation drivability analysis required in BDM Section 305.3.1.2. A pile wall thickness note is available in BDM Section 600.

The Department does not restrict the use of precast reinforced concrete piles or precast prestressed concrete piles.

Do not use timber piles.

### 305.3.1.2 PILE DRIVING HAMMERS

Perform a wave equation drivability analysis to determine the required minimum rated energy of the pile driving hammer to achieve: refusal on bedrock, the design Ultimate Bearing Value, or the pile tip elevation.

For point bearing piles on bedrock, select a hammer that is capable of reaching and penetrating bedrock for the specified pile type and size. Refusal criteria is met during driving when the pile penetrates into bedrock 1-in or less after receiving at least 20 blows from the pile hammer.

For friction piles, select a pile hammer large enough to achieve the specified Ultimate Bearing Value. Perform a dynamic load test to verify that the Ultimate Bearing Value is achieved. Refer to BDM Section 305.7 for specific pile testing requirements.


If considering large-diameter open-ended pipe piles, consult with the Office of Geotechnical Engineering. The soil inside large-diameter open-ended pipe piles should be removed to the elevation shown on the plans. Clean out requirements should be specified on the plans. Formation of the pile plug often does not occur in large-diameter open-ended pipe piles without providing a steel plate annulus to facilitate intentional plugging. Estimation of pile lengths should be based on an iterative, rigorous analysis, considering potential of pile plug formation during driving.

Currently no construction specifications exist for precast concrete piles.

C.305.3.1.2

Single-acting diesel pile driving hammers having a rated energy of up to 44,000-ft-lb are commonly available in Ohio. Other types and larger sized pile driving hammers have higher mobilization costs, which should be considered in the economics of the design.
Specify the hammer minimum rated energy requirement in the plans.

305.3.2 LOAD EFFECTS

For each point bearing pile on bedrock, provide the total factored axial pile load in the plan General Notes.

Determine the total factored axial pile load \((Q_p)\) using Eq. 305.3.2.1.

A sample note is provided in Section 600.

C305.3.2

ODOT C&MS 507.04 provides three criteria to specify proper pile installation depth:

A. Refusal

The Refusal criteria is defined in BDM Section 305.3.1.2 and by plan note in BDM Section 600 as pile penetration of an inch or less after receiving at least 20 blows from a pile hammer sufficiently sized to achieve the required depth to bedrock. For piles driven to Refusal, the total factored axial load applied to a point bearing pile on bedrock \((Q_p)\) is resisted by the factored axial structural compressive resistance of the pile \((P_r)\) determined according to LRFD 6.15.3.1

Determine the total factored axial pile load as follows:

\[
Q_p = \sum \eta_i \gamma_i Q_i + \eta_i \gamma_p DD \leq P_r
\]  
(C305.3.2-1)

Where:

\[
\sum \eta_i \gamma_i Q_i = \text{Sum of factored loads for highest loaded pile at each substructure unit (kips)}
\]

\[
\eta_i \gamma_p DD = \text{Factored drag load per pile (kips); see BDM Section 305.3.2.2.}
\]

\[
\eta_i = \text{Load modifier relating to ductility, redundancy and operational classification (see LRFD 1.3.2.1)}
\]

\[
\gamma_i = \text{Load factor (see LRFD 3.4)}
\]

\[
\gamma_p = \text{Load factor for drag load (see LRFD Table 3.4.1-2)}
\]

\[
P_r = \text{factored axial structural compressive resistance of the pile (LRFD 6.15.3) considering the depth of scour as an unbraced length and using the resistance factor for steel piles in compression and subject to damage due to severe driving conditions (LRFD 6.5.4.2)}
\]

For each friction pile, provide the Ultimate Bearing Value \((UBV)\) in the plan General Notes.

Determine the \(UBV\) using Eq. C305.3.2-3.

B. Ultimate Bearing Value \((UBV)\)

The driving criteria for \(UBV\) is established in C&MS 507.05 using the results of dynamic pile testing specified in C&MS 523. The Ultimate Bearing Value is the final maximum unfactored resistance that an individual pile is expected to supply. The \(EOID\) is the unfactored pile resistance at the end of initial driving defined as \(R_{ndr}\) in LRFD 10.3.
Determine the \( EOID \) and \( UBV \) as follows:

\[
EOID = R_n + R_{Sc} - R_{Su} \tag{C305.3.2-2}
\]

And:

\[
UBV = EOID + R_{Su} \tag{C305.3.2-3}
\]

In which:

\[
R_n = \text{Nominal Pile Bearing Resistance [LRFD 10.3]}
\]

\[
R_n = \frac{Q_p}{\phi_{dyn}} \tag{C305.3.2-4}
\]

\[
R_{Sc} = \text{Nominal amount of side resistance (kips) that must be overcome during driving through soil in the scour zone calculated using static analysis methods, per LRFD 10.7.3.8.6.}
\]

\[
R_{Su} = \text{Additional amount of resistance (kip) to account for setup of the side friction after EOID. See BDM Section 305.3.2.4 for how to utilize this value in design and BDM Section 305.3.2.4 when to utilize this value in design. Typically, driven piles are not designed to account for setup and } R_{Su} = 0. \text{ In which case, } UBV = EOID.
\]

Where:

\[
Q_p = \text{Total factored axial pile load (kip) for the highest loaded pile at each substructure unit. In the case of friction piles, drag load is considered separately according to BDM Section 305.3.2.2.}
\]

\[
Q_p = \sum \eta_i \gamma_i Q_i \leq P_r \tag{C305.3.2-5}
\]

\[
\phi_{dyn} = \text{Resistance factor for driven piles, dynamic analysis and static load test methods (LRFD 10.5.5.2.3) taken as 0.70 for piles installed according to C&MS 507 using dynamic test methods according to C&MS 523 (dim).}
\]

For piles with uplift refer to BDM Section 305.3.2.3 and specify a pile tip elevation in the Plans.

Provide the estimated lengths of piles on the Final Structure Site Plan.

Determine the estimated length for friction piles using static analysis methods to calculate the length of pile necessary to develop the \( UBV \) defined according to Eq. C305.3.2-6.

\[
UBV = R_p + R_s + R_{Sc} \tag{C305.3.2-6}
\]

C. Pile tip elevation

A pile tip elevation is required where a specific length of side resistance is required or where a pile needs to bear on a specific subsurface profile material.

Estimate pile length for friction piles using the following equation:

\[
UBV = R_p + R_s + R_{Sc} \tag{C305.3.2-6}
\]
Where:

\[ R_p = \text{Nominal pile tip resistance (LRFD 10.7.3.8.6a) (kip)} \]

\[ R_s = \text{Nominal pile side resistance (LRFD 10.7.3.8.6a) (kip) for soil below the scour zone} \]

### 305.3.2.1 SCOUR

See BDM Section 306.1.1 for pile supported footing elevation requirements.

If the design flood scour reaches top of rock, do not use driven piles.

Where scour is predicted, neglect the pile resistance provided by soil in the scour zone. Use the depth of scour resulting from the design flood, per LRFD 2.6.4.4.2, with Strength and Service Limit State checks. Use the depth of scour resulting from the check flood with Extreme Event II Limit State checks.

For friction piles, include the side resistance from the soil within the scour zone \( R_{Sc} \) in the Ultimate Bearing Value. Determine the UBV according to BDM Section 305.3.2.

Because the pile will lose support along the scour depth, investigate the structural capacity of the pile considering the depth of the scour as an unbraced length. Also perform a \( p-y \) analysis on the pile according to BDM Section 305.1.2 to demonstrate:

A. Lateral stability against overturning failure in the Strength Limit State with the maximum estimated scour depth at the design flood.

B. Lateral stability against overturning failure in the Extreme Event II Limit State with the maximum estimated scour depth at the check flood

C. Excessive deflection in the Service Limit State at the design flood.

Extend the piles to penetrate a minimum of 15-ft below the maximum estimated scour depth. If the required UBV is estimated to be achieved within the 15-ft of embedment below the scour elevation, specify the piles to be installed to a tip elevation.

The maximum estimated scour depth may occur with the design flood, check flood or an overtopping flood of lesser recurrence interval.

A plan note is available in Section 600.
305.3.2.2  DOWNDRAg & DRAG LOAD

Assume downdrag to act if ground settlement of greater than or equal to 0.4-in will occur after pile installation at the substructure unit in question.

For all friction piles subject to downdrag, calculate the location of the neutral plane per the Goudreault and Fellenius (1994) method as described in FHWA-NHI-16-009/010, Geotechnical Engineering Circular 12 (GEC 12) “Design and Construction of Driven Pile Foundations,” Section 7.3.5.7. For all point bearing piles on bedrock, consider the neutral plane to be at the top of bedrock.

Analyze downdrag and drag load according to the Siegel et al. (2013) method as described in GEC 12, Section 7.3.6.1, except as modified below.

The factored structural axial resistance of the pile at the Strength Limit State shall equal or exceed the combined effect of the factored drag load and the sum of factored loads for the highest loaded pile at each substructure using Eq. C305.3.2.2-1.

C305.3.2.2

When soil moves downward relative to the pile, it creates a drag load on, and therefore within, the pile. The downward soil movement creates the potential for downward pile movement. This downward pile movement is referred to as downdrag. The subsurface conditions, pile installation methods, pile loading sequences, as well as the pile and ground surface configuration determine the magnitude of the drag load and the downdrag movement.

Use the following equation:

\[ Q_p = \sum \eta_i \gamma_i Q_i + \eta_p \gamma_p DD \leq P_r \quad \text{(C305.3.2.2-1)} \]

Where:

- \( \sum \eta_i \gamma_i Q_i \) = Sum of factored loads for highest loaded pile at each substructure unit (kips)
- \( DD \) = Nominal drag load (downdrag load) per pile (kips)
- \( \gamma_p \) = Load factor for drag load = 1.40
- \( P_r \) = Factored structural axial resistance per pile (kips), calculated per BDM Section 305.3.3 and LRFD 6.15.3.1.

If greater resistance to drag load is necessary, consider using larger piles or increasing the number of piles and reducing the applied load per pile. To reduce or eliminate downdrag, consider preloading the soil so settlement occurs before pile installation. Also consider installing wick drains and an additional earth surcharge load to decrease the amount of time required for settlement to occur. Plan notes regarding pile driving waiting periods are available in BDM Section 600. A Special Provision for Installation of Wick Drains is available from the Office of Geotechnical Engineering.
Drag load is the total sum of skin friction in the downwards direction (negative skin friction) for the length of the pile in contact with the soil above the neutral plane. Calculate skin friction and drag load using static analysis methods, according to \textit{LRFD 10.7.3.8.6} assuming 100\% mobilization of tip (toe) resistance. Use a structural resistance factor for piles in compression and subject to damage due to severe driving conditions according to \textit{LRFD 6.5.4.2}.

Do not specify battered piles when drag load is anticipated.

Evaluate the downdrag movement, as it contributes to pile head settlement, at the geotechnical Service Limit State. Consider the pile downdrag movement \((S_{dd} = \text{settlement due to downdrag})\) equal to the settlement of the foundation soil at the location of the neutral plane, plus the elastic compression of the pile above the location of the neutral plane due to the effects of the permanent load at the pile head plus the drag load. Calculate settlement of the foundation soils according to \textit{LRFD 10.6.2.4}. Calculate elastic compression of the pile according to GEC 12, Section 7.3.5.1. Exclude transient loads from the calculation of settlement and elastic compression.

For point bearing piles on bedrock, include both transient loads and drag load in the computation of total factored axial load per pile, and provide this value in the structure general notes.

For friction piles, do not include both transient loads and drag load in the computation of total factored axial load per pile. If transient loads exceed the value of drag load, include only transient loads. If transient loads are less than the value of drag load, include only the drag load.

\textbf{305.3.2.3 UPLIFT}

When a pile must resist uplift loads, calculate the uplift resistance in accordance with \textit{LRFD 10.7}. Use static analysis methods to determine the nominal uplift resistance due to side resistance.

Where the estimated pile length is controlled by the required uplift resistance, specify a pile tip elevation.

If site constraints or other factors make permanent tensile loads on driven piles unavoidable, use a redundancy load modifier of \(\eta_R = 1.05\) for the permanent tensile loads on the foundation elements.
305.3.2.4 SETUP

When pile setup is addressed according to BDM Section 305.3.2.4.A, determine the components of the nominal pile side resistance according to Eq. C305.3.2.4-1. Determine the EOID and UBV values according to C305.3.2.4-4 and C305.3.2.4-5 respectively and specify both on the plans. Refer to BDM Section 600 for a sample plan note.

Determine the estimated length for friction piles using static analysis methods to calculate the length of pile necessary to develop the EOID. Specify a dynamic load test to field verify that the EOID resistance is achieved. Specify a waiting period and restrike dynamic testing of the piles to field verify that the UBV resistance is achieved.

Dissipation of excess pore water pressure in foundation soils after driving can result in increased soil shear strength and additional side friction commonly referred to as Setup.

Typically, driven piles are not designed to account for setup, therefore, \( R_{Su} = 0 \) and the EOID resistance equals UBV resistance. However, if soft cohesive soils are encountered at the site, and estimated pile lengths are around 100-ft or more with EOID, it may prove beneficial to consider setup in the design. Refer to publication FHWA-NHI-16-009 for guidance on the potential for pile setup or relaxation for various soil types.

As noted in BDM Section C305.3.2, determine the Nominal pile side resistance for soil below the scour zone, \( R_s \), using static analysis methods according to LRFD 10.7.3.8.6a. Determine the components of this side resistance as follows:

\[
R_S = R_{Sadr} + R_{Su} \quad (C305.3.2.4-1)
\]

In which:

\[
R_{Ssu} = \left(1 - \frac{1}{f_{Su}}\right)R_S \quad (C305.3.2.4-2)
\]

\[
R_{Sndr} = \left(\frac{1}{f_{Su}}\right)R_S \quad (C305.3.2.4-3)
\]

Where:

\( R_{Sadr} \) = The side friction component of the nominal pile driving resistance at end of initial driving (kip)

\( R_{Su} \) = The additional resistance to account for setup of the side friction after end of initial driving (kip)

\( f_{Su} \) = Setup factor according to Table C305.3.2.4-1

Determine EOID and UBV values as a function of tip and side friction resistances as follows:

\[
EOID = R_p + R_{Sadr} + R_{Sc} \quad (C305.3.2.4-4)
\]

\[
UBV = EOID + R_{Su} \quad (C305.3.2.4-5)
\]
Table 305-1
Pile Driving Recommended Setup Factor ($f_{su}$) for Side Friction
based on FHWA-NHI-16-009 Table 7-16 (after Rausche et al., 1996)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ODOT Class</th>
<th>Soil Type Description</th>
<th>Recommended Setup Factor ($f_{su}$)</th>
<th>DRIVEN % Driving Strength Loss</th>
<th>APILE Reduction Factor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A-1-a</td>
<td>Gravel and/or Stone Fragments</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A-1-b</td>
<td>Gravel and/or Stone Fragments w/ Sand</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A-2-4</td>
<td>Gravel and/or Stone Fragments w/ Sand and Silt</td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>17%</td>
<td>0.83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A-2-5</td>
<td></td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>17%</td>
<td>0.83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A-2-6</td>
<td>Gravel and/or Stone Fragments w/ Sand, Silt and Clay</td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>17%</td>
<td>0.83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A-2-7</td>
<td></td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>17%</td>
<td>0.83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A-3</td>
<td>Fine Sand</td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>17%</td>
<td>0.83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A-3a</td>
<td>Coarse and Fine Sand</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A-4a</td>
<td>Sandy Silt</td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>17%</td>
<td>0.83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A-4b</td>
<td>Silt</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>33%</td>
<td>0.67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A-5</td>
<td>Elastic Silt and Clay</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>33%</td>
<td>0.67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A-6a</td>
<td>Silt and Clay</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>33%</td>
<td>0.67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A-6b</td>
<td>Silty Clay</td>
<td>1.75</td>
<td>43%</td>
<td>0.57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A-7-5</td>
<td>Elastic Clay</td>
<td>1.75</td>
<td>43%</td>
<td>0.57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A-7-6</td>
<td>Clay</td>
<td>2.0</td>
<td>50%</td>
<td>0.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A-8a</td>
<td>Organic Silt</td>
<td>1.75</td>
<td>43%</td>
<td>0.57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A-8b</td>
<td>Organic Clay</td>
<td>1.75</td>
<td>43%</td>
<td>0.57</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

305.3.3 POINT BEARING PILES ON BEDROCK

Do not specify precast reinforced concrete piles or precast prestressed concrete piles for point bearing pile applications.

When piles are to be driven to refusal on bedrock, consider steel H-piles as the first option. Cast-in-place reinforced concrete pipe piles (including large-diameter open-ended pipe piles) may be considered for point bearing piles on bedrock, provided that all design and construction considerations are adequately addressed.

Refer to BDM Section 305.3.5.6 for pile point requirements.

Provide the total factored load ($Q_p$) in the structural General Notes in accordance with BDM Section 305.3.2.

A sample note is provided in BDM Section 600.

If the total factored load for piles that are to be driven to refusal on bedrock is appreciably less than the maximum factored structural resistance, consideration should be given to increasing the pile spacing or reducing the pile size.
Determine the factored axial structural compressive resistance of the pile \((P_r)\) according to LRFD 6.15.3 using the resistance factor for axial resistance of piles in compression and subject to damage due to severe driving conditions (LRFD 6.5.4.2). Assume piles are unbraced along the predicted scour depth.

The commonly used H-pile sizes and the factored structural resistance \((P_r)\) for each are listed below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>H-Pile Size</th>
<th>(P_r)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>HP10X42</td>
<td>310 kips</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HP12X53</td>
<td>380 kips</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HP14X73</td>
<td>530 kips</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The values listed above for the factored structural resistance are calculated in accordance with LRFD 6.9.4.1 assuming: an axially loaded pile with negligible moment; no appreciable loss of section due to deterioration throughout the life of the structure; a steel yield strength of 50-ksi; a structural resistance factor for H-piles subject to damage due to severe driving conditions \((\phi_c = 0.50)\); and a pile fully braced along its length \((l = 0\text{-in})\). Please note that as \(l\) approaches zero, \(P_e\) approaches infinity which means \(P_n\) equals \(P_o\) in LRFD Eq. 6.9.4.1.1-1 and \(P_o = F_yA_g\).

So:

\[
P_r = \phi_cF_yA_g \tag{C305.3.3-1}
\]

The commonly used pipe pile sizes and the factored structural resistance \((P_r)\) for each are listed below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pipe Pile Diameter x Thickness</th>
<th>(P_r)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>12-in x 0.25-in</td>
<td>400 kips</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14-in x 0.25-in</td>
<td>510 kips</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16-in x 0.25-in</td>
<td>640 kips</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The values listed above for the factored structural resistance are calculated in accordance with LRFD 6.9.5.1 assuming: an axially loaded pile with negligible moment; no appreciable loss of section due to deterioration throughout the life of the structure; a steel yield strength of 35-ksi; a 28-day compressive strength of 4-ksi, a structural resistance factor for pipe piles subject to damage due to severe driving conditions \((\phi_c = 0.60)\); and a pile fully braced along its length \((l = 0\text{-in})\).
So:

\[ P_r = \phi_f F_e A_e \]  \hspace{1cm} (C305.3.3-2)

In which:

\[ F_e = F_y + 0.85f'_c (A_c/A_o) \]  \hspace{1cm} (C305.3.3-3)

Where:

- \( F_y \): yield strength of structural steel (ksi)
- \( f'_c \): 28-day compressive strength of the concrete (ksi)
- \( A_c \): cross sectional area of concrete (in²)
- \( A_o \): cross sectional area of steel pile (in²)

For piles under combined axial compression and flexure, determine factored structural resistance in accordance with LRFD 6.9.2.2.

Perform wave equation drivability analysis according to BDM Section 305.3.1.2 to determine whether the pile can be driven to refusal on bedrock without overstressing the pile.

### 305.3.4 FRICTION PILES

When friction piles are to be driven, consider closed-end cast-in-place reinforced concrete pipe piles as the first option.

Piles not driven to refusal on bedrock develop their geotechnical resistance by a combination of soil friction or adhesion along the sides of the pile and end bearing on the pile tip. These piles are typically referred to as friction piles.

Provide additional reinforcing steel inside the pile for capped pile piers as described in BDM Section 306.3.3.2.

This reinforcement provides structural capacity for the concrete pile if the steel shell completely deteriorates. For other pipe pile applications where significant deterioration of the steel shell is not anticipated, the steel pipe provides sufficient reinforcement and no additional internal reinforcing steel is required.

Provide the UBV for each substructure unit in the structural General Notes in accordance with BDM Section 305.3.2.

Every pile in a single substructure unit shall be driven to the same UBV as the pile with the maximum factored load in the substructure unit. A sample note is provided in BDM Section 600. The UBV may need to be adjusted during detail design as the design loads for the Service, Strength and Extreme Event Limit States are refined.
Perform wave equation drivability analysis according to BDM Section 305.3.1.2 to determine whether the pile can be driven to the $UBV$ without overstressing the pile utilizing commonly available pile driving hammers. Determine the maximum driving stresses on the pile ($\sigma_{dr}$) in accordance with LRFD 10.7.8 using $\phi_{da} = 1.00$.

In which:

$$\phi_{da} = \text{resistance factor for driven piles, drivability analysis (LRFD 10.5.5.2.2)}$$

The commonly used pipe pile sizes and the maximum $UBV$ for each are listed below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Diameter</th>
<th>Maximum $UBV$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>12-in</td>
<td>330-kip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14-in</td>
<td>390-kip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16-in</td>
<td>450-kip</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When H-piles are used as friction piles, the maximum $UBV$ for commonly used H-pile sizes are listed below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>H-Pile Size</th>
<th>Maximum $UBV$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>HP10x42</td>
<td>310-kip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HP12x53</td>
<td>380-kip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HP14x73</td>
<td>530-kip</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

These maximum $UBV$ values may be significantly less than the structural capacity of a pile in axial compression ($P_r$) listed in BDM Section C305.3.3. The maximum $UBV$ values for both pile types listed in the above tables are based on pile drivability using commonly available pile hammers, and assuming a 3/8-in pile wall thickness for closed-end CIP reinforced concrete pipe piles. Because there is a large degree of variability inherent in the estimation of these maximum values, these tables should be used as a guide.

If driven piles in cohesive soils are specified at a center-to-center spacing of 6 pile diameters or more, or if driven piles in cohesionless soils are specified at a center-to-center spacing of 2.5 pile diameters or more, ignore group effects for axial loading.

The group efficiency factors for pile groups as given in LRFD 10.7.3.9 for cohesive soils (clay) shall apply to pile groups in soft or very soft soils regardless if the pile cap is in firm contact with the ground.

### 305.3.5 DESIGN CONSIDERATIONS

#### 305.3.5.1 MINIMUM PILE SPACING, CLEARANCE AND EMBEDMENT INTO CAP

Maximize the pile spacing based on the selected pile type and size.

C305.3.5.1

Perform an economic analysis when selecting the pile type and size and the pile driving hammer (including cost of mobilization). Keep in mind that friction H-piles tend to drive longer than pipe piles, particularly in granular soils.
The following maximum center-to-center pile spacings by structure type may be used as a guide:

A. In capped pile piers, 7.5-ft.
B. In capped pile abutments, 8-ft.
C. In stub abutments, front row, 8-ft.
D. In wall type abutments and retaining walls, front row, 7-ft.

Cap and column piers shall have at least 4 piles per individual footing.

For minimum center-to-center spacing of the piles, refer to LRFD 10.7.1.2.

Reinforce the pile cap to resist bending and shear based on the proposed center-to-center spacing of the piles.

Piles supporting capped pile piers shall be embedded 1.5-ft into the concrete cap. For other substructure units on a single row of piles, the piles shall be embedded 2-ft into the concrete. A 1-ft embedment depth into the concrete footing is required for all other cases. Perform a punching shear analysis to determine the necessary concrete thickness over the top of pile. In every case, there shall be at least 1.5-ft cover over top of pile.

The distance from the edge of a footing to the center of a pile shall be not less than 1.5-ft. The distance from the edge of a concrete pier cap to the side of a pile shall be not less than 9-in.

305.3.5.2 ESTIMATED PILE LENGTH

When estimating pile length for point bearing piles on bedrock, assume the pile tip elevation as the elevation on the nearest soil boring where either bedrock coring begins or where SPT refusal blow count occurs with a recovered sample visually classified as bedrock. If using piles placed in prebored holes in bedrock, use the bottom of the prebored hole elevation as the pile tip elevation.

When estimating pile length for friction piles, use static analysis methods to determine the depth of pile penetration necessary to develop the required Ultimate Bearing Value as described in BDM Section 305.3.2.

The estimated length may need to be adjusted during detail design as the design loads for the Service, Strength and Extreme Event Limit States are refined.

Note that pile cutoff elevation includes the embedment into the pile cap per BDM Section 305.3.5.1 and free-standing length for capped pile piers. If rounding up to the nearest 5-ft for Estimated Length adds less than a foot, increase to the next 5-foot interval.
Round Estimated Length up to the nearest 5-ft. Provide the Estimated Length on the Site Plan.

B. Order Length = Estimated Length + 5-ft

Provide the Order Length for each pile in the Structure General Notes.

C. Furnished Length = Order length x No. of Piles

Include Furnished Length in the Estimated Quantities.

D. Driven Length = Estimated Length x No. of Piles

Include Driven Length in the Estimated Quantities.

### 305.3.5.3 CORROSION AND PROTECTION

C305.3.5.3

If the subsurface exploration identifies soil or site conditions considered indicative of potential pile deterioration or corrosion from environmental conditions according to *LRFD 10.7.5*, verify conditions with laboratory testing of soil samples. Consider soils with an organic content of 4 percent or more as “high organic content”.

For soils that are not indicative of a potential pile corrosion problem, ignore corrosion for steel not exposed to atmospheric conditions over the design life of the structure. Provide pile encasement for portions of piles exposed to atmospheric conditions. The pile encasement shall extend a minimum of 3-ft below the ground line/stream bottom.

For soils that are indicative of a potential pile corrosion problem, determine the appropriate corrosion loss rate for carbon steel per Eurocode 3, Part 5, Section 4.4 for the specific environmental conditions at the site. Apply the appropriate corrosion loss rate to all surfaces of the piles in the respective exposure area.

Design the steel pile section to retain the required factored structural resistance after discounting corrosion loss and provide a plan note that addresses the amount of additional pile section specified to account for the corrosion loss. Alternately, provide corrosion protection for the piles.

A form of pile encasement is detailed on Standard Bridge Drawing CPP-1-08. The top of the encasement shall be located no more than 1-ft from the bottom of the pile cap and the concrete fill shall be sloped to drain.
Corrosion protection for the pile steel shall consist of a zinc coating or concrete encasement. For zinc coatings, estimate the corrosion loss rate as 1/2 the respective loss rate for carbon steel. The minimum thickness for zinc coating is 4 mils. Treat steel piles with precast concrete encasement as precast reinforced concrete piles for the purposes of geotechnical resistance, pile handling and installation, and limits on driving stresses. For concrete piles or concrete encasement, if the environmental conditions indicate a soil chloride content ≥500 ppm, a sulfate content ≥500 ppm, or a pH <5, then retain the services of a corrosion specialist in order to develop an appropriate corrosion-inhibiting mix design or concrete cover thickness over the steel, per LRFD 5.10.1, 5.14.2, and C10.7.5

**305.3.5.4 VERTICAL AND HORIZONTAL MOVEMENTS**

Perform settlement and horizontal pile foundation movement analyses according to LRFD 10.7.2. Consider the effects of downdrag according to BDM Section 305.3.2.2. Refer to BDM Section 305.1.3 for limits on vertical movement with respect to a supported bridge structure.

**305.3.5.5 BUCKLING AND LATERAL STABILITY**

For free-standing piles, analyze the piles for buckling and lateral stability as unsupported columns above the point of fixity with scour depths included.

Determine the depth to the point of fixity in accordance with LRFD 10.7.3.13.4.

**305.3.5.6 STEEL PILE POINTS OR SHOES**

To protect the tips of H-piles, CIP pipe piles and open-ended pipe piles, provide steel points, conical points or cutting shoes respectively for each of the following criteria:

A. Piling is driven to refusal on bedrock with an unconfined compressive strength ≥ 7.5-ksi, and
   1. Overburden of any thickness consisting primarily of granular soils, or
   2. Overburden less than 50-ft consisting primarily of cohesive soil.

B. Piling is driven through overburden containing boulders

Bituminous, epoxy, PVC, or painted coatings are considered ineffective, as they will lack the necessary durability to survive handling and installation.
C. Piling is driven through very dense granular soils

D. Piling is driven to refusal on bedrock meeting the following criteria:
   1. Unconfined compressive strength ≥ 1.5-ksi, AND
   2. Angle between inclined bedrock and axis of the pile is less than 60°, AND
   3. Overburden immediately above bedrock is:
      a. Stiff or weaker cohesive soil, or
      b. Granular soil

This provision helps to facilitate penetration of piles into the bedrock without skipping off the surface.

305.3.5.7 MINIMUM PILE PENETRATION REQUIREMENTS

When driving piles through new embankment, the piles shall penetrate a minimum distance of 10-ft into the underlying in-situ soils. If piles are to be driven through 15-ft or more of new embankment, specify prebored holes, in accordance with C&MS 507.11. Clearly indicate the locations and lengths of all prebored holes in the plans. For design purposes, ignore the effect of skin friction along the length of the prebored holes. The specified length of the prebored hole shall be the height of the new embankment at each pile location.

When placing driven pile foundations through an MSE wall backfill, the piles shall penetrate a minimum distance of 15-ft into the underlying in-situ soils below the leveling pad elevation. If bedrock exists within the minimum penetration length, place the piles in drilled holes that extend a maximum of 5-ft into bedrock.

For applications other than MSE walls, the piles shall penetrate a minimum distance of 10-ft into in-situ material. If bedrock exists within the 10-ft length, place the piles in drilled holes that extend 5-ft into bedrock.

Place the piles in the drilled holes without driving the piles. Place Class QC Misc. concrete in the drilled holes to the top of bedrock. When piles are placed in drilled holes, determine the nominal structural resistance of the piles according to BDM Section 305.3.3 using the resistance factor for axial compression, \( \varphi_c = 0.95 \) [LRFD 6.3.4.2 for steel columns].

Where bedrock is encountered in the penetration length:
   A. For in-situ soil depth ≤ 10-ft, extend 5-ft into rock.
   B. For in-situ soil depth > 10-ft, total penetration depth including into rock = 15-ft

Unlike under MSE walls, this provision accommodates the possibility of a single row of piles with significant lateral loads and bending moments. The 5-ft extension into rock should create a point of fixity for pile stability where shallow rock is encountered.

Include the drilled holes with C&MS ITEM 507 PREBORED HOLES, AS PER PLAN for payment. The Department will include the backfill concrete with the prebored holes for payment. The Department will pay for the piles under Item 507 Steel Piles HP_x_, Furnished, As Per Plan with the placement into the prebored holes incidental to the pay item. Do not include an ITEM 507 PILES DRIVEN pay item.
305.3.5.8 BATTERED PILES

Do not extend battered piles beyond the limits of the right-of-way. Ensure that the location and alignment of the proposed piles do not conflict with deep foundation elements from the adjacent or existing substructure units.

Do not specify battered piles when drag load is anticipated, unless piles can be driven after the construction of the embankment, the specified minimum waiting period for consolidation of in-situ soils has concluded, and the remaining settlements are anticipated to be less than 0.4-in.

For skewed bridges, batter abutment piles normal to the centerline of bearings.

Do not batter piles less than 15-ft in length and driven to refusal on bedrock.

305.3.5.9 PILE SETUP AND RELAXATION

If the subsurface geotechnical conditions at the site indicate the potential for pile setup on friction piles, and the estimated driving resistance indicates driving losses that would increase the length of the pile during driving by more than 10-ft with $EOID$ compared to the $UBV$, then account for pile setup in the design. Utilize one of the following three alternatives for the design:

A. Utilize BDM Section 305.3.2.4 for calculation of the $UBV$ and $EOID$ capacity to be shown in the plans, or

B. Specify the performance of a construction evaluation utilizing variable length driving of the first four production piles and restrike testing in order to determine a specific pile tip elevation to be used during construction, or

C. Specify the performance of a site-specific evaluation utilizing test piles and restrike testing in order to determine values of $EOID$ and $UBV$ along with pile driving criteria to be used during construction.

If pile setup is realized in the design, specify restrike dynamic testing of the piles to field verify the $UBV$ in axial compression.

C305.3.5.8

Piles battered transverse to the centerline of a bridge should be avoided. A batter of 1:4 (H:V) is considered desirable, but in cases where the lateral resistance of the piles is inadequate to counteract the horizontal forces transmitted to the foundation, a batter of 1:3 (H:V) may be specified.

The additional bending forces imposed on the piles by the drag load can cause pile deformation and damage.

C305.3.5.9

Refer to publication FHWA-NHI-16-009/010, Geotechnical Engineering Circular 12 (GEC 12) “Design and Construction of Driven Pile Foundations” for guidance on the potential for pile setup or relaxation for various soil types.

Pile setup can potentially result in upwards of a six-fold increase in the $UBV$ compared to $EOID$. Conversely, if the loss of resistance during driving is not realized in design, this can result in substantial pile quantity overruns during construction. Realization of pile setup in design can therefore result in substantial pile quantity savings. A site-specific evaluation utilizing test piles (Alternative C) should be considered if over 10,000-ft of piles are specified.

Plan notes for all three of the above alternatives are available in BDM Section 600.
If the subsurface geotechnical conditions at the site indicate the potential for pile relaxation for friction piles, make no change to the design regarding the nominal resistance provided at the pile tip. Setup may still be considered for the nominal resistance provided along the side of the pile.

Pile relaxation can significantly reduce $UBV$ compared to $EOID$ in heavily over-consolidated clays and in dense saturated silts and fine sands. Research has shown relaxation related losses as much as 40%. However, the amount of displacement to re-mobilize the full $UBV$ is considered small, and it is routinely neglected in design.

If the potential for pile setup or relaxation is indicated for point bearing piles on bedrock, make no change to the design. For point bearing piles on bedrock, while pile setup will doubtless increase the overall pile bearing resistance some unknown amount, it is ignored in design, since soil friction resistance is not included in the pile bearing resistance due to the large difference in displacement necessary to mobilize side resistance compared to tip resistance. Conversely, while relaxation in the bedrock at the pile tip will doubtless decrease the overall pile bearing resistance, this is also ignored, as the additional displacement necessary to re-mobilize the tip resistance is considered negligible.

305.3.6 VIBRATION MONITORING

If pile driving with a hammer having a rated energy of 44,000-ft-lb or smaller is to be performed within 200-ft of an existing building, perform a vibration impact assessment in accordance with the guidelines provided in the U.S. Federal Transit Administration (FTA) guidance manual, “Transit Noise and Vibration Impact Assessment,” Final Report FTA-VA-90-1003-06. In this event, use $PPV_{ref} = 0.644$.

For the vibration impact damage assessment, use the equation provided in Section 7.1 of NCHRP 25-25/Task 72, “Current Practices to Address Construction Vibration and Potential Effects to Historic Buildings Adjacent to Transportation Projects”, with the following values of the attenuation exponent, $n$:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cohesive Soil</th>
<th>Attenuation, $n$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Very Soft</td>
<td>1.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soft</td>
<td>1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medium Stiff</td>
<td>1.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stiff</td>
<td>1.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Very Stiff</td>
<td>1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hard</td>
<td>1.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

As noted in BDM Section C305.3.1.2, single-acting diesel pile driving hammers having a rated energy of up to 44,000-ft-lb are commonly available in Ohio. The 200-ft proximity limit is reasonably conservative for conventional pile driving using commonly available pile hammers. For driving of large-diameter piles or the use of higher rated hammers, the proximity limit would need to be extended and an increase in $PPV_{ref}$ would also be necessary.

The recommended values of “n” are within the range of published data and are considered conservative. For additional guidance and commentary on the use of this equation and performance of the vibration impact assessment, see CalTrans Transportation and Construction Induced Vibration Guidance Manual.
Granular Soils

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Relative Compactness</th>
<th>Attenuation Exponent, n</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Very Loose</td>
<td>1.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loose</td>
<td>1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medium Dense</td>
<td>1.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dense</td>
<td>1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Very Dense</td>
<td>1.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Specify vibration monitoring in the plans when the vibration impact assessment indicates:

A. Potential for damage to nearby structures, or
B. Unacceptable levels of vibration annoyance with respect to human response, or
C. Interference with building function

Include a preconstruction condition survey in the plans when the buildings within the proximity limits of the assessed vibration impact are residential, historic, museums, fragile, or otherwise vibration sensitive structures.

Plan notes are available in BDM Section 600.

**305.3.7 EMBANKMENT CONSTRUCTION CONSTRAINTS**

Refer to BDM Section 305.3.2.2 regarding downdrag and drag load effects from new embankment settlement, and potential methods of remediation. Refer to BDM Section 305.3.5.7 regarding pile resistance and embedment through new embankments. Refer to BDM Section 305.3.5.8 regarding new embankment settlement effects on battered piles.

**C305.3.7**

When driving piles through new embankment, special considerations with respect to settlement, downdrag, additional loading effects, and resistance of the pile may be necessary.

**305.4 DRILLED SHAFTS**

Design drilled shafts in accordance with *LRFD 10.8* and construct in accordance with *C&MS 524.*

**C305.4**

Drilled shafts should be considered when their use would:

A. Prevent the need for cofferdams
B. Become economically viable due to high design loads
C. Improve the structural stability in a scour event.
D. Provide resistance against lateral and uplift loads
E. Accommodate sites where the depth to bedrock is too short for adequate pile embedment but too deep for spread footings
F. Accommodate the site concerns associated with the pile driving process (vibrations, interference due to battered piles, etc.).

Belled shafts are difficult to construct under water or with slurry and the bell will often collapse in non-cohesive soils. Cleaning of the base of the drilled shaft and inspection within the bell is also difficult to conduct.

305.4.1 LOAD EFFECTS

Provide the total factored load as well as the side and tip resistance for each drilled shaft in the structure General Notes. For laterally loaded drilled shafts, provide the total factored externally applied lateral and moment bending loads, and the maximum factored values of the internal shear and moment.

Determine the total factored axial drilled shaft load (Q) using Eq. C305.4.1-1.

Sample plan notes are provided in BDM Section 600.

Determine the total factored axial drilled shaft load as follows:

\[ Q = \sum \eta_i \gamma_i Q_i + \eta_i \gamma_p DD \leq R_R \leq P_r \]  

(C305.4.1-1)

In which:

- \( Q \) = Total factored load (kips) in axial compression per shaft for highest loaded drilled shaft at each substructure unit. This will include the loads imposed by the supported infrastructure and the drag load. This is resisted by the factored fully mobilized geotechnical resistance of the shaft; factored load versus the axial structural resistance of the shaft will be considered separately (See BDM Section 305.4.1.2).

- \( \sum \eta_i \gamma_i Q_i \) = Sum of factored loads for highest loaded drilled shaft at each substructure unit (kips)

- \( \eta_i \gamma_p DD \) = Factored drag load per drilled shaft (kips) (See BDM Section 305.4.1.2)

- \( \eta_i \) = Load modifier relating to ductility, redundancy and operational classification (see LRFD 1.3.2.1)

- \( \gamma_i \) = Load factor (see LRFD 3.4)

- \( \gamma_p \) = Load factor for drag load (see LRFD Table 3.4.1-2)

- \( R_R \) = Factored geotechnical resistance at the Strength Limit State (kips)

- \( P_r \) = Factored structural axial resistance per drilled shaft (kips), calculated according to LRFD 5.6.4.4.
Determine the factored geotechnical resistance ($R_f$) for axial compression of drilled shafts using Eq. C305.4.1-2

The factored geotechnical resistance in axial compression of drilled shafts required to support the factored load in axial compression is only provided by the soil below the neutral plane (below the lowest soil layer contributing to drag load). The location of the neutral plane is determined according to BDM Section 305.4.1.2.

\[ R_f = \varphi R_n = \varphi_{qp} R_P + \varphi_{qs} R_S \] ........................ (C305.4.1-2)

In which:

- $R_n$ = Nominal resistance in axial compression (kips)
- $R_P$ = Nominal drilled shaft tip resistance (kips)
- $\varphi_{qp}$ = Resistance factor for tip resistance
- $R_S$ = Nominal drilled shaft side resistance below the neutral plane (kips)
- $\varphi_{qs}$ = Resistance factor for shaft side resistance

Determine the design depth for drilled shafts using static analysis methods to calculate the depth of drilled shaft necessary to develop the factored resistance in axial compression.

When the lack of redundancy of the drilled shaft foundation elements directly impacts the stability of the supported structure, apply a reduction factor of 0.8 to $R_f$.

**305.4.1.1 SCOUR**

Neglect the shaft resistance provided by soil or non-scour resistant rock in the scour zone. Assess scour resistant rock according to BDM Section 305.2.1.2.b. Use the depth of scour resulting from the design flood, with Strength and Service Limit State checks. Use the depth of scour resulting from the check flood with Extreme Event II Limit State checks.

Extend drilled shafts to penetrate a minimum of 10-ft below the controlling scour elevation.

Because the drilled shaft will lose support along the scour depth, investigate the structural capacity of the shaft considering the depth of the scour as an unbraced length. Also perform a p-y analysis on the drilled shaft according to BDM Section 305.1.2 to demonstrate lateral stability against:

A. Overturning failure in the Strength Limit State with the maximum estimated scour depth at the design flood, and

Examples of nonredundant foundation applications include a single drilled shaft supporting a bridge pier, or a two-column straddle bent with each column supported on a single drilled shaft. This requirement does not apply to temporary or staged construction.

C305.4.1.1

The design flood and check flood are defined in LRFD 2.6.4.4.2.
B. Overturning failure in the Extreme Event II Limit State with the maximum estimated scour depth at the check flood, and

C. Excessive deflection in the Service Limit State.

### 305.4.1.2 DOWNDRAg AND DRAG LOAD

Assume downdrag to act if ground settlement ≥ 0.4-in will occur after drilled shaft installation at the substructure unit in question.

When soil moves downward relative to the drilled shaft, it creates a drag load on, and therefore within, the shaft. The downward soil movement creates the potential for downward drilled shaft movement. This downward drilled shaft movement is referred to as downdrag. The subsurface conditions, shaft installation methods, shaft loading sequences, as well as the shaft and ground surface configuration determine the magnitude of the drag load and the downdrag movement.

If greater resistance to drag load is necessary, consider using larger drilled shafts or increasing the number of drilled shafts and reducing the applied load per drilled shaft. To reduce or eliminate downdrag, consider preloading the soil so settlement occurs before drilled shaft installation. Also consider installing wick drains and an additional earth surcharge load to decrease the amount of time required for settlement to occur.

A Special Provision for Installation of Wick Drains is available from the Office of Geotechnical Engineering.

For all rock-socketed drilled shafts or drilled shafts founded on top of bedrock, consider the neutral plane to be at the top of bedrock.

Do not use friction drilled shaft foundations when the downdrag is calculated to induce settlements on the structure that will exceed the acceptable settlement criteria as described in BDM Section 305.1.3.

For friction drilled shafts subject to downdrag, use either the simplified hand-calculation method described in FHWA-NHI-10-016, Geotechnical Engineering Circular 10 (GEC 10) “Drilled Shafts: Construction Procedures and LRFD Design Methods,” Section 13.6.3 to calculate the location of the neutral plane, or utilize a more refined computerized analysis utilizing soil and structure springs with t-z and q-w curves established from a computerized solution.

Analyze downdrag and drag load according to the method described in GEC 10, Section 13.6, and as described below.
Evaluate the total factored axial load per shaft, including drag load at the structural Strength Limit State using Eq. C305.4.1-1.

Drag load is the total sum of skin friction in the downwards direction (negative skin friction) for the full length of the shaft in contact with the soil above the neutral plane. Calculate skin friction and drag load using static analysis methods, according to LRFD 10.8.3.5 and GEC 10, Section 13.6. In this calculation, assume an initial base settlement $w_b$ and associated mobilization of tip (base) resistance either based on integration of the load displacement curves for both side resistance and end bearing according to LRFD 10.8.2.2 or by utilizing advanced numerical modelling to integrate a series of $t$-$z$ and $q$-$w$ curves generated through a computerized solution according to GEC 10, Appendix D. Use a structural resistance factor for drilled shafts as reinforced concrete columns in compression in accordance with LRFD 5.5.4.2 (typically, $\phi_c = 0.75$ for a compression-controlled section with spirals).

Evaluate the downdrag movement, as it contributes to drilled shaft head settlement, at the geotechnical Service Limit State. Consider the shaft downdrag movement ($S_{dd} =$ settlement due to downdrag) equal to the settlement of the foundation soil at the location of the neutral plane, plus the elastic compression of the shaft above the location of the neutral plane due to the effects of the permanent load at the pile head plus the drag load. Calculate settlement of the foundation soils according to LRFD 10.6.2.4. Calculate elastic compression of the drilled shaft according to GEC 10, Section 14.4.2.1. Exclude transient loads from the calculation of settlement and elastic compression.

For rock-socketed drilled shafts or drilled shafts founded on top of bedrock, include both transient loads and drag load in the computation of total factored axial load per shaft, and provide this value in the structure general notes.

For friction drilled shafts, do not include both transient loads and drag load in the computation of total factored axial load per shaft. If transient loads exceed the value of drag load, include only transient loads. If transient loads are less than the value of drag load, include only the drag load.

305.4.1.3 UPLIFT

Calculate drilled shaft uplift resistance according to LRFD 10.8 using static analysis methods to determine the nominal uplift resistance due to side resistance.
Where the drilled shaft length is controlled by the required uplift resistance, specify a drilled shaft tip elevation.

If site constraints or other factors make permanent tensile loads on drilled shafts unavoidable, use a redundancy load modifier of $\eta_R = 1.05$ for the permanent tensile loads on the foundation elements.

A plan note is available in BDM Section 600.

The Department will generally not permit the use of Drilled shafts under permanent tensile loads.

### 305.4.2 ROCK-SOCKETED DRILLED SHAFTS

For competent bedrock with a minimum rock socket length equal to 1.5 times the rock socket diameter, use LRFD Eq. 10.8.3.5.4c-1 to evaluate the nominal unit tip resistance of the bedrock.

For all other rock, provide a justification in the Foundation Report and evaluate the nominal unit tip resistance of the rock mass through Geological Strength Index (GSI) and LRFD Eq. 10.8.3.5.4c-2.

Neglect side resistance for rock sockets with a length equal to or less than 1.5 times the rock socket diameter. Otherwise, neglect the contribution to skin friction provided by the top 2-ft of the rock socket.

When drilled shafts are socketed into bedrock, do not specify the tip elevation. Instead, provide the approximate top of the bedrock elevation and the length of the bedrock socket in the profile view on the Final Structure Site Plan.

If a rock socket is not necessary either for bearing or lateral resistance, and the bedrock is competent slightly strong or stronger rock, drilled shafts may be founded on top of the bedrock, or utilize a rock socket length of less than 1.5 times the rock socket diameter. In this case, use LRFD Eq. 10.8.3.5.4c-2 to evaluate the nominal unit tip resistance of the bedrock.

For rock-socketed drilled shafts or drilled shafts founded on top of bedrock, neglect the contribution to side resistance from the soil overburden.

### 305.4.3 FRICTION DRILLED SHAFTS

Do not specify friction drilled shafts before consulting the Office of Geotechnical Engineering.

For friction drilled shafts, show the tip elevation on the Final Structure Site Plan.

If the bedrock is weak or disintegrated, and the designer anticipates difficulty verifying the top of bedrock during construction, a tip elevation may be specified.

This type of drilled shaft will usually not have a reduction in diameter for a rock socket, in which case, the drilled shaft diameter in the soil overburden should be considered as the rock socket diameter for determining its length.

The amount of deformation necessary to mobilize the tip resistance in rock is much less than that to mobilize the side resistance in soil.

C305.4.2

C305.4.3
For friction drilled shafts in cohesive soils, except as noted below, neglect the contribution of side resistance for portions of the length of the drilled shaft as specified in *LRFD 10.8.3.5.1*. Do not neglect the upper 5-ft if the top of the shaft is buried greater than 5-ft, or there is a buried drilled shaft cap above the drilled shaft.

If friction drilled shafts in cohesive soils are specified at a center-to-center spacing of 6 drilled shaft diameters or more, or if friction drilled shafts in cohesionless soils are specified at a center-to-center spacing of 4 drilled shaft diameters or more, ignore group effects for axial loading.

**305.4.4 DESIGN CONSIDERATIONS**

Provide a unique number designation for each drilled shaft in the Plans.

For pier columns supported directly on drilled shafts, the top of the drilled shaft shall be 1 foot above the OHWM for piers in water, and 1 foot below the ground surface for piers not in water.

For drilled shafts with 4.5-ksi Class QC 4 or Class QC 5 concrete, assume a concrete strength of 4.0-ksi in the design. For a concrete strength above 4.5-ksi, assume a strength of 0.90 $f'_c$ in the design.

Drilled shafts shall be plumb. Do not batter drilled shafts.

Where casings are to be left in place, provide a plan note on either the Estimated Quantities or General Notes sheet.

Provide a construction joint between the top of a drilled shaft and the bottom of the supported substructure element.

**305.4.4.1 DRILLED SHAFT SPACING, CLEARANCE, AND EMBEDMENT INTO CAP**

Maximize the drilled shaft spacing based on the factored resistance in axial compression, considering redundancy and group effects.

The drilled shaft cap shall be adequately reinforced based on the proposed center-to-center spacing of the drilled shafts. Perform a punching shear analysis of the drilled shaft cap to determine the necessary cap thickness.

For guidance on group effects for axially loaded friction drilled shafts, refer to *LRFD 10.8.3.6*.

**C305.4.4**

The designer may choose to number the drilled shafts on the individual substructure plan sheet or on a separate drilled shaft foundation layout sheet.

This elevation coincides with the Department’s requirement for the top of the Temporary Access Fill specified in *SS832*.

The reason for the strength reduction in design is to account for potential poor placement control during construction, and the inability to inspect the placement.

**C305.4.4.1**

For guidance on center-to-center spacing of drilled shafts, refer to *LRFD 10.8.1.2*.
The distance from the edge of a drilled shaft cap to the side of a drilled shaft shall be not less than 12-in.

### 305.4.4.2 DRILLED SHAFT SIZE

Drilled shafts that directly support pier columns shall be 6-in larger in diameter than the diameter of the supported pier column. The minimum diameter for drilled shafts that directly support pier columns shall be 42-in. The minimum diameter for drilled shafts that support all other substructure types shall be 36-in. The rock socket diameter shall be 6-in less than the diameter of the drilled shaft in the soil overburden.

The design diameter of the drilled shaft shall include an allowance for minimum concrete cover over the reinforcing steel. For rock sockets, the minimum concrete cover shall be 3.0-in. For the length of drilled shafts in the soil overburden, the minimum concrete cover shall be as follows:

- **A.** 3.0-in for shafts ≤ 3'-0" diameter
- **B.** 4.0-in for > 3'-0" but < 5'-0" diameter
- **C.** 6.0-in for shafts ≥ 5'-0" diameter

The increase in concrete cover with respect to increasing drilled shaft diameter is due to allowance for placement tolerance given potential misalignment or “wander” in the drilled shaft tooling.

Show the Drilled shaft diameters on the Final Structure Site Plan.

### 305.4.4.3 REINFORCING STEEL

The clear distance between parallel longitudinal bars and between transverse reinforcement shall be five times the maximum aggregate size.

The maximum aggregate size for an ODOT QC5 mix design according to C&MS Table 499.03-1 is 3/8-in or 1-in. If mass concrete provisions govern, please note that QC4 mix designs have a nominal 1-in maximum aggregate size requirement according to C&MS 499.03. A plan note modifying the nominal maximum coarse aggregate size in the drilled shaft QC5 or QC4 mix design is available in BDM Section 600.

Where reinforcement spacing cannot be met between parallel longitudinal bars, consideration may be given to bundling of bars or to specifying an inner and outer reinforcing cage. Inner and outer reinforcing cages should only be considered when bundling of bars is impractical. Consideration may also be given to embedding a steel beam section within the drilled shaft. A steel beam is particularly useful for increasing lateral resistance.

Provide either spirals or ties as the transverse reinforcement for drilled shafts.
For temporarily cased or uncased drilled shafts, meet the requirements of LRFD Eq. 5.11.4.1.4-1 and use a minimum #4 bar for the transverse reinforcement. Do not use LRFD Eq. 5.6.4.6-1.

LRFD Eq. 5.6.4.6-1 provides erroneous results based on the ratio of $A_g/A_c$. As the concrete cover increases, impractical areas of transverse reinforcement are required. LRFD Eq. 5.11.4.1.4-1 provides the volumetric reinforcement requirements for confinement of primary steel at locations where plastic hinges are formed during seismic events. This provision of the BDM applies LRFD Eq 5.11.4.1.4-1 to the entire length of the drilled shaft.

For drilled shafts with permanent casing, use a #4 bar size with a pitch or spacing of 12-in for the transverse reinforcement.

Provide a construction joint between the top of the drilled shaft and the bottom of any supported substructure element.

In the case of a directly supported column, the designer should specify reinforcing steel that incorporates the required lap splices at the construction joint. The developed lap splice should allow for both the required lap and minimum cover arising from the misalignment of the drilled shaft with respect to the column. One possible alternative that incorporates a lap splice is shown in BDM Figure 305-4. In this example, the use of ties above the construction joint allows for 3-in of misalignment of the drilled shaft and column as shown in BDM Figure 305-4 but does require an analysis considering a smaller core area.
Figure 305-4

- Provide the minimum cover as follows:
  - 3" for shaft diameters ≤ 3'-0" (max.)
  - 4" for shaft diameters > 3'-0" but ≤ 5'-0"
  - 6" for shaft diameters > 5'-0"

- When rock socket is used, the diameter of the rock socket will dictate the diameter/cover of the spiral in the drilled shaft. When no rock socket is present, use the requirements listed above for determining the cover for the drilled shaft reinforcing.
When the exposed length of the pier column is relatively short, a single full-length reinforcing steel cage extending from the bottom of the drilled shaft into the pier cap may be specified while maintaining a minimum 3-in concrete cover within the pier column.

305.4.4.4 DRILLED SHAFT DESIGN DEPTH

When determining design depth for rock-socketed drilled shafts, assume the top of the bedrock socket as the elevation on the nearest soil boring where the top of rock (TR) is identified.

When determining design depth for friction drilled shafts, use static analysis methods to determine the penetration depth necessary to develop the required factored resistance in axial compression as described in BDM Section 305.4.1 using geotechnical resistance factors as specified in LRFD Table 10.5.2.4-1.

When placing drilled shafts through new embankment, the shafts shall penetrate a minimum distance of 10-ft into the existing soils.

When placing drilled shafts through an MSE wall backfill, the shafts shall penetrate a minimum distance of 15-ft into the existing soils below the leveling pad elevation. If bedrock exists within the minimum penetration length, the drilled shafts shall be socketed into bedrock a minimum of 5-ft.

If bedrock is within 10-ft of the ground surface, or within 10-ft of the bottom of the drilled shaft cap, the drilled shafts shall be socketed into bedrock a minimum of 5-ft.

305.4.4.5 VERTICAL AND HORIZONTAL MOVEMENTS

Perform drilled shaft foundation settlement and horizontal movement analyses according to LRFD 10.8.2. Consider the effects of downdrag in accordance with BDM Section 305.4.1.2. See BDM Section 305.1.3 for limits on vertical movement with respect to a supported bridge structure. Additionally, the Department will consider vertical deflections of greater than 4% of the drilled shaft diameter to be failure.

305.4.4.6 DEMONSTRATION DRILLED SHAFTS

Specify a demonstration drilled shaft for any of the following drilled shaft conditions:

If a series of soil borings indicate a sloping top of rock, interpolation between borings may be used.

The design depth may need to be adjusted during detail design as the design loads for the Service, Strength and Extreme Event Limit States are refined.

For more guidance in estimating vertical movements, see the load displacement curves in LRFD 10.8.2.2 and in publication FHWA-NHI-10-016, Geotechnical Engineering Circular 10 (GEC 10) “Drilled Shafts: Construction Procedures and LRFD Design Methods”.

A demonstration drilled shaft is used to verify the proposed construction methods for the production drilled shafts. A plan note is available in BDM Section 600.
A. Nominal shaft diameter ≥ 84-in
B. Depth ≥ 100-ft
C. Non-redundant foundation elements
D. Shaft constructed in open water without the use of a causeway
E. Shaft constructed using the wet method
F. Shaft construction using post grouting methods
G. Unusual behavior of foundation materials encountered in the geotechnical exploration soil borings

The wet method consists of using water or slurry to contain seepage and groundwater movement and placing concrete using a tremie or concrete pump.

Unusual behavior of foundation materials include: discrepancies between in-situ test results and expected behavior based on index properties; difficulty in obtaining representative samples; extremely high spatial variability in subsurface conditions; and expansive or collapsing behavior.

H. Artesian conditions or heaving sands encountered in the geotechnical exploration soil borings
I. Karstic or mine void conditions encountered in the geotechnical exploration soil borings

305.4.5 INTEGRITY TESTING OF DRILLED SHAFTS

Specify Thermal Integrity Profiling (TIP) testing according to ASTM D7949 Method B for a minimum of 10% of all drilled shafts including at least one shaft per substructure unit.

Specify TIP testing for all shafts meeting any of the following conditions:

A. Nominal shaft diameter ≥ 60-in
B. Non-redundant foundation elements
C. Shaft constructed using the wet method

For nominal drilled shaft diameters ≥ 84-in, also specify Crosshole Sonic Logging (CSL) testing in accordance with ASTM D6760.

When specifying TIP Testing by Method B, provide the number of embedded thermal sensors and their locations in the plans. Place embedded thermal sensors in string arrays at a one foot spacing between sensors on each string. When specifying CSL Testing, provide the number of access tubes and their locations in the plans.

See BDM Section C305.4.4.6 for definition of wet method.

Special Provisions for TIP and CSL are available from the Office of Geotechnical Engineering. Additional drilled shaft integrity testing methods not listed here may be considered based upon a justification study. Refer to BDM Section 202.1.3.3 for more information.

Plan notes are available in BDM Section 600.
**305.4.6 EMBANKMENT CONSTRUCTION CONSTRAINTS**

Refer to BDM Section 305.4.1.2 regarding downdrag and drag load effects from new embankment settlement, and potential methods of remediation. Refer to BDM Section 305.4.4.4 regarding drilled shaft embedment through new embankments.

**305.5 MICROPILES**

Design micropiles in accordance with *LRFD 10.9*. The resistance factor for geotechnical axial resistance shall be $\phi_{stat} = 0.70$ for micropiles installed according to Section 33 of the *AASHTO LRFD Bridge Construction Specifications*, except as modified below.

Specify the number of verification tests and show the test locations in the plans. Select the number of tests by dividing the site into zones where subsurface conditions are relatively uniform using engineering judgment and performing one test in each zone including at least one test per structure. Show verification test locations in the plans. Set the Verification Test Load (VTL) as the nominal axial resistance of the micropile. Specify the VTL in the plans.

Specify proof tests on a minimum of five percent of the production micropiles, or a minimum of one per substructure unit. Set the Proof Test Load (PTL) as 80 percent of the nominal axial resistance of the micropile. Specify the PTL in the plans.


**C305.4.6**

When placing drilled shafts through new embankment, special considerations with respect to settlement, downdrag, additional loading effects, and resistance of the shaft may be necessary. Plan notes are available in BDM Section 600 for construction constraints regarding drilled shaft installation and embankment construction.

**C305.5**

Only consider micropiles as a structure foundation in order to address a design constraint which would make installation of a different foundation type impractical or not cost effective. Examples may include: locations where difficult access or limited headroom preclude use of other deep foundation systems; when underpinning or retrofitting existing foundations; or at locations where foundations must bridge over or penetrate subsurface voids.

When the same micropile is to be tested in both tension and compression, it is recommended that the tension test be conducted first. This will allow the pile to be reseated during compression testing in the event some net upward residual movement occurs during the tension test.
Provide the total factored load in axial compression and the side and tip resistance for each micropile in the structure general notes. For laterally loaded micropiles, also provide externally applied lateral and moment bending loads, and the maximum values of the internal shear and moment.

Include Special Provision for Micropile Load Testing in the plans.

The Special Provision for Micropile Load Testing is available from the Office of Geotechnical Engineering.

**C305.6 CONTINUOUS FLIGHT AUGER (CFA) PILES**

Do not specify continuous flight auger (CFA) piles as deep foundation elements supporting bridge substructures.

These deep foundation elements are commonly referred to as auger-cast piles, continuous flight auger (CFA) piles, augered cast-in-place (ACIP) piles, and screw piles.

The following items must be considered before deciding to use CFA piles for foundation applications:

A. Quality control and structural integrity
B. Verticality of the installed CFA piles
C. Subsurface geotechnical conditions
D. Use of grout versus concrete

CFA piles may be considered for the following applications:

A2. Noise barrier wall foundations
B2. Light pole (excluding high mast tower) foundations
C2. Sign post foundations
D2. Soldier pile walls
E2. Anchored walls
F2. Building foundations
G2. Ground improvement
H2. Temporary support of excavation

There is currently no accepted LRFD procedure for the design of continuous flight auger piles. A section for the *AASHTO LRFD Bridge Design Specifications* is under development.

Design CFA piles in accordance with Allowable Stress Design (ASD) methodology as outlined in publication FHWA-HIF-07-039, Geotechnical Engineering Circular 8 (GEC 8) “Design and Construction of Continuous Flight Auger Piles.” The minimum Safety Factor for both tip resistance and side friction shall be 3.0.

Extend reinforcing steel for CFA piles to the bottom of the pile.
CFA piles shall meet the same requirements for concrete cover over reinforcing steel as drilled shafts, specified in BDM Section 305.4.4.2.

Do not construct CFA piles on a batter. Use only vertical CFA piles.

Provide the total factored load in axial compression and the side and tip resistance for the CFA piles in each substructure unit in the structure general notes. For laterally loaded CFA piles, also provide externally applied lateral and moment bending loads, and the maximum values of the internal shear and moment.

305.7 FIELD VERIFICATION OF NOMINAL RESISTANCE

Forward the reports, electronic records, calculations, and all electronic instrumentation data files from all field verification testing of nominal resistance to the Office of Geotechnical Engineering. The Department intends to collect this data in a database, and to use this data for future calibration of State-specific resistance factors.

305.7.1 DYNAMIC TESTING

When driven friction piles are specified, for each individual structure, specify one dynamic load testing item for each pile size. If multiple Ultimate Bearing Values are required for a given pile size, specify one dynamic load testing item for each Ultimate Bearing Value.

The Department requires dynamic load testing to establish the driving criteria (i.e. blows per foot of penetration) for all friction piles. If the designer determines that dynamic load testing should be considered for point bearing piles on bedrock, consult with the Office of Geotechnical Engineering prior to including this requirement in the plans. Dynamic load testing is performed in accordance with C&MS 523 and ASTM D4945, “Standard Test Method for High-Strain Dynamic Testing of Deep Foundations.” One dynamic load testing item consists of performing successful tests on two piles (which provide adequate data to provide pile driving criteria as described in C&MS 523.04) and performing a signal matching analysis of the dynamic test data on one of the two piles. One restrike item consists of performing dynamic testing on two piles and performing a signal matching analysis of the dynamic test data on one of the two piles. Restrikes are a useful tool to determine if a driven pile gains or loses capacity over time.

When large-diameter open-ended friction pipe piles are specified, specify dynamic load testing on every individual pile. Specify a signal matching analysis of the dynamic test data for each test.

Whenever CFA piles are specified as foundation elements, specify dynamic load testing on a minimum of five percent of the production CFA piles.
Whenever setup or relaxation are realized in the design, specify restrike testing of the same piles that are dynamically load tested (specify one restrike item for each dynamic load testing item on the structure).

Whenever a static load test is specified for driven piles, also specify dynamic and restrike testing according to BDM Section 305.7.2.

### 305.7.2 STATIC LOAD TEST

When driven friction piles are specified, specify a static load test when the total pile order length for an individual structure exceeds 10,000-ft for piling of the same size and Ultimate Bearing Value. Specify one subsequent static load test for each additional 10,000-ft increment of pile order length. For each static load test, specify two dynamic testing items and two restrike items. Limit this requirement by the following criteria:

A. No more than one static load test per substructure unit.

B. A maximum number of static load tests based on site variability recommendations in LRFD C10.5.5.2.3.

If a static load test is specified, use a resistance factor for design of driven piles in accordance with LRFD Table 10.5.5.2.3-1.

When large-diameter open-ended pipe piles are specified, specify a number of static load tests based on site variability recommendations in LRFD C10.5.5.2.3, or a minimum of one per structure. For each static load test, specify one dynamic testing item and one restrike item.

When friction drilled shafts are specified as structure foundation elements, specify a number of static load tests based on site variability recommendations in LRFD C10.5.5.2.3, or a minimum of one per structure.

For micropiles, specify verification tests and proof tests in accordance with BDM Section 305.5.

Do not specify static load testing for foundation elements driven to refusal on bedrock, founded on top of bedrock, or socketed into bedrock.

### C305.7.2

Static load testing for driven friction piles is performed in accordance with C&MS 506 and ASTM D1143, “Standard Test Methods for Deep Foundations Under Static Axial Compressive Load,” Procedure A: Quick Test. See BDM Section 600 for plan note addressing the disposition of the associated dynamic load tests.

The maximum number of static load tests could be increased for bridges of higher complexity or operational importance.

For each of these dynamic and restrike items, perform one test on the static load test pile and perform one on one of the anchor piles.

A drop weight test, in accordance with BDM Section 305.7.3, is an acceptable alternative to a static load test.

Micropile verification tests and proof tests are required in place of any other axial load testing.

### 305.7.3 SPECIAL LOAD TESTS

Special Load Tests include the drop weight test, Osterberg load cell test, lateral load test, and Statnamic test.

### C305.7.3

Consult with the Office of Geotechnical Engineering before specifying any special load tests.

A drop weight test is typically used to verify the nominal axial resistance of friction drilled shafts or micropiles. Perform a signal matching analysis on the dynamic test data for each drop weight test.


The Osterberg load cell test is commonly referred to as the “O-Cell test.” This test is typically utilized to verify the tip and side resistance for drilled shaft foundations that are designed to support high factored loads, or for structures with high importance factors as defined in BDM Section 100, or for substructure units supported on a single drilled shaft.


The deflection data gathered during the performance of the test is used in combination with a flexural strength and stiffness model of the drilled shaft to perform a reverse p-y analysis to determine the lateral loading characteristics of the site soils.


The Statnamic test is used for predicting the nominal axial resistance of the drilled shaft. Reduce the data collected during the test using the unloading point method (UPM) for drilled shafts less than 80-ft in length or the segmental unloading point method (SUPM) for longer drilled shafts.

306 SUBSTRUCTURE

306.1 GENERAL

306.1.1 FOOTING ELEVATIONS

Show substructure footing elevations on the Final Structure Site Plan. Refer to BDM Section 305.2.1.2 for Spread Footing elevation requirements. The top of footing (e.g. pile and drilled shaft caps) shall be a minimum of one foot below the finished ground line and shall be at least one foot below the bottom of any adjacent drainage ditch. The bottom of footing (e.g. pile and drilled shaft caps) shall not be less than 4-ft below and measured normal to the finished groundline.

306.1.2 SEALING OF CONCRETE SURFACES, SUBSTRUCTURE

Specifications for the sealer are defined in C&MS 512. Seal concrete surfaces with a concrete sealer as follows:

A. Seal the front face of abutment backwalls, from top to bridge seat, the bridge seat and the breastwall down to the groundline with an epoxy-urethane or non-epoxy sealer.

C306.1.2

The designer has the option to select a specific type of sealer, epoxy-urethane or non-epoxy. The designer also has the alternative to just use a bid item for sealer, with no preference, and allow the contractor to choose based on cost.
Sealing of the backwall is not required on prestressed box beam bridges because the beams are installed before the backwall is placed.

B. Seal the exposed surfaces of all wingwalls and retaining walls, exclusive of abutment type, that are within 30-ft of a pavement edge, with an epoxy-urethane sealer.

C. Seal ends and sides of piers exposed to traffic-induced deicer spray, from any direction, with either an epoxy-urethane or non-epoxy sealer. Top of pier caps need only be sealed if there is an expansion joint or the tops are subject to exposure to deicer-laden water.

D. Seal the total vertical surface of piers within 30-ft of a pavement edge with either an epoxy-urethane or non-epoxy sealer.

E. Seal the total vertical surface of piers supporting weathering steel superstructures with either an epoxy-urethane or non-epoxy sealer.

Include in the plans actual details showing the position, location and area required to be sealed. Do not use a plan note to describe the position as there can be both description and interpretation problems.

See BDM Figure 306-1, Figure 306-2 & Figure 306-3.

In areas where concrete surfaces have a history of graffiti vandalism, the designer may add a permanent graffiti coating meeting the requirements of S1083 on top of the epoxy-urethane or non-epoxy sealer. A plan note is available in BDM Section 602.6. The designer should limit the concrete surfaces that are treated with permanent graffiti coatings to those reachable by easy climbing and visible to the traveling public.

In accordance with C&MS 516.07, the beam seats under proposed bearing locations are not sealed.
ABUTMENT SEALING LIMITS
(FOR STEEL BEAM BRIDGE)

WINGWALL SEALING LIMITS
(TURNBACK WALL ON U-TYPE ABUTMENT)

SEALING OF CONCRETE SURFACES, SUBSTRUCTURE

WINGWALL SEALING LIMITS
(STRAIGHT WING ABUTMENT)
Seal end of pier cap

Seal entire surface area of column

Seal entire surface area

SECTION A-A

Ground Line

ELEVATION

PIER SEALING LIMITS
(EXPOSED TO DEICER SPRAY)

SEALING OF CONCRETE SURFACES, SUBSTRUCTURE

Figure 306-2
ABUTMENT SEALING LIMITS
(FOR INTEGRAL ABUTMENT STEEL BEAM BRIDGE)

ABUTMENT SEALING LIMITS
(FOR SEMI-INTEGRAL ABUTMENT STEEL BEAM BRIDGE)

SEALING OF CONCRETE SURFACES, SUBSTRUCTURE

Figure 306-3
306.2 ABUTMENTS

306.2.1 GENERAL

C306.1

Abutments should be provided with backwalls to protect the superstructure from contact with the approach fill and to assist in preventing water from reaching the bridge seat.

Examples include: rigid frame bridges, abutment walls keyed to the superstructure, and some types of U-abutments.

The earth pressure to be used will vary between at-rest and passive depending on the amount of movement into the backfill. See BDM Section 306.2.2.6 for information on how to determine the appropriate earth pressure.

Batter the front face of wall type abutments 1/16-in for each foot of abutment height. Measure height from bottom of footing to the roadway surface.

Battering the front face is to allow for slight tilting of wall type abutments after the backfill has been placed.

306.2.1.1 BEARING SEAT WIDTH

C306.2.1.1

Numerous variables influence the abutment seat width. Refer to the applicable bridge standard drawing for bridge seat width requirements for the given superstructure and substructure combination.

For abutment bearing seat width requirements for prestressed box beams refer to BDM Figure 306-7 and Figure 306-8.

Abutment seat widths shall meet the requirements of LRFD 4.7.4.4.

AASHTO seismic seat width requirements, based on length and height of structure, may require additional seat width. All defined abutment bearing seat widths can be affected due to special considerations for a specific structure or type of bearing. See BDM Section 303.1.4.

306.2.1.2 BEARING SEAT REINFORCEMENT

C306.2.1.2

Provide supplementary reinforcement in the beam seat when the cover above the main seat reinforcement exceeds 4-in within the level portion of the beam seat.

Supplementary reinforcement is used to resist local compressive and shearing stresses in the beam seat.
Choose the location and spacing of all reinforcing in bridge seats so that adequate clearance is provided for bearing anchors whether cast-in or drilled-in place.

Place a note on the substructure detail sheets cautioning the contractor to place the reinforcing to avoid interference with the anchor bolts. Also, provide a “Bearing Anchor Plan” to adequately show the location of the bearing anchors with respect to the main reinforcing bars and the edges of the bridge seats.

306.2.1.3 PHASED CONSTRUCTION JOINTS

Seal the vertical joint between construction phases on the back side of abutment backwalls and breastwalls from the top of the footing to the approach slab seat with ITEM 512, TYPE 2 WATERPROOFING, 3-ft wide centered on the joint.

306.2.1.4 EARTH BENCHES & SLOPES

Do not provide a rectangular or trapezoidal shaped bench in the soil as seen in the Plan View in front of the abutment face.

Spill thru slopes shall be 2:1, except where soil analysis or existing slopes dictates flatter slopes. Measure the slope normal to the face of the abutment.

For superelevated bridges over waterways, the intersection of the top of slope with the face of abutment shall be on a level line.

It should be noted that drilled-in place anchors use larger holes than the actual anchor and will require additional clearance.

This makes the structure unnecessarily long. The Department will permit a triangular shaped bench formed where a level top of slope intersects at the nearest face of the abutment.

During scoping of the project consider right-of-way limits, wingwall lengths, future maintenance issues, and overall bridge aesthetics and if altering the slope from 2:1 may be beneficial.

For other superelevated structures the top of slope should generally be made approximately parallel to the bridge seat.
For structures over streets and roads having steep grades, the intersection of earth slope and face of abutment may be either level or sloping dependent upon which method fits local conditions and gives the most economical and aesthetically pleasing structure.

The spill-thru slope shall intersect the face of abutment a minimum of one foot, or as specified in a standard bridge drawing, below the bridge seat for stringer type bridges. For concrete slab and prestressed box beam bridges this distance shall be 1.5-ft.

306.2.2 TYPES OF ABUTMENTS

306.2.2.1 FULL HEIGHT ABUTMENTS

In addition to the requirements in the ODOT Aesthetic Design Guidelines adhere to the following when considering an aesthetic treatment:

A. Do not use aesthetic treatments when they will not be visible to the public.
B. Meet minimum cover requirements for reinforcing steel. Do not violate minimum concrete cover over patterns or indents of the formliner where a formliner is used. This will require additional concrete and, in some cases, dimensional changes.
C. Specify generic formliner patterns. List an alternative available from at least three suppliers. The Department will not accept the listing of a formliner pattern available only from one supplier.

306.2.2.1.a COUNTERFORTS FOR FULL HEIGHT ABUTMENTS

For full height abutments exceeding 30-ft in height, the use of counterforts begins to become economical and should be investigated.

C.306.2.2

Preference should be given to the use of spill-thru type abutments.

For stub abutments with spread footing on soil, refer to BDM Figure 305-2 for footing elevations.

Integral and semi-integral designs should be used where possible, see BDM Sections 306.2.2.5 and 306.2.2.6 respectively for additional information.

C.306.2.2.1

When aesthetic treatments are being considered the following criteria should be followed:

A. The selected pattern of formliner should be easily visible from a distance. Small or ornate patterns not easily visible from a distance do not enhance the structure and are not cost effective.
B. The cost of formliners selected should add only minimal additional cost to the overall cost of the concrete (1 to 3 percent per yard of the abutment, pier or wall)
Stagger splices for reinforcing extending from the footing of a counterforted wall into the highly reinforced areas of the counterforts.

In counterforted walls, provide drainage at each pocket formed by the intersection of the counterfort and wall.

306.2.2.1.b SEALING STRIP FOR FULL HEIGHT ABUTMENTS

Use an impervious fabric across the expansion joints in full height abutments or retaining walls to eliminate leakage. The impervious fabric shall be C&MS 512 Type 2 Waterproofing, 3-ft wide, centered over, and extending the full length of the joint to the top of the footing. See BDM Section 306.2.5 on requirements for expansion joints in abutments.

306.2.2 ABUTMENTS SUPPORTED ON MSE WALLS

For a stub abutment supported on an MSE wall, support the abutment on deep foundations regardless of the proximity of bedrock below the MSE wall leveling pad. The Department will not permit the use of spread footing supported abutments on MSE walls. Piles shall have a minimum 15-ft embedment below the MSE wall. If rock exists within the minimum embedment depth, place the piles in pre-bored holes that extend a minimum of 5-ft into bedrock. Backfill the pre-bored holes with Class QC Misc. concrete up to the top of the leveling pad elevation after pile installation.

306.2.2.3 STUB ABUTMENTS

If a stub abutment is to support a bridge having provision for relative movement between the superstructure and the abutment, at least two rows of piles are required.

For phased construction projects, do not design an abutment phase supported on less than three (3) piles or two (2) drilled shafts.

Where multiple rows of piles are used, the piles shall align in both directions.

C306.2.2.2

When conditions are appropriate, the use of MSE walls to shorten bridge spans and eliminate embankment slopes is acceptable.

Refer to BDM Section 202.1.3.6 for the staged review requirements for MSE walls.

Spread footing supported abutments on MSE walls are susceptible to loss of bearing caused by erosion during the service life of the structure.

The front row piles may be battered to resist lateral loads. Typical pile batter is 1(H):4(V).

Where two rows of piles are used, place the rear piles directly behind alternate front piles.
306.2.2.4  CAPPED PILE ABUTMENTS

Use one row of vertical piles for integral capped pile abutments.

Show the construction joint at the top of the footing for cap pile abutments as optional.

For phased construction projects, do not design an abutment phase supported on less than three (3) piles or two (2) drilled shafts.

Support capped pile abutments on at least 5 piles. Refer to *LRFD 10.5.5.2.3* for more information.

This requirement is to avoid non-redundant designs.

306.2.2.5  INTEGRAL ABUTMENTS

Integral construction involves attaching the superstructure and substructure (abutment) together. The longitudinal movements are accommodated by the flexibility of the abutments (capped pile abutment on single row of piles regardless of pile type). The superstructure may be structural steel, cast-in-place concrete, prestressed concrete I-beams or prestressed concrete box beams.

Integral design should be considered where practical.

Do not use integral design at sites where there are concerns about settlement or differential settlement.

Do not use integral design with curved primary members or primary members that have bend points in any stringer line (dog-legged).

Standard Bridge Drawing *ICD-1-82* shows details for integral abutments with a steel beam or girder superstructure and BDM Figure 306-5 shows the bridge length limits for *ICD-1-82*. Bridge design data sheet *ICD-2-18* shows details for integral abutments with a prestressed concrete I-beam superstructure and BDM Figure 306-6 shows the bridge length limits for *ICD-2-18*. The length limitations defined for integral prestressed I-beam bridges corresponds to the same superstructure movement demand for steel bridges with a maximum length of 400’, considering a temperature change of 150° F for steel bridges and 80° F for concrete bridges, and a shrinkage coefficient of 0.0002 in/in for concrete bridges.

Refer to BDM Figure 306-7 for details for an integral abutment with a prestressed box beam superstructure. The bridge length limits for composite prestressed box beam bridges are the same as a prestressed concrete I-beam bridges.
If the design is outside of the constraints of the standard bridge drawing or bridge design data sheets, then an alternate abutment type should be chosen, or the integral design shall be designed to account for the given circumstances. The design shall consider important variables such as, structure length, skew, lateral earth pressure and fixity of the foundation and connecting elements.

Assume the expansion length, at the abutment, is two-thirds (2/3) of the total length of the structure.

Use expansion bearings at all piers for new structures. Design the pier expansion bearings proportionally (by distance) to the assumption that the 2/3 movement could occur at one of the abutments.

Do not use cantilevered or turn-back wingwalls with integral abutments.

Support integral abutments on a single row of parallel piles. If an integral abutment design uses steel H-piles, orient the piles so the webs is parallel to the centerline of bearing.

For phased construction projects, do not design an abutment phase to be supported on less than three (3) piles.

Detail a closure section in the integral diaphragm between sections of staged construction to allow for dead load rotation of the main beams or girders.

Seal the horizontal and vertical joints at the back face of the backwall by use of a 3-ft wide sheet of nylon reinforced neoprene sheeting. Attach the sheeting on only one side of the joint to allow for the anticipated movement of the integral section. For more information refer to C&MS 516.

For an integral design to work properly, the geometry of the approach slab, the design of the wingwalls, (see BDM Section 306.2.4) and the transition parapets must be compatible with the freedom required for the integral (beams, deck, backwall, wingwalls and approach slab) connection to rotate and translate longitudinally. When this connection is not permitted to rotate or translate longitudinally an axial force will be induced onto the superstructure from the passive earth pressures that has not been accounted for in the design.
INTEGRAL BOX BEAM ABUTMENT DETAILS
(CAST-IN-PLACE FOUNDATION SHOWN, H-PILE SIMILAR)

1. PROVIDE A 1' DEEP SHEAR KEY CENTERED IN THE BEAM END. THE SHEAR KEY HEIGHT SHALL BE ONE-HALF OF THE BOX BEAM HEIGHT AND THE WIDTH SHALL BE 26" FOR 3'-0" BOXES AND 28" FOR 4'-0" BOXES.

2. WHEN DIMENSIONING THE TOTAL THICKNESS OF THE POLYSTYRENE, DESIGNERS SHOULD CONSIDER THAT THE MATERIAL IS AVAILABLE IN THE FOLLOWING THICKNESSES: 1/8" , 1/4" , 1/2" , 2" , 3/4" AND 3". POLYSTYRENE SHALL BE PAIRED FOR UNDER ITEM 511 - CLASS GC2 CONCRETE, AS PER PLAN. INCLUDE THE FOLLOWING NOTE IN THE STRUCTURE GENERAL NOTES:

ITEM 511 - CLASS GC2 CONCRETE, AS PER PLAN: FURNISH MATERIAL MEETING THE REQUIREMENTS OF ASTM C578 TYPE IV, NEATLY CUT MATERIAL AS NECESSARY TO ALLOW FOR PROPER INSTALLATION. JOINTS AT ABUTTING PIECES SHALL BE SEALED WITH DUCT TAPE. ALLOWABLE TOLERANCE FOR THE TOTAL THICKNESS OF THE MATERIAL SHALL BE -0", +1/2", DO NOT PLACE MORE THAN TWO LAYERS OF POLYSTYRENE TO ACHIEVE TOTAL THICKNESS.

3. THIS DETAIL SHOWS CAST-IN-PLACE PILES. INTEGRAL ABUTMENT DETAILS FOR H-PILES SHALL BE SIMILAR. H-PILES SHALL BE ORIENTED WITH THE FLANGES PERPENDICULAR TO THE CENTERLINE OF ABUTMENT BEARINGS.

4. THE ASSUMED ORIENTATION OF THIS CROSS-SECTION IS PERPENDICULAR TO THE CENTERLINE OF ABUTMENT BEARINGS.

5. PLACE ALL VERTICAL BARS NORMAL TO THE CENTERLINE OF ABUTMENT BEARINGS, ALL REINFORCING SHOWN IS THE MINIMUM REQUIRED AND SHALL BE DESIGNED.

Figure 306-7
306.2.2.6 SEMI-INTEGRAL ABUTMENTS

Contrary to integral construction, semi-integral construction has no structural connection between the superstructure and the substructure. This design allows the superstructure and the approach slab to move together independent of the abutment. The longitudinal movements are absorbed between the end of the approach slab and the roadway. For details at the end of the approach slab refer the BDM Section 310.2 and standard bridge drawings AS-1-15 and AS-2-15. The superstructure may be structural steel, prestressed concrete I-beams or prestressed concrete box beams.

Semi-integral design should be considered and is preferred to abutments with a deck joint.

This design should be used for uncurved (straight beams) structures.

Do not attach wingwalls and transition parapets (if any) to the superstructure. The vertical joints between the wingwalls and transition parapets shall be parallel with the centerline of the roadway. Fill the joints between superstructure and wingwalls with 2-in performed expansion joint filler material, per C&MS 705.03.

Generally, there are no skew limitations when using a semi-integral design. Refer to standard bridge drawing SICD-1-96 for additional details for semi-integral abutment designs for steel structures. Use BDM Figure 306-5 for the bridge length limits for SICD-1-96. Refer to standard bridge drawing PSID-1-13 for additional details for semi-integral abutment designs for prestressed concrete I-beam structures. Use BDM Figure 306-6 for the bridge length limits for prestressed concrete I-beam structures. See BDM Figure 306-8 for semi-integral details for prestressed box beam structures.
Figure 306-8

1. PROVIDE A 1" DEEP SHEAR KEY CENTERED IN THE BEAM END. THE SHEAR KEY HEIGHT SHALL BE ONE-HALF OF THE BOX BEAM HEIGHT AND THE WIDTH SHALL BE 26" FOR 3'-0" BOXES AND 38" FOR 4'-0" BOXES.

2. WHEN DIMENSIONING THE TOTAL THICKNESS OF THE POLYSTYRENE, DESIGNERS SHOULD CONSIDER THAT THE MATERIAL IS AVAILABLE IN THE FOLLOWING THICKNESSES: 1", 1 1/8", 2", 2 5/8", AND 3". POLYSTYRENE SHALL BE PAIRED FOR UNDER ITEM 511 - CLASS C80 CONCRETE, AS PER PLAN. INCLUDE THE FOLLOWING NOTE IN THE STRUCTURE GENERAL NOTES:

   ITEM 511 - CLASS C80 CONCRETE, AS PER PLAN. FURNISH MATERIAL MEETING THE REQUIREMENTS OF ASTM C578 TYPE IV. NEATLY CUT MATERIAL AS NECESSARY TO ALLOW FOR PROPER INSTALLATION. JOINTS AT ABUTTING PIECES SHALL BE SEALED WITH DUCT TAPE. ALLOWABLE TOLERANCE FOR THE TOTAL THICKNESS OF THE MATERIAL SHALL BE 0", +/- 1/2". DO NOT PLACE MORE THAN TWO LAYERS OF POLYSTYRENE TO ACHIEVE TOTAL THICKNESS.

3. THIS DETAIL SHOWS CAST-IN-PLACE PILES. INTEGRAL ABUTMENT DETAILS FOR H-PILES SHALL BE SIMILAR. H-PILES SHALL BE ORIENTED WITH THE FLANGES PARALLEL TO THE CENTERLINE OF ABUTMENT BEARINGS.

   FOR DRILLED SHAFT FOUNDATIONS, THE DRILLED SHAFT CAP SHALL EXTEND 6" BEYOND THE DIAMETER OF THE SHAFT TO ALLOW FOR MISALIGNMENT DURING CONSTRUCTION. THE CENTERLINE OF THE DRILLED SHAFT AND THE CENTERLINE OF ABUTMENT BEARINGS SHALL COINCIDE.

4. THE ASSUMED ORIENTATION OF THIS CROSS-SECTION IS PERPENDICULAR TO THE CENTERLINE OF ABUTMENT BEARINGS.

5. PLACE ALL VERTICAL BARS NORMAL TO THE CENTERLINE OF ABUTMENT BEARINGS. ALL REINFORCING SHOWN IS THE MINIMUM REQUIRED AND SHALL BE DESIGNED.
Do not use semi-integral design with a single row of piles.

The foundation for these designs must be stable and fixed in position for the design to function as intended.

Do not use semi-integral designs at sites where there are concerns about settlement or differential settlement.

Semi-integral details can be used on wall type abutments, spill-thru type abutments on two or more rows of piles, abutments on drilled shaft, or abutments with a spread footing may be appropriate for semi-integral abutments.

Assume the expansion length, at the abutment, is two-thirds (2/3) of the total length of the structure regardless of structural rigidity.

All pier bearings should be expansion bearings.

Always use expansion bearings for the abutment bearings. Design the pier expansion bearings proportionally (by distance) to the assumption that the 2/3 movement could occur at one of the abutments.

The use of a fixed pier does not allow an increase in bridge length nor does it reduce the 2/3 movement assumption.

If unsymmetrical spans (from a thermal neutral point viewpoint) are used, either all pier bearings are to be expansion or piers with fixed bearings are to be designed for the forces induced by unbalanced thermal movements.

If a fixed pier is used and the abutment diaphragm is subject to lateral earth pressures, consider the axial loads induced in the beams from the earth pressures in the pier design.

Fill the horizontal joint in the backwall created between the expansion section of the semi-integral abutment (diaphragm) and the beam seat with expanded polystyrene sheet or some equal material to act as form work for the placement of the semi-integral diaphragm concrete.

Seal both the horizontal and vertical joints at the back face of the backwall with a 3-ft wide sheet of nylon reinforced neoprene sheeting. Attach the sheeting on only one side of the joint to allow for the anticipated movement of the integral section. For more information refer to C&MS 516.

For phased construction projects, do not design an abutment phase to be supported on less than three (3) piles or two (2) drilled shafts.

For phase constructed semi-integral designs, detail a closure section in the diaphragm between stages of construction to allow for dead load rotation of the main beams or girders.
When a semi-integral superstructure expands, earth pressures are generated on the back face of each diaphragm. These earth pressures act perpendicular to the diaphragm, and a skewed abutment will create an eccentricity about the center of the bridge. Without proper restraint, the bridge will rotate causing localized points of high stress at wingwalls and increased stresses in cross-frames, flanges, webs and bearings (See BDM Figure 306-9).

For all semi-integral superstructures regardless of skew angle, place at least one diaphragm guide for each abutment as shown in the Standard Bridge Drawing, SICD-2-14. For structures constructed in phases, construct the guide in the first phase of diaphragm construction.

The Department may consider alternative sources of restraint in lieu of diaphragm guides during the normal staged review process.

The amount of thermal movement, the height of the diaphragm, the length of the diaphragm, the amount of skew and soil data may warrant the need for an additional diaphragm guide at each abutment. A simple force analysis of a bridge superstructure with equivalent Resultant Horizontal Earth Loads (EH) at each abutment yields the following design loads on one diaphragm guide at each abutment:

\[ DG_\perp = \gamma EH \sin(\theta) \]
\[ DG_{||} = 0.2 \gamma EH \sin(\theta) \]

Where:

\( DG_\perp = \) Primary factored load acting on Diaphragm Guide in a direction perpendicular to the longitudinal axis of the bridge.

\( DG_{||} = \) Factored load acting on Diaphragm Guide in a direction parallel to the longitudinal axis of the bridge.

\( \gamma = \) Load factor, LRFD Table 3.4.1-1

\( \theta = \) Skew angle
Depending upon the amount of thermal movement, the earth pressure acting on each diaphragm could be as little as the at-rest earth pressure or as much as passive earth pressure. As noted in LRFD C3.11.5.4, the movement required to mobilize full passive pressure is five percent of the height on which the passive pressure acts. When determining the earth pressure and its load factor, linear interpolation between at-rest and full passive pressure based on the amount of movement necessary to mobilize full passive pressure is acceptable.

Design Data Sheet, SICDD-2-14, provides designers detailing guidance for diaphragm reinforcement around the diaphragm guide.

Designing the Diaphragm Guides for a seismic horizontal connection force in accordance with LRFD 3.10.9.2 is not required.

Install Diaphragm Guides on existing abutments being converted to semi-integral abutments as noted above. If the amount of abutment work will not accommodate the installation of the cast-in-place Diaphragm Guide reinforcement shown in SICD-2-14, then install the reinforcement in accordance with Item 510 using non-shrink, non-metallic grout. Fully detail the retrofit Diaphragm Guide in the plans, and show pay ITEM 511 SEMI-INTEGRAL DIAPHRAGM GUIDE as “As Per Plan”.

When all of the bridge bearings are expansion bearings, consider providing temporary fixity before the backfill is placed behind both abutment diaphragms. Sliding plate bearings especially those with PTFE surfaces have shown a tendency to allow the superstructure to move during construction.

306.2.3 ABUTMENT DRAINAGE

306.2.3.1 BACKWALL DRAINAGE

306.2.3.1.a POROUS BACKFILL

For walls that will experience applied earth pressures exceeding active pressure, provide porous backfill immediately behind abutments and retaining walls according to C&MS 518. Drain the porous backfill using a corrosion resistant pipe system into which water can percolate. See BDM Section 306.2.3.3 for possible exceptions.

C306.2.3.1.a

Use porous backfill to provide drainage behind semi-integral and integral diaphragms.
Wrap porous backfill with geotextile fabric per C&MS 712.09, Type A. Cover the vertical and bottom interface between the porous backfill and the excavation with the geotextile fabric. Include a 6-in vertical up turn between the porous backfill and the back face of the abutment. Extend the porous backfill excavation to the horizontal plane of the subgrade or 1-ft below the embankment surface. Extend the porous backfill to the bottom of the abutment footing except when the vertical backface of the abutment footing extends more than 1-ft out from the vertical backface of the abutment backwall. In this case, extend the porous backfill to the top of the abutment footing. Place the porous backfill so that it is 2-ft thick for its full height behind the abutment and wingwalls except where the vertical backface of the abutment footing extends out 1-ft or less.

Place a corrugated plastic pipe drainage system at the bottom of the porous backfill and slope pipe a minimum of 1% to allow drainage. Specify corrugated plastic pipe per C&MS 518 in the plans.

Use standard corrugated plastic pipe segments, tees and elbows (either 90-degree or adjustable) for the pipe drainage system design. Connect pipe segments with overlapping bands. Install end caps at the ends of runs, unless intended to function as outlets.

While galvanized corrugated pipe was used for years, the inertness and life expectancy of smooth internal wall plastic corrugated pipe makes this the better material to specify.

While a single outlet for the pipe drainage systems in the porous backfill can be adequate, the designer should evaluate whether the length of the drainage run requires multiple outlets to supply the porous backfill with a positive drainage system.

Do not use PGD to provide drainage behind semi-integral or integral diaphragms.

Refer to BDM Figure 306-10 and Figure 306-11 for more information.
306.2.3.2 BRIDGE SEAT DRAINAGE

For abutments supporting steel beams, steel girders or prestressed I-beams with a deck joint, provide drainage of the bearing seat by sloping the bearing seat away from the backwall at 1/4-in/ft, except at the bearings.
306.2.3.3 WEEP HOLES

If a location demands the use of weep holes, place the weep holes through abutments and/or retaining walls 6-in to 12-in above the higher of OHWM or ground line. Show the porous backfill with geotextile fabric behind the walls to extend at least 6-in below the bottom of the weep holes.

Do not use weep hole type drainage systems with concrete slope protection.

Where sidewalks are located immediately adjacent to wall type abutments or retaining walls, weep holes are not permitted. Instead use one of the options discussed in BDM Section 306.2.3.1.

306.2.4 WINGWALLS

Design wingwalls to have sufficient length to prevent the roadway embankment from encroaching on the stream channel or clear opening. The maximum slope of the fill behind the wingwall is 1 vertical to 2 horizontal, and compute wingwall lengths on this basis.

306.2.5 EXPANSION & CONTRACTION JOINTS

Do not place an expansion joint in an abutment breastwall beneath the superstructure. When the total length of wingwalls and breastwall exceeds 90-ft in length, place vertical expansion joints just beyond the limits the superstructure.

Fill expansion joints with preformed expansion joint material, C&MS 705.03.

Provide waterproofing for the expansion joints as described in BDM Section 306.2.2.1.b.

Detail reinforcing steel so it does not project through expansion joints.

Do not use contraction joints on abutments or wingwalls.

306.3 PIERS

306.3.1 GENERAL

Measure the height of the pier from the lowest of the footing elevation to the highest beam seat elevation.
During phased construction of a capped pile pier, do not design a pier phase to be supported on less than three (3) piles. For cap and column piers, do not design a phase to be supported on less than two (2) columns.

For a new or replacement structure, the Department will not permit individual free-standing columns without a cap.

In the design of piers which are readily visible to the public, appearance should be given consideration if it does not add appreciably to the cost of the pier. Refer to ODOT’s Aesthetic Design Guidelines for additional information.

306.3.2 FOOTING WIDTH

Where piling is used to support a free-standing pier, the minimum distance between centers of outside piles, measured across the footing, is one-fifth the height of the pier.

The minimum width of footing supported by a drilled shaft is the diameter of the shaft plus 6-in.

The minimum width of a spread footing for a free-standing pier is one-fourth the height of the pier where founded on soil and one-fifth the height of the pier where founded on bedrock.

306.3.3 TYPES OF PIERS

For waterway bridges use one of the following pier types:

A. Capped Pile Pier
B. Cap-and-Column Pier
C. Solid Wall or T-type Pier

For bridges over railroads, use one of the following pier types:

A. T-type Pier
B. Solid Wall Pier
C. Cap-and-Column Pier.

306.3.3.1 CAP & COLUMN PIERS

For highway grade separations, the preferred pier type is cap-and-column.
When designing the cantilever portions of cap and
column piers, calculate the design moments at the
actual centerline of the column.

For grade separation structure, support cap-and-
column piers within 30-ft of the edge of pavement on
a minimum of three (3) columns.

Select cap dimensions that meet strength requirements
and provide necessary bridge seat widths according to
BDM Section 303.1.4.1.a.

The purpose for this provision is to reduce the
potential for total pier failure in the event of an impact
involving a large vehicle or its cargo. This requirement
only applies to the final pier configuration. Piers being
phase constructed may be temporarily supported on
less than three (3) columns.

Typically, the pier cap ends should be cantilevered and
have squared ends. Caps should be cantilevered
beyond the face of the end column to provide
approximately balanced factored dead load moments
in the cap. The end of the cantilevered caps should be
formed perpendicular to the longitudinal centerline of
the cap to allow for uniform development lengths for
the reinforcing steel. Cantilevered pier caps may have
the bottom surface of the cantilever sloped upward
from the column toward the end of the cap. Cantilevered caps may be eliminated for waterway
crossing where debris removal access is an issue.

The minimum column diameter is 36-in.

Design columns as compression members according
to LRFD 5.6.4 and 5.11. The requirements of LRFD
5.6.4.6 for minimum spiral reinforcement are not
required. Design spiral and tie reinforcement using
LRFD Eqn. 5.11.4.1.4-1.

Refer to BDM Section 310.6 for crash wall
requirements.

306.3.1.a CAP & COLUMN PIERS ON PILES

For piers supported on piles, place a separate footing
under each column with a minimum of 4 piles per
footing.

For grade separation structures, place the top of the
pier's footings a minimum of 1-ft below the level of
the bottom of the adjacent ditch. This applies even
when the pier is located in a raised earth median
barrier.

306.3.1.b CAP & COLUMN PIERS ON
DRILLED SHAFTS

Where columns are supported on a drilled shaft
foundation, construct the drilled shaft at least 6-in
larger in diameter than the column.

C306.3.1.b

This is to allow for field location tolerances of the
drilled shaft.
Locate the diameter change between the column and drilled shaft foundation 1-ft below ground level or 1-ft above the OHWM.

### 306.3.3.1.c CAP & COLUMN PIERS ON SPREAD FOOTINGS

Where cap-and-column piers are supported by spread footings on existing soils or on embankment fill, construct a continuous footing the extends beyond the center of the end column a minimum of 1/3 of the distance between the end column and the adjacent column.

Where cap-and-column piers are supported by spread footings on bedrock, construct a separate footing under each column.

For grade separation structures, locate the top of pier footings in accordance with BDM Section 305.2.1.2.a. Do not place the bottom of the footing in existing soil or on embankment fill above the frost line.

Build the footing for a free-standing pier with a minimum width equal to one-fourth the height of the pier where founded on soil and one-fifth the height of the pier where founded on bedrock.

### 306.3.3.2 CAPPED PILE PIERS

Steel H-piles shall be a minimum HP12x53. Show the piles on the plans with the flanges of the H-section perpendicular to the face of the pier cap.

For the determination of unsupported length, include the embedded depth to pile fixity and, if applicable, the scour depths.

See BDM Section 305.3.5.3 for piling protection requirements and BDM Section 606.4 for a plan note to be added to design drawings when the Capped Pile Pier Standard Bridge Drawing is not referenced.

Place piles not less than 9-in from the edge of the concrete pier cap, measured along the length of the pier.

Design the exposed portions of cast-in-place reinforced concrete piles with a 16-in minimum diameter. If 16-in cast-in-place reinforced concrete piles are utilized, use the following reinforcing cage:

- **A1.** #4 spiral, with a 12-in pitch and 12-in outside diameter
- **B1.** 8 – #6 bars equally spaced around the interior circumference of the spiral reinforcing.

Capped pile type piers should be limited to an unsupported pile length of 20-ft.
If a larger pile size is required, use the following reinforcing cage:

A\textsubscript{2}. #4 spiral with a 12-in pitch and an outside diameter that provides a minimum of 1.5-in of clear cover from the inside of the pipe pile

B\textsubscript{2}. Use the larger of 1% of the cross-sectional area of concrete or 8 – #6 bars for the longitudinal steel.

Extend the reinforcing cage from the finished top of the pile to 15-ft below the assumed point of fixity. Extend the cage a minimum of 15-ft below the ground level. Show the reinforcing steel in the structure's reinforcing bar list and include in Item 507 for payment.

Provide pile protection for exposed H-piles and unreinforced concrete cast-in-place pipe piles.

For pile embedment requirements into concrete, see BDM Section 305.3.5.1.

Show an optional construction joint at the top of pier caps for reinforced concrete slab bridges.

For phased construction projects, do not design a pier to be supported on less than three (3) piles.

Support capped pile piers on at least 5 piles. Refer to LRFD 10.5.5.2.3 for more information.

Design the connection between the pile cap and the superstructure for the horizontal connection force specified in BDM Section 301.4.4.1.b. When using Standard Bridge Drawing, CPP-1-08, verify the spacing of the P501 bars to resist this force.

Refer to the description in Standard Bridge Drawing CPP-1-08. A plan note is also available. Also See BDM Section 606.4 for a description of pile protection.

This joint is optional as some machine finishing equipment for slab bridge decks require a uniform depth of freshly placed concrete in order to obtain best results.

This provision is to avoid non-redundant designs.

No additional seismic analysis for capped pile piers is required.

**306.3.3 T-TYPE PIERS**

In the cap of a T-type pier, place the top layer of reinforcing bars the full length of the cap and provide hooks at the face for development. Extend the second layer of reinforcing steel into the stem of the pier at least the necessary development length plus the depth of the cantilever at its connection to the stem. Provide cap widths sufficient for bearing seat width according to BDM Section 301.4.4.1.a.

Design stems of T-type piers and wall type piers as compression members according to LRFD 5.6.4.

Wall type piers are characterized by the absence of clearly defined cap member.

The use of cast-in-place piles greater than 16-in in diameter will require an increase in the width of the cap of Standard Bridge Drawing CPP-1-08.
Provide lateral ties according to LRFD 5.10.4.3. For bridges located in areas where $0.10 \leq S_{D1} < 0.15$, meet the requirements of LRFD 5.11.4.1.4 and 5.11.4.1.5 for the transverse steel at the top and bottom of concrete compression members.

### 306.3.4 BEARING SEAT WIDTHS

Design the pier bearing seat width for reinforced concrete slab bridges according to Standard Bridge Drawing CPP-1-08.

### 306.3.5 POST-TENSIONED CONCRETE PIER CAPS

Where vertical clearance or geometric considerations require stringers to be continuous through and/or in the same plane as the pier cap, a post-tensioned concrete cap should be investigated as a first option in lieu of a steel pier cap. However, this is a non-redundant design, and, as specified in BDM Section 301.2, these structure types require a concurrent detail design review to be performed by the Office of Structural Engineering.

### 306.3.6 STEEL CAP PIERS

If at all possible this alternative should not be selected. This is a fracture critical design that has historically shown both steel member and weld metal cracking problems. As specified in BDM Section 301.2, these structure types require a concurrent detail design review to be performed by the Office of Structural Engineering.

If a steel box girder is required as a pier cap, provide access to the interior. The physical dimensions of the box need to be large enough to allow access to the interior for inspection, maintenance, and repair. The access hole should be a minimum of 24-in wide and 40-in tall.

Incorporate an access hatch at all access points. Bolt and seal access hatches with a neoprene gasket. Access hatches should be hinged on the side with a latch, handle and lock. It is recommended to have a vented hatch.

Ensure that all governmental agency regulations regarding enclosed spaces, ventilation, lighting, etc. are complied with within any enclosed steel pier cap design.
The Department will not permit box designs with cut away webs to allow for stringers to continue through the box.

Review all weld details for possible fatigue problems.

306.3.7 Piers on Navigable Waterways

Unless protected from collision by an adequate fendering system, design piers in the navigation channel of waterways, to resist collision forces based on AASHTO Guide Specification for Vessel Collision Design of Highway Bridges.

306.3.8 Pier Cap Reinforcing Steel Stirrups

Detail stirrups for concrete beams of constant depth, such as pier caps, using either 2 “U” bars with the vertical legs long enough to furnish the required lap length or a single bar closed type stirrup with 135-degree bends at both ends of the rebar. Only select the single bar closed type stirrup when minimum required lap lengths cannot be provided with the “U” type stirrup. Place the corner with the 135-degree bends of the closed type stirrup in the compression zone of the concrete beam.

306.4 Bearings

306.4.1 General

When laminated elastomeric bearings are not used, provide justification, including design calculations showing why elastomeric bearings will not be adequate for the structure.

306.4.2 Bearing Types

306.4.2.1 Elastomeric Bearings

Design elastomeric bearings to withstand load, expansion and rotation.

Design elastomeric bearings based on a selected durometer of either 50 or 60.

Design the laminated elastomeric bearings to fit the specific structure.

Situations that require stringers to be continuous through, and in the same plane with a steel pier cap or crossbeam should be avoided if possible.

Review all weld details for possible fatigue problems.

C306.4.1

The Department’s policy is to use laminated elastomeric bearings whenever possible. If additional load capacity and/or movement is required, consider using a high load multi rotational (HLMR) Bearing.

C306.4.2.1

Refer to BDM Section 1014.8 for additional design requirements.

Non-laminated elastomeric bearings are acceptable only if actual design calculations support their use.

Elastomeric bearings should be limited to a 5-in maximum elastomeric height excluding internal laminates with a minimum total height of 1-in.
Except for prestressed box beam superstructures, install a steel load plate on elastomeric bearings.

Bearing for prestressed box beams may also need load plates. See Standard Bridge Drawing BD-1-11 for more information.

Control the field welding on the elastomeric bearing load plate so that the temperature of the elastomer does not exceed 300°F.

Bearing for prestressed box beams may also need load plates. See Standard Bridge Drawing BD-1-11 for more information.

Bevel the elastomeric bearing assembly if the rotation and or grade exceed the limitations of LRFD Section 14. If the elastomeric bearing assembly has a load plate and a column section, bevel the column. If the elastomeric bearing assembly only has a steel load plate, bevel the load plate. If the load plate is beveled, make smallest thickness of the load plate the design thickness.

The column section is typically an HP shape. This assembly is used with semi-integral and integral abutment types.

Do not bear elastomeric bearings on unbonded steel surfaces. Vulcanize all steel plates in contact with an elastomeric bearing to the bearing.

Compensate for vertical deformations of the bearings greater than 1/8-in by adjusting the elevations of the bridge bearing seats. Place a note in the design plans.

Include the unfactored dead load, live load (without impact) and total load reactions for each elastomeric bearing design in the plans.

When the decks of twin structures without elastomeric bearings are being tied together resulting in a total structure width in excess of 60-ft, replace the existing bearings with elastomeric bearings.

Refer to Bridge Standard Drawing PSID-1-13 for standard expansion bearing details for prestressed I-beam superstructures.

For box beam bridges, place two elastomeric bearing pads at each end of each beam. Design the bearing for the required movement and rotation. At least 1-in minimum thickness is required.

Assume a fixed bearing condition to be obtained by the use of 1-in thick laminated elastomeric bearing pads and the installation of anchor dowels with grout.

On skewed box beam bridges, provide a 1/8-in thick preformed bearing shim material, C&MS 711.21, the same plan dimensions as the bearing, to accommodate any non-parallelism between bottom of beam and bridge seat. Include the preformed bearing pads in an item 516 in the Estimated Quantities.

This non-parallelism between bottom of beam and bridge seat can result from camber and beam warpage due to skew and fabrication. Generally, half as many preformed bearing pads should be specified as the number of bearings.
306.4.2.2 HIGH LOAD MULTI ROTATIONAL (HLMR) BEARINGS

Where high load multi rotational (HLMR) bearings are required, provide the bearings per SS869.

For HLMR bearings, provide a plan note that requires the contractor to coordinate the substructure bearing seat elevations or dimensions with the selected bearing manufacturer.

If requested, provide the Department justification for the use of HLMR bearings. Include in the justification calculations showing why elastomeric bearings without sliding surfaces will not be adequate for the structure.

Show the design requirements for both vertical and horizontal loads, required movements, required rotations and maximum friction factor for the sliding surfaces in the plans. Clearly specify design requirements as factored/unfactored.

In the plans, require that the anchors for the HLMR bearings are to be set by use of a steel template with a minimum thickness of 1/4-in.

The minimum vertical load on a pot bearing shall not be less than 20% of total vertical design load.

306.4.3 GUIDELINES FOR FIXED ELASTOMERIC BEARINGS

Assume a fixed bearing condition to be obtained by the use of 1-in thick laminated elastomeric bearing pads and the installation of anchor dowels with grout.

For additional information, see BDM Section 306.4.2.1 on elastomeric bearings.
306.5 SLOPE PROTECTION

For structures of the spill-thru type where pedestrian traffic adjacent to the toe of the slope is anticipated or the structure is located in an urban area within an incorporated city limit, pave the slope under the structure with concrete slope protection per C&MS 601.07. Provide slope protection to all areas under freeway bridges over city streets not covered by pavement or sidewalk. Check drainage discharge from the bridge to ensure that discharge is not crossing sidewalks, etc.

On spill-thru slopes under grade separation structures, areas that are not protected by concrete slope protection, protect the slope with crushed aggregate material as provided in C&MS 601.06.

The slope protection, either concrete or rock, shall extend from the face of the abutment down to the toe of the slope and shall extend in width to 3-ft beyond the outer edges of the superstructure. At the acute corners of a skewed bridge, intersect the outside edge of the slope protection with the actual or projected face of the abutment 3-ft beyond the outer edge of the superstructure and extend down the slope, normal to the face of the abutment, to the toe of the slope. Toe in the base of the slope protection.

307 RETAINING WALLS

307.1 GENERAL DISCUSSION

A retaining wall is a structure that supports a differential height of earth on either side or retains earth laterally.

Design bridge abutments, wing walls, and culvert headwalls as retaining walls in accordance with BDM Section 307 and LRFD Section 11. Design wall-type piers with differential heights of fill on either side as structure foundations in accordance with LRFD Section 10, and as retaining walls, in accordance with LRFD Section 11 letting the critical conditions control the design.

The Department will only accept prefabricated retaining wall systems approved through the Prefabricated Retaining Wall System Approval Process. Select an approved wall system listed on the Department’s Approved Products List. These systems include precast gravity and semigravity wall systems, prefabricated modular wall systems, and MSE wall systems, as discussed in BDM Sections 307.2, 307.3, and 307.4.

C306.5

Drainage discharge that crosses sidewalks can cause ice, dirt and debris to build-up.

Note that the natural vegetation on the slopes when shaded by a new structure will die out. For this case consider placing additional slope protection.

C307.1

Refer to BDM Section 201.2.5 for information related to the Retaining Wall Justification.
For retaining walls with cast-in-place concrete facing, provide expansion joints every 90-ft and contraction joints every 30-ft. Reinforcing steel shall not project through expansion or contraction joints.

Place 1-in preformed expansion joint filler (PEJF), C&MS 705.03, in all expansion joints.

Waterproof the earth-facing side of all expansion, contraction, and phased construction joints with a 3-ft width of Type 2 Waterproofing according to C&MS 512, centered over the joint and extending from the top of the footing to the top of the wall. For wall types where the earth-facing side of the cast-in-place concrete is not accessible, install a 6-in PVC CRD-C 572-74 waterstop at the center of the wall thickness, centered over the joint and extending from the top of the footing to the top of the wall.

Examples of walls where the back side of the cast-in-place concrete facing is not accessible include soldier pile and lagging walls, other drilled shaft walls, soil nail walls, and sheet pile walls with permanent cast-in-place facings.

For retaining walls with full-height architectural precast concrete facing panels, set the bottom of the panels on a continuously reinforced concrete bearing grade beam. As a minimum, provide a grouted shear key connection between the panels and the grade beam designed to resist all applied lateral loads. Provide a structural attachment at the top of the panels to the primary retaining wall members (e.g. top of a drilled shaft or soldier pile) or to a reinforced concrete load distribution slab. Do not utilize an architectural concrete coping for the top structural attachment. Design all copings to accommodate thermal movements of the panels. Provide a minimum open gap of 6-in between the precast facing panels and the retaining wall. Provide drainage at the bottom of the gap in accordance with C&MS 518.

Architectural precast concrete facing panels are not a structural component of the retaining wall and are merely an aesthetic component. The concrete bearing grade beam may be a “freely floating” concrete footing bearing on the foundation soil, or may be structurally attached to the primary retaining wall members.

The requirement for concrete cover is greater for exposed surfaces, as these may come into contact with road salt. The 3-in concrete cover requirement for cast-in-place elements cast against earth is due to lesser quality control in the excavation and casting.
Provide drainage for the retained earth using a Prefabricated Geocomposite Drainage (PGD) system in accordance with C&MS 518. Place PGD strips to provide continuous coverage over the back face of the wall. Provide a detail in the Plans showing the bottom of the PGD terminating at least 6-in into a 2-ft wide section of Porous Backfill with Geotextile Fabric in accordance with C&MS 518. Provide collection pipes and pipe outlets to ensure positive drainage of the Porous Backfill.

Use BDM Table 307-1 for retaining wall fill soil design parameters for internal and external stability. Do not use these parameters for material acceptance. Determine soil parameters for the foundation soil or bedrock materials based on the in-situ conditions encountered by the soil borings.

Table 307-1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Typical Fill Zone</th>
<th>Type of Soil</th>
<th>Design Soil Unit Weight</th>
<th>Friction Angle</th>
<th>Cohesion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MSE Reinforced Soil</td>
<td>Select Granular Backfill (SGB), per SS840.03.E</td>
<td>120 lbs/ft³</td>
<td>34º</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retained Soil (Soil behind the wall heel or behind the MSE Reinforced Soil Zone)</td>
<td>On-site soil varying from sandy lean clay to silty sand, per 703.16.A</td>
<td>120 lbs/ft³</td>
<td>30º</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CIP or Precast Semigravity Wall Infill</td>
<td>Granular Embankment, per 703.16.B</td>
<td>120 lbs/ft³</td>
<td>32º</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prefabricated Modular Wall Infill</td>
<td>Modular Wall Infill, per SS870.03.C</td>
<td>120 lbs/ft³</td>
<td>34º</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Backfill behind abutments or headwall granular base, per C&amp;MS 503.08 or 602.02</td>
<td>Granular Material Type B, per 703.16.C</td>
<td>120 lbs/ft³</td>
<td>32º</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MSE Foundation Preparation</td>
<td>Granular Material Type C, per 703.16.C</td>
<td>130 lbs/ft³</td>
<td>34º</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

307.1.1  LOADING

Use the Coulomb equation to calculate the active earth pressure coefficient ($k_a$).

Use the at-rest earth pressure coefficient to compute the lateral earth loads for retaining walls that are restrained from deflecting freely.

Apply passive earth pressure in accordance with LRFD C3.11.1 to structural members subjected to thermal movements into retained soils.

C307.1.1

Examples of retaining walls restrained from deflecting freely include rigid frame bridges, abutment walls keyed to the superstructure, and some types of U-abutments. Refer to LRFD C3.11.1 for magnitude of tolerable movements to reach active earth pressure.
Incline the active and passive earth pressure loads on retaining walls at an angle from a perpendicular to the back face of the wall equal to the soil-structure interface angle (δ). Use the following values of δ for the following wall interfaces:

\[ \delta = 0.67 \phi \] for soil-on-soil or for soil-on-cast-in-place concrete,

\[ \delta = 0.50 \phi \] for soil-on-precast concrete,

\[ \delta = 0.33 \phi \] for soil-on-steel, and

\[ \delta = 0.70 \phi \] for soil-on-prefabricated modular stepped modules, where ϕ is the internal friction angle of the retained soil.

For analysis of earth pressure loading on non-gravity cantilever walls (e.g. drilled shaft walls and sheet pile walls) do not incline earth pressure loads at angle δ (assume δ = 0).

In LRFD Figures 3.11.5.6-1, 3.11.5.6-4, or 3.11.5.6-5 the equations for passive earth pressure do not apply if the discrete vertical wall elements are spaced at closer than three diameters (3b). If the foundation soil is very loose to loose granular or very soft to soft cohesive material, use the passive resistance only over a width of b. See LRFD C3.11.5.6-1 for other restrictions.

When designing anchored walls under traffic loadings, do not exclude live load surcharge (LS). Include LS in addition to the apparent earth pressure (AEP) calculated according to LRFD 3.11.5.7.

If a broken back-slope is present within a horizontal distance of two times the height (2H) of the wall behind the back face of a wall, utilize the notional slope of backfill (β′) in place of the slope of the backfill surface behind the retaining wall (β) in the Coulomb equation for the calculation of the active earth pressure coefficient (k_a). Continue to use β to determine the notional height of earth pressure diagram (h). See BDM Figure 307-1 (a) & (b) for an example of this procedure for semigravity walls and MSE walls, respectively. In place of this simplified approach, Generalized Limit Equilibrium (GLE) analysis and Coulomb trial wedge analysis, may also be used for determining the resultant horizontal earth pressure loading on retaining walls for “broken back” and more complex loading conditions.

See LRFD Figure C3.11.5.9-2 for an example of prefabricated modular stepped modules. See LRFD C3.11.5.3 and Table C3.11.5.9-1 for the source of the specified values for δ. A soil-on-soil interface is typically assumed for semigravity walls regardless of whether the wall stem is composed of cast-in-place or precast concrete.

Applying vertical load components to these types of walls will tend to increase the stiffness response of the cantilever members, and is considered unconservative.

These equations assume the passive earth pressure to be distributed over a longitudinal distance of 3b. For closer spaced discrete vertical wall elements, the load must be distributed over a longitudinal distance equal to the spacing between the discrete vertical wall elements (ι). In soft or loose soils, full soil arching is assumed to not develop.

Add additional surcharge loads and water loads to the AEP, as applicable.

The “simplified approach,” is described in LRFD C3.11.5.8.1 and is shown for the example of an MSE wall in LRFD Figure C3.11.5.8.1-1. Generalized Limit Equilibrium (GLE) analysis and Coulomb trial wedge analysis, are described in LRFD 3.11.5.8.1, and Appendices A11.3.1 through A11.3.3.
Use Earth Surcharge (ES) for earthen surcharge loads (such as a temporary earthen surcharge for consolidation) or for additional walls or earthen structures supported above the height of the wall (such as tiered walls). For tiered wall systems, the magnitude of the ES load shall be equal to the unit weight of the backfill soil times the height of the upper wall (or walls) above the top of the lower wall, as long as the upper wall is within a horizontal distance of one-half the height (H) of the lower wall behind the back face of the lower wall.

Do not treat a wedge of soil slope at the top of a wall as an earth surcharge (ES) load with load factor $\gamma_{ES}$ if the wedge is located within the notional height of earth pressure diagram (h) for the wall ($W_2$ as shown in Figure 307-1). Instead, use vertical earth pressure (EV) for this load.

The uncertainty attached to load factor $\gamma_{ES}$ is higher than for $\gamma_{EV}$ because the mechanism of load transfer to the wall is less certain.

When calculating the Live Load Surcharge (LS) according to $LRFD \ 3.11.6.4$, the minimum total unit weight of soil shall be 125-pcf.

When factoring an inclined load into horizontal and vertical components for mathematical convenience in the calculations, do not use separate maximum and minimum load factors for the respective components of the loads. Treat each inclined load as a single load, which either serves to stabilize or destabilize the structure, then apply the same load factor (either maximum or minimum) to both the horizontal and vertical components of the load.

Inclined loads do not have actual horizontal and vertical components; these are a mathematical convenience to make the stability computations easier to calculate. If it is uncertain whether a single, inclined load will either serve to stabilize or destabilize the structure, perform the calculations both ways.

Include vehicular collision forces ($CT$) in foundation stability analyses in the Extreme Event II Limit State for walls with integral traffic barriers. Distribute vehicular collision forces along the length of the wall a minimum of the distance between two expansion joints.
When specifying temporary walls within the influence zone of a railroad track, consult with the applicable railroad company regarding their specific loading requirements.

Provide a crash wall as specified in the AREMA Manual for Railway Engineering for retaining walls located within 25-ft of the centerline of tracks, or other distance as specified by an individual railroad. If a retaining wall face constructed with cast-in-place or precast concrete has integral elements that meet the requirements of a crash wall, the retaining wall does not have to be protected by a separate crash wall. Prefabricated modular walls and MSE wall systems do not meet the definition of a crash wall.

Include wind-induced loads on noise barriers mounted on top of retaining walls in the design.

**307.1.2 OVERALL STABILITY**

Analyze overall (global) stability for each retaining wall at critical locations according to LRFD 11.6.2.3.

Design retaining walls that support other structures for overall stability using a resistance factor of $\varphi = 0.65$.

Design retaining walls that do not support other structures for overall stability using a resistance factor of $\varphi = 0.75$.

When considering overall stability of a tiered wall system, analyze the stability of the tiered wall system collectively, and each tier separately.

**307.1.3 RESISTANCE TO HORIZONTAL FORCES**

For retaining wall types listed in BDM Section 307.2 through 307.4 and 307.7.2, perform a check for sliding resistance according to LRFD 10.6.3.4. If the sliding resistance of the foundation material is inadequate to withstand the horizontal forces:

A. For retaining wall types listed in BDM Section 307.2, see BDM Section 305.2.1.3.

B. For retaining wall types listed in BDM Section 307.3 and 307.7.2, increase the foundation width or depth, or specify internal fill with a higher unit weight.

C. For retaining wall types listed in BDM Section 307.4, increase the soil reinforcement length.

For the Cooper E 80 load refer to Chapter 15, Part 1 of the AREMA Manual for Railway Engineering. A Cooper E 80 load on a single track equates to a Live Load Surcharge of an 1882-psf strip load, 8.5-ft wide.

Resistance factors as shown in LRFD 11.6.2.3 should be taken as the inverse of the following factors of safety (FS) for the case of limit equilibrium slope stability analysis only:

$\varphi = 0.75$ corresponds to $FS = 1.3$

$\varphi = 0.65$ corresponds to $FS = 1.5$
For Reinforced Soil Slopes, refer to publications Geotechnical Engineering Circular 11 (GEC 11) Design and Construction of Mechanically Stabilized Earth Walls and Reinforced Soil Slopes, Vol. I (FHWA-NHI-10-024) and II (FHWA-NHI-10-025) and SS863.

For retaining wall types listed in BDM Section 307.6 and 307.7.1, refer to BDM Section 305.1.2 regarding p-y analyses.

**307.1.4 LIMITING ECCENTRICITY AND OVERTURNING RESISTANCE**

For retaining wall types listed in BDM Section 307.2 through 307.4 and 307.7.2, perform a check for limiting eccentricity according to LRFD 11.6.3.3.

For retaining wall types listed in BDM Section 307.6 and 307.7.1, or for deep foundation elements, perform either:

A. A p-y analysis at the Strength Limit State, checking that the vertical element does not have infinite or incalculable deflection

B. A moment equilibrium analysis about the tip of the vertical elements using LRFD Figures 3.11.5.6-1 through 3.11.5.6-7 with Strength Limit State Load Factors and Resistance Factors, in accordance with the commentary in LRFD C11.8.4.1.

**307.1.5 BEARING RESISTANCE**

For retaining wall types listed in BDM Sections 307.2 through 307.4 and 307.7.2, perform a check for bearing resistance in accordance with LRFD 10.6.3.1 or LRFD 10.6.3.2, as applicable. See BDM Section 305.2 for additional guidance on bearing resistance analysis of shallow foundations.

For Reinforced Soil Slopes, refer to publications Geotechnical Engineering Circular 11 (GEC 11) Design and Construction of Mechanically Stabilized Earth Walls and Reinforced Soil Slopes, Vol. I (FHWA-NHI-10-024) and II (FHWA-NHI-10-025) and SS863.

For retaining wall types listed in BDM Sections 307.6 and 307.7.1, do not check bearing resistance.

For Anchored Wall systems, listed in BDM Section 307.8, consider bearing resistance for the vertical elements as deep foundations, assuming all vertical components of loads are transferred to the embedded...
portion, according to *LRFD 11.9.4.1.*

For Soil Nail Walls, refer to publication FHWA-NHI-14-007, Geotechnical Engineering Circular 7 (GEC 7), Section 5.6.6, regarding Basal Heave.

### 307.1.6 VERTICAL AND HORIZONTAL MOVEMENTS

Limit total settlements to the serviceability requirements of the infrastructure supported by the wall. Evaluate settlement limits in the post construction condition.

Consider differential settlements for walls in the longitudinal direction.

Limit differential settlements for rigid gravity and semigravity walls, precast concrete panel walls, and all other walls with full-height concrete facings (whether cast-in-place or precast) to 1/500.

Limit differential settlements for prefabricated modular walls or modular block walls to 1/200.

Limit differential settlements for MSE walls to 1/100 regardless of the size of panels. Provide slip joints if the estimated differential settlement is greater than 1/100.

Limit differential settlements for temporary walls or for walls with facings applied after wall settlement has completed to 1/50.

Analyses for anchored walls shall account for the relaxation or elongation of the anchors (and resultant unloading or loading of the anchors) due to settlement of the soil material behind the wall face or settlement of the vertical wall elements.

Additional limitations on total and differential settlement for retaining walls supporting bridge superstructures are provided in BDM Section 305.1.3. For settlement effects on bridge superstructures and settlement remediation, refer to BDM Section 305.1.3.

The Service Limit State horizontal deflection limit for all retaining walls is one percent (1%) of the retained height (H) of the wall.

Relaxation and unloading of anchors may result in unacceptable lateral deflection of the anchored wall face.

Additional limits may control depending on other elements supported by or located behind the wall. For retaining walls that support bridge structures, superstructure movements shall not be impeded by horizontal deflection of the retaining structure.
307.1.7    SEISMIC DESIGN

A retaining wall does not need to be designed for seismic effects unless it supports a structure which is required to be designed for seismic loading.

For seismic design of retaining wall foundations, see Section 305.1.5.

307.2    RIGID GRAVITY AND SEMIGRAVITY WALLS

Design rigid gravity and semigravity walls in accordance with LRFD 11.6.

Concrete used in rigid gravity and semigravity walls shall conform to Item 499, Class QC 1. Reinforcing steel shall conform to C&MS 509.02. All reinforcing steel used in a cast-in-place concrete element shall be epoxy coated.

The minimum wall stem thickness shall be 10-in. The minimum thickness shall be 1.5-ft at the top of the stem when concrete deflector parapets are cast directly on top of a retaining wall.

Refer to BDM Section 305.2.1.2 for minimum footing depth requirements.

Some traffic barrier shapes can support a differential height of earth on either side; traffic barriers used in this way are rigid gravity walls. Do not perform a stability analysis for standard traffic barrier Type C or C1 supporting a differential height of earth of 2-ft or less. If traffic barrier rigid gravity walls are bearing on pavement layers (including the aggregate base course) then do not embed the barrier further into the ground unless required for foundation stability analyses. Do not key traffic barrier rigid gravity walls bearing directly on bedrock that are found to have adequate resistance in foundation stability analyses, and the base of the wall is a minimum of 2-ft below the proposed ground surface, including pavement.

For deep foundation supported walls, analyze the external stability of the foundations according to BDM Section 305. Design other elements of the retaining wall in accordance with BDM Section 307.

307.2.1    RIGID GRAVITY WALLS

Reinforced and unreinforced cast-in-place concrete rigid gravity walls are acceptable.

Unreinforced rigid gravity walls are often referred to as “concrete mass gravity walls.”
307.2.2 CANTILEVER WALLS

For full height abutments and semigravity walls greater than 15-ft in height (H), batter the front face 1/16 in/ft of height of the wall stem. Refer to LRFD Figure 11.6.3.2-1 for a definition of (H). For semi-integral abutments, measure the height to the beam seat for this purpose.

307.2.3 COUNTERFORT WALLS

Provide counterforts for full height abutments and semigravity walls exceeding 30-ft in height (H).

Place reinforcing steel in the back, sloping, face of the counterfort in two rows with a 6-in clearance between rows. Stagger the location of reinforcing steel splices of each row by a minimum of 3-ft. Do not post-tension counterforts.

Stagger splices of reinforcement extending from the footing of a counterfort wall into the highly reinforced areas of the counterforts.

Provide drainage in each pocket formed by the intersection of the counterfort and wall stem.

307.2.4 PRECAST GRAVITY AND SEMIGRAVITY WALLS

The Department will approve all precast gravity and semigravity wall systems through the Prefabricated Retaining Wall System Approval Process. Select a wall system listed on the Department’s Approved Products List. Precast gravity and semigravity walls shall be rigid gravity, cantilever, or counterfort types, in accordance with the respective BDM Sections 307.2.1, 307.2.2, and 307.2.3.

Precast footings shall be founded on a leveling pad or sub-footing consisting of Low Strength Mortar Backfill (LSM) or Class QC Misc. concrete.

All reinforcing steel used in a precast concrete element shall be epoxy coated. The interface between two precast elements, where reinforcing steel extends across the interface, shall be completely filled with non-shrink grout meeting the requirements C&MS 705.21.
307.3  PREFABRICATED MODULAR WALLS

Design prefabricated modular walls in accordance with LRFD 11.11 and SS870. Do not use walls of these types as bridge abutments or as bridge substructures. If precast concrete wall elements are steel-reinforced, all reinforcing steel shall conform to C&MS 509.02, and shall be epoxy coated. Reinforcing steel cover shall be in accordance with BDM Section 307.1. The interface between two precast elements, where reinforcing steel extends across the interface, shall be completely filled with non-shrink grout meeting the requirements C&MS 705.21.

The Department will approve all prefabricated modular wall systems through the Prefabricated Retaining Wall System Approval Process. Select a wall system listed on the Department’s Approved Products List.

Foundation preparation shall consist of excavation to below the wall base elevation, and placement and compaction of a minimum 12-in of granular material leveling pad according to C&MS 203.07. If the foundation of the wall requires more excavation, then increase the quantity of wall excavation and specify one of the following suitable materials: Modular Wall Infill according to SS870.03.C; ITEM 203 GRANULAR EMBANKMENT; ITEM 203 GRANULAR MATERIAL TYPE B; or ITEM 203 GRANULAR MATERIAL TYPE C. Show the deeper excavation limits on the plans; include ITEM 203 – GRANULAR EMBANKMENT, AS PER PLAN; and a plan note permitting any of the four material types listed above. The granular material leveling pad shall extend over the entire wall foundation area, and 12-in horizontally in front of the wall face.

Determine sliding resistance of prefabricated modular wall foundations both at the top and bottom of the granular material leveling pad. Determine bearing resistance of prefabricated modular wall foundations at the bottom of the granular material leveling pad.

If the proprietary wall system calls for a concrete leveling pad or for a prefabricated modular wall with a total wall height (H) greater than 6-ft, design and construct a concrete leveling pad on top of the granular material according to SS870.06.D.

The minimum vertical distance from a point of the ground surface within 4-ft from the face of the wall to the top of the granular material leveling pad (or to the bottom of the concrete leveling pad, if provided) shall be 2-ft, defined as the foundation embedment. The design height of the wall (H) includes this foundation.

C307.3

These walls typically consist of square or rectangular prefabricated modular units. These may be stacked vertically at the face, stacked vertically with a setback (an effective batter), or placed battered.

The Department will not include modular wall systems with dry-cast units in the Approved Products List. Refer to BDM Section 307.3.1 for restrictions to the use of modular block walls with dry-cast units.

The thickness of the granular material leveling pad may be increased according to the requirements of the proprietary wall system manufacturer, or based on design necessity to remove unsuitable soils, provide increased bearing resistance, or reduce settlement.

For walls founded on bedrock, the foundation preparation may be eliminated.
embedment as shown in BDM Figure 307-2. Measure the notional height of earth pressure diagram (h) from the lowest point at the heel of the wall foundation to the point where an imaginary line on the back face of the wall intersects the backfill slope above the wall, as shown in BDM Figure 307-2.

Where the alignment of prefabricated modular walls changes, use curves or corners with an interior angle of at least 90 degrees.

Check the stability of prefabricated modular walls at every module level according to LRFD 11.11.4.1. This includes overall stability, resistance to horizontal forces / sliding, and limiting eccentricity / overturning resistance. Do not utilize passive resistance against sliding unless the module penetrates below frost depth or soil disturbance. Also check the individual modules for structural resistance against earth pressure, according to LRFD 11.11.5.1.

The alignment of prefabricated modular walls should be straight and with as few corners or curves as is practical.

These checks are considered internal stability and are generally the responsibility of the wall system supplier. The designer should only perform these checks if the wall system to be used is known, and the designer is responsible for this aspect of the design.
307.3.1 MODULAR BLOCK WALLS

Modular block walls are made up of segmental concrete masonry units (blocks) of precast concrete (either dry-cast or wet-cast) laid in a running bond “brick” pattern, dry stacked (without mortar), in level courses (or layers) of blocks.

Modular Block Walls are also commonly known as Segmental Retaining Walls (SRW), Modular Segmental Retaining Walls, and Modular Concrete Block Retaining Walls.

Design and construct geosynthetic reinforced modular block walls as MSE walls with block facings in accordance with BDM Section 307.4 and SS840.

Do not use dry-cast block walls to support a roadway, roadway embankment, or other transportation-related structure, or as a wingwall for a bridge or culvert.

307.3.2 BIN WALLS

Design bin walls in accordance with the requirements of SS870.

A bin wall is generally a Metal Cellular Wall. However, some bin walls are made up of precast concrete bin units.

307.3.3 CRIB WALLS

Design crib walls in accordance with the requirements of SS870.

A crib wall is a Concrete Cellular Wall.

Do not use timber crib walls for highway applications.

307.3.4 GABION WALLS

Gabion baskets used for walls shall have a minimum dimension of 36-in in all directions. Cover the back face of a gabion wall with Geotextile Fabric, Type A as a filter fabric between the retained soil and the gabions. Gabions shall meet the requirements of SS838.

Gabion walls are composed of prefabricated metal baskets of welded or twisted wire mesh, backfilled with stone.

307.4 MSE WALLS

The Department will approve all MSE wall systems through the Prefabricated Retaining Wall System Approval Process. Select a wall system listed on the Department’s Approved Products List.

Design MSE walls in accordance with this section, LRFD 11.10 and SS840. The proprietary wall companies will be responsible for designing the internal stability of the wall in accordance with the project plans and SS840.

Design MSE walls in accordance with the following requirements:

SS840 defines the requirements for construction and design for internal stability for Mechanically Stabilized Earth (MSE) walls.
A. The notional height of earth pressure diagram (h) shall be the design wall height for MSE walls. See LRFD Figures 3.11.5.8.1-1 through 3.11.5.8.1-3 and SS840.04.A.2 for a definition of how to measure the design wall height (h). The soil reinforcement length shall not be less than 70 percent of the design wall height (h) or 8-ft, whichever is greater. Only increase this minimum soil reinforcement length as necessary to meet external stability requirements: bearing resistance, sliding resistance, limiting eccentricity (overturning), and overall (global) stability. Generally, the soil reinforcement length should not be greater than 150% of the design wall height (h).

B. The minimum vertical distance from the top of the leveling pad to any point on the ground surface within 4-ft of the face of the wall shall be 3-ft. Refer to BDM Figure 204-3 for more information.

C. For Reinforced Soil and Retained Soil parameters, use SS840 Table 840.04-1 in the design of MSE walls for internal and external stability. Determine soil parameters for the foundation soils based on the soils encountered by the soil borings.

D. Foundation preparation shall consist of excavation to below the leveling pad elevation, and placement and compaction of a minimum of 12-in of Granular Material Type C according to the requirements of C&MS 204.07. If the foundation of the wall requires more excavation, then show the deeper excavation limits on the plans and include an “As per plan” item for Foundation Preparation. The foundation preparation shall extend over the entire wall foundation area, and 12-in horizontally in front of the leveling pad. The thickness of Type C may be increased according to the requirements of the proprietary wall system manufacturer, or based on design necessity to remove unsuitable soils, provide increased bearing resistance, or reduce settlement. For walls founded on bedrock, the foundation preparation may be eliminated.

E. Where the alignment of permanent MSE walls changes, use curves or corners with an interior angle of at least 90 degrees. For temporary MSE walls utilized for maintenance of traffic, do not use corners with interior angles of less than 45 degrees.

F. Abutments on MSE walls shall be supported on piles regardless of the proximity of bedrock to the MSE wall foundation. See BDM Section 305.3.5.7 for minimum pile embedment below the MSE wall. Abutment piles through MSE walls shall be vertical.

G. For MSE walls containing abutments on piles:
   1. The minimum distance between the back face of the MSE wall panels and the toe of the bridge abutment pile cap shall be 1-ft.
2. The minimum distance between the back face of the MSE wall panels and the centerline of the closest row of piles shall be 3.5-ft.

3. The minimum distance between the centerlines of adjacent rows of piles shall be 3.5-ft.

H. Do not place an integral abutment within an MSE walls.

I. All MSE soil reinforcements shall be connected to facing elements. The Department will not allow field cutting of MSE soil reinforcements to avoid piles or other obstacles.

Do not place ITEM 204 GEOTEXTILE at the base of the Granular Material Type C foundation preparation for MSE walls.

Collect surface drainage before it reaches the face of the MSE wall. On structures with MSE walls at the abutments, provide a concrete barrier on the approach slab with a standard inlet, SCD I-2.3 to collect the drainage. Locate the inlet at least 25-ft beyond the limits of the MSE wall soil reinforcement. Continue the barrier 10-ft past the catch basin. Refer to BDM Figure 309-29 for more information.

Determine sliding resistance and bearing resistance of MSE wall foundations both at the top and bottom of the foundation preparation layer.

307.4.1 TWO-STAGE MSE WALLS

Design wire-faced MSE walls in accordance with LRFD 11.10 and SS867. The proprietary wall companies will be responsible for designing the internal stability of the wall in accordance with the project plans and SS867. All metal components of the wire-faced MSE wall shall be galvanized according to SS867.03.A.

C307.4.1

This wall type consists of a wire-faced MSE wall, with permanent precast concrete facing panels applied post-construction to the wall. The precast panels can be either full-height, which are set on a concrete bearing grade beam and attached to a load distribution slab at the top of the wall, or can be conventional MSE wall panels, which are set on a leveling pad and individually attached to the wire-faced wall. The space between the full-height panels and the wire-faced wall can be left open or filled with MSE wall select granular fill; for walls with conventional MSE wall panels, the space must be filled with MSE wall select granular fill.

The typical sequence of construction involves construction of the temporary wire-faced MSE wall, a waiting period for settlement, and then attachment of the precast concrete panel facing.

SS867 defines the requirements for construction and design for internal stability for wire-faced MSE walls.
### 307.4.2 GRS-IBS ABUTMENTS

See publications FHWA-HRT-11-026 and FHWA-HRT-11-027 for details of the system and a design methodology for GRS-IBS.

Do not use GRS-IBS to support bridges on Interstate, U.S. Federal Route, or State Route highways. Do not use GRS-IBS with dry-cast block wall facing elements.

### 307.5 REINFORCED SOIL SLOPES

Design Reinforced Soil Slope (RSS) systems in accordance with publications FHWA-NHI-10-024 and FHWA-NHI-10-025, Geotechnical Engineering Circular 11 (GEC 11); and SS863.

Do not use RSS systems on spill-thru slope in front of abutments for water crossings.

### 307.6 DRILLED SHAFT WALLS

Design drilled shaft walls in accordance with LRFD 11.8.

The following definitions apply throughout BDM Section 307.6 and to LRFD 3.11.5.6 and LRFD Figures 3.11.5.6-1 through 3.11.5.6-7:

- \( b \) = Drilled Shaft Diameter (width of a discrete vertical wall element)
- \( t \) = Drilled Shaft Center-to-center Spacing (center-to-center spacing of vertical wall elements)
- \( D \) = Foundation Depth (depth of drilled shaft embedment below design grade)
- \( H \) = Design Retained Height (height of the wall above design grade)
- \( L \) = Length of discrete vertical wall elements = \( D + H \)
- \( \frac{t}{b} \) = Spacing-to-diameter ratio
- \( \frac{D}{L} \) = Embedment-to-length ratio

Measure the design retained height (H) of drilled shaft walls from the top of the retained earth to the design grade, according to LRFD Figures 3.11.5.6-1 through 3.11.5.6-7. The minimum embedment (D) for drilled shaft walls shall be equal to the retained height (H) such that the embedment-to-length ratio (D/L) shall not be less than 0.5.

The design grade is typically taken as either the frost penetration depth, the depth to pavement subgrade located in front of the wall, or the assumed depth of future utility excavations which may occur immediately in front of the wall.
For drilled shaft walls with a cast-in-place concrete facing, provide a structural attachment between the facing and the exposed face of the discrete vertical wall elements. For drilled shaft walls with full-height precast concrete facing panels, see the requirements of BDM Section 307.1. For drilled shaft walls with a spacing-to-diameter ratio ($\ell/b$) greater than one, and for all soldier pile walls, design the facing to resist the lateral earth pressure.

For structural design of drilled shaft walls, in the Strength Limit State, check both the factored flexural resistance and factored shear resistance versus the maximum factored moment and shear in the discrete vertical wall elements. In the Service Limit State, check horizontal deflection at the top of the discrete vertical wall elements. Achieving fixity at the tip (bottom) of the discrete vertical wall elements is not required, provided the serviceability deflection limit is met at the top; see BDM Section 307.1.6 for details on serviceability deflection limits.

Do not analyze drilled shaft walls with the “Geotechnical Strength Limit State” analysis, specified in publication FHWA-NHI-10-016, Geotechnical Engineering Circular 10 (GEC 10) “Drilled Shafts: Construction Procedures and LRFD Design Methods,” Section 12.3.3.3.1.

When performing a p-y analysis for a drilled shaft wall, do not analyze the discrete vertical wall elements by cutting them off at the bottom of the retained height, and applying a resultant shear, moment, and axial load at the foundation elevation. Analyze the discrete vertical wall elements by using the theoretical distributed load over the entire retained height to determine the reactions above the foundation elevation.

For drilled shaft walls with an embedded steel section (typically a W-section) within a reinforcing bar cage, use composite behavior when analyzing for the shear and flexural resistance of the discrete vertical wall elements (the drilled shafts). For drilled shaft walls with an embedded steel section, and without a reinforcing bar cage, use the non-composite section (steel only) properties for the shear and flexural resistance of the discrete vertical wall elements. Assume the steel section to be continuously braced where it is embedded in the drilled shaft concrete.

Typically, the attachment of the cast-in-place concrete facing is made with embedded dowels for drilled shafts and welded shear studs for soldier piles.

The “Geotechnical Strength Limit State” analysis is intended for analyses of bridge structure foundations and is not intended for retaining walls.

While “cutting off” the vertical wall elements may be sufficient for analyzing reactions below the foundation elevation, and produces realistic shear and moment distributions below the cut-off point, it does not include the shear and moment above the cut-off point and it does not adequately account for the deflection at the head of the vertical wall elements (the top of the wall).

Consideration may be given to embedding a steel section inside the reinforcing bar cage of a drilled shaft wall to increase flexural resistance and stiffness, decrease the amount of steel in the cage, and potentially decrease the size of the drilled shafts.
See BDM Section 305.4.4.2 regarding the minimum concrete cover over reinforcing steel for drilled shafts. For drilled shaft walls with an embedded steel section, the minimum concrete cover over reinforcing steel also applies to the embedded steel section. When the vertical wall elements of drilled shaft walls contain both an embedded steel section and a reinforcing bar cage, the minimum clearance between the embedded steel section and the inside of the reinforcing bar cage shall be three times the maximum aggregate size.

Do not specify weathering steel for the vertical elements of a soldier pile and lagging wall or for a drilled shaft embedded steel section. Specify ASTM A709 Grade 50 steel.

When calculating axial load from self-weight of a drilled shaft, for the portion below the design grade, offset the weight of the drilled shaft concrete with the total unit weight of the replaced soil per Archimedes’ principle of buoyancy ($\gamma_{\text{effective self-weight}} = \gamma_{\text{concrete}} - \gamma_{\text{soil}}$).

$\gamma_{\text{effective self-weight}} = \gamma_{\text{concrete}} - \gamma_{\text{soil}} = 150 \text{ pcf} - 120 \text{ pcf} = 30 \text{ pcf}$

Typically, the effective unit weight below design grade will be approximately equal to $\gamma_{\text{effective self-weight}}$.

The zones of passive resistance for each drilled shaft discrete vertical wall element cannot overlap.

In LRFD Figures 3.11.5.6-1, 3.11.5.6-4, and 3.11.5.6-5, distribute the passive earth pressure resistance over a width of 3 times the width of a discrete vertical wall element (b). If the discrete vertical wall elements are placed closer together than 3 times b, replace the value of 3b with the center-to-center spacing of vertical wall elements ($l$) in the equations for the passive earth pressure.

In LRFD Figures 3.11.5.6-4, 3.11.5.6-5, 3.11.5.6-6, and 3.11.5.6-7, if $\gamma_H < 2S_u$, use a value of zero (0) for the active earth pressure in the portion of the wall below the retained height ($P_{a2}$).

The active earth pressure in the portion of the wall below the retained height ($P_{a2}$) could result in a negative value if $\gamma_H - 2S_u < 0$; however, it is not possible to have a negative active earth pressure.

This condition will typically occur where a drilled shaft wall is acting as a bridge abutment. Effective individual side resistance for each drilled shaft may be determined by dividing the group side resistance by the number of drilled shafts.

For tangent or secant drilled shaft walls that support a vertical load, calculate the axial side resistance for the group of drilled shafts by taking the perimeter of the group of drilled shafts, according to LRFD 10.7.3.9 and 10.8.3.6 and publication FHWA-NHI-10-016, Geotechnical Engineering Circular 10 (GEC 10) “Drilled Shafts: Construction Procedures and LRFD Design Methods,” Section 14.4.

For drilled shaft walls embedded into bedrock, specify a single drilled shaft diameter for the full length of each vertical wall element; do not specify the drilled hole above bedrock as 6-in larger in diameter than the rock socket.

Tangent and secant drilled shaft walls with permanent cast-in-place facing, with a drilled shaft diameter of 30-in or greater, meet the requirements of an AREMA crash wall, specified in BDM Section 307.1. A soldier pile wall does not meet the requirements of an AREMA crash wall unless it has a permanent cast-in-place facing with a thickness of 30-in or greater.
307.6.1 TANGENT DRILLED SHAFT WALLS

If the tangent drilled shaft wall has a permanent cast-in-place facing, place wall drainage between the permanent facing and the drilled shafts at the joints between the adjacent drilled shafts. Provide vertical drainage paths with a minimum width of 18-in. The vertical drainage may be composed of either free-draining granular material meeting the requirements of C&MS 605.02, with a minimum thickness of 10-in measured perpendicular to the wall face, fully wrapped in Geotextile Fabric Type A; or may be composed of PGD strips. Where PGD is used, provide a detail in the Plans showing the bottom of the PGD terminating at least 6-in into a 2-ft wide section of Porous Backfill with Geotextile Fabric in accordance with C&MS 518. Provide collection pipes and pipe outlets to ensure positive drainage of the Porous Backfill. Do not allow concrete from the facing to intrude into the joints between the adjacent drilled shafts.

If the wall is to have full-height precast concrete facing panels, see the requirements of BDM Section 307.1 regarding drainage.

307.6.2 SECANT DRILLED SHAFT WALLS

Design all flexural and shear resistance from horizontal loads to be provided by the reinforced primary drilled shafts alone.

Do not provide drainage for secant drilled shaft walls. Design secant drilled shaft walls to resist static pressure from ground water.

307.6.3 SOLDIER PILE WALLS

Design lagging to resist lateral earth pressure. Walls utilizing temporary timber lagging shall have a permanent cast-in-place facing.

Tangent drilled shaft walls have a spacing-to-diameter ratio (d/b) approximately equal to one. The wall is composed of a series of drilled shafts constructed adjacent to each other or with a small gap (less than 6-in) between the shafts.

Secant drilled shaft walls have a spacing-to-diameter ratio (l/b) less than one. The wall is composed of a series of reinforced primary drilled shafts, alternating and overlapping with unreinforced secondary drilled shafts. Generally, the secondary drilled shafts are constructed first, and then the primary drilled shafts are excavated through the secondary drilled shafts while the shaft concrete is still “green.” Sometimes a lower strength concrete is used for the secondary drilled shafts.

Secant drilled shaft walls are impervious and will block ground water flow. This wall type is often used specifically for ground water control.

Soldier pile walls have a spacing-to-diameter ratio (d/b) greater than one. The gaps between the discrete vertical wall elements (soldier pile beam sections) are filled with lagging, consisting of either permanent precast concrete panels or temporary lagging timbers. Timber lagging is assumed to deteriorate in the permanent condition, therefore the permanent cast-in-place facing is designed to resist the lateral earth pressure. Walls with permanent precast lagging may use full-height precast concrete facing panels.
Design precast concrete lagging panels as simply supported slabs according to *LRFD Section 5*. Precast concrete lagging panels shall be steel-reinforced, using epoxy-coated welded wire reinforcement conforming to *C&MS 709.14*. Locate the center of the vertical wires at each end of the panel at a maximum 2.5-in from the end of the panel. Provide concrete cover over the reinforcing steel in accordance with BDM Section 307.1. Precast concrete lagging panels shall have a minimum thickness of 5.5-in if a permanent cast-in-place facing is utilized, and 6-in otherwise. The minimum thickness of the permanent cast-in-place facing is 9-in. The minimum width of precast concrete lagging panels shall be 1-in less than the space between webs of the consecutive soldier pile beams. The ends of the panels shall overlap the flanges of the soldier pile beams on each end by a minimum of 1-in more than the concrete cover over the reinforcing steel. If no other facing is added, the panels shall have a 1-in chamfer at the exposed top and bottom.

In some cases where the wall does not face a roadway or public space, the wall may be designed with permanent precast lagging without a facing.

BDM Figure 307-3 details the described wall dimensions.

Design timber lagging according to *LRFD Section 8* or publication FHWA-RD-75-128, “Lateral Support Systems and Underpinning,” Section 9.32. Timber lagging shall have a minimum thickness of 3-in. The ends of the lagging timbers shall overlap the flanges of the soldier pile beams on each end by a minimum of 2-in.
Provide timber blocks between individual lagging timbers. Provide elastomeric bearing pads between individual precast concrete lagging panels. The timber blocks shall be at least 3-in long, 3-in wide and 3/8-in tall. The elastomeric bearing pads shall be at least 3/8-in tall with a length and width equal to the thickness of the precast concrete lagging panels minus 1-in. Place one timber block or elastomeric bearing pad at each end of each joint between the lagging timbers or precast concrete lagging panels.

The blocks and bearing pads promote drainage between the lagging timbers or panels. In the case of precast lagging panels, the elastomeric bearing pads also protect the panels from damage during installation and overstress at the corners.

If the soldier pile beam section is embedded in a drilled shaft, the width of a discrete vertical wall element (b) shall be equal to the nominal diameter of the drilled shaft. If an embedded soldier pile beam section does not extend to the bottom of the drilled shaft, use a reinforcing steel cage in the drilled shaft. If the soldier piles are driven rather than placed in a drilled shaft, the width of a discrete vertical wall element (b) shall be equal to the flange width of the soldier pile beam section.

If an embedded soldier pile beam section extends to the bottom of the drilled shaft, it is not necessary to use a reinforcing steel cage in the drilled shaft; however, if a reinforcing steel cage is used, see BDM Section 307.6 for additional considerations.

Assume the portion of the soldier pile beam section below the design grade to be continuously braced. Check flexural resistance for this portion in accordance with LRFD 6.10.8.1.3.

Assume the portion of the soldier pile beam section above the design grade to be unbraced, with an unbraced length equal to the retained height (H). Check flexural resistance for this portion according to LRFD 6.10.8.2. Compare the factored resistance to the maximum factored moment calculated within the unbraced length.

If soldier pile walls do not have a permanent cast-in-place facing, design the soldier pile beams with measures to resist corrosion and deterioration, in accordance with LRFD 10.7.5 for a service life of 75 years. The corrosion protection shall extend 3-ft below the exposed portion of the beam.

The requirements for corrosion protection do not apply to temporary soldier pile walls.

If the wall has a cast-in-place permanent facing, place wall drainage between the permanent facing and lagging. Provide continuous coverage over the width of the lagging, between the soldier pile beams. The vertical drainage may be composed of either free-draining granular material meeting the requirements of C&MS 605.02, with a minimum thickness of 10-in measured perpendicular to the wall face, fully wrapped in Geotextile Fabric Type A; or may be composed of prefabricated geocomposite drain (PGD) strips. Where PGD is used, provide a detail in the Plans showing the bottom of the PGD terminating at least 6-in into a 2-ft wide section of Porous Backfill with Geotextile Fabric in accordance with C&MS 518. Provide collection pipes and pipe outlets to ensure
positive drainage of the Porous Backfill. Do not allow concrete from the facing to intrude into the joints between the lagging panels or timbers.

If the wall has full-height precast concrete facing panels, see the requirements of BDM Section 307.1 regarding drainage. Design the soldier pile beams with measures to resist corrosion and deterioration as above.

### 307.6.4 LANDSLIDE DRILLED SHAFTS

Refer to ODOT Geotechnical Bulletin 7 (GB7): “Drilled Shaft Landslide Stabilization Design” for the design methodology for drilled shaft structures for landslide stabilization.

### 307.7 STEEL SHEET PILE WALLS

For steel sheet pile walls with a cast-in-place concrete facing, provide a structural attachment between the facing and the exposed face of the steel sheet piles. For steel sheet pile walls with full-height precast concrete facing panels, see the requirements of BDM Section 307.1.

Design permanent steel sheet pile walls with measures to resist corrosion and deterioration, in accordance with LRFD 10.7.5 for a service life of 75 years. The corrosion protection shall extend 3-ft below the exposed portion of the beam.

If a steel sheet pile wall has a cast-in-place permanent facing, design drainage according to C&MS 518.

If the wall has full-height precast concrete facing panels, the drainage requirements of BDM Section 307.1 apply.

A steel sheet pile wall does not meet the requirements of an AREMA crash wall unless it has a permanent cast-in-place facing with a thickness of 30-in or greater.

### 307.7.1 CANTILEVER SHEET PILE WALLESS

Design cantilever sheet pile walls in accordance with LRFD 11.8. For cantilever sheet pile walls with permanent cast-in-place facing, designate a specific steel sheet pile section or equivalent. For all other cantilever sheet pile walls, specify a minimum section modulus and moment of inertia per unit width of the sheet pile.

Cantilever sheet pile walls are composed of PZ-Section elements, installed as a linear wall, perpendicular to the retained earth. The sheet pile sections in this case retain the soil in cantilever action, primarily through flexural resistance.

Cantilever sheet pile walls are designed on a per-unit-width basis of vertical face. For steel sheet pile walls with permanent cast-in-place facing, the connection details will depend on the width of the specific steel sheet pile section.
The following definitions apply throughout BDM Section 307.7.1 and to LRFD 3.11.5.6 and LRFD Figures 3.11.5.6-3, 3.11.5.6-6, and 3.11.5.6-7:

- **D** = Foundation Depth (depth of steel sheet pile embedment below design grade)
- **H** = Design Retained Height (height of the wall above design grade)
- **L** = Length of steel sheet pile elements = D + H
- **D/L** = Embedment-to-length ratio

**D**/**L** = Embedment-to-length ratio

Measure the design retained height (H) of cantilever sheet pile walls from the top of the retained earth to the design grade according to LRFD Figures 3.11.5.6-3, 3.11.5.6-6, and 3.11.5.6-7. The minimum embedment (D) for cantilever sheet pile walls shall be equal to the retained height (H) such that, the embedment-to-length ratio (D/L) is not less than 0.5.

The design grade is typically taken as either the frost penetration depth, the depth to pavement subgrade located in front of the wall, or the assumed depth of future utility excavations which may occur immediately in front of the wall.

For structural design of cantilever sheet pile walls, in the Strength Limit State, check both the factored flexural resistance and factored shear resistance versus the maximum factored moment and shear per unit width of the wall. In the Service Limit State, check horizontal deflection at the top of the wall face. Achieving fixity at the tip (bottom) of the continuous vertical wall elements is not required, provided the serviceability deflection limit is met at the top; see BDM Section 307.1.6 for details on serviceability deflection limits.

When performing a p-y analysis for a cantilever sheet pile wall, do not analyze the continuous vertical wall elements by cutting them off at the bottom of the retained height, and applying a resultant shear, moment, and axial load at the foundation elevation. Analyze the continuous vertical wall elements by using the theoretical distributed load over the entire retained height to determine the reactions above the foundation elevation.

In LRFD Figures 3.11.5.6-6 and 3.11.5.6-7, if \( \gamma_h H < 2S_u \), use a value of zero (0) for the active earth pressure in the portion of the wall below the retained height \( (P_{a2}) \).

While “cutting off” the vertical wall elements may be sufficient for analyzing reactions below the foundation elevation, and produces realistic shear and moment distributions below the cut-off point, it does not include the shear and moment above the cut-off point and it does not adequately account for the deflection at the head of the vertical wall elements (the top of the wall).

The active earth pressure in the portion of the wall below the retained height \( (P_{a2}) \) could result in a negative value if \( \gamma_h H - 2S_u < 0 \); however, it is not possible to have a negative active earth pressure.
307.7.2 CELLULAR SHEET PILE WALLS

The minimum foundation embedment of cellular sheet pile walls is the larger of 3-ft or the frost depth at the front (exposed) face. It is acceptable for the steel sheet pile PS-Sections to not be embedded below the minimum foundation embedment elevation of the wall. Check the external stability of the sheet pile cells in bearing resistance, sliding resistance, and limiting eccentricity (overturning) at the foundation elevation as gravity walls in accordance with LRFD 11.6.3.

For closed sheet pile cells, driving the rear sheet pile sections deeper to provide uplift resistance against overturning or passive resistance against sliding is acceptable. Check resistance versus uplift according to LRFD 10.7.3.11 for a group of driven steel piles. If providing resistance to sliding, ensure that the steel sheet pile PS-Sections can resist the horizontal load in flexure and shear.

Check the connection in interlock tension between individual PS-Section elements versus the maximum interlock strength between the elements. For semi-circular cells (which are not closed at the back) also check pullout resistance of the cell wall versus the retained earth pressure. Assume the friction angle between the steel sheet pile and soil to be $\delta = 0.33 \phi$ for a soil-steel interface, in accordance with LRFD C3.11.5.3. Resistance factors for the failure modes of connection interlock tension and horizontal pullout shall be as follows:

A. Connection Interlock Tension: $\phi_{\text{interlock}} = 0.75$
B. Horizontal Pullout Resistance: $\phi_{\text{pullout}} = 1.00$

307.8 ANCHORED WALLS

Design anchored walls according to LRFD 11.9, SS866, and publication FHWA-IF-99-015, Geotechnical Engineering Circular 4 (GEC 4) “Ground Anchors and Anchored Systems.” Other than exceptions given in this section, these walls shall conform to the specifications of BDM Sections 307.6 or 307.7, as applicable.

C307.8

The terms “tieback anchor” and “ground anchor” are considered synonymous.

Tieback anchors are a possible solution to increase resistance to horizontal forces (sliding) for a gravity wall with spread footings, per BDM Section 305.2.1.3. Anchored walls may otherwise be of any of the non-gravity cantilever wall types listed under BDM Sections 307.6 or 307.7 (drilled shaft walls, or steel sheet pile walls), with the addition of ground anchors to limit deflection and resist overturning or structural failure of the vertical wall elements.

Cellular sheet pile walls are composed of rectangular, circular, or semi-circular sheet pile cells with PS-Section elements, containing retained earth, which together act as a gravity wall, similar to a bin wall.

The sheet pile sections in this case do not retain the soil in cantilever action, but merely in tension across the face of the cell. Publication EM 1110-2-2503 provides a useful design reference.
Anchored soldier pile walls utilizing laced-together, back-to-back MC or C channel steel sections for the discrete vertical wall elements are not preferred. Lacing two channel sections together requires a large amount of fabrication and is inefficient for weight of steel per flexural resistance for each soldier pile beam. The preferred approach is to use HP or W steel sections with shop-prefabricated “windows” for the placement of the tieback anchors.

Reference SS866 for all walls utilizing ground anchors. Specify anchor locations, anchor inclination, minimum anchor lengths, minimum unbonded lengths, Factored Design Load (FDL), and lock-off load on the Project Plans. For permanent ground anchors, specify the number of proof, performance, creep, and investigative anchor pullout tests to be performed, and specify an appropriate level of corrosion protection for the anchors. Temporary ground anchors do not require specified testing or corrosion protection.

Ground anchors do not contribute to overall (global) stability unless the anchors develop their pullout resistance beyond the zone of potential soil shear failure.

When an anchored wall is subject to live load surcharge (LS) loading, the horizontal earth pressure load on the wall shall consist of a combination of an Apparent Earth Pressure (AEP) diagram load in accordance with LRFD 3.11.5.7 and a live load surcharge load in accordance with LRFD 3.11.6.4. For factored loading, separate these two components of load and have the appropriate load factors applied according to LRFD Tables 3.4.1-1 and 3.4.1-2.

For anchored walls, a p-y analysis of the foundation is not required. Design the embedment depth below design grade of anchored non-gravity walls according to GEC 4, Section 5.5.

Unless the vertical wall elements are founded in bedrock, include the effect of settlement of vertical wall elements in design of anchored walls according to LRFD 11.9.3.1, and GEC 4 Sections 5.6, and 5.11.1.

Overturning and serviceability lateral deflection of the foundation are not considered valid failure modes for an anchored wall.

Settlement can cause reduction of anchor loads. There is additional risk associated in placing a bridge abutment on top of an anchored wall, as the imposition of the bridge loads after construction of the wall can cause vertical displacement and relaxation of the anchors.

307.9 SOIL NAIL WALLS

Design soil nail walls in accordance with publication FHWA-NHI-14-007, Geotechnical Engineering Circular 7 (GEC 7) “Soil Nail Walls Reference Manual.”
Specify soil nail locations, soil nail inclination, minimum soil nail lengths, and Factored Design Load (FDL) on the Project Plans.

In which:

$$\text{FDL} = \gamma_p T_{\text{max}} \leq R_{po} \phi_{po}$$

Where:

- $\gamma_p$ = maximum load factor for vertical earth pressure EV from LRFD Table 3.4.1-2 = 1.35
- $T_{\text{max}}$ = maximum tensile force in the soil nail (kips)
- $R_{po}$ = nominal pullout resistance of the soil nail (kips)
- $\phi_{po}$ = resistance factor for soil nail pullout = 0.65

Specify a minimum of one verification test for each design soil nail length and design soil stratum in which the soil nails are to be installed. Show verification test locations in the plans.

Specify proof tests on a minimum of five percent of the production soil nails in each row, or a minimum of one per row.

Provide vertical drainage consisting of prefabricated geocomposite drain (PGD) strips, placed against the cut soil face, behind the initial (shotcrete) face. Provide continuous coverage over the width of the wall face, between the nail locations. Provide a detail in the Plans showing the bottom of the PGD terminating at least 6-in into a 2-ft wide section of Porous Backfill with Geotextile Fabric in accordance with C&MS 518. Provide collection pipes and pipe outlets to ensure positive drainage of the Porous Backfill.

Include the Special Provision for soil nail walls in the plans.

### 307.10 TEMPORARY WALLS

Temporary walls shall have a design service life of no more than three years. If a retaining wall must serve more than three years, perform the design as for a permanent wall. Steel components of temporary walls do not require corrosion protection, including reinforcing steel in reinforced concrete components. Otherwise, perform all aspects of the design for temporary walls the same as for permanent walls of the same type.

The Verification Test Load (VTL) is equal to the nominal pullout resistance of the soil nail, per GEC 7 Section 9.4.3.

The Proof Test Load (PTL) is equal to 75 percent of the nominal pullout resistance of the soil nail, per GEC 7 Section 9.4.4.

The Special Provision for soil nail walls is available from the Office of Geotechnical Engineering.

Temporary walls can be of the same type as any permanent retaining wall. Special retaining wall types that are only used for temporary applications include wire faced MSE walls and fabric wrapped walls.

For temporary shoring refer to BDM Section 310.1.
307.10.1 WIRE FACED MSE WALLS

Design wire faced MSE walls in accordance with SS867. Perform the design for external stability as an MSE wall according to BDM Section 307.4.

For a permanent application of this type of wall, galvanize the wire facing units in accordance with SS867.03.A, and provide a permanent cast-in-place or precast concrete facing.

307.10.2 FABRIC WRAPPED WALLS

Design fabric wrapped walls as reinforced soil slopes in accordance with publications FHWA-NHI-10-024 and FHWA-NHI-10-025, Geotechnical Engineering Circular 11 (GEC 11); and SS863 except that geosynthetics (geotextile sheets) comprise both the soil reinforcement and the face of the wall. Geotextiles used for fabric wrapped walls shall conform to Class I geotextile as specified in AASHTO M 288. Determine Ultimate Tensile Strength (strength per unit width) of the geotextile reinforcement from wide strip tests in accordance with ASTM D4595.

Fabric wrapped walls are also known as geotextile faced MSE walls. The face of a fabric wrapped wall is typically steeper than 1H:1V.

308 SUPERSTRUCTURE

308.1 SPAN ARRANGEMENTS

The length of a bridge will be determined by the requirements for horizontal clearance at grade (highway or railway) separations, by the requirements for waterway opening at stream crossings or the presence of existing utilities and/or infrastructure. Typically for any given bridge, there are a number of combinations of spans and lengths of spans that can be utilized. Generally, a preferred span arrangement that minimizes the number of substructure units should be used (i.e. fewer piers with longer spans).

Where permitted by the ROW limits, the substructure units should be placed outside of the clear zone. Refer to L&D, Vol. 1 for the definition of the clear zone.

For waterway crossings, an effort should be made to keep the substructure footings outside of the limits of the OHWM.

The number and/or type of substructure units should be based on a cost analysis. The Cost Analysis should examine the most economical number of spans required based on total bridge costs, including a substructure and superstructure cost optimization study. Site conditions will govern the location of substructure units with respect to required horizontal clearances, foundation conditions and appearance. Refer to BDM Section 200 for additional cost analysis considerations.
308.2 SUPERSTRUCTURE TYPES

Select the type of superstructure used on the basis of economy, safety and appearance.

The types of superstructure generally used in Ohio consist of cast-in-place concrete slabs, prestressed concrete box or I-beams, and steel beams or welded plate girders. Since these superstructure types make up a large majority of the bridges in the inventory for the state of Ohio, these are the only structure types covered in this manual. For special conditions where other types of superstructures are being considered, consult the Office of Structural Engineering for recommendations and requirements prior to initiating the design.

For bridges with significant substructure costs, the difference in dead loads between the steel superstructure versus a concrete superstructure should be considered in the Structure Type Study, Cost Analysis for choosing the most economical structure type.

308.2.1 CONCRETE SLAB BRIDGES

Design continuous reinforced concrete slab bridges in accordance with LRFD 4.6.2.3.

For simple span reinforced concrete slab bridges cast in place directly on concrete substructures, consider the effective span length equal to the clear span plus 15-in.

Include a final deck surface elevation table in the plans. Show elevations for all profile grade lines, curblines, crown lines, and phased construction lines where they intersect bearing points, quarter-span points and mid-span points as well as any additional points required to meet a maximum spacing between points of 25-ft.

308.2.1.1 CS-1-08

The details shown in bridge standard drawing CS-1-08 were designed to function with details shown in bridge standard drawings CPA-1-08 and CPP-1-08. These details were setup to allow the slab to behave as a beam rather than a frame.

When the details provided in CS-1-08 are being used in conjunction with a substructure unit(s) that differ from what is shown in bridge standard drawings CPA-1-08 and CPP-1-08, the design will need to provide suitable bearing condition to allow the beam type behavior.
For a continuous concrete slab bridge, per CS-1-08, supported on rigid abutments, eliminate the A801 bar shown in CPA-1-08; trowel smooth the joint between the deck slab and the top of the abutment; and recess a continuous strip of elastomeric material into the abutment seat before placement of the superstructure concrete. Design the bearing system for the temperature movements described in BDM Section 1003.21 and bearing design requirements of LRFD 14.6.

If the slab is rigidly connected to rigid piers, custom design the slab/substructure. The details in CS-1-08 are not applicable.

### 308.2.2 STRUCTURAL STEEL

#### 308.2.2.1 PRELIMINARY CONSIDERATIONS & GENERAL INFORMATION

For spans greater than 60-ft, rolled beams, up to and including the 40-in depth, or welded plate girders should be considered.

Use continuous spans for multiple span steel beam and girder bridges.

This modification creates a semi-integral type abutment for the slab bridge and maintains the beam type behavior with the slab.

The ratio of the length of the end spans to the intermediate spans usually should be 0.7 to 0.8. The latter ratio is preferred because it nearly equalizes the maximum positive moment of all spans. Integrally designed structures may have end span ratios of as low as 0.6 if prevention of uplift is considered. For multi-span, composite designed, rolled beams, the maximum intermediate span is generally around 120-ft. For single span, composite designed, rolled beams, the maximum span is generally around 100-ft.

While constant depth plate girders can be used in the same range as rolled beams, they are generally not as cost effective as rolled beams for the same span lengths. Consider haunching girders over the intermediate substructure units for spans greater than 350-ft. For additional information on optimizing steel structure types refer to the NSBA Steel Design Handbook.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stringer type</th>
<th>Span length</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rolled beam</td>
<td>up to 100-ft (Simple)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>120-ft (Continuous)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Constant Depth Girder</td>
<td>120-ft – 350-ft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haunched Girder</td>
<td>&gt; 350-ft</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The minimum economical beam spacing for rolled beams is approximately 8-ft. For plate girders a minimum spacing of 9-ft is generally recommended. Girder spacings between 11-ft and 14-ft typically yield the most efficient design for the section.

Steel rolled beam or girder highway bridges shall have a minimum of 4 stringer lines.

Utilize a composite section when designing structural steel.

Do not design deck slab overhangs to exceed 4-ft measured from the centerline of beam/girder to deck edge.

On over-the-side drainage structures, the minimum overhang shall be lesser of 75% of the beam/girder depth or 4-ft.

For designs that assume the unbraced length of the top flange to be zero, investigate the strength of the non-composite section during steel erection, deck slab construction, etc. using laterally unsupported lengths that reflect actual bracing conditions.

308.2.2.1.a ATTACHMENTS

Do not weld attachments, either permanent or temporary in tension areas. Limit welded attachments to compression areas.

Show the extent of the compression and tension areas in the detail plans.

Show in the detail plans of steel beam and girder bridges where welded attachments are permitted for construction purposes.

Do not weld scuppers, down spouts or drainage supports in tension areas of primary members.

308.2.2.1.b STEEL FABRICATION QUALIFICATION

Specify the required steel fabricator classification in the pay item for the structural steel.

The Department’s requirements for steel fabricators are defined in C&MS 513 and S1078. Steel fabricators are classified according to their capabilities into eight levels (1 thru 6, SF & UF). Levels 1 thru 6 require certification according to the American Institute of Steel Construction (AISC). No AISC certification is required for Levels SF and UF.

The AISC categories of certification are listed here for information:
A. AISC Category Sbr - Fabricators qualified for single span rolled beam bridges

B. AISC Category Mbr - Fabricators qualified for all other bridge structures

C. AISC has also established a P and F endorsement for fabricators:
   1. P - Painting of steel structures endorsement
   2. F - Fracture Critical endorsement

308.2.2.1.c  MAXIMUM AVAILABLE LENGTH OF STEEL MEMBER

Consider reducing cost of structural steel members by providing field splices and allowing for optional field splices.

Length of a girder is generally limited by the ability to transport the member from the fabricator's shop to the job site. A length of 120-ft is generally the maximum trucking length between splices, but girder lengths of 160-ft and greater have been transported to project sites. When the trucking lengths exceed 110-ft contact local fabricators for NSBA for maximum shipping lengths.

Mills can supply lengths up to maximum shipping limits, but extra charges may be added for lengths over 80-ft.

The National Steel Bridge Alliance (NSBA) and the American Iron and Steel Institute (AISI) are available to provide assistance with material sizes.

308.2.2.1.d  STRUCTURAL STEEL COATINGS

ASTM A709 50W/70W should be selected wherever applicable as it eliminates the need for a coating system on the entire beam and the maintenance associated with a coating system. See BDM Section 308.2.2.1.d.1 for additional information.

Specify an alternative coating system per BDM Section 308.2.2.1.d.2 if a structure requires the steel to be ASTM A709 Grade 50.

For more information on steel materials, see BDM Section 304.1.

308.2.2.1.d.1  PRIMARY COATING SYSTEMS

The Department’s primary system is un-coated weathering steel. Weathering steel reduces the initial cost of the structure by approximately the cost of a three-coat paint system on the structure. It may also eliminate future maintenance coatings.
In suitable environments, uncoated weathering steel develops a thin oxidation layer, also called a surface patina, that is small grained (dense) and tightly adherent to the base metal. Once this oxidation layer builds to a sufficient thickness and density the exposure of the base metal to moisture and oxygen is blocked and further corrosion is greatly reduced.

Do not use uncoated weathering steel when the vertical clearance is 20-ft or less, the AADT is 50,000 or larger, and the ADTT is 20% or more.

Do not use uncoated weathering steel when the low chord is 10-ft or less above the OHWM.

Proximity to industrial areas where concentrated chemical fumes may drift directly onto the bridge should be considered in the site-specific study.

Specify an alternative coating system when a site-specific study finds that uncoated weathering steel is not suitable.

Tunnel-like conditions should be considered in the site-specific study. These conditions can result in the protective patina not developing correctly due to increased moisture or deicing salt exposure and poor air circulation resulting in the steel deteriorating at a faster rate.

When weathering steel is specified for a site meeting the requirements for tunnel like conditions, apply a protective coating, per BDM 308.2.2.1.d.2, to the fascia beams/girders for the entire length of the structure. Refer to BDM Figure 308-1 for the section coating limits.

Tunnel-like conditions are defined as bridges that meet ALL of the following criteria:

A. Vertical clearance is 20-ft or less
B. Bridges over interstates or four lane divided highways
C. ADTT = 10% or more under the bridge
D. Posted speed limit under the bridge is 55 mph or greater

Additional resources available to aid in the site studies include:

C. NCHRP 314, 1989
D. AISC Uncoated Weathering Steel Bridges, Vol. 1, Chap. 9
E. Ohio Department of Transportation, unpublished internal study, September 2000.
F. Texas Department of Transportation, Research report 1818-1, May 2000.
G. Missouri Department of Transportation, Task Force Report on Weathering Steel
Apply a protective coating, per BDM 308.2.2.1.d.2, to all exposed weathering steel surfaces within 10-ft of the beam/girder end at abutments with expansion joints and 10-ft on both sides (20-ft total) at intermediate expansion joints. Also coat all cross-frames, end frames or other steel in these 10-ft sections.

Coat all surfaces at the ends of un-coated weathering steel bridges on integral or semi-integral abutments with an inorganic zinc prime coat to 1-ft past the end diaphragm. Show limits of zinc prime coat in the plans.

Apply a protective coating, per BDM 308.2.2.1.d.2, to weathering steel fascia beams/girders along their entire length for bridges with over-the-side drainage. Refer to BDM Figure 308-1 for the section coating limits.

Apply a protective coating, per BDM Section 308.2.2.1.d.2, to weathering steel fascia beams/girders along their entire length when the width of the gap between adjacent structures is less than 30-ft. Refer to BDM Figure 308-1 for the section coating limits.

When a three-coat paint system is applied to the splice location, as shown in BDM Figure 308-1, use galvanized bolts at these splice locations.

When applying a protective coating, per BDM 308.2.2.1.d.2, to only a portion of the beam, tint the top coat to a color closely matching AMS Standard 595A 20045 or 20059, the color of weathering steel.

If the requirements of tunnel-like conditions are not met, aesthetics may still dictate that a protective coating system be applied to the entire length of fascia beams over traffic.

De-icing salts are able to get between the structures and due to inadequate sun exposure and air circulation the fascia beams/girders stay wet for prolonged periods and are prone inadequate protective patina development and more rapid corrosion.

In lieu of the three-coat system limits shown in BDM Figure 308-1 at the splice location, the owner may elect to apply a three-coat system at the same limits as the rest of the beam/girder. In this case, apply a shop applied zinc prime coat to all surfaces of the splice plates, filler plates, and faying surface of the beam/girder.
308.2.2.1.d.2 ALTERNATIVE COATING SYSTEMS

Where the primary coating system is not applicable, coat the members of new steel structures with one of the following alternative coating systems:

A. Three-coat paint system
B. Hot-dipped galvanized coating
C. Shop or field metallizing

The three-coat paint system shall consist of an inorganic zinc prime coat, an epoxy intermediate coat and a urethane finish coat (IZEU) in accordance with C&M 514. This system has proven to have a life span of up to 30 years.

Typically, the inorganic prime coat is shop applied while the intermediate and top coats are field applied.

An IZEU three-coat shop applied system with field touch up may be the system of choice where:

A. There is limited access to the superstructure in the field. Examples may include stream crossings with shallow clearances.
B. The environment is especially sensitive to possible construction debris.
C. The bridge is located in a highly urbanized area that may have limited access for future coatings.
The shop applied IZEU three-coat system may provide a better protective coating than the standard field applied system due to the fabricator’s automated blasting processes, environmental controls and better coating application access. However, the total cost of the shop-applied system is higher than the standard field applied system. Extra costs include special care needed during shipping and erection, field painting of field splices, field touch up, final cleaning and possible time delays to the project due to the additional shop work. Additionally, all field connections are to be bolted to minimize the damage to the coating by field welding.

If a shop applied three-coat system is selected, refer to C&MS 514.16 for additional information.

A galvanized coating system is an alternative for new steel structures. Galvanized systems are proven durable up to 40 years.

When a galvanized coating system is specified, contact the American Galvanizers Association to confirm the structural members detailed can be galvanized in a regional plant.

Galvanizing tanks are relatively shallow and normally not longer than 45-ft in length. Therefore, beam lengths should not be longer than 60-ft. Additional information on regional galvanizer size restrictions is available from the American Galvanizers Association.

For bolted connections of galvanized structures, detail the diameter of the bolt holes to be 1/8-in larger than the bolt diameter.

Since standard holes may become partially filled with galvanizing, bolted splice designs will require a non-standard hole size.

Do not field weld end cross-frames and intermediate cross-frames on galvanized or metallized structures.

Bolted cross-frames will be required. Bolted cross-frames as detailed in the Standard Bridge Drawing GSD-1-19 may be specified.

When welding on galvanized member is required, repair the galvanizing per C&MS 711.02.

Welding onto galvanizing causes damage to the coating and should be avoided wherever possible.

Required plan or proposal notes for the galvanized coating system are available upon request with the Office of Structural Engineering.

Shop or field metallizing shall be in accordance with SS845.

A shop applied metallizing system is another alternative coating system, but the costs are relatively high compared to the standard IZEU system.

Metallized systems have an expected life similar to galvanizing. Metallized coating systems should have field bolted connections rather than field welded connections, but oversized holes are not required. Metallizing, as compared to galvanizing, has no limit on the size of members being coated and causes no additional distortion from heat.
When un-coated weathering steel is not suitable for a bridge of a railroad, galvanized or metalized coating systems should be considered. Any structural alternative with any type of paint system, including coated weathering steel, should be avoided in these locations because it may not be possible to get access the structure for future maintenance.

308.2.2.1.e OUTSIDE MEMBER CONSIDERATIONS

Evaluate the actual loads for outside primary members.

C308.2.2.1.e

Heavy sidewalks, large overhangs of the concrete deck slab and/or live loads may cause higher loads on an outside member than loads on an internal member.

This analysis requirement does not alleviate the designer from conforming to LRFD 4.6.2.2.1 (i.e. “…exterior girders of multibeam bridges shall not have less resistance than an interior beam.”).

308.2.2.1.f CAMBER & DEFLECTIONS

Do not include the loading for future wearing surfaces in determining required shop camber.

C308.2.2.1.f

When establishing dead load deflection for determining the required shop camber of composite beam or girder bridges with concrete deck slabs and determining deck screed elevations, the weight of curbs, railings, parapets and separate wearing surface may be equally distributed to all beams.

In the deflection and camber table in the design plans, detail all points for each beam or girder line for the full length of the bridge. Detail bearing points, quarter-span points, mid-span points and splice points and any additional points required to meet a maximum spacing between points of 25-ft.

In cases of special geometry (e.g. spirals, horizontal or vertical curves, superelevation transitions, etc.), provide additional points in the deflection and camber table if the normally required points do not adequately define the required curvature of a beam or girder.

In all cases, calculate the required shop camber as the algebraic sum of the computed deflections, vertical curve adjustment and horizontal curve adjustment. Measure camber to a chord between adjacent bearing points.

Provide a camber diagram showing the location of the points defined above and giving vertical offset dimensions at the bearing points from a “Base” or “Work” line between abutment bearings.
308.2.2.1.g  FATIGUE DETAIL CATEGORY

In order to allow for future rehabilitation involving welded attachments less than 2.0-in., the fatigue limit state loading for steel members in the tensile stress and/or stress reversal regions shall not exceed the nominal fatigue resistance for Detail Category C.

308.2.2.1.h  TOUGHNESS TESTS

On steel structures, main load carrying members (primary members such as beams, moment plates, bolted joint splice plates excluding fill plates, etc.) require Charpy V Notch Testing. Identify these components on the detail plans by placing “(CVN)” after the component's description.

Example: W36x150 (CVN)

Designate the web and all flanges of plate girders as a CVN material.

Cross-frame members, cross-frame connection stiffeners and gusset plates on horizontally curved beam or girder structures are primary members. Identify these items as CVN on the detail plans.

Bracing members are considered primary members in curved bridges since they transmit forces necessary to provide equilibrium.

308.2.2.1.i  STANDARD END CROSS-FRAMES

Support expansion devices with end cross-frames. If end cross-frame details shown in the standards for the expansion device are not used, design the end cross-frame to limit the maximum deflection in the expansion devise to L/2000.

End cross-frames are needed for support and reduction of deflection of expansion device. Standard expansion joints have designs already established as part of the standard drawings.

308.2.2.1.j  BOLTED SPLICES

For galvanized structures, increase the bolt hole size a 1/16-in more than a standard hole size.

This increase is to allow for the additional thickness of the zinc coating in hole. This will also decrease the splice capacity.

Design allowable bolt stresses for painted surfaces based on AASHTO ‘s values for Class A, Contact Surface, Standard Hole Type.

Design allowable bolt stresses for unpainted weathering steel surfaces based on AASHTO’s values for Class B, Contact Surface, Standard Hole Type.

Design allowable bolt stresses for metallized surfaces based on AASHTO’s values for Class B, Contact Surface, Standard Hole Type.

Design allowable bolt stresses for galvanized surfaces based on AASHTO’s values for Class C, Contact Surface, Oversized Hole Type.
For splices at bend points, place the lines of holes in the beam or girder flanges parallel to the centerline of the web. If the bend angle is small enough use rectangular splice plates (splice plates shall not overhang flange by more than 1/2-in and inside splice plates shall not have to be trimmed to clear web or web to flange radius). When the angle is too large to allow rectangular splice plates, trim the plates to align with the flange edges. Meet the minimum edge distances defined in BDM Section 308.2.2.1.j.2 for both cases.

For bearing type compression splices, such as in a column, mill the ends of the spliced members to be in full bearing. For compression splice members with milled ends, meet the requirements of LRFD 6.13.6.1.2. Specify the fit requirements of the mating surfaces in the plans.

Refer to BDM Figure 308-2 for additional bolted splice details.

The designer should recognize that “FULL BEARING” of beams and girders is not defined by AASHTO. “FULL BEARING” is defined for this application as 75 percent of the bearing surface in contact and the other 25 percent with no gap greater than 1/32-in.

Alternatively, a slip-critical type connection can be used to avoid milling the beam ends.

Refer to BDM Figure 308-2 for additional bolted splice details.

**Figure 308-2**

### 308.2.2.1.j.1 BOLTS

Bolt field splices in beams and girders using high strength bolts, ASTM F3125, Grade A325.
Specify the diameter of the bolts and provide the ASTM F3125, Grade A325 bolt type in the coating notes or bolt material specifications.

Use Type I bolts for structures with coating systems that are zinc based, such as OZEU, IZEU, galvanizing or metallizing.

Use Grade A325, Type III bolts for un-coated weathering steel. If the faying surfaces under both the head and nut of every bolt of a weathering steel member are coated, specify galvanized Grade A325 Type I bolts. Otherwise, specify Grade A325, Type III bolts.

### 308.2.2.1.j.2 EDGE DISTANCES

For design and detailing purposes, increase the minimum edge distances listed in LRFD Table 6.13.2.6.6-1 by 1/4-in.

### 308.2.2.1.j.3 LOCATION OF FIELD SPLICES

Bolted splices should be located at points of dead load contraflexure on a continuous span structure. Splices may also be supplied to help meet shipping and handling limitations. Plans should show optional field splice locations.

### 308.2.2.1.k INTERMEDIATE EXPANSION DEVICES

When required, locate intermediate expansion devices for a structure, over a pier and design the structural members to be discontinuous at that pier.

### 308.2.2.1.l SHEAR CONNECTORS

Design shear connectors in accordance with LRFD 6.10.10.

Use automatic end-welded type shear connectors. Do not use channel sections for shear connectors.

Detail the shear studs so that the requirements of LRFD 6.10.10.1.4 are met.

Field install shear studs. In the case of galvanized structures, install the shear studs per C&MS 513.22.
308.2.2.2 ROLLED BEAMS

308.2.2.2.a INTERMEDIATE STIFFENERS & CONNECTING PLATES

Do not use intermediate stiffeners for rolled beams. Size connecting plates to be a minimum thickness of 3/8-in and wide enough to make an adequate cross-frame connection.

Clip corners of connecting plates in contact with both web and flange. Clip the stiffener 1-in horizontally and 2.5-in vertically.

Fillet weld both sides of the connecting plate to the beam web and both flanges.

308.2.2.2.b INTERMEDIATE CROSS-FRAMES & DIAPHRAGMS

For structures with the stringers placed on tangent alignments, detail cross-frames as follows:

A. Do not exceed 25-ft for cross-frame spacings between points of dead load contraflexure in the positive moment regions.
B. Do not exceed 15-ft for cross-frame spacings between points of dead load contraflexure in the negative moment regions.
C. Connect cross-frames for rolled beams directly to either connecting plates or gusset plates that are bolted to connecting plates.
D. When the nominal depth of the beam is less than 36-in, use structural steel channel diaphragms rather than cross-frames.
E. Place cross-frames perpendicular to stringers. This does not apply to skewed pier diaphragms.

For structures with flared stringers, the following exceptions apply:

A. If the differential angle between individual stringers is 5-degrees or less, place the cross-frames perpendicular to one stringer and in line across the total width of the structure.

Intermediate transverse stiffeners are defined as plates used to stiffening the web of the beam and are not connected to the cross-frames. Connecting plates are defined as plates used to connect cross-frames to beams.

When determining the width of the connecting plates, consider the ease of access for the cross-frame connections. Connecting plates should not extend beyond the edge of flange.

Connecting plate clip details are shown on the Standard Bridge Drawing GSD-1-19.

See the General Steel Details Standard Bridge Drawing, GSD-1-19, for standard cross-frame configurations.

For additional information on cross-frame layout refer to LRFD 6.7.4.2 and Skewed and Curved Steel I-Girder Bridge Fit by NSBA.

When the nominal depth of the rolled beam is 36-in, either channel diaphragms or cross-frames may be used.
B2. If the differential angle between individual stringers is greater than 5-degrees, divide the differential angle evenly between connections to both stringers.

Show the following in the design plans:

A3. The cross-frame spacing for each region along the length of the stringer.

B3. The typical cross-frame details or reference to the General Steel Details Standard Bridge Drawing, GSD-1-19, for standard cross-frame configurations.

Ensure cross-frame locations do not conflict with bolted splices or provide appropriate details to attach cross-frames at bolted splice locations.

In phased construction of new steel structures, do not permanently attach cross-frames between phases until all deadload (deck, parapet, etc.), except the concrete in the closure pour, has been applied to the members. The cross-frames can then be permanently attached and a deck closure pour can be completed to finish the superstructure. See BDM Section 309.3.8.5.

For curved or flared bridges with “dog-legged” stringers, install cross-frames no greater than 12-in from the bend points. Place cross-frame normal to the stringer used to set the 1-ft clearance dimension and connect to the adjacent stringer only on the same side of the centerline of the splice. Place an additional horizontal angle near the top flange of the stringers.

When standard cross-frames with a top strut are used for curved stringers, confirm that the cross-frames and their connections meet the additional loading developed in a curved member design. If specially designed cross-frames are used, bolt the cross-frames to stiffeners with oversized holes. Include the reduction in allowable capacity associated with oversized holes in the design. Refer to BDM Section 308.2.2.1.h for material toughness requirements.

The cross-frame units should be similar to standard cross-frames.

See BDM Figure 308-3 for plan view layout of cross-frames for dog-legged stringers.

Cross-frames for curved stringers may be one of the types shown on the Standard Bridge Drawing, GSD - 1-19, with an additional top strut.

If the capacity reduction is too much to allow for oversized holes and standard holes are required, denote on the plans that shop assembly of the specially designed cross-frames and adjacent curved member is required.
308.2.2.2.c WELDS

Specify fillet weld leg size required, in the case of fillet welds, or CP (complete joint penetration) in the case of full penetration groove welds. Do not select the joint configuration to be used for a full penetration weld. This is left to the fabricator and the welding code.

308.2.2.2.c.1 MINIMUM SIZE OF FILLET WELD

Design fillet welds for required stresses but also meet the following size requirements:

A. Minimum size of fillet weld is based on the thickness of the thicker steel section in the weld joint. AWS D1.5 defines the minimum size of fillet weld.

B. 1/4-in leg for up to 3/4-in thick material.

C&MS 513 permits welding by the following processes:

A. Shielded Metal Arc Welding (SMAW)
B. Flux Cored Arc Welding (FCAW)
C. Submerged Arc Welding (SAW)

Fabricators may choose to use one or more of these processes and each process has its advantages. Therefore, the designer should not specify the process.
C. 5/16-in leg for greater than 3/4-in material.

**308.2.2.2.c** NON-DESTRUCTIVE INSPECTION OF WELDS

Perform nondestructive testing of welds in accordance with C&MS 513.

**C308.2.2.c.2**

For any special NDT inspection of unique or special welded joints, contact the office of structural engineering for additional requirements.

**308.2.2.2.d** MOMENT PLATES

Do not terminate fully welded moment plates where the calculated total stresses are tensile.

**C308.2.2.d**

End bolted cover plates, as defined in AASHTO, are acceptable for use in zones of tensile stress if cost effective. Welded moment plates may be economical in the compression flange areas over the piers of continuous span structures and may be investigated by the designer.

**308.2.2.3** GIRDERS

**308.2.2.3.a** GENERAL

Investigate multiple designs to determine the most economical option.

**C308.2.2.3.a**

Often a design with an unstiffened web, eliminating transverse stiffeners, is the most economical. In this context, the term “unstiffened web” refers to a web without stiffeners except for the stiffeners used to connect cross-frames. A design with a thicker unstiffened web is also desirable from a maintenance standpoint because field and shop painting of stiffeners is a problem and is often a localized point of failure for the coating system. The NSBA and AISI are available to evaluate your options.

Do not use longitudinal stiffeners.

For haunched girders, detail the corner between the flat bottom flange bearing seat area and the curved section of the bottom flange as two plates with a full penetration weld. Give the fabricator the option of hot bending this flange per AASHTO LRFD Bridge Construction Specifications Section 11.4.3.3.3. A detail note is provided in BDM Section 702.15.

**308.2.2.3.b** FRACTURE CRITICAL

This section is not intended to recommend fracture critical designs. The designer should make all efforts to not develop a structure design that requires fracture critical members.

**C308.2.2.3.b**

Structures with fracture critical details require a concurrent detail design review to be performed by the Office of Structural Engineering.

Fracture critical members are defined in Section 2, Definitions, of the AASHTO/AWS D1.5, Chapter 12 Fracture Control Plan.
If a bridge design includes members or their components that are fracture critical, clearly identify those members and components as FRACTURE CRITICAL MEMBERS (FCM) in the plans. Designate fracture critical welds as FCM in the plans. Include the detail note provided in BDM Section 702.16 that references the appropriate sections of the AASHTO/AWS Bridge Welding Code.

If a girder is non-redundant, include the entire girder in the pay quantity for ITEM 513 - STRUCTURAL STEEL MEMBERS, LEVEL 6. Designate the tension and compression zones in the fracture critical members.

308.2.2.3.c WIDTH & THICKNESS REQUIREMENTS

308.2.2.3.c.1 FLANGES

C308.2.2.3.c.1

In the design of welded steel girders, the thickness of the flange plates is varied along the length of the girder in accordance with the bending moment. Each change in plate thickness requires a complete penetration butt-weld in the flange plate. These butt-welds are an expensive shop operation requiring considerable labor. In determining the points where changes in plate thickness occur, the designer should weigh the cost of butt-welded splices against extra plate thickness. In many cases it may be advantageous to continue the thicker plate beyond the theoretical stepdown point to avoid the cost of the butt-welded splice.

In order to help make this decision, guidelines proposed by United States Steel in their pamphlet “Fabrication - Its Relation to Design, Shop Practices, Delivery and Costs” may be used. The amount of steel that must be saved to justify providing a welded splice should be as follows:

A. For A709 grade 36 steel:
   \[ 300-lb + (25-lb \times \text{cross sectional area, in}^2, \text{of the lighter flange plate}) \]
B. For A709 grade 50 & 50W steel, the cutoff point shall be 85 percent of the value for grade 36 material.

In addition to design limitations of width to thickness, design flanges to be wide enough such that the girder will have the necessary lateral strength for handling and erection. Employ the following two empirical rules:

A. \[ b_t = \frac{d_o}{6} + 2.5 \geq 12\text{-in} \]
B. \[ b_{fc} \geq \frac{L}{85} \]

In addition to design limitations of width to thickness, design flanges to be wide enough such that the girder will have the necessary lateral strength for handling and erection. Employ the following two empirical rules:
Where:

\[ b_f = \text{full width of either girder flange rounded up to the nearest inch (in)} \]
\[ b_{fc} = \text{full width of the compression flange (in)} \]
\[ L = \text{length of the girder shipping piece (in)} \]
\[ d_w = \text{web depth (in)} \]

Design the flange to have a minimum thickness of 7/8-in. Use the following for selection of flange thicknesses:

A. For material 7/8-in to 3-in thick, specify thickness in 1/8-in increments.
B. For material greater than 3-in thick, specify thickness in 1/4-in increments.

Whenever possible, use constant flange widths throughout the length of the girder.

### 308.2.2.3.c.2 WEBS

Use a minimum web thickness of 3/8-in.

See BDM Section 308.2.2.3.a for recommendations on use of unstiffened web designs.

### 308.2.2.3.d INTERMEDIATE STIFFENERS & CONNECTING PLATES

Intermediate transverse stiffeners are defined as plates used to stiffening the web of the girder and are not connected to the cross-frames. Connecting plates are defined as plates used to connect cross-frames to beams.

Design intermediate web stiffeners with a minimum thickness of 3/8-in. Clip the corners of the stiffeners that extend beyond the edge of flange at a 45-degree angle. Make all intermediate stiffeners the same size.

Use single stiffeners on alternate sides of the web of interior girders and only the inside of the web for fascia girders. Weld these stiffeners to the web and the compression flange. Make the top tension flange a tight fit.

Weld connecting plates to the web and both flanges to help eliminate cracking of the web due to out of plane bending. Investigate that the fatigue criteria is met in these areas.

Do not stitch weld or single side weld stiffeners and/or connecting plates.

Clip corners of stiffeners and connecting plates in contact with both web and flange. Clip the stiffener 1-in horizontally and 2.5-in vertically.

For details of stiffeners refer to the Standard Bridge Drawing GSD-1-19.
308.2.2.3.e  INTERMEDIATE CROSS-FRAMES

Connect cross-frames for girders to intermediate web stiffeners as shown in the Standard Bridge Drawing, GSD-1-19.

For plate girder bridges, provide erection bolts for the connections of cross-frames to girder stiffeners.

For additional intermediate cross-frame information, refer to BDM Section 308.2.2.2.b.

Erection bolts are normally 5/8-in diameter. Bolt holes should generally be oversized. See the General Steel Details standard bridge drawing for typical details.

308.2.2.3.f  WELDS

For full penetration welds splicing flange materials or web materials, add a plan note requiring removal of the weld reinforcement by grinding in the direction of the main stresses.

Refer to BDM Section 308.2.2.2.c for addition weld information.

C308.2.2.3.f

The removal of reinforcement improves fatigue characteristics and makes NDT interpretation easier.

308.2.2.3.f.1  WELD TYPES

There are generally two (2) types of welds acceptable for bridge fabrication, fillet and complete penetration welds.

C308.2.2.3.f.1

Complete or full Penetration welds are by definition welded through the full section of the plates to be joined.

308.2.2.3.f.2  MINIMUM SIZE OF FILLET & COMPLETE PENETRATION WELDS, PLAN REQUIREMENTS

Refer to BDM Section 308.2.2.2.c.1 for additional information on minimum fillet weld sizes.

Do not use partial penetration welds, except for secondary members not subject to tension or reversal stresses.

Specify either fillet weld leg size, in the case of fillet welds, or CP (complete penetration) for complete joint penetration groove welds. Do not detail actual complete penetration welded joints symbols but only show the requirement that the welded joint be Complete Joint Penetration, CP.

Inspection and acceptance of a complete penetration weld is based on whether the weld will be loaded in tension or compression. In order to utilize this permissible quality difference between welds subjected to only compression or tension stresses, designate in the detail plans for steel girders all flange butt welds that are subjected to compressive stresses only. Make this designation by placing the letters “CS” next to full penetration welds shown on detail drawings. Place the following explanatory legend on the same detail sheet:
CS - indicates butt weld subject to compressive stresses only.

308.2.3.f.3 INSPECTION OF WELDS, WHAT TO SHOW ON PLANS

Refer to BDM Section 308.2.2.c.2 for additional information on NDT requirements.

For bridges carrying railroads, when full penetration web to flange welds are specified, add a note requiring 10 percent ultrasonic inspection. Check the AREMA specifications and with the actual railroad to confirm the individual railroad's requirements for NDT of welds.

308.2.3.g CURVED GIRDER DESIGN REQUIREMENTS

When designing curved girder structures, investigate all temporary and permanent loading conditions including loading from wet concrete in the deck pour for all stages of construction. Consider future re-decking as a separate loading condition. Design diaphragms as full load carrying members and according to BDM Section 308.2.2.b. Perform a three-dimensional analysis representing the structure as a whole and as it will exist during all intermediate stages and under all construction loadings.

Include basic erection data on the contract plans. As a minimum, include the following information:

A. If temporary supports are required, provide the location of the assumed temporary support points, reactions and deflections for each construction stage and loading condition.

B. Instructions to the Contractor as to when and how to fasten connections for cross-frames or diaphragms to assure stability during all temporary conditions.

308.2.3 PRESTRESSED CONCRETE BEAMS

The Bridge Design Manual and Standard Bridge Drawings PSBD-2-07 and PSID-1-13 represent standard practice for the prestressed industry in Ohio.

When considering design deviations from these publications, contact the Ohio Prestressers Association and/or the PCI Central Region to request documentation that the deviation is acceptable and can be produced within the project timeframe by at least two independent producers prequalified under S1079. ODOT may request verification of this documentation during project reviews. These industry organizations are also valuable resources for preliminary pricing and practical hauling limitations to specific project locations.
Model multi-span, non-composite members as simple-span for all loading conditions. Define the live load and future wearing surface as stated in BDM Section 303.1.

Model multi-span, composite members using the two loading conditions that follow:

A. Design the beams as simple-span for all loading conditions. Define the live load and future wearing surface as stated in BDM Section 303.1.

B. Design the deck reinforcing for beams acting as simple-span for non-composite dead loads and as continuous span for live load and composite dead loads. Define the live load and future wearing surface as stated in BDM Section 303.1.

308.2.3.1 TRANSPORTATION & HANDLING CONSIDERATIONS

Consider the site limitations for beam hauling.

For beams 100-ft long or more, contact at least two approved fabricators of precast bridge members to obtain a written agreement stating that the member can be shipped to the project site. Include the agreements in the Structure Type Study, Narrative of Bridge Alternatives.

C308.2.3.1

While weight of a precast bridge member is not typically a limiting factor, its length and ability to reach the jobsite may be a restriction. Maximum lengths are normally dictated by the smallest turning radius enroute to the project site.

In order to prevent damaging the beams during transit and erection, fabricators may require additional strands to be placed in the top flange. These shipping strands keep the top flange in compression until the beams are set into final position. Once set, the shipping strands are cut to release their prestressing force and allow the beams to reach their design ultimate capacity.

308.2.3.2 LENGTH ADJUSTMENTS

In order to prevent fabrication mistakes for beam length, address the effect that the longitudinal grade has on dimensions measured along a beam’s length in the plans. When the beam length measured along the grade differs from the beam length measured horizontally by more than 3/8-in, clearly label all affected dimensions measured along the length of the beam so that the fabricator can make the necessary allowances in the Shop Drawings. A Typical Detail note is available in BDM Section 702.6.
**308.2.3.3 BOX BEAMS**

Refer to BDM Section 304 for concrete and reinforcing material requirements for box beams and concrete wearing surfaces.

Refer to BDM Section 308.2.3 when considering a deviation from standard prestressed practice in Ohio.

Do not use prestressed box beam superstructures on four lane divided highways or where the design one-way ADTT is greater than 250.

Box beams are acceptable on curved alignment where the mid-ordinate is 6-in or less and the required bridge width is provided.

Do not use 36-in and 48-in wide box beams in the same span.

The maximum asphalt wearing surface thickness for a non-composite designed box beam bridge is 8-in.

For multiple span bridges, use the same beam depth for all spans.

Do not change the physical dimensions and/or section properties of box beam cross sections from what is shown in standard bridge drawing PSBD-2-07.

Box beam ends are limited to a maximum skew of 30-degrees.

Join multiple span box beam bridges over the piers with a T-joint as shown in standard bridge drawing PSBD-2-07.

Accommodate expansion at the piers by elastomeric expansion bearings or by flexibility of the piers for integral designs.

Design the length of abutment and pier seats of prestressed concrete box beam bridges long enough to accommodate the total width out-to-out of all beams including a fit-up allowance of 1/2-in per joint between beams.

**C308.2.3.3**

The span limits for prestressed, side by side, concrete box beams generally range from 15-ft to 100-ft. These span limits are based on designs with 0.167-in² low relaxation strands, a concrete 28-day compressive strength of 7.0-ksi, and a release strength of 5.0-ksi.

Shear keys have proven to perform poorly under high ADTT loading.

Mixing the beam sizes can lead to construction and long-term serviceability issues due to differential camber and deflections. If mixing the beams is unavoidable due to site conditions and has been specified in the Scope of Services, an effort should be made by the designer and fabricator to make the beam cambers as close as possible. The fabricator will need to cast the beams at similar times to avoid differential camber due to the age of the beams.

Individual span lengths may vary.

Refer to BDM Section 404.4.2 for additional information and possible alternatives.
Support each prestressed box beam member with two bearings at each support.

For box beam bridges that have skew combined with grade or which have variable superelevation, design and dimension beam seats to provide support for the full width of the box beams.

If a bridge structure's geometry causes a bridge deck in an individual span to have a different cross slope at one bearing than at the other bearing, evenly divide the difference so that the box beam seat cross slopes at the bearings for both beam ends are the same. Accommodate elevation differences created by this beam seat adjustment in the overlay, whether asphaltic or concrete.

Do not cast abutment wingwalls above the bridge seat and backwalls until after box beams have been erected. Separate the cast in place wingwall and box beams by 1-in joint filler per C&MS 705.03. Show both requirements in the plans.

For box beam bridges with steel railing, detail the post spacing and position of post anchorage on the plans. Reference the dimensioning for the post to each prestressed beam end. Ensure the post anchor spacing does not interfere with tierod locations or the "T" joint over the pier. Confirm that post anchors at the ends of skewed box beams have both adequate concrete cover and do not interfere with the tierods.

Encase all box beam ends in concrete. See BDM Figure 306-7 and BDM Figure 306-8 for additional information.

### 308.2.3.3.a DEBONDED STRANDS

Straight pretensioned strands debonded at the ends of beams are acceptable subject to the following restrictions:

A. Do not debond more than 45% of the strands in a given row.

B. Do not debond more than six strands to the same length. When a total of ten or fewer strands are debonded, do not debond more than four strands to the same length.

C. Longitudinally space debonding termination locations at least 60 times the strand diameter apart.

This adjustment gives the box beam full support at the seat without creating any twist or torsion on the box beam.

Casting the backwall and wingwalls after the box beams are erected eliminates installation problems associated with the actual physical dimensions of the box beam and the joint filler. Cracking and spalling of backwall and wingwall concrete due to movements of the elastomeric bearings is also alleviated.

If the designer finds that no post spacing option can comply with these requirements, the option of relocating the tie rods may be chosen. See bridge standard drawing PSBD-2-07 for maximum allowable spacing of tie rods.
D. Distribute debonded strands symmetrically about the vertical centerline of the cross-section of the member. Terminate debonding symmetrically at the same longitudinal location.

E. Alternate bonded and debonded strand locations both horizontally and vertically.

F. Where a portion or portions of a prestressing strand are debonded and where tension exists in the precompressed tensile zone, determine the development lengths, measured from the end of the debonded zone, using LRFD Eq. 5.9.4.3.2-1 with a value of $\kappa = 2.0$.

G. For simple span precast, prestressed beams, the maximum debonding length from the beam end is the smaller of 20 percent of the span length or one half the span length minus the development length.

H. Uniformly distribute debonded strands between webs.

I. Bond the outer-most strands within the section.

308.2.3.3.b STRAND SPACING

Space strands at increments or multiples of 2-in.

Place the centerline of the first row of strands 2-in from the bottom of the beam. Completely enclose all strands with the #4 stirrup bars. Place strands near the top flange below all transverse and longitudinal reinforcing steel and to the left and right of the void.

308.2.3.3.c COMPOSITE DESIGN

The minimum thickness of composite reinforced deck slabs on prestressed box beams is 6-in and reinforced with #6 bars. Space the longitudinal bars at 18-in maximum and the transverse bars spaced at 9-in maximum.

For ease of placement on skewed structures, the transverse bars may be placed parallel to the substructure units with spacing measured parallel to the longitudinal axis of the structure.

On multiple span composite box beam bridges, provide additional longitudinal reinforcing over the piers. Use #6 bars for the additional reinforcement. Space the additional bars alternately between the standard longitudinal reinforcement. The length of the additional reinforcement over the pier is the larger of: 40 percent of the length of the longer adjacent stringer span or a length that meets the requirements of LRFD 5.10.8.1.2c. Place the pier bars longitudinally and approximately centered on the pier but with a 3-ft stagger.
Incorporate fit-up tolerances into the finished deck width for composite box beam structures with concrete parapets or sidewalks. See BDM Figure 308-4 for a sketch of the cross-section of the composite deck superstructure.

If the required roadway width is wider than the box beam superstructure width, the composite deck may be designed to overhang the box beams a maximum of 8-in each side.

308.2.3.3.d NON-COMPOSITE DESIGN

Specify Type 3 Waterproofing to be used for non-composite box beam bridges with asphalt overlays per C&MS 512. Place the waterproofing on the boxes before the first layer of asphaltic concrete is applied. See BDM Sections 309.1.B and 309.2.

Provide over-the-side drainage when non-composite design is used.

Only use non-composite box beams with integral or semi-integral abutments.

Do not use non-composite box beams for structure with a total length exceeding 475-ft.

Limit non-composite box beam bridges with asphalt overlays to a 4 percent combined grade. Combined grade \( C_g \) includes both the longitudinal and transverse structure grades calculated as follows:

\[
C_g = (\text{[deck slope]}^2 + \text{[transverse grade]}^2)^{1/2}
\]

Use a composite deck as described in BDM Section 308.2.3.3.c when the combined deck grade is greater than 4 percent.

For a normal transverse deck grade horizontal to vertical of 3/16-in per foot (1.56 percent), the maximum roadway grade would be 3.68 percent or less for non-composite design.
308.2.3.3.e CAMBER

The topping thickness on prestressed box beam superstructures will vary along the length of the beams to account for beam camber and other vertical elevation adjustments. Proper determination of the topping thickness is crucial in order to properly establish beam seat elevations.

As shown in BDM Figure 308-5, determine the topping thickness \( T_x \) at any point, \( x \), along the length of a prestressed box beam superstructure by the following:

\[
T_x = A + B_x + C + D_{t,x} - E
\]

Where:

- \( A \) = Design deck thickness
- \( B_x \) = Vertical grade adjustment
- \( C \) = Sacrificial haunch depth
- \( D_{t,x} \) = Beam camber adjustment at member age equal to Day \( t \)
- \( E \) = Haunch adjustment
308.2.3.3.e.1 VERTICAL GRADE 
ADJUSTMENT (B_v)

Minimize the vertical grade adjustment along the length of the bridge by setting the linear grade between the beam ends parallel to the tangent of the vertical grade at the midpoint of the beam span (see BDM Figure 308-5).

C308.2.3.3.e.1

The Vertical Grade Adjustment accounts for any elevation differences between a non-linear profile grade and the linear grade connecting the centerline of beam supports. The value of the Vertical Grade Adjustment depends on many geometric factors such as vertical curvature, skew, cross-slope transitions, etc.

308.2.3.3.e.2 SACRIFICIAL HAUNCH 
DEPTH (C)

The purpose of the Sacrificial Haunch Depth is to account for camber in excess of that calculated in the Beam Camber Adjustment above and account for the roadway cross-slope.
For multiple span box beam bridges with design speeds exceeding 45-mph, the minimum thickness of the Sacrificial Haunch Depth (C) is 2-in. For all other box beam bridges, the minimum thickness of Sacrificial Haunch Depth (C) is 0-in.

If the wearing surface cross slope is different than the beam seat at the beam bearings as noted in BDM Section 308.2.3.3, the difference between the cross slope and the beam seat slope will be accommodated by the sacrificial haunch depth.

308.2.3.3.e.3 BEAM CAMBER ADJUSTMENT (D_t,x)

Show two values for camber at midspan in the design plans which the contractor can use to establish seat elevations according to C&MS 511.07 and tolerance according to C&MS 515.17: camber at Day 0 (D_0) and camber at Day 30 (D_30). These values represent the midspan camber in the beams before application of any dead load other than self-weight.

To determine these camber values, calculate the creep coefficient, $\psi(t,t_i)$, according to LRFD 5.4.2.3.2 with humidity (H) equal to 70%; age of concrete at release ($t_i$) equal to 0.75 days; and V/S and $f'_{ci}$ according to the project requirements. To calculate the creep coefficient at Day 0 and Day 30, use a maturity of concrete (t) equal to 0 days and 30 days respectively. The respective camber values are found by multiplying the net midspan camber at the time of release by the appropriate creep coefficient as follows:

$$D_{30} = [1 + \psi(t,t_i)] D_0$$

The net camber at the time of release ($\delta_{net,x}$) is the difference between the initial beam camber due to the prestressing force ($\delta_{o,x}$) and beam deflection due to self-weight ($\delta_{sw,x}$) [i.e. $\delta_{net,x} = \delta_{o,x} - \delta_{sw,x}$].

For the purposes of determining the topping thickness, calculate the final Beam Camber Adjustment (D_t,x) at any point, x, along the length of the beam as follows:

Because box beams are set on sloping seats that approximate the cross-slope, the sacrificial haunch depth is typically constant.

The minimum thickness, C, will occur at the outside edge of the fascia beam on the low side of the cross slope.

308.2.3.3.e.3

As prestressed concrete beams age, beam camber will increase due to concrete creep under the constant loading from the prestressing force. Although designers cannot accurately predict the girder age when the deck is placed, general assumptions can be made to prevent camber growth from becoming an issue during construction.
\[ D_{tx} = \left[ (\delta_{\text{net,mid}} - \delta_{\text{net,x}}) \left( 1 + \psi(t,t_i) \right) \right] - \left[ (\delta_{\text{NC,mid}} + \delta_{\text{C,mid}}) - (\delta_{\text{NC,x}} + \delta_{\text{C,x}}) \right] \]

Where:
- \( \delta_{\text{net,mid}} = \) Net camber at mid-span
- \( \delta_{\text{net,x}} = \) Net camber at point x
- \( \delta_{\text{NC,mid}} = \) Deflection due to non-composite loading at mid-span
- \( \delta_{\text{C,mid}} = \) Deflection due to composite loading at mid-span
- \( \delta_{\text{NC,x}} = \) Deflection at point x due to non-composite loading
- \( \delta_{\text{C,x}} = \) Deflection at point x due to composite loading
- \( \psi(t,t_i) = \) Creep coefficient

(Note: The equation shown for \( D_{tx} \) assumes camber is upward and deflections are downward.)

To establish beam seat elevations, calculate the Beam Camber Adjustment using the creep coefficient at \( t \) equal to 30 days.

### 308.2.3.3.e.4 HAUNCH ADJUSTMENT (E)

The Haunch Adjustment is the portion of the Beam Camber Adjustment that can be utilized for Vertical Grade Adjustment in crest vertical curve profiles. This adjustment prevents the haunch from becoming excessive along the full length of the beam.

Calculate the Haunch Adjustment (E) as follows:

\[ E = B_{\text{mid}} \leq \text{Max } D_{tx} \]

### 308.2.3.3.f ANCHORAGE

In a box beam design, anchor all beams at abutments and piers. Place the anchor at the center of the cross section of the box beam and conform to details presented in the Standard Bridge Drawing PSBD-2-07.

Install fixed end anchor dowels with a non-shrinking grout (mortar). Fill expansion end anchor dowel holes with joint sealer per C&MS 705.04.

Install polystyrene, semi-rigid closed-cell polypropylene foam, or sponge rubber per C&MS 705.03, the same thickness as the elastomeric bearing, under the box beam and around the anchor dowel to halt the grout or sealer from leaking through to the beam seat.
308.2.3.3.g  TIE RODS

Provide and install tie rods according to the Bridge Standard Drawing PSBD-2-07.

Provide diaphragms and transverse tie rods for prestressed concrete box beam spans at mid-span for spans up to 50-ft, at third points for spans from 50-ft to 75-ft and at quarter points for spans greater than 75-ft.

308.2.3.4  I-BEAMS

Use AASHTO standard prestressed I-beam shapes, type II through type IV; modified type IV and WF36-49 through WF72-49 as shown in the standard bridge drawing PSID-1-13.

Refer to BDM Section 304 for concrete and reinforcing material requirements for I-beam and the reinforced concrete deck.

Use a minimum of 4 prestressed I-beam stringer lines on bridges bridge carrying vehicular traffic.

This provision is to avoid non-redundant structures.

Prestressed I-beam bridges that meet the vertical clearance specified in BDM Section 302.1 are acceptable over highway crossings.

When designing prestressed I-beams, use the non-composite section for computing stresses due to the beam and deck slab. Use the composite section for computing stresses due to the superimposed dead, railing and live loads.

When designing the deck reinforcement for a multiple span structure, model as a continuous beam on a single support centered on the pier.

Aside from access for shipping strands and clipped flanges as shown in the Bridge Standard Drawing PSID-1-13, do not place abrupt changes or discontinuities in the beam cross-section. If abrupt changes are not avoidable, a refined analysis that accounts for section loss, resulting stress concentrations, and time dependent loading is required.

When detailing beam elevations, dimension the locations of all inserts, hold-downs, etc. to the ends of the beam rather than the centerlines of bearing.

These dimensions are primarily for the prestressed beam fabricator and dimensioning from the end of the beam is a more practical work point for the fabricator.
308.2.3.4.a STRANDS

The preferred strand pattern is straight, parallel strands with no debonding. However, excessive tensile stresses may develop in the beam ends during the release of the prestressing force. To relieve these excessive stresses, the following strand patterns are allowed: (listed in order of preference)

A. Partially debonded bottom flange strands up to the limits specified in BDM Section 308.2.3.4.a.2.
B. Combination of the maximum partially debonded bottom flange strands permitted by BDM Section 308.2.3.4.a.2. and draped strands.

Do not transform the strand area in order to increase the section properties.

308.2.3.4.a.1 SPACING

Space strands at increments of 2-in.

Maintain a minimum of 2-in dimension from bottom of beam to centerline of the first row of strands and any exterior beam surface.

308.2.3.4.a.2 DEBONDED STRANDS

Straight pretensioned strands may be debonded at the ends of beams subject to the following restrictions:

A. Do not debond more than 45% of the strands in a given row.
B. Do not debond more than six strands to the same length. When a total of ten or fewer strands are debonded, do not debond more than four strands to the same length.
C. Longitudinally space debonding termination locations at least 60 times the strand diameter apart.
D. Distribute debonded strands symmetrically about the vertical centerline of the cross-section of the member. Terminate debonding symmetrically at the same longitudinal location.
E. Alternate bonded and debonded strand locations both horizontally and vertically.
F. Where a portion or portions of a prestressing strand are debonded and where tension exists in the precompressed tensile zone, determine the development lengths, measured from the end of the debonded zone, using LRFD Eq. 5.9.4.3.2-1 with a value of $\kappa = 2.0$. 

C308.2.3.4.a
G. For simple span precast, prestressed beams, the maximum debonding length from the beam end is the smaller of 20 percent of the span length or one half the span length minus the development length.

H. Bond all strands within the horizontal limits of the web when the total number of debonded strands exceeds 25 percent.

I. Bond all strands within the horizontal limits of the web when the bottom flange to web width ratio exceeds 4.

J. Bond the outer-most strands in all rows located within the full-width section of the flange.

K. Position debonded strands furthest from the vertical centerline.

**308.2.3.4.a.3 DRAPING**

Draping or harping of the strands may be done to relieve excessive stresses at the beam ends.

Locate the hold down point at least 5-ft on each side of the midspan of the beam using increments of 6-in. Calculate the vertical uplift force, \( P_U \), at each hold-down location and ensure the limits of BDM Table 308-1 are not exceeded.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 308-1</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No. of Draped Strands per Row</td>
<td>( P_U/\text{Strand} ) (lb)</td>
<td>( P_U/\text{Unit} ) (lb)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>6000</td>
<td>48,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>4000</td>
<td>48,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>4000</td>
<td>48,000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Where:

\[
\begin{align*}
P_U/\text{Strand} &= (1.05)0.75 f'_S A_{PS} \tan \psi \\
P_U/\text{Strand} &= (1.05)0.00075 f'_S A_{PS} \tan \psi \\
R_U/\text{Unit} &= \sum_{i=1}^{n} \frac{P_U}{\text{Strand}}
\end{align*}
\]

And:

\[
\begin{align*}
f'_S &= 270,000\text{-psi} \\
A_{PS} &= \text{Area of single strand (in}^2) \\
n &= \text{no. of strands} \\
\psi &= \text{Angle of strand inclination measured from horizontal}
\end{align*}
\]
To minimize the uplift force, locate the hold down point as close as allowed to the midspan and limit the height of the draped strands at the beam ends to only the height required to control stresses.

It is not necessary for the angle of inclination for each row of draped strands to be the same.

Detail the height of draped strands at beam ends and at midspan at multiples of 2-in.

Do not place straight strands above draped strands in the same vertical column.

**308.2.3.4.b CAMBER**

The concrete topping thickness on prestressed I-beam superstructures will vary along the length of the beams to account for beam camber and other vertical elevation adjustments. Proper determination of the topping thickness is crucial in order to properly establish beam seat elevations.

As shown in BDM Figure 308-6, determine the concrete topping thickness \( T_x \) at any point, \( x \), along the length of a prestressed I-beam superstructure by the following:

\[
T_x = A + B_x + C + D_{t,x} - E
\]

Where:

- \( A \) = Design deck thickness
- \( B_x \) = Vertical grade adjustment
- \( C \) = Sacrificial haunch depth
- \( D_{t,x} \) = Beam camber adjustment at member age equal to Day \( t \)
- \( E \) = Haunch adjustment
Include additional haunch reinforcement when the haunch depth reaches 4-in. \( B_x + C + D_{x,t} - E \leq 4\text{-in} \) for the sections shown in Bridge Standard Drawing PSID-1-13. Detail additional haunch reinforcement as shown in BDM Figure 308-7. Show the locations of the additional haunch reinforcement in the plans.

In order to ensure the entire haunch depth acts compositely with the beam and deck, additional reinforcement may be necessary to extend the beam’s composite reinforcement at least 2-in into the deck thickness.
308.2.3.4.b.1 VERTICAL GRADE ADJUSTMENT ($B_1$)

Minimize the vertical grade adjustment along the length of the bridge by setting the linear grade between the beam ends parallel to the tangent of the vertical grade at the midpoint of the beam span (see BDM Figure 308-6).

308.2.3.4.b.2 SACRIFICIAL HAUNCH DEPTH ($C$)

Design the Sacrificial Haunch Depth ($C$) to be a minimum of 2-in.

C308.2.3.4.b.1

The Vertical Grade Adjustment accounts for any elevation differences between a non-linear profile grade and the linear grade connecting the centerline of beam supports. The value of the Vertical Grade Adjustment depends on many geometric factors such as vertical curvature, skew, cross-slope transitions, etc.

C308.2.3.4.b.2

The purpose of the Sacrificial Haunch Depth is to account for camber in excess of that calculated in the Beam Camber Adjustment above and account for the roadway cross-slope.
Detail the haunch so the 2-in minimum thickness, C, will occur at a flange edge. Show this requirement in the plans.

**308.2.3.4.b.3 BEAM CAMBER ADJUSTMENT (D_{t,x})**

Because I-beams are set on level seats, the beams will be plumb after erection. The difference between the grades of the top flange and the cross-slope will be accommodated by the sacrificial haunch depth.

Show two values for camber at midspan in the design plans which the contractor can use to establish seat elevations according to C&MS 511.07 and tolerance according to C&MS 515.17: camber at Day 0 (D_0) and camber at Day 30 (D_{30}). These values represent the midspan camber in the beams before application of any dead load other than self-weight.

To determine these camber values, calculate the creep coefficient, \( \psi(t,t_i) \), according to LRFD 5.4.2.3.2 with humidity (H) equal to 70%; age of concrete at release (\( t_i \)) equal to 0.75 days; and V/S and \( f'_c \) according to the project requirements. To calculate the creep coefficient at Day 0 and Day 30, use a maturity of concrete (\( t \)) equal to 0 days and 30 days respectively. The respective camber values are found by multiplying the net midspan camber at the time of release by the appropriate creep coefficient as follows:

\[
D_{30} = (1 + \psi(t,t_i)) D_0
\]

The net camber at the time of release (\( \delta_{net,x} \)) is the difference between the initial beam camber due to the prestressing force (\( \delta_{o,x} \)) and beam deflection due to self-weight (\( \delta_{sw,x} \)) [i.e. \( \delta_{net,x} = \delta_{o,x} - \delta_{sw,x} \)].

For the purposes of determining the topping thickness, calculate the final Beam Camber Adjustment (\( D_{t,x} \)) at any point, x, along the length of the beam as follows:

The gross moment of inertia for the non-composite I-beam may be used to determine \( \delta_{o,x} \) and \( \delta_{sw,x} \).
\[ D_{t,x} = \left[ (\delta_{\text{net, mid}} - \delta_{\text{net, x}}) (1 + \psi(t, t_i)) \right] - \left[ (\delta_{\text{NC, mid}} + \delta_{\text{C, mid}}) - (\delta_{\text{NC, x}} + \delta_{\text{C, x}}) \right] \]

Where:

- \(\delta_{\text{net, mid}}\) = Net camber at mid-span
- \(\delta_{\text{net, x}}\) = Net camber at point x
- \(\delta_{\text{NC, mid}}\) = Deflection due to non-composite loading at mid-span
- \(\delta_{\text{C, mid}}\) = Deflection due to composite loading at mid-span
- \(\delta_{\text{NC, x}}\) = Deflection at point x due to non-composite loading
- \(\delta_{\text{C, x}}\) = Deflection at point x due to composite loading
- \(\psi(t, t_i)\) = Creep coefficient

(Note: The equation shown for \(D_{t,x}\) assumes camber is upward and deflections are downward.)

To establish beam seat elevations, calculate the Beam Camber Adjustment using the creep coefficient at \(t\) equal to 30 days.

### 308.2.3.4.b.4 HAUNCH ADJUSTMENT (E)

Calculate the Haunch Adjustment (E) as follows:

\[ E = B_{\text{mid}} \leq \text{Max } D_{t,x} \]

### 308.2.3.4.c ANCHORAGE

Provide 1-in. diameter anchors at each fixed pier as shown on bridge standard drawing PSID-1-13.

Determine the required number of anchors by analysis. Design the anchors to transfer superstructure loads to the substructure at the Strength Limit States and resist seismic loads at Extreme Event Limit State.

Use anchors with a minimum length of 2-ft. Embed the anchors a minimum of 1-ft into the pier cap. Post install (drill and grout) the anchors at the centerline of at the pier. Confirm the pier cap has reinforcing steel clearance to accept these anchors.

C308.2.3.4.b.4

The Haunch Adjustment is the portion of the Beam Camber Adjustment that can be utilized for Vertical Grade Adjustment in crest vertical curve profiles only. This adjustment prevents the haunch from becoming excessive along the full length of the beam.

The Haunch Adjustment is equal to the Vertical Grade Adjustment at the beam midspan \((B_{\text{mid}})\) but cannot exceed the maximum value for \(D_{t,x}\).
308.2.3.4.d DIAPHRAGMS

Space intermediate diaphragms a maximum of 40-ft.

Intermediate diaphragms for 60-in and deeper beams shall be either cast-in-place concrete or galvanized steel. The contractor shall choose the type. Intermediate diaphragms for less than 60-in deep beams shall be cast-in-place concrete. Details for each type are provided in the standard bridge drawing. The design plans shall show the centerline location of each intermediate diaphragm. The Department will pay for the intermediate diaphragms at the contract price for ITEM 515 - EACH, INTERMEDIATE DIAPHRAGMS.

Detail cast-in-place intermediate diaphragms as to not contact the underside of the deck. Show the top of the cast-in-place intermediate diaphragm at the bottom vertical edge of the top flange and the bottom of the cast-in-place intermediate diaphragm at the top of the vertical edge of the bottom flange.

If the Standard Bridge Drawing for I-beams is not referenced by the contract plans, add a note to the plans for prestressed I-beam designs requiring cast-in-place intermediate diaphragms to be placed and cured at least 48 hours before deck placement.

Use threaded inserts to connect the cast-in-place diaphragm reinforcing steel to the I-beam. Galvanize the threaded inserts and the threaded rods according to C&MS 711.02.

Provide cast-in-place end diaphragms. Detail the end diaphragm to make complete contact with the deck. End the bottom limits of the end diaphragm at the top of the elastomeric bearing.

309 DECK

Do not use precast deck panels

309.1 WEARING SURFACE TYPES

A. 1-in monolithic concrete wearing surface:
   Do not include the top 1-in thickness in the structural design of the deck slab or as part of the composite section.

B. 3-in asphalt concrete:
   Use the 3-in minimum asphalt concrete wearing surface only on non-composite prestressed box beams.
Construct the asphalt concrete wearing surface to a minimum thickness of 3-in placed in the follow manner:

1. Place two separate 1.5-in minimum lifts of ITEM 441 – ASPHALT CONCRETE SURFACE COURSE, TYPE 1, PG70-22M. Place the first lift at a variable thickness to accommodate beam camber and vertical grade. Place the second lift in a uniform 1.5-in thickness.

2. Apply two applications of ITEM 407 – TACK COAT - one prior to placement of the first lift of surface course and one prior to placement of the second lift of surface course. Refer to the ODOT Pavement Design Manual, Section 400 for application rates.

C. 6-in cast-in-place composite deck:

   Use the 6-in cast-in-place composite deck only on composite prestressed box beams.

   Consider the top 1-in to be a monolithic wearing surface as defined above. Also see BDM Section 308.2.3.3.c.

309.2 CONCRETE DECK PROTECTION

Use epoxy coated reinforcing steel.

Use class QC2 concrete for bridge deck.

Provide a minimum of 2.5-in top cover with all cast-in-place concrete decks.

Use a drip strip on decks with over-the-side drainage.

Use Type 3 waterproofing per C&MS 512 for non-composite box beam bridges with an asphalt concrete overlay. Minimum thickness of overlay is 3-in. See BDM Section 309.1B.

Refer to BDM Section 403.3 for deck sealing methods.

309.2.1 SEALING OF CONCRETE SURFACES, SUPERSTRUCTURE

Specifications for sealing material are defined in C&MS 512. Seal concrete surfaces with an approved concrete sealer as follows: (See BDM Figure 309-1 & Figure 309-2)

C309.2.1

The owner has the option to select a specific type of sealer, epoxy-urethane or non-epoxy. The owner may also use a bid item for sealer, with no preference, and allow the contractor to choose based on cost.

In areas where concrete surfaces have a history of graffiti vandalism, the owner may add a permanent graffiti coating in the Scope of Services meeting the requirements of S1083 on top of the epoxy-urethane or non-epoxy sealer. A plan note is available in BDM Section 602.6. The scope should limit the concrete.
surfaces that are treated with permanent graffiti coatings to those reachable by easy climbing and visible to the traveling public.

A. Concrete slabs or concrete decks on steel superstructures with over-the-side drainage:
    Seal the deck fascia and a 6-in (minimum) width under the deck with either an epoxy-urethane or non-epoxy sealer.

B. Concrete slabs, composite prestressed box beam superstructures or concrete decks on steel superstructures with sidewalks:
    Seal the vertical face of curb; the top of the curb/sidewalk; the inside face, top and outside face of the parapet; the deck fascia; and a 6-in (minimum) width under the deck with either an epoxy-urethane or non-epoxy sealer.

C. Concrete slabs, composite prestressed box beam superstructures or concrete decks on steel superstructures with deflector parapets:
    Seal the inside face, top and outside face of parapet; the deck fascia; and a 6-in (minimum) width under the deck with either an epoxy-urethane, or non-epoxy sealer.

D. Non-composite prestressed concrete box beam decks with over-the-side drainage:
    Seal the fascia of the outside beams and a minimum 6-in width under the beam with an epoxy-urethane or a non-epoxy sealer.

E. Concrete decks on prestressed I-beam superstructures with over-the-side drainage:
    Seal the deck fascia; the underside of the deck to the edge of the top flange; the exterior fascia of the beam; the underside of the bottom flange; and the inside face of the bottom flange with an epoxy-urethane sealer.

F. Concrete decks on prestressed I-beam superstructures with sidewalks:
    Seal the vertical face of curb; the top of the curb/sidewalk; the inside face, top and outside face of the parapet; the deck fascia; the underside of the deck to the edge of the top flange; the exterior fascia of the beam; the underside of the bottom flange; and the inside face of the bottom flange with an epoxy-urethane sealer.
G. Concrete decks on prestressed I-beam superstructures with deflector parapets:

Seal the inside face, top and outside face of parapet; the deck fascia; the underside of the deck to the edge of the top flange; the exterior fascia of the beam; the underside of the bottom flange; and the inside face of the bottom flange with either an epoxy-urethane sealer.

Seal concrete surfaces that include patches with an epoxy-urethane sealer. This is required so the concrete color will remain uniform.

Include details in the plans showing the position, location and area required to be sealed. Do not use a plan note to describe the location. This can lead to both description and interpretation problems.

Do not use epoxy-only sealers. Epoxy-only sealers have proven to perform poorly.
CONCRETE DECKS WITH OVER THE SIDE DRAINAGE

CONCRETE DECKS WITH CURBS, SIDEWALKS AND PARAPET

CONCRETE DECK WITH DEFLECTOR PARAPET

PRESTRESSED BOX BEAM DECK WITH DEFLECTOR PARAPET

SEALING OF CONCRETE SURFACES, SUPERSTRUCTURE

Figure 309-1
CONCRETE DECKS WITH OVER THE SIDE DRAINAGE

CONCRETE DECK WITH DEFLECTOR PARAPET

CONCRETE DECKS WITH CURBS, SIDEWALKS AND PARAPET

PRESTRESSED BOX BEAM DECK WITH OVER THE SIDE DRAINAGE

SEALING OF CONCRETE SURFACES, SUPERSTRUCTURE

Figure 309-2
309.3 REINFORCED CONCRETE DECK ON LONGITUDINAL MEMBERS

309.3.1 DECK THICKNESS

For reinforced concrete decks on steel or concrete longitudinal members, compute the deck thickness with the following formula:

$$T_{\text{min}} \text{ (inches)} = \frac{(S + 17)(12)}{36} \geq 8.5\text{-in}$$

Where $S$ is the effective span length in feet determined according to LRFD 9.7.3.2.

Round up $T_{\text{min}}$ to the nearest 1/4-in.

The 1-in monolithic wearing surface, BDM Section 309.1.A, is included in the minimum concrete deck thickness but excluded in the calculations for structural design of the deck slab.

309.3.2 CONCRETE DECK DESIGN

Design the concrete deck design in conformance with the approximate elastic methods of analysis specified in LRFD 9.7.3, and the additional requirements specified in this Manual.

Do not use refined methods of analysis or the empirical design method, LRFD 9.7.2.

Use HL-93 for the design live load include an allowance for a future wearing surface equal to 0.06-ksf in the design dead load.

Place reinforcement in the underside of the deck overhang as noted in BDM Figure 309-4 and Figure 309-5. Use 1.5-in clear cover measured to the transverse steel.

Meet BDM Section 309.3.4.2. for the transverse spacing of the top and bottom reinforcing in a deck design.

C309.3.2

Deck designs for superstructures with effective span lengths ranging from 7.0-ft. to 14.0-ft. in 0.5-ft. increments are provided in BDM Figure 309-3, Figure 309-4 and Figure 309-5. These designs apply for the full length of the bridge and preclude the need for additional transverse reinforcement at supported deck ends. The design of overhang reinforcement is valid for BR-1-13, SBR-1-13, BR-2-15 and TST-1-99 barrier systems. A complete list of design assumptions is provided with BDM Figure 309-3.
### Eff. Span Length (ft.) | Deck Thick (in.) | Overhang Deck Thick. (in.) (see Note 2k) | Transverse Steel | Longitudinal Steel
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Top Bars</td>
<td>Bottom Bars</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Size</td>
<td>Spa. (in.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.0</td>
<td>8.50</td>
<td>10.50</td>
<td>#5</td>
<td>6.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.5</td>
<td>8.50</td>
<td>10.50</td>
<td>#5</td>
<td>6.05</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.0</td>
<td>8.50</td>
<td>10.50</td>
<td>#5</td>
<td>6.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.5</td>
<td>8.50</td>
<td>10.50</td>
<td>#5</td>
<td>5.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.0</td>
<td>8.75</td>
<td>10.75</td>
<td>#5</td>
<td>5.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.5</td>
<td>9.00</td>
<td>11.00</td>
<td>#5</td>
<td>5.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.0</td>
<td>9.00</td>
<td>11.00</td>
<td>#5</td>
<td>5.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.5</td>
<td>9.25</td>
<td>11.25</td>
<td>#5</td>
<td>5.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.0</td>
<td>9.50</td>
<td>11.50</td>
<td>#5</td>
<td>5.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.5</td>
<td>9.50</td>
<td>11.50</td>
<td>#6</td>
<td>5.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.0</td>
<td>9.75</td>
<td>11.75</td>
<td>#6</td>
<td>5.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.5</td>
<td>10.00</td>
<td>12.00</td>
<td>#6</td>
<td>5.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.0</td>
<td>10.00</td>
<td>12.00</td>
<td>#6</td>
<td>5.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.5</td>
<td>10.25</td>
<td>12.25</td>
<td>#6</td>
<td>5.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.0</td>
<td>10.50</td>
<td>12.50</td>
<td>#6</td>
<td>5.75</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes:

1. Designs in accordance with *AASHTO LRFD Bridge Design Specifications* and the ODOT Bridge Design Manual
2. Design Assumptions:
   - a. Four or more beam/girder lines
   - b. Maximum beam/girder spacing = 15-ft. c/c
   - c. Transverse steel is placed perpendicular to beam/girder lines
   - d. Normal weight concrete with f'c = 4.5-ksi
   - e. Reinforcing steel with fy = 60-ksi
   - f. Monolithic Wearing Surface = 1.0-in.
   - g. Future Wearing Surface = 0.06-ksf
   - h. *LRFD* 5.6.7 - Exposure Factor (γe) = 0.75
   - i. Top cover = 2.50-in.; Bottom cover = 1.50-in.
   - j. Maximum overhang width = 4.0-ft. (measured from cl. of fascia beam/girder to deck edge)
   - k. Valid for BR-1-13 (36” & 42”), SBR-1-13, SBR-1-20, BR-2-15, and TST-1-99 barrier systems.
   
   The minimum overhang deck thickness for the TST-1-99 railing system is 18”.
3. Calculate Effective Span Length according to *LRFD* 9.7.3.2 and round up to the nearest 0.5-ft. increment
4. Minimum Deck Thickness in accordance with BDM 309.3.1
5. Cutoff Length = length beyond the centerline of the fascia beam/girder where additional overhang bars are no longer required for strength and development.
6. Longitudinal bar spacing does not include additional reinforcing required for negative moments in accordance with *LRFD* 5.6.3.5 (for prestressed beams) and *LRFD* 6.10.1.7 (for steel beams/girders)
7. Refer to BDM Figure 309-4 & Figure 309-5 for more information

*Figure 309-3*
**Deck Section**

SEE FIGURE 309-3 FOR SIZE OF BAR TO BE BUNDLED WITH TOP INTERIOR BAY BAR.

TOE OF BARRIER

C EXTERIOR STRINGER

SEE FIGURE 309-3 FOR SIZE AND SPACING OF INTERIOR BAY BARS.

OVERHANG PLAN VIEW

**Typical Deck Details**

ODOT LRFD STANDARD DECK DESIGN

Figure 309-4
**OVERHANG PLAN VIEW**

**TYPICAL DECK DETAILS**

**ODOT LRFD STANDARD DECK DESIGN**

Figure 309-5
309.3.3 DECK ELEVATION REQUIREMENTS

309.3.3.1 SCREED ELEVATIONS

Do not include adjustment for deflections due to the future wearing surface loading in screed elevations. Assume a completed placement sequence to calculate deflections caused by the weight of the deck concrete. Use deflection data from girder lines closest to each screed line to determine elevations. Refer to BDM Figure 309-6.

If the deflections are determined through a line girder analysis method, distribute the deck load evenly to all beams/girders loaded in each construction phase to establish screed elevations. If a refined analysis method is used, establish screed elevations using the individual beam/girder deflections.

Include a screed elevations table in the bridge plans. Identify the locations of all screed elevations in the table on a transverse section and plan view. Provide elevations for all: curblines or deck edges; profile grade points; transverse grade-break lines; and phased construction lines for the full length of the bridge. Screed elevations are not required above beam/girder lines. Detail bearing points, quarter-span points, mid-span points and splice points as well as any additional points required to meet a maximum spacing between points of 25-ft.

For bridges with a separate wearing course, give the elevations at the top of the portland cement concrete deck. Provide a plan note stating at what surface the elevations are given.

When calculating screed elevations for composite box beam bridges, provide the same requirements as steel beam, girder and prestressed I-beam bridges.

C309.3.3.1

Screed elevations are control elevations for concrete deck finishing machines that account for dead load deflections to ensure that the bridge deck is completed to the correct elevation. To establish screed elevations, the final surface elevations are adjusted for non-composite deflections resulting from deck placement and composite deflections resulting from utility and railing loads.

309.3.3.2 TOP OF HAUNCH ELEVATIONS

Provide top of haunch elevations at the centerline of each girder at bearing points, quarter points, mid-span points, splice points and additional points to meet a maximum spacing between points of 25-ft. Identify the top of haunch elevation locations in a plan view and on the transverse section. Provide a plan note for a definition and description of the purpose for the top of haunch elevations (see BDM Section 702.12.2). Refer to BDM Figure 309-6.

C309.3.3.2

Top of haunch elevations represent the theoretical bottom of deck elevation before the concrete deck is placed.

Top of haunch elevations are not required for composite box beam bridges.
309.3.3 FINAL DECK SURFACE ELEVATIONS

Provide final deck surface elevations at bearing points, quarter points, mid-span points, splice points and additional points to meet a maximum spacing between points of 25-ft for each: girder centerline; curbline or deck edge; transverse grade-break line; and phased construction line. Identify the final deck surface elevation locations in a plan view. Refer to BDM Figure 309-6.

Final deck surface elevations represent the position of the deck after all dead loads except future wearing surface have been applied.

Figure 309-6

309.3.4 REINFORCEMENT

309.3.4.1 LONGITUDINAL

On reinforced concrete decks for steel or concrete stringers, design the secondary reinforcement in the top-reinforcing layer to be a minimum of 1/3 the main reinforcement, spaced uniformly.
Detail the secondary bar size as a #4. The only exception to this requirement is if the bar spacing becomes less than 3-in.

For stringer type bridges with reinforced concrete decks, place the secondary bars above the top of deck primary bars.

Meet the requirements of LRFD 6.10.1.7 for the longitudinal reinforcement over a pier. Stagger every other reinforcing bar over the pier 3-ft longitudinally.

**309.3.4.2 TRANSVERSE**

Place the top and bottom main reinforcement in transversely reinforced deck slabs at equal spaces to coincide in a vertical plane.

Bridges with a skew equal to or greater than 15-degrees or where the transverse reinforcing will interfere with the shear studs, place the transverse reinforcement perpendicular to the centerline of the bridge. Refer to Standard Bridge Drawing CS-1-08 or SB-1-08 for the requirements on slab bridges.

For prestressed I-beams, place transverse reinforcing perpendicular to the centerline of the bridge.

For composite box beam decks, place the transverse reinforcing steel parallel to the abutment.

For steel beam or girder bridges, check the clearance of the bottom transverse bars over the top of bolted beam splice plates or moment plates.

**309.3.5 HAUNCHED DECK REQUIREMENTS**

Use a concrete haunch on concrete decks on steel beam, girder or prestressed I-beam structures. The minimum design haunch is 2-in. Detail the sides of the haunch as vertical and aligned with the edges of the top flange. See BDM Figure 309-7 & Figure 309-8.

Research has shown that secondary bars in the top mat of reinforced concrete bridge decks on stringers should be small bars at close spacing.

This helps in reducing shrinkage cracking and adds additional cover over the primary bars.

For steel beam or girder bridges with a skew of less than 15-degrees the transverse reinforcing may be shown placed parallel to the abutments.

For phased constructed bridges where mechanical connectors will be required placing the bars parallel to the centerline of bearing should be avoided.

Reinforcing bars at a skew generally cannot be placed between bolt heads.

Haunches are used to prevent a thinning of the deck slab as a result of unforeseen variations in beam camber.
309.3.6 TRANSVERSE DECK SECTION

Include the following information on the transverse deck section: deck thickness, crown location, cross slope, railing type, construction joints, out-to-out of the deck dimension, face/face railing/barrier dimension, reinforcing labels, reinforcing cover, and reinforcing lap location and type.

309.3.6.1 SUPERELEVATION

When the change in cross slope at the superelevation break point is greater than 7 percent, detail the bridge deck surface profile as follows:

A. When the roadway break point is located between roadway lanes (not at the edge of pavement), extend the bridge cross slope to extend to the toe of parapet. See “CASE a” in BDM Figure 309-9.

B. When the roadway break point is located at the edge of pavement (adjacent shoulder width is less than 4-ft), continue the bridge cross slope past the break point to the toe of deflector parapet. See “CASE b” in BDM Figure 309-9.

C. When the roadway break point is located at the edge of pavement (adjacent shoulder width is equal to or greater than 4-ft and less than 8-ft), use a 4-ft rounding distance from the edge of pavement onto the shoulder to transition from the bridge cross slope to the 1/2-in. per ft. shoulder cross slope. See “CASE c” in BDM Figure 309-10.

D. When the roadway break point is located at the edge of pavement (adjacent shoulder width is equal to or greater than 8-ft), use a 5-ft rounding distance from the edge of pavement onto the shoulder to transition from the bridge cross slope to the 1/2-in. per ft. shoulder cross slope. See “CASE d” in BDM Figure 309-10.

If the change in cross slope at the superelevation break point is less than or equal to 7 percent, then no rounding is required.

Transition from the roadway approach transverse section to the bridge deck transverse section according to L&D, Vol. 1, Section 301.2.4.

For decks with over-the-side drainage, the treatment of the deck and the shoulder slopes shall be as described in subsections a through d above except that the slope shall continue to the edge of the deck.
TRANVERSE DECK SECTIONS
FOR SUPERELEVATED SITES

CASE a.

CASE b.

Figure 309-9
TRANSVERSE DECK SECTIONS FOR SUPERELEVATED SITES

CASE c.

CASE d.

Figure 309-10
309.3.6.1.a  **SUPERELEVATION TRANSITIONS**

Provide a transition diagram in the plans, similar to what is shown in BDM Figure 309-11. In lieu of the diagram, a table with the transition information shown in BDM Figure 309-11 is also acceptable.

**C309.3.6.1.a**

Because of the complexities associated with superelevation transitions on bridge superstructures (e.g. beam and girder cambering, cross-frame fabrication, deck form construction, slip forming of parapets, etc.) all reasonable attempts should be made to keep such transitions off of bridge decks. Where transitions are located on bridge decks, the transitions should be straight. Where this is not possible, the transition’s discontinuities should be smoothed by inserting 50-ft roundings at each discontinuity.

---

**PAVEMENT TRANSITION DETAIL**

Figure 309-11

309.3.7  **STAY IN PLACE FORMS**

Do not use stay in place forms.

309.3.8  **CONCRETE DECK PLACEMENT CONSIDERATIONS**

Mechanized finishing machines are preferred to hand finishing methods for both consistency of surface finish and economics. Designers should be aware of finishing machine limitations in order to avoid deck designs that require hand finishing methods.

The placement of deck concrete using mechanized finishing machines alone does not ensure a smooth riding surface. Achieving a smooth riding surface as well as ensuring the proper geometry of the concrete deck is further complicated by deflections of the concrete falsework and of the main structural support members during the placement operation. The Contractor is responsible for designing falsework and finishing machine support to minimize deflection during placement, but the Designer is responsible for deflections induced by deck placement on the superstructure. Many complications due to deflection during placement can be avoided with proper design considerations.
309.3.8.1 FINISHING MACHINES

Mechanized finishing machines are comprised of fabricated truss sections pinned together to span the bridge deck width to be paved. The truss spans are supported at each end on a set of wheels, called “bogies,” which ride along the length of the bridge on screed rails. Suspended below the truss is a finishing head, called a “carriage,” which levels, compacts, vibrates and finishes the concrete. See BDM Figure 309-12.

Finishing machines can be placed such that the truss sections are skewed with respect to the screed rails. This orientation allows for concrete placement parallel to the substructure skew as required by the C&MS 511. For skew angles of 15-degrees and greater, the finishing machine can be skewed to within 5-degrees of the plan specified skew angle.

The carriage can also be skewed with respect to the truss sections. This feature allows the carriage to finish the concrete transverse to the bridge when the truss sections are placed at some other orientation (e.g. parallel to the substructure skew). To ensure a proper finish at transverse grade breaks (e.g. crown points), the carriage should always be oriented to finish the concrete transverse to the bridge. A special length truss section insert is required above the grade break locations such that the grade break line lies directly below opposite corners of the section. For skewed bridges without transverse grade breaks, skewing the carriage with respect to the truss sections is not required. (See BDM Figure 309-13)
Most finishing machines do not easily accommodate non-parallel rails. The distance between the screed rails should be a fixed width. Designs that require tapered paving widths should be avoided.

The finishing machines can be hinged at the pin connections between truss sections to provide transverse grade breaks (e.g. crown points). In theory, multiple transverse grade breaks can be accommodated, but the grade breaks must remain at a fixed spacing to line up with a pin connection. The BDM Figure 309-14 illustrates the complexity of the machine set-up to accommodate multiple grade breaks in a transverse section placed on a skew. Note that the length of truss sections required between grade breaks must fit the standard truss section lengths.
Avoid grade break locations that move laterally along the length of the bridge. This arrangement cannot be paved in a single operation using a mechanized finishing machine. The only way this is possible is with the use of a phase construction deck. Note that as the machine progresses forward, the truss hinge locations and the grade break locations no longer coincide. See BDM Figure 309-15.

Figure 309-14

Figure 309-15
309.3.8.2 SOURCES OF GIRDER TWIST

Fully install cross-frames/diaphragms prior to deck placement.

C309.3.8.2

The interconnectivity between girders, intermediate cross-frames/diaphragms and end cross-frames/diaphragms is essential to a structure’s stability throughout the construction process. Therefore, it is of utmost importance to ensure that all cross-frames/diaphragms are fully installed prior to deck placement. Failure to do so may lead to construction disputes, expensive repairs and lengthy construction delays or even impact project safety. One major drawback to this interconnectivity is that the deflection caused by the placement of the concrete deck will result in girder twisting.

There are primarily three independent sources of girder twist resulting from deck placement. This manual will refer to these sources as: global superstructure distortion, oil-canning and girder warping.

309.3.8.2.a GLOBAL SUPERSTRUCTURE DISTORTION

C309.3.8.2.a

Global superstructure distortion is distortion of the bridge transverse section primarily caused by differential deflections between adjacent girders. As a girder deflects downward with respect to an adjacent girder, the rigidity of the cross framing between the two girders causes the deflecting girder to rotate as it deflects. This distortion may occur with both steel and prestressed concrete superstructures. The most common differential deflections occur between the exterior girders and adjacent interior girders for a given construction phase when the loaded tributary areas over the girders differ.

Transverse sections with more heavily loaded exterior girders distort in a convex shape. Refer to BDM Figure 309-16.
Figure 309-16

Transverse sections with more heavily loaded interior girders distort in a concave shape. Refer to BDM Figure 309-17.

Figure 309-17

Twisting of the exterior girders can result in deck thickness and cover loss if the screed rails are supported on cantilevered falsework. The magnitude of girder twist (measured as $\phi_g$) will vary over the length of the bridge and will be different for the left and right sides if loading or geometry is not symmetrical. See BDM Figure 309-18.
For a new superstructure, calculate the amount of girder twist due to global superstructure deformation when the tributary deck load carried by the fascia girder exceeds 110% of the average of the tributary deck load carried by the interior members for a given construction phase.

For an existing superstructure, calculate the amount of girder twist due to global superstructure deformation when the tributary deck load carried by the fascia girder exceeds 115% of the average of the tributary deck load carried by the interior members for a given construction phase. See BDM Figure 309-19.

When the aforementioned tributary deck loading requirements of the fascia members are met, perform a refined analysis of the superstructure system to determine the magnitude of fascia girder twist ($\phi_g$) due to deck concrete placement.

To properly calculate the effect of the twist angle on deck thickness, the analysis should be based on the deflection occurring due to the concrete present at the time that the finishing machine passes over the point under consideration. This degree of precision requires a separate refined analysis for each point of consideration. It is generally sufficient to calculate $\phi_g$ based on the full wet concrete load placed over the entire structure. However, on complex structures with variable skews and/or curved girders, a higher degree of precision may be warranted to ensure proper deck thickness.
Additional measures to reduce global deformation include: adding or stiffening the cross-frames/diaphragms; and increasing the stiffness of the girders. An increase in the cross-frame stiffness results in better load distribution across the width of the structure and less distortion. An increase in the stiffness of the girders reduces the magnitude of vertical deflection resulting in less distortion of the transverse section.

309.3.8.2.b OIL-CANNING

Distortion due to oil-canning occurs when large lateral loads from the cantilevered deck slab falsework bracket deform the girder web. See BDM Figure 309-20.

Locating the falsework bracket near the bottom flange will reduce the amount of web deformation. C&MS Item 508 requires the lower point of contact to be within 8-in of the top of the bottom flange. Given this requirement and the geometric capabilities of the falsework brackets, the magnitude of girder twist ($\phi_o$) resulting from oil-canning may be neglected for girder webs 84-in deep or less.

For web depths greater than 84-in, provide the location of the falsework bracket in the plans. Provide a General Note that removes the lower point of contact requirement of C&MS Item 508 (see BDM Section 611.4.1 for an example). Specify the pay item for deck concrete as “as per plan”. Using the plan bracket location, determine $\phi_o$. Detail any temporary bracing in the plans.

Designers may assume the lowest location of the falsework bracket to be 76-in measured below the bottom of the top flange. The magnitude of twist can be predicted using finite element analysis of the web or by various approximate methods. If the magnitude results in excessive deck thickness loss, reducing the transverse stiffener spacing or adding temporary bracing on the inside of the web may be necessary.
309.3.8.2.c  GIRDER WARPING

The magnitude of girder twist resulting from oil-canning may be neglected for prestressed I-beam superstructures.

C309.3.8.2.c

Distortion due to girder warping occurs as a result of deck slab overhang falsework loading on the fascia girder between points of lateral bracing (e.g. cross-frames). The bracket loads produce twist between the cross-frames due to a combination of girder warping and pure torsional distortion (See BDM Figure 309-21). The girder is restrained from warping at the cross-frame locations. Due to the inherent torsional stiffness of prestressed I-beams, the distortion due to girder warping may be neglected. Other design considerations for I-beams due to the overhang bracket loadings are presented at the end of this section.

For steel superstructures, calculate the magnitude of twist (ϕw) due girder warping.

For design-build projects and value engineering change proposals (VECP’s), represent the actual falsework and equipment to be used by the contractor in the data input for girder warping analysis.

The TAEG (“Torsional Analysis of Exterior Girders”) software developed by the Kansas Department of Transportation. TAEG is available at no cost and can be downloaded at: https://kart.ksdot.org/.

Since most of the data input in the girder warping analysis is dependent upon the contractor’s equipment and falsework design, designers should use conservative assumptions to accommodate most contractor resources.

Designers may use the following assumptions in lieu of actual contractor supplied information:
A. Girder Data:
For bridges with constant web depths, designers may select the cross section with the least torsional resistance to represent the entire structure. For bridges with variable depth webs, designers may disregard the effect of girder warping in the web depth transition sections.

B. Bridge Lateral Data:
Designers may select the largest cross-frame spacing to represent the entire structure. For structures with variable beam spacings (i.e. flared girders) designers may select the largest spacing dimension to represent the entire structure. Designers should generally avoid utilizing temporary tie rods and timber blocks.

C. Permanent Lateral Support Data:
The default cross-frame type assumed by the TAEG software consists of a stiffener and diagonal x-bracing with top and bottom horizontal chords. In order to analyze the structure with a standard ODOT cross-frame, designers should input stiffener dimensions and select the “Diaphragms (Inputted Ix)” option. For ODOT Type 1 cross-frames, designers should assume a fictitious stiffener of dimensions: 5-in x 3/8-in. Determine the diaphragm moment of inertia for all standard ODOT cross-frames as shown in BDM Figure 309-22.

\[ I_x = \frac{h^2s}{4L_d^2 \left( \frac{1}{A_dI_d^2} + \frac{L_h}{A_hI_h^2 + A_dI_d^2} \right)} \]

Where:
- \( A_d \) = Area of the diagonal member (in²)
- \( A_h \) = Area of the horizontal member (in²)
- \( I_d = \sqrt{I_x^2 + h^2} \)

D. Temporary Lateral Support Data:
Designers should generally avoid utilizing temporary tie rods and timber blocks; however, if required these should be detailed in the contract plans.

E. Load Data:
1. Live Load on Walkway ......................... 50-lb/ft²
2. Live Load on Slab.............................. 50-lb/ft²
3. Dead Load of Formwork ..................... 10-lb/ft²

Do not exceed 120-ft for the total machine length. If greater lengths are required, consult the Office of Structural Engineering for recommendations.
4. Dead Load of Concrete................. $150(t_{avg})$ lb/ft$^2$
   ($t_{avg} =$ Average thickness [ft] of deck slab overhang)

5. Wheel Spacing [1-2-3]....... 36-in – 31-in – 36-in

6. Maximum Wheel Load:
   To estimate the total finishing machine length required for placement along the skew, add the rail-to-rail length and the extra end length from the following table using the plan specified skew rounded to the nearest 5-degrees. W is the rail-to-rail length as measured perpendicular to the centerline of the bridge. See BDM Table 309-1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skew Angle</th>
<th>Rail-to-Rail Length, ft</th>
<th>Extra End Length, ft</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>1.00 W</td>
<td>0.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>1.04 W</td>
<td>5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>1.06 W</td>
<td>5.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>1.10 W</td>
<td>6.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>1.15 W</td>
<td>7.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>1.22 W</td>
<td>8.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>1.31 W</td>
<td>9.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>1.41 W</td>
<td>10.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>1.56 W</td>
<td>11.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55</td>
<td>1.74 W</td>
<td>13.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For total machine lengths of 36-ft and less, assume a maximum wheel load of 2.2-kip. Add 0.012-kip for each additional foot of machine length required above 36-ft.

F. Bracket Data:

1. Refer to BDM Figure 309-23 to determine TAEG dimensions A, B, C, D, E, F and G.

2. Designers may assume a center-to-center bracket spacing of 48.0-in.

3. Designers may assume a bracket weight of 50-lbs.
For prestressed I-beam superstructures, verify that the intermediate cross-frames/diaphragms in the exterior bay are capable of resisting the torsion caused by the cantilevered falsework. See BDM Figure 309-24
309.3.8.3 DETERMINING EFFECT OF GIRDER TWIST

Once all sources of girder twist are quantified, determine the total effect that girder twist has on the finished deck surface.

Do not exceed 1/2-in cover loss due to girder twist.

The greatest concern in girder twist is the loss of concrete cover over the top mat of deck reinforcing steel and the subsequent loss of deck thickness.

Determine the total amount of girder twist at both the left and right screed rails as follows:

\[
\phi_{\text{left}} = (\phi_g + \phi_o + \phi_w)_{\text{left}} \quad \text{AND} \\
\phi_{\text{right}} = (\phi_g + \phi_o + \phi_w)_{\text{right}}
\]

Where:

\[
\phi_g = \text{Girder twist due to global superstructure distortion (See BDM Section 309.3.8.2.a)} \\
\phi_o = \text{Girder twist due to “oil-canning” (See BDM Section 309.3.8.2.b)} \\
\phi_w = \text{Girder twist due to girder warping (See BDM Section 309.3.8.2.c)}
\]
Determine the total amount of screed rail deflection at both the left and right screed rail as follows: (See BDM Figure 309-25)

\[ \delta_{\text{left}} = \tan(\phi_{\text{left}}) \times L_b \text{ AND} \]
\[ \delta_{\text{right}} = \tan(\phi_{\text{right}}) \times L_b \]

Where:

- \( \delta_{\text{left}}, \delta_{\text{right}}:\) Deflection of the screed rail due to total girder twist (in). Upward deflection is positive and downward deflection is negative.
- \( L_b:\) Lateral distance from center of screed rail to centerline of fascia girder (in)

Determine the total loss of deck thickness as follows:

\[ \delta_{\text{Total}} = \frac{\delta_{\text{left}} + \delta_{\text{right}}}{2} \]

### 309.3.8.4 SLAB DEPTH OF CURVED BRIDGES

For a curved deck on straight steel beams, steel girders or prestressed I-beams, the distance from the top of the slab to the top of the beams or girders will vary from end to end. Show this variation in the slab depth dimension by giving the maximum and minimum depth dimensions with their respective location, over the piers, center of span, etc.

An alternate is to accommodate the differential depth by including it in the Camber Table as geometric camber.

### 309.3.8.5 STAGED CONSTRUCTION

For all bridge types, except non-composite concrete box beams, where the differential dead load deflection between adjacent beams, girders or structural slabs is greater than 1/4-in, a deck closure is required if the bridge is constructed in stages.

Typically, the dead load deflections before and after the pour are what is used to compare to the 1/4-in requirement. However, this value can be determined when the concrete is being poured at a specific location. The designer may calculate the differential deflection at the time of the pour at that location to possibly eliminate the deck closure pour.

The minimum closure pour width between the stages is 30-in. When the transverse reinforcing is being lap spliced, detail the width of the closure pour to accommodate the required reinforcing steel lap splices.
When mechanical connectors are utilized, use a mechanical connector system able to develop 125 percent of the full yield strength of the reinforcing steel.

Do not permanently attach intermediate cross-frames and diaphragms attached in the closure pour location until the concrete pours on both sides of the closure pour location have been completed.

Provide plan notes on the stage construction details sheet that detail the sequence of construction.

309.4 RAILING

309.4.1 GENERAL

The provisions in this section apply to new bridge railing. For requirements applied to existing bridge railings, refer to BDM Section 403.10.

The preferred location for staged construction joints is the positive moment regions of the cast-in-place concrete deck slab.

For bridges carrying NHS routes: All bridge railing, transitions, roadway railing and railing end terminals shall meet acceptance criteria contained in the AASHTO “Manual for Assessing Safety Hardware” (MASH). For high-speed routes (i.e. Design Speed > 45-mph) with more than two lanes, the minimum acceptance level for railing at the deck edge shall be TL-5. Otherwise, the minimum acceptance level shall be TL-3.

C309.4.1

Bridge railing refers to the railing on the bridge designed for vehicular impacts. Other railing on the bridge, for pedestrian or bicycle purposes, that is protected from vehicular impacts by bridge railing shall be in accordance with LRFD 13.8 and LRFD 13.9 and need not be in compliance with MASH or NCHRP Report 350 criteria.

For bridges carrying non-NHS routes: All bridge railing, transitions, roadway railing and railing end terminals shall meet acceptance criteria contained in either NCHRP Report 350 or MASH. For high-speed routes (i.e. Design Speed > 45-mph) with more than two lanes, the minimum acceptance level for railing at the deck edge shall be TL-5. Otherwise, the minimum acceptance level shall be TL-3.

Refer to BDM Section 309.4.2 for a listing of MASH accepted ODOT Standard Bridge Railing Systems.

Be aware when identifying non-standard railing systems for use on a project that the entire length of need including the bridge railing, transition, roadway railing and end terminal need to be MASH compliant.

Useful on-line resources for MASH acceptable railing systems include:

A1. The Texas Transportation Institute (TTI) Roadside Safety Pooled Fund website which provides a database of hardware tested under the MASH criteria.

B1. The TxDOT Bridge Standards website and the TxDOT Roadway Standards website.

C1. The FHWA Office of Safety website which provides eligibility letters for MASH accepted longitudinal barriers.

Refer to BDM Section 309.4.2 for a listing of MASH and NCHRP Report 350 accepted ODOT Standard Bridge Railing Systems.

The FHWA Office of Safety website provides a listing NCHRP Report 350 accepted hardware.
For projects that include non-standard railing systems, submit the following information to the Office of Structural Engineering for review and acceptance with the Stage 1 submission:

The Department will consider standard ODOT railing systems utilizing aesthetically formed surfaces on the traffic face to be non-standard. The aesthetic treatments shall be in accordance with the Final Design Guidelines defined in NCHRP Report 554.

The Department will consider structural modifications to standard ODOT railing systems to be non-standard. Examples of structural modifications include exceeding railing post length and railing span maximum dimensions, changes to specified structural shapes, etc.

The Department may consider lower acceptance level railing systems for project locations analyzed in accordance with the selection guidelines presented in the Final Report for NCHRP Project 22-12(03).

A3. Final Structure Site Plan in accordance with BDM Section 202.1.1.
B2. Transverse Section of the bridge
C2. Plan and elevation view of the non-standard bridge railing; transition; roadway railing; and end terminal
D2. Cross-sections of the non-standard bridge railing at every section change. Include size and spacing of concrete reinforcement and structural steel member sizes.
E2. Traffic data according to L&D, Vol. 1, Section 102.2 and Design Speed
F2. Cost comparison between proposed non-standard bridge railing design and applicable standard ODOT bridge railing systems.
G2. Accident history within 1000-ft of the bridge limits
H2. Proof of MASH/NCHRP Report 350 acceptability
### 309.4.2 STANDARD RAILING TYPES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drawing No.</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>NCHRP 350 Level</th>
<th>MASH Level</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BR-1-13</td>
<td>36-in New Jersey Shape Concrete Bridge Railing</td>
<td>TL-4</td>
<td>TL-3(1)(2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>42-in New Jersey Shape Concrete Bridge Railing</td>
<td>TL-5</td>
<td>n/a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BR-2-15</td>
<td>Bridge Sidewalk Railing with Concrete Parapet</td>
<td>TL-4</td>
<td>TL-4(3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DBR-2-73</td>
<td>Deep Beam Bridge Guardrail</td>
<td>TL-2</td>
<td>n/a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DBR-3-11</td>
<td>Deep Beam Bridge Retrofit Railing</td>
<td>TL-3</td>
<td>n/a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCB-91</td>
<td>Portable Concrete Barrier (Fully Anchored)</td>
<td>TL-4</td>
<td>n/a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Portable Concrete Barrier (Unanchored)</td>
<td>TL-3</td>
<td>n/a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SBR-1-13</td>
<td>42-in Single Slope Concrete Bridge Railing</td>
<td>TL-5</td>
<td>TL-5(3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SBR-2-13</td>
<td>57-in Single Slope Concrete Median (Unreinforced)</td>
<td>TL-3</td>
<td>TL-3(4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>57-in Single Slope Concrete Median (Reinforced)</td>
<td>TL-5</td>
<td>TL-5(3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TST-1-99</td>
<td>Twin Steel Tube Bridge Railing</td>
<td>TL-4</td>
<td>n/a</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

n/a – Indicates railing was neither tested nor evaluated under the listed acceptance criteria


309.4.3  WHEN TO USE

309.4.3.1 NEW JERSEY SHAPE CONCRETE BRIDGE RAILING (36-in BR-1-13)

This railing system is acceptable as noted below for bridge decks carrying both NHS and non-NHS routes.

Do not specify the 36-in New Jersey shaped bridge railing on a new bridge deck where the 42-in Single Slope Concrete Bridge Railing is acceptable. Even though the 36-in New Jersey shaped bridge railing has been tested and evaluated as a TL-3 MASH acceptable railing system, the Department would prefer to utilize the higher TL systems where they are applicable.

The 36-in tall NJ shape should only be considered under the following circumstances:

A. Locations where the 42-in Single Slope system causes a stopping sight distance issue.
B. Locations where the structural capacity of existing superstructure will not accommodate the weight of the 42-in Single Slope system.

For projects where both 36-in and 42-in railings are considered as noted above, the lowest cost alternative is acceptable.

As an alternative to the 36-in NJ shape, the TxDOT Type SSTR is a MASH TL-4 acceptable 36-in Single Slope Concrete Bridge Railing. Details of this system are available at the TxDOT Bridge Standards Website.

Include the following information in the project plans: plan views, elevation views, cross-sections, deflection joint spacing, deflection joint details, reinforcing marks, reinforcing bending diagrams, reinforcing steel weights and GFRP reinforcement lengths.

Reference in the plans to the Standard Bridge Drawings is necessary for historical purposes only.

C309.4.3.1

309.4.3.2 NEW JERSEY SHAPE CONCRETE BRIDGE RAILING (42-in BR-1-13)

Do not specify the 42-in New Jersey shaped bridge railing for use on new bridge decks carrying NHS routes.

The 42-in New Jersey shaped bridge railing has not been tested or evaluated to the MASH acceptance criteria. Use the 42-in Single Slope Concrete Bridge Railing in lieu of the 42-in NJ shape railing on bridge decks carrying NHS routes.

This railing is acceptable only for bridge decks carrying non-NHS routes.

Include the following information in the project plans: plan views, elevation views, cross-sections, deflection joint spacing, deflection joint details, reinforcing marks, reinforcing bending diagrams, reinforcing steel weights and GFRP reinforcement lengths.

C309.4.3.2
Include provisions to collect and carry deck drainage off the ends of the bridge in the project plans.

309.4.3.3 BRIDGE SIDEWALK RAILING (BR-2-15)

This railing system is acceptable for bridge decks carrying both NHS and non-NHS routes.

Refer to the L&D, Vol. 2, Section 1113.1 for more information.

C309.4.3.3

Include the following information in the project plans: plan views, elevation views, cross-sections, deflection joint spacing, deflection joint details, reinforcing marks, reinforcing bending diagrams and reinforcing steel weights.

Include provisions to collect and carry deck drainage off the ends of the bridge in the project plans.

309.4.3.4 DEEP BEAM BRIDGE GUARDRAIL (DBR-2-73)

Do not specify Deep Beam Bridge Guardrail for use on new bridge decks carrying NHS routes.

This railing is acceptable only for bridge decks carrying non-NHS routes with design speed of 45 mph or less over waterways.

The original DBR-2-73 railing was tested under the NCHRP Report 230 acceptance criteria using a 2000-lb car at a speed of 60-mpm with a 20° impact angle and a 4500-lb car at a speed of 60-mpm with a 25° impact angle(1). That acceptance level was grandfathered to a TL-2 acceptance level under NCHRP Report 350 because the performance of the TL-3 vehicle is unknown.

The use of the Deep Beam Bridge Guardrail with the Deep Beam Retrofit Railing (DBR-3-11) is acceptable in accordance with BDM Section 309.4.3.5


Variable post lengths may be required along the length of a structure due to beam camber. Retired design data sheet, DBP-1-92, is available from the Office of Structural Engineering Archived Standard Drawings website to address these concerns.
309.4.3.5 DEEP BEAM BRIDGE RETROFIT RAILING (DBR-3-11)

This railing when used in combination with the Deep Beam Bridge Railing, DBR-2-73, is acceptable ***only*** for bridge decks carrying non-NHS routes over waterways.

To transition the Deep Beam Retrofit Railing to Type MGS approach roadway guardrail, use an ODOT Type 4 Bridge Terminal Assembly as detailed on Plan Insert Sheet GR-3.4 with a revision date of July 20, 2018. At the end of the Type 4 BTA, transition to MGS using SCD MGS-4.3 followed by SCD MGS-2.1.

309.4.3.6 PORTABLE CONCRETE BARRIER (PCB-91 & RM-4.2)

The project plans shall include the following information: plan view showing the location of the portable barrier along the entire length of the bridge; typical section showing lane widths and deck width; anchoring requirements for both PCB-91 and RM-4.2 barrier sections; and the appropriate pay item.

C309.4.3.5

The Deep Beam Bridge Retrofit Railing system was evaluated under the NCHRP Report 350 acceptance criteria\(^1\). There is no design speed restriction associated with the use of the Deep Beam Bridge Retrofit Railing system.


C309.4.3.6

The top of w-beam element for the Deep Beam Bridge Railing and the Type 4 BTA is located at 27.75-in above the pavement surface. For standard Type MGS guardrail, the top of the w-beam element is located at 31-in above the pavement surface. Detail this height transition to occur in the shortest horizontal distance possible beyond the BTA Type 4 and within the first four panels of Type MGS guardrail.

RM-4.2 was evaluated under MASH acceptance criteria and the PCB-91 barrier system was evaluated under NCHRP Report 350 acceptance criteria. A joint implementation agreement between AASHTO and FHWA established a deadline for the use of non-MASH accepted portable barrier systems.\(^{(1)}\) Under the agreement, the Department cannot allow the use of PCB-91 segments cast after December 31, 2019. PCB-91 segments cast prior to that date may be utilized until December 31, 2029.

Since contractors are permitted to use existing PCB-91 or RM-4.2 segments, the plans need to address anchoring requirements for both systems.


The anchoring requirements for PCB-91 are defined in Design Data Sheet, PCB-DD available at the OSE website. The anchoring requirements for RM-4.2 are provided on sheet 4 of the drawing.
The Department will pay for portable concrete barrier as follows:

ITEM 622 – PORTABLE BARRIER, UNANCHORED

ITEM 622 – PORTABLE BARRIER, ANCHORED

C&MS 622 does allow the Contractor to substitute an approved proprietary portable barrier product listed on the Office of Roadway Engineering’s website. Designers should become familiar with these approved products to ensure their potential use is not detrimental for a specific project.

309.4.3.7 SINGLE SLOPE CONCRETE BRIDGE RAILING (SBR-1-20)

The SBR-1-20 railing system is acceptable for bridge decks carrying both NHS and non-NHS routes.

Include the following information in the project plans: plan views, elevation views, cross-sections, deflection joint spacing, deflection joint details, reinforcing marks, reinforcing bending diagrams, reinforcing steel weights and GFRP reinforcement lengths.

Include provisions to collect and carry deck drainage off the ends of the bridge in the project plans.

309.4.3.8 57-in SINGLE SLOPE CONCRETE MEDIAN BRIDGE RAILING (SBR-2-13)

The SBR-2-13 railing system is acceptable for bridge decks carrying both NHS and non-NHS routes.

Include the following information in the project plans: plan views, elevation views, cross-sections, deflection joint spacing, deflection joint details, reinforcing marks, reinforcing bending diagrams, reinforcing steel weights and GFRP reinforcement lengths.

Include provisions to collect and carry deck drainage off the ends of the bridge in the project plans.

The unreinforced 57-in median barrier on the bridge is based on the barrier detailed in SCD RM-4.3.

The acceptance of the reinforced 57-in median barrier is based on the Final Report for NCHRP Project No. 20-07/Task 395.

List GFRP reinforcement in the Reinforcement Schedule. The Department will pay for GFRP by total length in feet for each bar size under Item 509.
309.4.3.9 TWIN STEEL TUBE BRIDGE RAILING (TST-1-99)

This railing is acceptable only for bridge decks carrying non-NHS routes over waterways.

For box beam bridge types, reference post spacing dimensions to each box beam end.

The site plan shall show the station of the center of the first inlet-mounted post on each corner of the bridge.

309.5 FENCING

309.5.1 GENERAL

The primary purposes of protective fencing are to provide security for pedestrians and to discourage the throwing or dropping of objects from bridges onto traffic below.

VPF-1-90 provides standard details for fencing attached to bridges. The designer may need to enhance this standard to deal with requirements for the specific structure.

309.5.2 WHEN TO USE

Install fencing on all bridges over vehicular and pedestrian traffic except as noted herein. Do not install fencing on bridges that carry freeways as defined in the ORC 4511.01 where pedestrians are prohibited per ORC 4511.051, unless otherwise specified in the Scope of Services. For facilities not defined as freeways by the ORC, use BDM Table 309-5.

C309.4.3.9

The Twin Steel Tube Bridge Railing is a modified version of the Illinois DOT Type SM system which was tested according to the AASHTO Guide Specifications for Bridge Railing using an 1800-lb car at 60-mph with a 20° impact angle; a 5400-lb pickup truck at 60-mpg with a 20° impact angle; and an 18000-lb single unit truck at 50-mph with a 15° impact angle. (1)


This rail type does not meet the minimum requirements specified by AASHTO for pedestrian and bicycle railings and shall not be used where pedestrian or bicycle traffic is expected.

The typical post spacing is 6.25-ft. The standard drawing allows a reduced span for the first, last and one additional post spacing per span on each side of the bridge to account for construction clearances. Carefully review the position of the posts that are near the corner of a structure for possible interference with wingwalls, tie rods, etc.
Install fencing on bridges over rail traffic if required in an agreement with the affected railroad.

For existing bridges, provide fencing when new concrete or refaced concrete barriers are installed.

At locations where fencing will adversely affect public safety (e.g. reduced sight distance), submit a written request for exemption to the Administrator of the Office of Structural Engineering. Include supporting documentation with the request for exemption.

An exemption request form is available as a Design Data Sheet on the Office of Structural Engineering web page.

### Table 309-3

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Under Bridge Feature</th>
<th>Fence Required</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Interstate</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>US Route</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>State Route</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>County/Township Route</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>City Route</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Railroad</td>
<td>Yes/No (Based on RR agreement)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waterway</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bike/Walking path</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 309.5.3 FENCING CONFIGURATIONS

For structures without sidewalks, the minimum fence height is 8-ft above the pavement surface. For structures with sidewalks, the minimum fence height is 8-ft above the sidewalk.

For curved fence, extend the post vertically for at least 8-ft above the sidewalk before curving inward over the sidewalk. Construct the overhang at least 1-ft less than the width of the sidewalk. See BDM Figure 309-26 & Figure 309-27.

For pedestrian bridges, use bent pipe frames with pipe bend radii of 24-in at the upper corners and start the radii at least 8-ft above the sidewalk surface. Start the fabric at the deck line, top of curb or parapet and extend to at least the top of the bent portion of the frame.

Install the fence a maximum of 1-in above the top of the parapet.

For a greater degree of protection against objects being thrown from the bridge, the fence may be curved to overhang the sidewalk.

Omitting fabric on the top horizontal area of the frame may prevent an individual from walking on the top of the enclosure. See BDM Figure 309-28 for an illustration of this configuration. Alternatively, the frame may be designed to form a peak at the center of the structure, similar to a house roofline.
Install posts and frames either plumb or perpendicular to the longitudinal grade of the bridge, subject to considerations of aesthetics or practicality of construction. For non-standard systems, show the posts and frames orientation with respect to the longitudinal grade in the plans. Provide complete details of base plates, pipe inserts or other types of base anchorage in the plans.

Extend the fencing between end posts placed at the locations selected from the following list that creates the shortest length:

A. 30-ft ± 2.5-ft beyond the route under bridge edge of traveled way nearest the fence terminal
B. The centerline of the abutment expansion joint (-2.5-ft, +0-ft)
C. The end of the bridge barrier (-2.5-ft, +0-ft)

Place fence on structures parallel to traffic and that carry sidewalks located 30-ft or less from the nearest edge of the traveled way below.

For bridges where a snooper truck will be used for inspection, use only straight fence with the top of the fence located 10-ft or less above the deck.

VPF-1-90 is shown as plumb to the longitudinal grade.
**BRIDGE WITH SIDEWALK - VERTICAL FENCE**

**BRIDGE WITH SIDEWALK - CURVED FENCE**

Figure 309-26
BRIDGE WITH SIDEWALK - VERTICAL FENCE

BRIDGE WITH SIDEWALK - CURVED FENCE

Figure 309-27
309.5.4 **SPECIAL DESIGNS**

For fence installation projects on new structures, install a traffic railing (steel tubing) when the top concrete parapet or concrete wall is less than 36-in above roadway for structures without sidewalks or 36-in above the top of sidewalk for structures with sidewalks. See BDM Figure 309-26.

Figure 309-28

**DEFLECTOR PARAPET WITH FENCING**
Utilize a two coat shop applied epoxy/urethane system in accordance with C&MS 708.02 for color coating of posts and rails. Plan notes for this coating system are available from OSE upon request.

For special fence designs, provide plan notes to define non-standard color, materials, traffic maintenance, construction procedures and other requirements.

309.5.5 FENCE DESIGN REQUIREMENTS

309.5.5.1 GENERAL

Furnish fencing mesh with either of the following materials:

A. Chain-link wire mesh with 1-in diamonds. The core wire shall be 11 gage with a Polyvinyl chloride coating. (C&MS 710.03)

B. Welded wire fabric with 1/2-in x 3-in opening size. The core wire shall be 10.5 gage; galvanized after welding (1.2-oz zinc/ft²), and PVC coated (10-mil).

Clamp brace and bottom rails to posts or post frames.

Detail the top rail, if any, of a free-standing fence as continuous over two or more posts and provide suitable cap fittings.

Bent pipe frames for narrow pedestrian bridges are permitted. Fabricate bent pipe frames for narrow pedestrian bridges in two or more sections and field spliced at the top with sleeves bolted to the frame sections.

To prevent pipe blow-ups during galvanizing, leave both ends of pipe open. Therefore, put holes in the base plates equal to the pipes’ inside diameter.

309.5.5.2 WIND & PEDESTRIAN LOADS

Design non-standard fence designs with loading in accordance with LRFD 13.8.2.

C309.5.5.2

Additional area for posts, rails and other hardware need not be considered.

309.5.6 TEMPORARY VANDAL PROTECTION FENCING

Use the Design Data Sheet, TVPFD-1-18, Temporary Vandal Protection Fencing to determine the fencing requirements on bridges during construction.

The intent of temporary vandal protection fencing is to discourage pedestrians from dropping or throwing heavy objects off the side of the bridge onto traffic below during construction.

Standard Bridge Drawing, TVPF-1-18, Temporary Vandal Protection Fencing, provides details for:
A. Type A – Fencing installed on existing barrier systems and on the existing deck surface near the phased construction joint

B. Type B – Fencing installed on the back side of the PCB. Refer to BDM Section 309.4.3.6 for PCB anchoring requirements. As a minimum, provide at least one anchor per PCB segment on the traffic side of the barrier.

C. Type C – Fencing installed along the phased construction joint side of a newly constructed deck.

Detail the length of the temporary vandal protection fencing installation in accordance with the minimum lengths defined in BDM Section 309.5.3.

The Department will utilize permanent vandal protection fencing where possible to minimize costs for temporary fencing. Therefore, place new permanent fence installations prior to shifting traffic onto that phase of construction. Leave temporary vandal protection fencing installed on existing barrier in place until the barrier is removed from the bridge. Leave all other types of temporary vandal protection fencing in place until the Engineer determines that it is no longer necessary. Once removed, reinstallation of temporary vandal protection fencing is not required.

In the plans provide pay item(s) in the Estimated Quantities; show the limits and location of each temporary vandal protection fencing installation; and show the appropriate temporary vandal protection fencing type on the Maintenance of Traffic Transverse Sections. If necessary, provide all non-standard connection and fence details in the plans; address special installation sequencing; and include all other special notes. Provide details for temporary vandal protection fencing across intermediate expansion joints.

309.6 EXPANSION DEVICES

309.6.1 GENERAL

Use an expansion device that provides a total seal against penetration and moisture.

For fabricated steel expansion devices, specify the type of steel required. Include the type of steel in a plan note if the plan requirements are not covered by a selected standard bridge drawing.

To protect steel expansion devices, metallize the exposed surfaces per C&MS 516.

C309.6.1 Standard bridge drawings are available for expansion devices for typical bridge superstructure types.
309.6.1.1 PAY ITEM

Pay for expansion devices, except as specifically listed in this section, with an Item 516 pay item.

For sealed expansion devices, pay for the elastomeric seal, either strip or compression with an Item 516 pay item.

Clearly show what components are included with the expansion devices in the plans to be paid for with the Item 516 pay item. Consider the seal as part of the expansion device and included in the Item 516 pay item.

As an example, cross-frames, which are field welded to both the superstructure girders and the expansion devices, are part of the Item 513 structural steel pay item.

309.6.1.2 EXPANSION DEVICES WITH SIDEWALKS

On structures with sidewalks, furnish the same expansion device on the sidewalk as utilized for main bridge deck expansion joint.

For non-standard devices, use a curb plate and sidewalk cover plate. Separate the curb and sidewalk plates at the interface of the sidewalk and curb.

Sidewalk details for standard expansion devices (strip seals) are shown on the standards. See details on Standard Bride Drawings: EXJ-2-81, EXJ-3-82, EXJ-4-87, EXJ-5-93 and EXJ-6-17 for sidewalk plates.

309.6.1.3 EXPANSION DEVICES WITH STAGE CONSTRUCTION

On projects involving stage construction, locate and show joints in the seal armor in the plans. At the stage construction lines, use complete penetration welded butt joints to connect adjoining expansion devices. If butt welds will be in contact with a sealing gland, grind the butt-weld flush at the contact area.

309.6.2 EXPANSION DEVICE TYPES

309.6.2.1 EXPANSION JOINTS USING POLYMER MODIFIED ASPHALT BINDER

Do not use polymer modified asphalt binder on structures with movement greater than 1-in or structures with sidewalks.

This device is for use on structures with concrete or asphalt overlays and where total expected movement is 0-in to 1.0-in. See SS846 for additional information.

Construct the polymer-modified joint to be between 2-in and 5-in thick. Show a plan view and cross-section of each polymer modified asphalt expansion joint location on the bridge in the plans. Provide the station of the joint centerline at the centerline of construction, skew angle and dimension its length as measured along the centerline of the joint in the plan view. Dimension the width and thickness of the joint, width of the expansion gap and other significant joint details in the cross-section.
309.6.2.2 STRIP SEAL EXPANSION DEVICES

The seal size is limited to a 5-in maximum. Do not use unpainted A709 50W weathering steel in the manufacture of this type expansion device. Ensure that all details are covered in the plans because the standard drawing is not inclusive for all structure types.

Construct the strip seal in one piece across the total width of the structure. The Department will not permit splices.

309.6.2.3 COMPRESSION SEAL EXPANSION DEVICES

The maximum allowable seal size is 4-in. Do not use a 5-in wide seal. Do not use compression seal expansion devices on structures with a skew greater than 15-degrees. Limit the movement so that the seal is not compressed greater than 60 percent or less than 20 percent.

Construct the compression seal in one piece across the total width of the structure. The Department will not permit splices.

309.6.2.4 MODULAR EXPANSION DEVICES

Modular expansion devices may be required for structures when total required movements exceed movement capacity of a strip or compression seal. Modular expansion joint notes are available upon request.

Design the modular devices main load bearing beams, support beams and welds for fatigue.

Design of support for the modular device and deck thickness should allow for multiple styles or designs of modular devices. Contact suppliers and become familiar with the modular devices available.

309.6.2.5 TOOTH TYPE, FINGER TYPE OR NON-STANDARD SLIDING PLATE EXPANSION DEVICES

Finger or sliding plate joints are another alternative type of expansion device where movements exceed the capacity of either strip or compression seal devices. This type of expansion device generally competes against Modular joints. Their advantage is their simplicity of design. Their disadvantage is their inability to seal against intrusion of water and debris.
Use of a tooth type expansion device also requires neoprene drainage troughs and a suitable drainage system to carry away the water. Completely detail both the neoprene trough and downspout to drainage trough connection. Pay special attention to developing a complete seal at the downspout to trough connection. Vulcanize the down spout to the trough.

Design finger devices for fatigue.

Do not design finger devices with fracture critical components.

Use pre-qualified 513 Level UF fabricators to construct finger or sliding plate devices. Refer BDM Section 308.2.2.1.b for additional information.
309.6.3 EXPANSION DEVICE USES – BRIDGE OR ABUTMENT TYPE

Expansion length is defined as the total length if no fixed bearing exists, or length from fixed bearing to proposed expansion device location, if one exists.

Table 309-4

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bridge Type</th>
<th>Expansion Length (ft)</th>
<th>Bridge Joint Required</th>
<th>Approach Slab/Structure Joint Type</th>
<th>Approach Slab/Roadway Joint Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Reinforced Concrete Slab</td>
<td>0 - 160</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>AS-1-15 detail B or C</td>
<td>AS-2-15 Type A or B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>160+</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>AS-2-15 Type C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steel Stringer</td>
<td>0 - 125</td>
<td>IA or EXJ-4-87</td>
<td>AS-1-15 detail B or C</td>
<td>AS-2-15 Type A or B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>125 - 400</td>
<td>IA</td>
<td>AS-1-15 detail B or C</td>
<td>AS-2-15 Type C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>400+</td>
<td>TTED or MED</td>
<td>AS-1-15 detail B or C</td>
<td>AS-2-15 Type A or B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prestressed Concrete I-Beam</td>
<td>0 - 160</td>
<td>IA or EXJ-6-17</td>
<td>AS-1-15 detail B or C</td>
<td>AS-2-15 Type A or B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>160 - 575</td>
<td>IA</td>
<td>AS-1-15 detail B or C</td>
<td>AS-2-15 Type C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>575+</td>
<td>TTED or MED</td>
<td>AS-1-15 detail B or C</td>
<td>AS-2-15 Type A or B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-Composite Prestressed Concrete Box Beam</td>
<td>0 - 160</td>
<td>IA</td>
<td>AS-1-15 detail E</td>
<td>AS-2-15 Type A or B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>160 - 475</td>
<td>IA</td>
<td>AS-1-15 detail E</td>
<td>AS-2-15 Type C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Composite Prestressed Concrete Box Beam</td>
<td>0 - 160</td>
<td>IA or EXJ-5-93</td>
<td>AS-1-15 detail B or C</td>
<td>AS-2-15 Type A or B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>160 - 475</td>
<td>IA</td>
<td>AS-1-15 detail B or C</td>
<td>AS-2-15 Type A or B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>475 - 575</td>
<td>EXJ-5-93</td>
<td>AS-1-15 detail B or C</td>
<td>AS-2-15 Type A or B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>575+</td>
<td>TTED or MED</td>
<td>AS-1-15 detail B or C</td>
<td>AS-2-15 Type A or B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

IA = Integral/Semi-Integral Abutment
PM = Polymer Modified Asphalt Joint
TTED = Tooth Type expansion device
MED = Modular Expansion Device

309.7 BRIDGE DECK DRAINAGE

When using concrete parapets, provide a minimum longitudinal grade of 0.3% across the entire length of the bridge deck surface.

Minimize or eliminate scuppers used for collecting the deck surface drainage.

Compute the allowable spread of flow using the procedures described in Section 1103 of the L&D, Vol. 2 to determine if scuppers are required.

Scupper should be eliminated on existing structure when feasible.

Scuppers when provided, should preferably be located inside the fascia beam.
Slope drainage collection systems as steeply as practical, and not less than 15-degrees from horizontal. The minimum bend radius for the system is 18-in, and no 90-degree bends are permitted. Provide adequate pipe supports and cleanouts at the low ends of runs.

Place scuppers with drainage collection as closely as possible to the substructure unit which drains them. Locate and detail the drainage collection system in the plans. Place uncollected scupper downspouts as far away as possible from the substructure.

When the deck drainage is to flow off the ends of the bridge, make provisions to collect and carry away this run-off. Refer to the L&D, Vol. 2, Section 1113.1 for more information.

Control of drainage is especially critical at abutments with MSE walls. On structures with MSE walls at the abutments, provide a barrier on the approach slab with a standard inlet, SCD I-2.3 to collect the drainage. Locate the inlet at least 25-ft beyond the limits of the MSE wall soil reinforcement and continue the barrier 10-ft past the catch basin. Refer to BDM Figure 309-29 for more information.

For bridges with over-the-side drainage, provide a stainless steel drip strip to protect the deck edge and beam fascia from the deck surface run-off.

The cleanout plugs should be easily and safely accessible.
309.8 SIDEWALKS & SHARED USE FACILITY

Provide a sidewalk when required by the L&D, Vol. 1, Section 306.4. The minimum width of the bridge sidewalk is the wider of: 5-ft or the approach sidewalk plus 12-in.

Provide a 1/4-in per foot cross slope on the sidewalk towards the curbline. Provide an 8-in tall sidewalk on the bridge.

Prepare a detail of the standard curb (height, face slope, and corner rounding) in the plans.

Tapering the sidewalk curb down to the approach curb height may or may not be performed with the limits of the approach slab.
310   MISCELLANEOUS

310.1   TEMPORARY SHORING

310.1.1   SUPPORT OF EXCAVATIONS

310.1.1.1   ESTIMATED QUANTITIES

Provide a pay item for Cofferdams and Excavation Bracing when either of the following conditions exist:

A. Excavation that extends below the ground water table or below an elevation defined as 3-ft above the OHWM (see BDM Section 203.1 for more information).

B. Excavation of earth supporting:
   1. Structures/utilities when the structure/utility is located within 1-1/2 times the depth of excavation. Consider the location of bridge substructures supported on shallow foundations but not substructures supported on deep foundations unless the excavation will expose the deep foundation members.
   2. Railroads when the excavation encroaches on foundation material defined by each railroad.
   3. Roadways used to maintain traffic when the edge line is located within a distance of one-half times the depth of excavation.

When a pay item for Cofferdams and Excavation Bracing is required for (B) above, show the approximate locations of the Excavation Bracing in the Plans.

310.1.1.2   EXCAVATION BRACING PLAN WARRANTS

Provide a complete design for excavation bracing in the Plans for each of the following conditions:

A. BDM Section 310.1.1.1.B.1
B. BDM Section 310.1.1.1.B.2
C. BDM Section 310.1.1.1.B.3 and the depth of any side of the excavation exceeds 8-ft

Consider the feasibility of this excavation bracing during the Structure Type Study.
310.1.1.3 DESIGN REQUIREMENTS

When warranted according to BDM Section 310.1.1.2, design the excavation bracing in accordance with the latest AASHTO Guide Design Specifications for Bridge Temporary Works and the latest edition of either the AASHTO LRFD Bridge Design Specifications or the AASHTO Standard Specifications for Highway Bridges.

As a minimum, provide the following information in the Plans:

A. Design methodology & governing specifications
B. Minimum section modulus (for sheet pile walls)
C. Top elevation and minimum bottom elevation
D. Limits of bracing
E. Sequence of installation and/or operations.
F. If bracing or tiebacks are required, provide all details, connections and member sizes

For projects involving railroads, contact the responsible railroad and obtain the specific requirements for design and construction.

310.1.1.4 DESIGN CONSIDERATIONS

The design methodology may be in accordance with either Load and Resistance Factor Design or Allowable Stress Design.

C310.1.1.3

The requirements will be different as each railroad company has their own specific requirements.

C310.1.1.4

Following are some conceptual ideas for the design of Excavation Bracing:

A. A cantilever sheet pile wall should generally be used for excavation up to approximately 12-ft in height.
B. For cuts greater than 12-ft in height, anchored or braced walls will generally be required.
C. Braced walls using waler and struts can sometimes be braced against another rigid element on the excavated side.
D. The use of steel H-piles with lagging is also a practical solution for some sites. Please note that some railroad companies allow only interlocking steel sheet piling adjacent to their tracks.
E. Where sufficient embedment cannot be attained by driving sheet piling because of the location of shallow bedrock, predrilled holes into the bedrock with soldier H-piles and lagging should be considered.
310.1.2 SUPPORT OF EXISTING STRUCTURE

Whenever temporary support is required for a portion of an existing structure used to maintain traffic, provide sufficient information in the plans to allow contractors to prepare bids and construct the project. Consider the feasibility of temporary support of an existing structure during the Structure Type Study.

Include the following information in the plans: permissible locations of temporary support; temporary support loads; construction sequences; construction limitations not otherwise provided in C&MS 501.05; and all remaining plan notes. As a minimum, address method of measurement and basis of payment for temporary support in the plan notes.

310.2 APPROACH SLABS

Provide approach slabs for all ODOT bridges.

310.2.1 STANDARD BRIDGE DRAWING – AS-1-15

Determine the length of the approach slab using the following formula:

\[ L = \frac{1.5(H + h + 1.5)}{\cos \theta} \leq 30\text{-ft} \]

Where:

- \( L \) = Length of the approach slab measured along the centerline of the roadway rounded up to the nearest 5-ft
- \( H \) = Height of the embankment measured from the bottom of the footing to the bottom of the approach slab (ft)
- \( h \) = Width of the footing heel (ft)
- \( \theta \) = Skew angle

For four lane divided highways on new embankment, provide an approach slab with a minimum length of 25-ft (measured along the roadway centerline). For structures with MSE walls at the abutments, provide an approach slab with a minimum length of 30-ft. For all other structures, provide an approach slab with a minimum length of 15-ft ft.
310.2.1.1 PLAN REQUIREMENTS FOR STANDARD APPROACH SLABS

When AS-1-15 is specified, provide the following information in the plans:


B. Provide a plan view of the approach slab that includes: all width and length dimensions; skew angle; curb and barrier locations; and the final approach slab surface elevations at each transverse grade break line; phased construction line; and curbline/slab edge at each end of the approach slab.

C. Include the D801 or D802 bars in the reinforcing steel list for payment under Item 509.

D. Include the appropriate pay item: ITEM 526 – REINFORCED CONCRETE APPROACH SLAB (T=__) or ITEM 526 – REINFORCED CONCRETE APPROACH SLAB WITH QC/QA (T=__)

E. Include pay ITEM 526 – TYPE __ INSTALLATION

F. Include, as necessary, pay ITEM 846 – POLYMER MODIFIER ASPHALT EXPANSION JOINT SYSTEM or ITEM 516 – ARMORLESS PREFORMED JOINT SEAL

For bridge replacement projects, when the existing approach slab is to be removed, include ITEM 202 – APPROACH SLAB REMOVED in the structures estimated quantities.

310.2.1.2 PLAN REQUIREMENTS FOR NON-STANDARD APPROACH SLABS

In addition to the plan requirements listed in BDM Section 310.2.1.1, provide all geometry and the reinforcement layout for the non-standard approach slab. Include these detail drawings in the structure plans for review during the detail design review stage. Include the appropriate pay item: ITEM 526 – REINFORCED CONCRETE APPROACH SLAB (T=__), AS PER PLAN or ITEM 526 – REINFORCED CONCRETE APPROACH SLAB WITH QC/QA (T=__), AS PER PLAN.

Examples of non-standard approach slabs include approach slabs that are: a non-standard length; tapered; curved; a non-uniform width or other such variation.
310.2.2 STANDARD BRIDGE DRAWING – AS-2-15

C310.2.2


310.3 PRESSURE RELIEF JOINTS

C310.3

When the approach roadway pavement is rigid concrete and the approach slab Installation is Type C, specify a Type B pressure relief joints at a location 50-ft from the end of the sleeper slab. Alternatively, a 25-ft length of full depth asphalt pavement may be specified between the sleeper slab and the rigid pavement. The pressure relief joints are detailed on Standard Construction Drawing BP-2.4, Pressure Relief Joint Types B, C, & D.

310.4 UTILITIES

C310.4

Make the request to allow utilities on the bridge through the ODOT District Utilities Coordinator. Install utilities in substantial ducts or enclosures adequate to protect the lines from future bridge repair and maintenance operations.

The type of superstructure selected for a site may be dependent upon the number of utilities supported on the bridge.

Do not place utilities inside of prestressed concrete box beams.

If the bridge design is a composite deck on prestressed box beams, the design may either eliminate an interior box beam or provide a space between two interior box beams to provide utility access in this space. This alternative will require a special design for both the box beams and the deck.

When it is necessary to place a utility through or beneath an MSE wall, encase it in a protective conduit or casing pipe that extends 10-ft beyond the limits of the select granular backfill for the MSE wall.

Encase water and sewer lines within 10-ft of an MSE wall in a protective conduit or casing pipe.

Placing utilities through or underneath MSE walls should be avoided when possible. Placing pipe culverts through MSE walls should be avoided.

Show and dimension utility conduits embedded in concrete to clear construction joints by a minimum of 1-in and other conduits by a minimum of 2-in.

For approval procedures for installation of utilities on bridges, please refer to ODOT's Utilities Manual.
310.4.1 UTILITIES ATTACHED TO BEAMS AND GIRDERS

Do not place utility lines between the stringers in the exterior bays of grade separation structures.

Locate critical utility lines (gas, etc.) that could contribute to the severity of a collision well above the bottom of the superstructure or be otherwise protected.

This is to protect the lines from collisions.

310.5 AESTHETICS

310.5.1 GENERAL

Refer to the ODOT Aesthetic Design Guidelines for aesthetics treatments on structures.

Each structure should be evaluated for aesthetics. Normally it is not practical to provide cost premium aesthetic treatments without a specific demand; however careful attention to the details of the structure lines and forms will generally result in a pleasing structure appearance.

Some basic guidelines that should be considered are as follows:

A. Avoid mixing structural elements, for example concrete slab and steel beam superstructures or cap and column piers with wall type piers.

B. In general, continuous superstructures shall be provided for multiple span bridges. Where intermediate joints cannot be avoided, the depth of spans adjacent to the joints preferably should be the same. Avoid the use of very slender superstructures over massive piers.

C. Abrupt changes in beam depth should be avoided when possible. Whenever sudden changes in the depth of the beams in adjacent spans are required, care should be taken in the development of details at the pier.

D. The lines of the structure should be simple and without excessive curves and abrupt changes.

E. All structures should blend in with their surroundings.

The most significant design factors contributing to the aesthetic quality of the structure is unity, consistency, and continuity. These qualities will give the structure an appearance of a design process that was carefully thought out.

The aesthetics of the structure can generally be accomplished within the guidelines of design requiring only minimum special designs and minor project cost increase.
If formliners are being considered, the depth of the projections should be as deep as possible in order to have the desired visual effect. Using shallow depths, such as 2-in to 3-in, provides very little, if any, visual effect (relief) when viewed from a distance. The depth of the formliner shall not be included in the measurement of the concrete clear cover.

The use of colored concrete, where the color is integral with the concrete mix, should generally not be used since the final visual appearance of the concrete is not uniform. The color varies greatly due to the aggregate, cement type, cement content and the curing of the concrete. None of these items are reasonably controlled in the field to a sufficient enough degree to ensure a uniform final appearance. If color is required, a concrete coating should be used which will not only produce the required color but will also provide the necessary sealing of the concrete as required in BDM Sections 306.1.2 and 309.2.1.

The use of formliners and/or coloring of the concrete should be evaluated on a cost basis and submitted as part of the Structure Type Study, Cost Analysis.

310.5.2 LETTERING AND LOGO POLICY ON ODOT FACILITIES

Obtain approval from the Office of Structural Engineering for all lettering and logos to be placed on a bridge. Obtain approval from the Office of Environmental Services for all lettering and logos to be placed on noise walls. Obtain approval from the Division of Innovative Delivery for all lettering and logos to be placed on ODOT facilities through sponsorship naming proposals.

The criteria for permitting lettering and logos on Bridges and Noise Walls is as follows:

A. City names and City logos are acceptable provided the bridge or noise wall is within the territorial jurisdiction of that City.

B. County names and County logos are acceptable provided the bridge or noise wall is within the territorial jurisdiction of that County.

C. Street names and Path names are acceptable provided the bridge carries that public street or public path. Private street names or private path names are not permissible.

D. Obtain FHWA acceptance, if necessary.

The local agency requesting the lettering or logo may be required to fund the additional cost over what ODOT would normally install on the bridge or noise wall.

A. ODOT traditionally uses standard concrete form liners on bridges and noise walls. If the lettering or logo will require additional or custom concrete form liners, the cost over a standard concrete form liner may be required to be secured/funded by the local agency.

B. ODOT traditionally places vandal protection fencing on bridges. If the lettering or logo will require non-standard fence or supports, the cost over the standard fence may be required to be secured/funded by the local agency.
E. Lettering or logos shall not extend above the top of bridge railing, barrier, or fence. Lettering or logos shall not extend below the normal lines of the bridge superstructure.

F. Lettering or logos on bridge substructure units shall be within the normal limits of those units. Do not add extraneous elements for the sole purpose of displaying lettering or logos.

G. Provide 5 copies of rendering(s) of the proposal with the request.

310.6 RAILWAY BRIDGES

Contact the Ohio Rail Development Commission (ORDC) for assistance with railroad-roadway coordination including overpass design requirements.

C310.6

Ohio’s largest railroads, CSX and Norfolk Southern, publish Public Project Manuals to assist public entities in interacting with their organizations. Regional and short-line railroads often publish information on their websites to identify appropriate processes and contacts. Links to CSX and Norfolk Southern Public Project Manuals are available on the ORDC website.

For railway overpasses the specific requirements of the railway company involved need to be addressed. The design and operational requirements of the railway companies will vary from railway line to railway line and between companies. Some of the common railway concerns are as follows:

A. Horizontal and vertical clearances for both the final proposed design and during construction,
B. The constructability of the substructure units adjacent to their tracks,
C. Allowing adequate clearances for drainage ditches and access roads that are parallel to their tracks,
D. Location of railway utilities, and
E. Provisions for crash walls on piers.

Drainage from the bridge should be collected in drain pipes and drained away from the railway right of way.

Interlocking sheet piling of cantilever design is preferred. It may be appropriate to leave the temporary shoring in place after construction.

When temporary shoring details are required for construction of substructure units adjacent to railway tracks, include details in the plans. When considering excavation for substructure units, address whether sheet piling can be driven (avoid existing footing, clear any battered piles, elevation of bedrock, etc.) and whether the proper lengths can be provided to retain the railway tracks. Do not allow settlement of the tracks to occur.
310.7 **BICYCLE BRIDGES**

For new structures, the minimum bridge width shall be the same as the width of the paved bicycle path and approach shoulders. Use a minimum transverse slope of 1/4 in per foot sloped in one direction. Provide bicycle railings at a minimum of 3.5-ft high. For the design of the railing refer to *AASHTO LRFD Article 13.9*. If an occasional maintenance vehicle is going to use the bridge, design the railing as only a bicycle railing. Use bicycle safe bridge deck joints.

If a timber deck is used, apply a 1-1/2-in minimum thickness of ITEM 441 - ASPHALT CONCRETE SURFACE COURSE, TYPE 1, PG64-22, in order to provide an abrasive skid resistant surface.

Refer to the ODOT publication, *Bicycle and Pedestrian Resources for Engineers*, for more information and resource references.

310.8 **PEDESTRIAN BRIDGES**

Meet the grade and cross slope requirements specified in *L&D, Vol. 1*, Section 306.2.5 for pedestrian facilities. For pedestrian bridges over highways, provide an additional one foot of vertical clearance.

If a timber deck is used, apply a 12-in minimum thickness of ITEM 441 - ASPHALT CONCRETE SURFACE COURSE, TYPE 1, PG64-22, in order to provide an abrasive skid resistant surface.

Other alternative surfaces may be used if approved by the Department.

310.9 **MAINTENANCE AND INSPECTION ACCESS**

Maintenance and inspection access requirements should be included in the Structure Type Study, Narrative of Bridge Alternatives. For multiple span bridges with 8-ft or deeper girders, an inspection handrail located on the girders should be provided. Catwalks should also be considered. Safety cables and other fall arrest systems should be considered in addition to handrails and catwalks. Provisions for maintenance and inspection access should be provided for fracture critical girders, cross girders and bents that cannot be inspected from a snooper. The use of fracture critical members is strongly discouraged. For these types of structures, consult the Office of Structural Engineering for details and recommendations. Additional information is provided in “FHWA Guidelines for Providing Access to Bridges for Inspections”, dated November 1985.

310.10 **SIGN SUPPORTS**

Make every effort to locate overhead sign supports off bridge structures. When this is not possible, only two locations on the structure are acceptable and are listed below in order of preference:

Research has shown that overhead sign supports located on bridges are highly susceptible to fatigue damage.
A. Mounted directly to the substructure unit.
B. Mounted to the superstructure directly over a substructure unit.

Underpass sign supports attached to the fascia of overpass bridges, as shown on Standard Construction Drawings TC-18.24 and TC-18.26, should also be avoided. Consult with the District Bridge Engineer before specifying their use.

310.11 STRUCTURAL GROUNDING & LIGHTING

Provide structural grounding for the following structures:

A. Structures with metal railing
B. Structures with fencing
C. Structures carrying electrical utilities or have overhead electrical utilities.

Provide underpass or tunnel lighting as required by Section 1103-6.9 of the Traffic Engineering Manual. See Sections 1140 and 1150 of the Traffic Engineering Manual for additional information.
### SECTION 400 – REHABILITATION AND MAINTENANCE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Paragraph</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>401.1</td>
<td>GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS</td>
<td>4-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>401.2</td>
<td>DESIGN SPECIFICATIONS</td>
<td>4-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>401.3</td>
<td>DESIGN LOADING</td>
<td>4-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>401.4</td>
<td>DESIGN EXCEPTIONS</td>
<td>4-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>401.5</td>
<td>PLAN PREPARATION</td>
<td>4-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>401.5.1</td>
<td>GENERAL PLAN</td>
<td>4-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>401.5.2</td>
<td>NARRATIVE OF BRIDGE ALTERNATIVES</td>
<td>4-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>401.5.3</td>
<td>COST ANALYSIS</td>
<td>4-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>401.5.4</td>
<td>FINAL STRUCTURE SITE PLAN</td>
<td>4-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>402</td>
<td>CLEANING BRIDGES</td>
<td>4-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>403</td>
<td>DECK</td>
<td>4-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>403.1</td>
<td>DECK CONDITION SURVEY</td>
<td>4-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>403.1.1</td>
<td>HAMMER SOUND &amp; CHAIN DRAG</td>
<td>4-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>403.1.2</td>
<td>CORING</td>
<td>4-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>403.1.3</td>
<td>GROUND PENETRATING RADAR (GPR)</td>
<td>4-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>403.1.4</td>
<td>INFRAED (IR) THERMOGRAPHY</td>
<td>4-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>403.1.5</td>
<td>IMPACT ECHO</td>
<td>4-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>403.1.6</td>
<td>CHLORIDE CONCENTRATION TESTING</td>
<td>4-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>403.1.7</td>
<td>HALF-CELL POTENTIAL</td>
<td>4-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>403.1.8</td>
<td>ELECTRICAL RESISTIVITY (ER)</td>
<td>4-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>403.1.9</td>
<td>BOND STRENGTH TESTING</td>
<td>4-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>403.2</td>
<td>PATCHING</td>
<td>4-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>403.2.1</td>
<td>SURFACE</td>
<td>4-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>403.2.2</td>
<td>UNDER DECK</td>
<td>4-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>403.3</td>
<td>SEALING</td>
<td>4-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>403.3.1</td>
<td>GRAVITY-FED RESIN</td>
<td>4-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>403.3.2</td>
<td>SOLUBLE REACTIVE SILICATE (SRS)</td>
<td>4-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>403.3.3</td>
<td>HIGH MOLECULAR WEIGHT METHACRYLATE (HMWM)</td>
<td>4-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>403.4</td>
<td>OVERLAY</td>
<td>4-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>403.4.1</td>
<td>RIGID CONCRETE</td>
<td>4-14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>403.4.1.1</td>
<td>LATEX MODIFIED (LMC)</td>
<td>4-16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>403.4.1.2</td>
<td>MICRO-SILICA MODIFIED (MSC)</td>
<td>4-17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>403.4.1.3</td>
<td>SUPERPLASTICIZED DENSE (SDC)</td>
<td>4-17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>403.4.2</td>
<td>THIN EPOXY</td>
<td>4-18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>403.4.3</td>
<td>WATERPROOFING ASPHALT</td>
<td>4-18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>403.5</td>
<td>DECK REPLACEMENT</td>
<td>4-20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>403.5.1</td>
<td>ELIMINATION OF LONGITUDINAL DECK JOINT</td>
<td>4-21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>403.5.2</td>
<td>DECK HAUNCH</td>
<td>4-21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>403.5.3</td>
<td>CLOSURE POUR</td>
<td>4-22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>403.5.4</td>
<td>CONCRETE PLACEMENT SEQUENCE</td>
<td>4-22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>403.6</td>
<td>WIDENING</td>
<td>4-23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>403.6.1</td>
<td>CLOSURE POUR</td>
<td>4-23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>403.7</td>
<td>EXPANSION JOINTS</td>
<td>4-25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>403.7.1</td>
<td>STRIP SEAL REPLACEMENT</td>
<td>4-25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>403.7.2</td>
<td>VERTICAL JOINT EXTENSION</td>
<td>4-26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>403.7.3</td>
<td>ADHESIVE JOINT SEALS</td>
<td>4-27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>403.8</td>
<td>RAISING &amp; JACKING</td>
<td>4-27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>403.9</td>
<td>BRIDGE DRAINAGE</td>
<td>4-27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>403.10</td>
<td>RAILING</td>
<td>4-27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>403.10.1</td>
<td>EXISTING STANDARD RAILING TYPES</td>
<td>4-28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>403.10.1.1</td>
<td>CONCRETE DEFLECTOR PARAPETS</td>
<td>4-28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>403.10.1.1.a</td>
<td>BR-1-67</td>
<td>4-28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>403.10.1.1.b</td>
<td>BR-1 &amp; BR-1-13</td>
<td>4-29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>403.10.1.1.c</td>
<td>SBR-1-13</td>
<td>4-30</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
403.10.1.2 CONCRETE SAFETY CURB AND SIDEWALK BARRIERS ........................................ 4-31
403.10.1.2.a AR-1-57 ........................................................................................................ 4-31
403.10.1.2.b BR-1-65 ........................................................................................................ 4-31
403.10.1.2.c BR-2-67 ........................................................................................................ 4-32
403.10.1.2.d BR-2-82 ........................................................................................................ 4-33
403.10.1.2.e BR-2-98 & BR-2-15 ........................................................................................ 4-33

403.10.1.3 METAL RAILING SYSTEMS ............................................................................ 4-34
403.10.1.3.a CSB-1-46, CSB-1-47, CSB-2-46, CSB-2-47, CSB-3-46, CSB-3-47, SSB-1-47, SSB-2-46 & SSB-2-47 ................................................................. 4-34
403.10.1.3.b CSB-1-55, CSB-1-63, CSB-2-56, & CSB-2-63 ....................................................... 4-34
403.10.1.3.c CSB-4-50 & CSB-5-50 ................................................................................ 4-35
403.10.1.3.d DBR-1-71 .................................................................................................... 4-36
403.10.1.3.e DBR-2-73 .................................................................................................... 4-37
403.10.1.3.f LONG SPAN GUARDRAIL ACROSS CULVERT ........................................ 4-38
403.10.1.3.g TBR-91 & TBR-1-11 .................................................................................. 4-39
403.10.1.3.h TST-1-99 .................................................................................................... 4-39

403.10.2 EXISTING NON-STANDARD RAILING TYPES .................................................. 4-40

403.11 BEARINGS ............................................................................................................ 4-41
403.11.1 STEEL ROCKER AND BOLSTER BEARINGS, RB-1-55 ........................................... 4-41
403.11.2 SLIDING BRONZE TYPE & FIXED TYPE STEEL BEARINGS ............................... 4-41

403.12 VANDAL FENCE .................................................................................................. 4-42

404 SUPERSTRUCTURE...................................................................................................... 4-42

404.1 STRUCTURAL STEEL ............................................................................................... 4-42
404.1.1 DAMAGE OR SECTION LOSS ............................................................................. 4-42
404.1.2 FATIGUE .............................................................................................................. 4-42
404.1.2.1 GENERAL ...................................................................................................... 4-42
404.1.2.2 FATIGUE EVALUATION ................................................................................. 4-43
404.1.2.3 DETAILS TO CONSIDER ............................................................................. 4-43
404.1.2.4 EVALUATION PROCESS .............................................................................. 4-44
404.1.2.4.a MOMENT PLATES ................................................................................... 4-44
404.1.2.4.b BEAM CONTINUITY WELDS WITH COVERPLATES ................................. 4-45
404.1.2.4.c BEAM CONTINUITY WELD WITHOUT COVERPLATES ............................. 4-46
404.1.2.5 CLASSIFICATION OF DETAILS .................................................................. 4-46
404.1.2.6 REMAINING FATIGUE LIFE ANALYSIS ........................................................ 4-47
404.1.2.7 REMAINING LIFE FATIGUE ANALYSIS SUBMISSION INFORMATION .......... 4-50

404.1.3 FATIGUE RETROFIT DESIGN ............................................................................ 4-50
404.1.3.1 GENERAL ...................................................................................................... 4-50
404.1.3.2 VERTICAL CLEARANCES ............................................................................ 4-50
404.1.3.3 ENDS OF MOMENT PLATES (BEAM FLANGES) ............................................ 4-50
404.1.3.4 ENDS OF COVERPLATES (BEAM FLANGES) ................................................ 4-52
404.1.3.5 BEAM WEBS ............................................................................................... 4-53
404.1.3.6 FILLER PLATES ............................................................................................ 4-54
404.1.3.7 FATIGUE CRACKS IN OTHER MEMBERS AND DETAILS ......................... 4-54
404.1.4 BOX GIRDER PIER CAPS RETROFIT ................................................................. 4-55
404.1.5 MISCELLANEOUS FATIGUE RETROFITS ........................................................... 4-55
404.1.6 STRENGTHENING OF STRUCTURAL STEEL MEMBERS .................................. 4-55
404.1.7 TRIMMING BEAM ENDS .................................................................................. 4-56
404.1.8 HEAT STRAIGHTENING ..................................................................................... 4-56
404.1.9 HINGE ASSEMBLIES ......................................................................................... 4-56
404.1.10 BOLTS ............................................................................................................. 4-56
404.1.11 EXISTING STEEL COATING SYSTEMS ............................................................. 4-57

404.2 SUPERSTRUCTURE DEFLECTIONS ................................................................. 4-57

404.3 PRESTRESSED CONCRETE I-BEAM ................................................................... 4-58

404.3.1 IMPACT DAMAGE ............................................................................................. 4-58
404.3.1.1 CRACK REPAIR .......................................................................................... 4-58
404.3.1.2 CONCRETE PATCHING AND BEAM REPAIR .............................................. 4-58
404.3.1.3 DAMAGED BEAM REPLACEMENT CRITERIA ......................................................... 4-59
404.4 PRESTRESSED CONCRETE BOX BEAMS ............................................................... 4-60
404.4.1 IMPACT DAMAGE ............................................................................................... 4-60
404.4.1.1 CRACK REPAIR .............................................................................................. 4-60
404.4.1.2 CONCRETE PATCHING AND BEAM REPAIR .................................................... 4-60
404.4.1.3 DAMAGED BEAM REPLACEMENT CRITERIA ................................................. 4-61
404.4.2 HIGH SKEW STRUCTURE ................................................................................... 4-62
404.5 REINFORCED CONCRETE SLAB BRIDGES .............................................................. 4-63
404.6 SEMI-INTEGRAL ABUTMENT CONVERSIONS ......................................................... 4-63
404.6.1 STRUCTURAL STEEL .......................................................................................... 4-64
404.6.1.1 INADEQUATE BEARING CLEARANCE ............................................................ 4-64
405 SUBSTRUCTURE ......................................................................................................... 4-66
405.1 SUBSTRUCTURE CONDITION SURVEY .................................................................. 4-66
405.1.1 SUBSTRUCTURE PROTECTION FOR VEHICLE COLLISION .................................. 4-67
405.1.2 SEISMIC REHABILITATION .................................................................................. 4-67
405.1.3 CORING ................................................................................................................ 4-67
405.1.4 CHLORIDE CONCENTRATION TESTING ............................................................... 4-68
405.2 CONCRETE REPAIR ............................................................................................... 4-68
405.2.1 CONCRETE PATCHING WITH FORMWORK .......................................................... 4-69
405.2.2 TROWELABLE MORTAR ....................................................................................... 4-69
405.3 PNEUMATICALLY PLACED CONCRETE - SHOTCRETE.................................................. 4-70
405.4 CATHODIC PROTECTION ......................................................................................... 4-70
405.5 SUBSTRUCTURE REHABILITATION ........................................................................ 4-70
405.6 ABUTMENT REHABILITATION ................................................................................. 4-70
405.7 SEMI-INTEGRAL CONVERSIONS ............................................................................ 4-71
405.8 PIER REHABILITATION ............................................................................................ 4-72
405.9 PIER CAP STRENGTHENING .................................................................................... 4-72
405.10 PIER COLUMN WRAPPING ..................................................................................... 4-73
405.11 FOUNDATIONS ...................................................................................................... 4-74
405.11.1 EXISTING PILE .................................................................................................... 4-74
405.11.2 PILE ANALYSIS .................................................................................................. 4-74
405.11.3 MICROPILES ....................................................................................................... 4-76
405.11.4 SPREAD FOOTINGS ............................................................................................ 4-76
405.11.5 DRILLED SHAFT ................................................................................................. 4-76
405.12 WIDENING .............................................................................................................. 4-76
405.12.1 ABUTMENT WIDENING ....................................................................................... 4-76
405.12.2 PIER WIDENING ................................................................................................. 4-77
405.12.3 FOUNDATION WIDENING .................................................................................. 4-77
405.13 MECHANICALLY STABILIZED EARTH (MSE) WALLS ............................................... 4-77
405.14 SUBSTRUCTURE DRAINAGE ................................................................................... 4-77
405.15 BRIDGE SCOUR ....................................................................................................... 4-78
SECTION 400 – REHABILITATION AND MAINTENANCE

401 INTRODUCTION

BDM Sections 100, 200 & 300 apply for the design of Rehabilitation and Maintenance to existing bridges except as noted in BDM Section 400.

Refer to BDM Section 101 for a description of the format, audience, purpose and more related to this Manual.

401.1 GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

Perform a site visit to the structure and identify/verify defects that may exist, in order to tailor solutions to all problems found. During this site visit, take color photographs and develop sketches showing pertinent details and field verified dimensions. Schedule this visit during the plan development phase of the project.

Verify all pertinent field dimensions. Do not to take dimensions directly from old plans without checking them in the field because deviations from plans are common. The Designer is responsible for providing accurate bid information based on field observations and preparing plans that reflect the actual field conditions. Under C&MS 105.02, the Contractor is responsible for taking measurements of existing structures to accurately join new and existing work. Include the plan note provided in BDM Section 603 entitled “EXISTING STRUCTURE VERIFICATION” to clarify the Department’s contractual approach to uncertainties.

401.2 DESIGN SPECIFICATIONS

Design rehabilitations to existing structures in accordance with the latest edition of the AASHTO LRFD Bridge Design Specifications and this Manual.

401.3 DESIGN LOADING

The Design Loading for vehicular bridges shall be in accordance with the AASHTO LRFD Bridge Design Specifications, Section 3. The Design Loading for bridges carrying high speed (i.e. Design Speed > 45 mph) National Highway System traffic shall include a dead load allowance for future wearing surfaces equal to 0.06-ksf applied to the deck surface for the full length of the bridge from face-to-face of curbs and/or railing. No allowance for future wearing surfaces is required for all other bridges.

C401.1

For individual members, determine whether the best option is to repair or replace. In making this decision, consider cost along with factors such as traffic maintenance, convenience to the public, longevity of the structure, whether the rehab is long term or short term, and the practicality of all options.

C401.3

Include the future wearing surface allowance in the Proposed Structure block on the Final Site Plan as specified in BDM Section 202.1.1.
401.4 DESIGN EXCEPTIONS

Bridge rehabilitation and maintenance projects that do not require a revised load rating according to BDM Section 914 will not require a Design Exception for Design Loading Structural Capacity.

Bridges that meet each of the following requirements will require a Design Exception for Design Loading Structural Capacity in accordance with the L&D, Vol. 1:

A1. Bridge will receive a new overlay according to BDM Section 403.4.1.
B1. Bridge will require a revised load rating according to BDM Section 914.
C1. Bridge will have an operating level rating factor less than 1.00 for Ohio Legal Loads, Special Hauling Vehicles and Emergency Vehicles.

Bridge rehabilitation and maintenance projects that meet each of the following requirements will require a Design Exception for Design Loading Structural Capacity in accordance with the L&D, Vol. 1:

A2. Bridge will require revised load rating according to BDM Section 914.
B2. Bridge will have an inventory level rating factor less than 1.00 for the Design Loading defined above.

To determine the governing inventory level rating factor, load rate the bridge elements specified in the Scope of Services using the AASHTO Manual for Bridge Evaluation, 3rd Edition as amended by BDM Section 900.

This requirement is not intended to dictate the level of analysis required for every existing structure. It simply sets the minimum structural capacity for an existing structure or portions of an existing structure that are to be analyzed. The Scope of Services should define the portions of the structure to be analyzed.

A Bridge Load Rating is typically limited to the superstructure portion of the bridge. However, in order to decide structural needs of the substructure, the Owner may decide to have the entire bridge, or specific portions of a bridge, load rated. The results of such a load rating will help the Owner to make more educated rehabilitation decisions based on the structure’s ability to carry routine service loadings like the Ohio Legal Loads, Special Hauling Vehicles and Emergency Vehicles.

With regard to establishing what portions of a structure to load rate, it is not economically feasible to require a load rating for the entirety of every existing bridge in need of rehabilitation. The importance of the route carried by the bridge and the existing condition of the bridge are factors to be considered. Routes of high importance may consist of interstates, major routes, or high traffic roadways connecting urban areas.

In general, the load capacity of existing substructure and foundation elements may be assumed to be adequate for reuse without a detailed structural analysis when:

4-2
A3. The substructure elements are in good condition (NBIS Condition Rating of 6 or greater) and show no significant structural distress under existing live load, **AND**

B3. The proposed service dead load is not greater than 115% of the original designed service dead load at the top of the substructure element (top of bearing seat), **AND**

C3. There is no significant reconfiguration of load configuration (i.e. changes to bearing locations or substructure fixities).

Additional guidance can be found in BDM Section 912 and BDM Section 309.3.8.2.a.

It may not be feasible to increase the capacity of an existing member to the Design Loading for every structure. Designers should investigate the cost and feasibility to increase capacity to alternative service levels during preliminary engineering and consider requesting a Design Exception. For example, provide cost estimates for increasing member capacity to:

A4. An operating level rating factor of 1.00 for the Ohio legal loads and Special Hauling Vehicles

B4. An operating level rating factor of 1.50 for the Ohio legal loads and Special Hauling Vehicles

C4. An operating level rating factor of 1.00 for the Emergency Vehicles.

D4. An inventory level rating factor of 1.00 for the Design Loading.

In addition to the documentation required by L&D, Vol. 1, include a copy of the Load Rating Report with the Design Exception request for Design Loading Structural Capacity. Include rating factors for all rating vehicles defined in BDM Section 908.

401.5 PLAN PREPARATION

401.5.1 GENERAL PLAN

In addition to the requirements listed in BDM Section 103, provide a General Plan sheet for:

A. Deck overlay projects

B. Deck replacement projects where the bridge deck is variable width or curved

C. Rehabilitated bridges requiring staged construction.

Rating vehicles include: Ohio Legal Trucks (2F1, 3F1, 4F1 & 5C1); Special Hauling Vehicles (SU4, SU5, SU6 & SU7); and Emergency Vehicles (EV2 & EV3).
401.5.2 NARRATIVE OF BRIDGE ALTERNATIVES

In addition to the Narrative of Bridge Alternatives requirements listed in BDM Section 201.2.3, include color photographs of the portions of the existing structure to be salvaged. To substantiate the proposed salvage decision, identify all areas of rehabilitation by field investigation.

For steel superstructures, include the findings of the Fatigue Evaluation defined in BDM Section 404.1.2.

401.5.3 COST ANALYSIS

When a rehabilitation alternate involves salvaging existing concrete members, cost overruns should be anticipated and included in the cost analysis.

401.5.4 FINAL STRUCTURE SITE PLAN

In addition to the requirements listed in BDM Section 202.1.1, the first item in the “Proposed Structure” data block shall be “Proposed Work” followed by a brief description of the type of work to be done.

Provide a relatively thorough description (list of work) of the type of work to be done within a plan note entitled “Proposed Work” and include this note on the Final Site Plan.

402 CLEANING BRIDGES

When specified in the Scope of Services, clean bridges as follows. Clean the three areas of the bridge listed below:

A. Expansion Joints
B. Scuppers and Drainage Troughs
C. Bridge Seats under expansion joints

Perform Bridge Cleaning in accordance to the Bridge Cleaning plan insert sheets located on the Office of Structural Engineering website.

C401.5.3

Benefit for Cleaning of bridges:

Cleaning Deck Joints – Cleaning deck joints helps the joint perform as intended. Debris that sits on top of an elastomeric seal is packed down by traffic. A sharp object will exert a great deal of pressure as traffic travels over the packed down debris. This damages the elastomeric seals and they will leak and allow debris to fall onto the bridge seat below. Cleaning the deck joints will help keep the joints functioning as designed.

Clearing Debris from Scuppers/Drainage Troughs – Controlling deck drainage is important to maintaining a bridge in good condition. When chloride laden deck drainage does not follow the path that was originally intended, deterioration of bridge components may begin and accelerate. Components of the bridge that remain damp with high chloride content are prime locations for deterioration. Clearing debris from
scuppers and drainage troughs will not pond chloride laden drainage on the bridge deck and will increase the life of the bridge deck.

Cleaning Bridge Seats – Debris built up on bridge seats holds moisture against the bearings and seats. The moisture laden debris will cause the steel sections of bearings to rust and deteriorate and cause spalling of the concrete seat. The debris generally deposits on the bridge seat through an open expansion deck joint or a defective deck expansion joint. Keeping the bridge seats free of debris will extend the life of the bridge

Preparing the existing concrete for any sealing, patching, or overlay is very important for a durable repair. There are many products used in these processes all require a degree of removing deteriorated and damaged concrete, leaving a sound surface for the repair material to bond. BDM Table 403-1 provides a guide for concrete removal types and application to be considered.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Concrete removal technique</th>
<th>Maximum removal concrete depth</th>
<th>Applications</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Grit blast</td>
<td>Surface to 1/16-in per pass</td>
<td>Texturing and cleaning of concrete surface, removing fractured concrete after other method has been applied to remove concrete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shot blast</td>
<td>Surface to 1/4-in</td>
<td>Texturing and cleaning of concrete surface. Can be used to removing fractured concrete after other method has been applied to remove concrete. Creates more aggressive surface profile than grit blasting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diamond grind</td>
<td>3/16-in to 1/4-in per pass</td>
<td>Effective in restoring smoothness and skid resistance on existing concrete decks.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scarification</td>
<td>Depth to top of reinforcing steel.</td>
<td>Texturing, removal, and cleaning of concrete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hydro demolition</td>
<td>1/4-in typical (to entire depth)</td>
<td>Texturing, removal, and cleaning of concrete surface, remove concrete around reinforcement bars</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pneumatic hammer (Hand Chipping)</td>
<td>1-in to entire depth</td>
<td>Removal of the entire depth of concrete in localized areas.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
For each deck rehabilitation considered on a project, provide a Deck Condition Survey that includes the information listed below. Prepare the survey as near as practicable to the plan preparation stage and before beginning detail design work for deck rehabilitations.

Do not perform any deck evaluation technique unless specified in the Scope of Services.

A. All bridge inventory information
B. Most recent bridge inspection findings
C. Age and history of existing and previous wearing course(s) including original deck thickness and reinforcing steel cover (where available)
D. Dates and results of all evaluation techniques performed on the bridge deck
E. Sketches of the top and bottom surface of the deck dimensioning: locations of unsound areas; delamination; cracking/crack density; spalling; patching; discoloration, efflorescence and moisture staining; traffic lane locations; and all testing/sampling locations
F. Photos of the top and bottom surface of the deck
G. Photos and description of all cores and core holes (if applicable)
H. Estimate of the percentage of total deck surface area deemed unsound
I. Distribution of the unsound area per travel lanes
J. Recommendations for deck rehabilitation treatment (e.g. sealing, patching, overlay, replacement) and estimated service life
K. Cost estimate for rehabilitation
L. Maintenance of traffic considerations for rehabilitation

The Deck Condition Survey provides justification for the deck rehabilitation treatment selected.

There are numerous concrete deck evaluation techniques available to help determine the appropriate treatment option for a deck in need of rehabilitation.

Many of the commonly used techniques are further described in BDM Sections 403.1.1 through 403.1.8. This Manual does not present an exhaustive list of concrete testing methods; however, a combination of the techniques identified herein will provide a sound basis for identifying an appropriate treatment method. Refer to the project Scope of Services to determine which techniques to apply.

Provide as much information on the history of the deck that is available including amount of surface removal for previous overlays.

Refer to the Scope of Services for which techniques to employ on a project.

Be as accurate as possible locating all signs of deterioration. This information shall be the basis for estimating the amount of unsound deck area.

The Deck Condition Survey may provide multiple recommendations for treatments. Each recommended treatment method shall include an independent cost estimate, MOT considerations and estimated service life.
403.1.1 HAMMER SOUND & CHAIN DRAG

When specified in the Scope of Services, perform chain drag sounding on the deck surface in accordance with ASTM D4580. Sound the deck underside where there are indications of delamination, water intrusion, discoloration, spalls, efflorescence or other signs of distress and visually mark areas on and under the deck.

Survey a minimum 40% of the traveled lanes.

403.1.2 CORING

When specified in the Scope of Services perform deck coring as follows.

Core concrete decks according to ASTM C42. Determine the number of cores to be taken using the following criteria:

A. A minimum of two (2) per bridge for bridges with a deck area less than 2500-ft²
B. A minimum of three (3) per bridge for bridges with a deck area between 2500-ft² to 5000-ft²
C. A minimum of four (4) per bridge for bridges with a deck area between 5000-ft² to 10,000-ft² with one additional core for each additional 10,000-ft² or part thereof up to a maximum of 6 total.

Take at least one core from an apparently sound area to compare with core(s) taken from questionable areas. Take cores in questionable areas to verify and further define areas of unsoundness. If it is suspected that full depth repair may be required, take full depth cores or at least core to the bottom mat of reinforcing steel in those areas.

Inspect the cores and core holes for: crumbling; stratification or delamination zones; soundness of aggregate; and depth and condition of reinforcing steel. If required by the Scope of Services, test core samples for bond strength according to BDM Section 403.1.9; for compressive strength according to ASTM C39; for permeability according to ASTM C1202 and for chloride concentration according to BDM Section 403.1.6.

Plot the location of all cores on a plan view of the deck and provide a description of the cores and all test results with the Deck Condition Survey report.
Unless otherwise specified in the Scope of Services, the depth of concrete cores shall be taken to the bottom of the lower mat of reinforcement.

Core depth should be full depth for decks with stay-in-place forms.

Core depths used to verify existing overlay depth or reinforcing depth need not be deeper than the first mat of reinforcing steel.

Submit the cores to the District Bridge Engineer or owner with proper identification.

Repair core holes using an ODOT approved non-shrink mortar, C&MS 705.22, installed according to the manufacturer’s recommended specifications. Seal repair with HMWM according to C&MS 512.04

403.1.3 GROUND PENETRATING RADAR (GPR)

When specified in the Scope of Services, perform GPR testing in accordance with ASTM D6087. Operators shall be certified by the manufacturer to operate the equipment and process the data. Additionally, operators shall possess 24 months of documented GPR testing and analysis experience.

Ground penetrating radar can be used to determine depth to reinforcement, deck thickness, overlay thickness, reinforcement position, and defects in the upper half of the deck. Because the GPR unit can travel as fast as 55 mph while collecting data, there's no need for traffic interruption. The test is nondestructive, so there's no follow-up repair work. Unlike other methods, GPR works on bridge decks covered with asphalt overlays. The results are typically reliable and repeatable. This technique does require advanced expertise and training for data collection, processing and interpretation. This makes this technique more cost effective as the deck area increases. Coring in accordance with BDM Section 403.1.2 may be used to supplement GPR results.

403.1.4 INFRARED (IR) THERMOGRAPHY

When specified in the Scope of Services, perform Infrared Thermography in accordance with ASTM D4788.

Infrared Thermography will detect concrete defects by measuring temperature variations on the surface of an element resulting from differences in thermal conductivity within the element. Defective areas of concrete will heat up faster after sunrise and cool down more quickly after sunset when compared to sound concrete. The best time for an IR survey is between 5 and 9 hours after sunrise or sunset; however, cloudiness and precipitation will reduce effectiveness. Accuracy of results is highly dependent upon collecting data during appropriate environmental conditions. When using vehicle mounted systems, this technique is more cost effective and can be less disruptive to traffic control when compared to coring, and half-cell testing. However, this technique will not provide information about the depth of defect. Coring in accordance with BDM Section 403.1.2 may be used to supplement IR results.
403.1.5 IMPACT ECHO
When specified in the Scope of Services, perform a stress wave-based impact echo survey method conforming to ASTM C1383-98a. Provide color contour map of data analysis indicating thickness of deck, location of delaminations, debonding overlays, or voids in post-tension ducts.

Conduct impact echo test in all traveled lanes.

C403.1.5
Impact Echo provides benefits over traditional chain dragging of bare concrete decks. The method can detect and assess delamination at various deterioration stages and can detect deeper delamination, evaluate vertical cracks, detect and characterize conditions around rebars and tendon ducts, and can be used as a material evaluation tool.

The impact echo data collection for delamination detection purpose is relatively slow and requires lane closure.

403.1.6 CHLORIDE CONCENTRATION TESTING
When specified in the Scope of Services, perform chloride concentration testing as follows.

Analyze the chloride ion content of all cores according to ASTM C1218. For projects with no coring requirements specified, drill 1-in diameter holes in the deck to a maximum depth of 2-in, or as specified in the Scope of Services, with a rotary impact drill. Collect powdered concrete samples at every 0.5-in of hole depth. After collecting each sample and before proceeding further, thoroughly clean hole with compressed air to avoid contaminating future sample collection. Label all sample containers by location and sample depth. Analyze the chloride ion content of all collected samples according to ASTM C1218. Repair all holes according to BDM Section 403.1.2. Determine the number of drill holes using the coring requirements of BDM Section 403.1.2.

Prepare a report of all test results. Include a plan view of the deck that identifies all hole locations and chloride ion concentrations.

C403.1.6
The purpose of chloride concentration testing is to determine the extent of chloride ingress into the concrete surface. Corrosion of uncoated mild steel reinforcement due to chloride ingress is a primary cause of damage to reinforced concrete structures.

Unlike the case for uncoated mild steel reinforcement, no published literature presents definitive chloride threshold for epoxy-coated mild steel reinforcement. Generally, decks with epoxy-coated steel reinforcement with the original monolithic overlay do not require chloride concentration testing.

It is recommended all decks being considered for a 2nd generation concrete overlay (or greater) receive chloride concentration testing.

For reference; uncoated mild steel reinforcement, corrosion typically exists when the chloride ion content exceeds 2-lb/yd3.

For epoxy-coated mild steel reinforcement, corrosion is suggested to exist when the chloride ion content exceeds 3.5 to 4.0-lb/yd3. The threshold is based upon uncertainties associated with: the quality of the organic coating of the epoxy; damage that could have occurred during transportation or storage of the epoxy-coated reinforcement; loss of adhesion between the coating and the base metal; or damage caused during the original overlay replacement.

Repair core holes using an ODOT approved non-shrink, non-metallic material per C&MS 705.20, installed according to the manufacturer’s recommended specifications.
403.1.7  **HALF-CELL POTENTIAL**

When specified in the Scope of Services, perform Half-Cell potential testing according to ASTM C876. Assume active corrosion is occurring if an observed rebar electrical potential reading is more negative than \(-0.35\)-volts measured by copper-copper sulfate reference half-cell. The maximum spacing between test locations shall be 2-ft measured longitudinally and transversely across the entire deck area.

In addition to the reporting requirements of ASTM C876, include in the survey report: the date of survey; general weather conditions; a plan view of the deck area showing all Half-Cell test locations; ground location; voltage measurements; and an equipotential contour map.

| **Table 403-2** |
|------------------|-----------------|
| Half-Cell Potential | Corrosion Activity |
| Less negative than \(-0.20\)-V | 90% probability of no corrosion |
| Between \(-0.20\) and \(-0.35\)-V | Uncertain corrosion activity |
| More negative than \(-0.35\)-V | 90% probability of corrosion |

Because coated reinforcement does not provide a good electrical connection for the measuring circuit throughout the deck limits, the ASTM C876 standard indicates that the half-cell potential technique is not suitable for measurements involving epoxy-coated and galvanized steel reinforcement. However, there is evidence measurements can be obtained because of coating defects or damage and unprotected rebar ends. Consideration of half-cell testing should only be considered on 2nd generation or later overlays.

403.1.8  **ELECTRICAL RESISTIVITY (ER)**

When specified in the Scope of Services, perform Electrical Resistivity testing in accordance with ASTM D3633.

**C403.1.8**

Electrical Resistivity will detect areas susceptible to corrosion due to moisture and chloride penetration. Delaminated and cracked areas, due to increased porosity, will form preferential paths for fluid and ion flow. This will lead to higher moisture and chloride concentrations and higher concrete electrical conductivity, manifesting as a lower electrical resistivity. Electrical resistivity is typically measured in units of kΩ-cm using a device called the Wenner probe. Readings less than 5-kΩ-cm indicate a very high corrosion rate and readings greater than 20-kΩ-cm indicate a low corrosion rate.

This technique requires traffic control and data collection may be time consuming. This makes this technique less cost effective as the deck area increases. However, it can be very effective for determining the severity of localized areas of corrosion.
403.1.9 BOND STRENGTH TESTING

When specified in the Scope of Services, perform bond testing by one of the following methods:

On site testing BOND-TEST; conduct a pull-off test in accordance with ASTM C1583, "Test Method for Tensile Strength of Concrete Surfaces and the Bond Strength or Tensile Strength of Concrete Repair and Overlay Materials by Direct Tension (Pull-off-Method)."

For cores taken perform a Slant Shear Method, ASTM C 1042.

403.2 PATCHING

403.2.1 SURFACE

Repair spalls in the monolithic concrete deck wearing surface in accordance with C&MS 256 using a Type B or C patch material.

Repair localized unsound areas within an existing rigid overlay in accordance either PN511, C&MS 256, C&MS 519, or SS844.

C403.1.9

Bond strength testing of the existing overlays may be required when the complete removal of the existing overlay cannot be performed due to depth of removal located at or below the top mat of steel reinforcing.

While typically used as QC/QA method for new construction, bond strength of concrete overlays is critical to the performance and capital importance when deciding if any apportion, there are several procedures to measure the bond strength of a concrete overlay.

A pulloff test measures the tensile bond. It is similar to the ACI method for determining the adhesion of epoxies to concrete substrates (ACI 503R, Ref 88). A field test, in which, a core is drilled but not extracted. The drilling is stopped slightly below the depth of the overlay and the test apparatus is attached. Overlays with test specimen having tensile failures inside the original deck concrete are acceptable to remain in place.

The Slant Shear Method is a laboratory test, based on ASTM C 1042, and is the most common method for determining bond strengths of epoxies and latex systems used with concrete. Developed to measure the effectiveness of latex in bonding fresh concrete to hardened concrete. Generally, a bond strength greater than 75% of the original deck concrete is acceptable to remain in place.

C403.2.1

A patching repair is appropriate for bridge decks with spalls in the monolithic concrete deck wearing surface comprising less than 10% of the total deck area.

These patch materials typically require 4-6-hour lane closures.

A patching repair is appropriate for localized unsound areas within an existing rigid overlay comprising less than 15% of the total deck area.

When patching decks containing uncoated reinforcement, the addition of embedded galvanic anodes per SS844 will help protect existing concrete the surrounding patched area.
403.2.2 UNDER DECK

For an under-deck spall with exposed uncoated reinforcement, remove all loose concrete, mechanically clean reinforcing steel and coat with paints containing zinc dust. Provide galvanizing material conforming to ASTM A780 except aerosol spray applications will not be permitted.

When specified in the Scope of Services to patch an under-deck spall located over vehicular, rail or pedestrian traffic, seal the patch material with and FRP wrap/cover in accordance with PN519 - Composite Fiber Wrap System. The patch material shall be in accordance with C&MS 519 when the deck reinforcement is coated or with SS844 when the deck reinforcement is uncoated.

403.3 SEALING

Seal all major bridges and mainline priority system bridges with a concrete wearing surface as follows:

A. For decks that are cracked, seal the deck using HMWM or Gravity-Fed Resin according to C&MS 512.06 every 10 years.

B. For decks that are not cracked or only minor hairline cracks, seal the deck using SRS (Soluble Reactive Silicate) according to C&MS 512.05 every 5 years.

403.3.1 GRAVITY-FED RESIN

Seal deck surface with Gravity-fed Resin in accordance with C&MS 512.06.

C403.2.2

Spalls located in haunches and spalls exposing coated reinforcement typically do not require repairs. In almost all cases the best option for preventing damaged concrete from falling onto traffic is to confine the patch material with Fiber Reinforced Polymer wraps. The type of wrap will be selected by contractor.

C403.3

Sealing bridge decks will extend their service life. ODOT’s major bridges are some of the highest value assets that the Department maintains. A couple of ODOT’s major bridges have decks that will be extremely difficult and costly to replace (segmental and cable stayed structures). Maintaining these decks in good condition is critical. Replacing the deck on a mainline priority system bridge can be very disruptive to traffic. Maintaining these decks in good condition is important to minimize disruption to traffic. In general, bridge decks should be sealed when they are in good to fair condition. Bridge decks in poor condition should be programed for rehabilitation.

C403.3.1

Gravity-fed resins are very low viscosity (250 cps, similar to SAE 30 motor oil or maple syrup) epoxy crack fillers. These products are cost effective when used to flood deck surfaces with widespread deck cracking. Sand is broadcast over the sealed surfaces to increase slip resistance. C&MS 512.06 specifies a minimum 6-hr cure period after placement before surfaces receive traffic. These sealers need a 36-hr window of dry weather with temperatures between 40°F and 100°F.
403.3.2 SOLUBLE REACTIVE SILICATE (SRS)

Treat deck surface with Soluble Reactive Silicate in accordance with C&MS 512.05.

C403.3.2

SRS is a concrete treatment that penetrates the pores in the concrete surface, reacts with the concrete, and creates a by-product that fills the porosity. SRS is not intended as a crack filler. SRS can be used on bridge decks that experience early-age cracks with widths of 0.001-in to 0.08-in. Sealers should be applied before the onset of severe damage to be effective.

Reapply SRS periodically to maintain long-term effectiveness. Studies indicate that SRS may provide 5-7 years of reduced permeability and corrosion protection for the deck surface.

403.3.3 HIGH MOLECULAR WEIGHT METHACRYLATE (HMWM)

Seal deck surface with High Molecular Weight Methacrylate in accordance with C&MS 512.04.

C403.3.3

HMWM sealers are extremely low viscosity (25 cps, similar to antifreeze) multi-component crack sealer/fillers. These products are most cost effective when drizzled into isolated deck cracks and cold joints as specified in C&MS 511.19. These products may also be used to flood deck surfaces but are less cost effective as the deck area increases. C&MS 512.04 specifies a minimum 6-hr cure period after placement before surfaces receive traffic. These sealers need a 36-hr window of dry weather with temperatures between 50°F and 85°F.

HMWM is typically limited to maximum crack widths of 10 mils or less and has an effective life of 5-7 years.

HMWM can be aesthetically displeasing (green tint) and is not intended to be a wearing surface replacement.

HMWM can be used on new decks that have extensive cracks.

403.4 OVERLAY

The amount of uniform depth removed from the existing concrete deck surface shall not expose the top mat of reinforcement.

C403.4

Theoretically, there is no limit to the number of overlays a bridge deck may have during its life cycle provided the uniform depth limit is not exceeded. The depth of removal specified for an overlay shall be based upon existing overlay condition, underlying deck condition and material data collected specified in BDM Section 403.1.

The service life of a first-generation overlay may extend the life of a bridge, when applied to a deck in a condition state of 5 or 6. Subsequent overlays may not have the service life extension as the previous.
Concrete overlays are used to establish a new wearing surface, restore ride quality, and protect the underlying deck. Typically, overlays are the preferred option for bridge preservation. See BDM Table 403-4 when selecting an overlay treatment.

Do not specify overlays for the sole purpose of adjusting the profile grade.

Do not specify an overlay on new decks.

Waiver of this requirement should only be considered for bridges that have decks that are not replaceable (e.g. cable stayed bridge decks, Post-tensioned box girder superstructures, and superstructure members with integral wearing surfaces).

Specify RPM’s in accordance with the Traffic Engineering Manual (TEM)

For optimal performance of the overlay, RPM’s should be placed at the minimum requirements.

## 403.4.1 RIGID CONCRETE

Provide a rigid concrete overlay removal in accordance with either SS847 – Bridge Deck Repair and Overlay With Concrete Using Scarification And Chipping or SS848 – Bridge Deck Repair And Overlay With Concrete Using Hydro-Demolition. Available overlay material includes:

A. Micro-Silica Modified
B. Latex Modified
C. Superplasticized Dense
D. Polyester Polymer Concrete (PPC)

SS847 and SS848 provide different methods of surface preparation for the installation of the rigid concrete overlay. SS847 requires mechanical scarification of the existing concrete surface. SS848 requires mechanical scarification with hydro-demolition of the existing concrete surface.

SS847 is the most appropriate overlay application for the following bridge decks:

A. Replacing a well-bonded overlay on an existing deck
B. Placing an overlay on an existing deck with a uniform depth of distress
C. Replacing an existing debonded overlay with a limited amounts of hand chipping (variable depth removal)

SS848 is the most appropriate overlay for situations with higher amounts of deterioration. SS848 requires less labor to remove unsound concrete beneath the uniform removal thickness because the variable depth material removed by high pressure water in SS848 is removed by chipping hammers in SS847. SS847 becomes less cost effective as the variable depth area increases. However, on bridges with very little to no unsound area, SS847 is more cost effective as the cost to collect the hydro-demolition run-off water is eliminated.

Hydro-demolition (SS848) is more appropriate on 2nd generation and 3rd generation overlays as these tend to involve a higher quantity of variable depth removal.

One way to reduce costs associated with collection and disposal of hydro-demolition waste water is to identify
a location for the disposal that is compliant with the Ohio EPA General Wastewater Disposal System Permit to Install (PTI) for Land Application of Hydro-Demolition Wastewater. More information is available in the Designer Note for SS848.

The following table provides an estimate for the variable thickness quantity for plan development based on the measured area of unsound deck defined in the Deck Condition Survey (BDM Section 403.1). The plan estimate should be increased by a factor of 1.10 when the deck survey data is one winter old.

The Variable Thickness values in the table are for a 1st generation overlay. The factors should be increased by 1.15 for 2nd generation and greater overlays.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Measured Unsound Area (% Total Deck Area)</th>
<th>Estimating Factor</th>
<th>Variable Thickness (% Total Deck Area)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0-10</td>
<td>3.00</td>
<td>0-30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>2.33</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>2.00</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>1.90</td>
<td>47.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>1.87</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>1.79</td>
<td>62.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>1.69</td>
<td>67.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>1.56</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>1.50</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>1.33</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>1.21</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>1.09</td>
<td>87.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Benefits derived from a deck replacement when compared to an overlay are approximately equal when the amount of unsound deck area is in the range of 60% to 80% of the total deck area. Therefore, unless overriding circumstances exist, replacement of the existing decks should be considered rather than a deck overlay when the unsound area exceeds 70% of the total deck area.
Do not specify a uniform removal depth “D” that will expose the top mat of deck reinforcement. Provide a plan note to specify “D” differing from the default values specified in the applicable overlay specification.

To maintain structural integrity, avoid rehabilitation methods that expose large areas of the top mat reinforcement where tension exists (e.g. cantilevered deck edges and negative moment regions over piers). This is especially critical for slab superstructures.

SS847 and SS848 define a uniform removal depth “D” as the distance from the bottom of the uniform removal to the top of an existing deck without an overlay or to the top of an existing deck after the removal of an existing overlay.

For SS847, the default value for “D” is 0.25-in.

For SS848, the default value for “D” is 1.0-in.

For decks with an existing overlay, determine the thickness of the existing overlay from core samples, if available, rather than solely from information in existing plans.

Variable thickness is the depth of removal that exceeds the uniform removal depth. As the name suggest, this will not be a fixed dimension, and determining an accurate average depth is impossible. The value used to estimate the variable depth pay quantity should be reasonable to avoid significant changes in the character of the work. Therefore, to keep the estimate simple, reasonable, and consistent, an average depth of variable thickness of 2-in is recommended.

Estimate the quantity for variable thickness bid items using the estimated variable thickness area multiplied by a thickness of 2-in.

Estimate the quantity for the Hand chipping bid items as 10% of the estimated variable thickness area.

Estimate the quantity for full depth repair bid item as the estimated area of full depth repair multiplied by the remaining deck thickness after uniform and variable removal (where applicable).

Overlays using hydrodemolition, may have excessive removal and some “blow-through” may be expected.

Consideration shall be given to adding a plan note and quantity requiring falsework to be placed over traffic prior to performing the hydrodemolition.

Do not include a pay item for full depth repair when no full depth repair is anticipated.

403.4.1.1 LATEX MODIFIED (LMC)

The minimum thickness of a Latex Modified concrete overlay is 1.25-in.

LMC materials are batched on-site. The internal structure of the LMC overlay creates a surface with similar permeability as MSC. LMC has a lower elastic modulus than MSC and SDC making it more resistant to cracking than the other two materials. LMC is the most expensive of the three standard rigid overlay materials with a 25% premium over the average combined cost of MSC and SDC materials.
LMC is a good alternative for remote locations due to on site mixing requirements. LMC is not pumpable, and the mobile mixing trucks need to have access to the screed machine. In some instances, the mobile mixers will drive over areas of exposed reinforcing steel.

The maximum uniform thickness should not exceed 2.5-in. The maximum spot thickness should not exceed 4-in.

Latex-Modified overlays should not be used of bridges with a grade greater than 6%.

LCM may be best suited for second-generation overlays, due to the difficulty of removal from the original concrete deck.

403.4.1.2 MICRO-SILICA MODIFIED (MSC)

The minimum thickness of a Micro-Silica Modified concrete overlay is 1.5-in.

MSC materials are batched at a ready-mix facility. The internal structure of the MSC overlay creates a surface with a lower permeability than SDC.

MSC overlays are the most susceptible to plastic shrinkage cracking under improper placement and curing conditions.

MSC overlay are a good choice for uniform removals with minimal variable depth removal. The maximum uniform thickness should not exceed 3-in and the maximum spot thickness should not exceed 4-in. Thicker MSC overlays will be susceptible to shrinkage cracking.

Micro-silica concretes are very cohesive and behave somewhat differently than conventional concrete in that they are internally very sticky and need a water reducer. Slumps need to be at maximum allowable to achieve the same workability.

403.4.1.3 SUPERPLASTICIZED DENSE (SDC)

The minimum thickness of a Superplasticized Dense concrete overlay is 1.75-in.

SDC materials are batched at a ready-mix facility and are the least complicated for contractors to place and cure.

SDC overlays are best suited for decks with high quantities of deck patching and full depth repairs. There is no maximum limit to the uniform or spot thickness.
403.4.2 THIN EPOXY

The minimum thickness of an Epoxy overlay is 0.25-in. Depressions in the deck surface less than 1.5-in can be filled with a mortar made from Polymer Epoxy Overlay material. If depressions in the deck are greater than 1.5-in, add a quantity for deck patching. The Department will pay for repairing these depressions under ITEM 519 – PATCHING CONCRETE BRIDGE DECKS.

Seal cracks with a width greater than 13 mill per C&MS 512.07, Sealing Cracks by Epoxy Injection. The Department will pay for these crack repairs under ITEM 512 – CONCRETE REPAIR BY EPOXY INJECTION.

SS858 Thin Polymer (Epoxy) Overlays for Structural Slabs overlays includes the following repair areas:

A. Concrete bridge decks
B. Top of backwalls
C. Approach slabs
D. Barriers/curbs 3-in above the deck

For bridge decks with an existing thin epoxy overlay to be removed, include pay ITEM 202 – WEARING CORSE REMOVED, AS PER PLAN (units square yard).

403.4.3 WATERPROOFING ASPHALT

Perform work in accordance with SS856.

Do not specify waterproofing fabric or similar under the Waterproofing Asphalt.

The minimum thickness of the Waterproofing Asphalt course is 1.5-in.

C403.4.2

Thin Polymer Epoxy Overlays are used as a deck preservation methodology. They serve to seal the deck from chloride intrusion, seal cracks, and to increase surface friction. Thin bonded overlays can aid in minor grade corrections.

This treatment is appropriate for candidates with a deck General Condition Rating of 6 or greater showing signs of cracking but requiring minimal repair.

Minor grade correction required to fill low spots and improve drainage will require additional polymer epoxy overlay courses not covered by the specification. The limits of and number of additional courses shall be specified in the contract plans. Use pay item as per plan, when specifying addition courses

If additional areas are to be repaired with thin epoxy, add a note to the plans and change the pay item to include “AS PER PLAN”
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Specification</th>
<th>Lifespan (years)</th>
<th>Cost (S/SP)</th>
<th>Typical condition state ranges</th>
<th>Thickness (ft max)</th>
<th>Commentary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sealing (HMWM)</td>
<td>705.15</td>
<td>5 to 7</td>
<td>15 - 17</td>
<td>≤ 8% ≤ 15% ≤ 0% ≤ 7</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Should not be placed on concrete or cementious patch material less than 24 days old. In cracks - quick operation (1 day). Very inexpensive aggregate (mason sand). Not reliant on preparation. Does not provide wearing surface. Can be aesthetically displeasing (green tint). Use on New Decks that have extensive cracks. Recommended sealer is applied 6 months after construction of new concrete deck or overlay.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Epoxy Polymer Overlay</td>
<td>858</td>
<td>10 to 15</td>
<td>≤ 10% ≤ 15% ≤ 0% ≤ 6</td>
<td>0.375&quot; (27)</td>
<td></td>
<td>- Scale cracks - Typically 1 to 3 day operation                              - Extremely sensitive to surface preparation                              - Susceptible to snow plows.                              - Provides aesthetic wearing surface - Increases skid resistance. Dead aggregate retains more heat reducing icing of bridge. Cannot be placed on concrete or cementious patch material less than 28 days old. No grade correction with overlay. Use on New Decks that have extensive cracks whether or not the cracks have been sealed with HMWM.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polyester Polymer Concrete (PPC)</td>
<td>Plan Note</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1.0 to 1.5 (12&quot;)</td>
<td>Very Rapid Curing Overlays. Less than 24 hours, night closure.                             - Require mobile mixers - good for remote locations and fast application. Mix depth of 12&quot; necessary not economical.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Latex Modified Concrete (LMC)</td>
<td>853 (Latex modification) used with SS 667 or SS868</td>
<td>20 to 30</td>
<td>75-85</td>
<td>1.25 to 2.5 (4&quot;)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Best suited for second generation overlay. LMC overlay is difficult to remove from the original concrete deck, overlay may take multiple passes of the hydromodification equipment. Excessive removal and some &quot;blow through&quot; may be expected. Add Type III cement. Fast Curing Overlays - Weekend closure. Very susceptible to plastic shrinkage cracking. Requires mobile batcher mixer. Typically has higher flexural strengths than plain concrete. Very low chloride permeability. Can be used with a high early strength for seawall overlays.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Micro-silica Modified Concrete (MSC)</td>
<td>847 or 8848</td>
<td>20 to 30</td>
<td>55-75</td>
<td>≤ 25% ≤ 15% ≤ 3% ≤ 5</td>
<td>1.5&quot; to 3.0” (should not exceed 4&quot;)</td>
<td>Fast Curing Overlays - Weekend closure. Micro-silica very cohesive and behaves somewhat differently than conventional concrete (more sticky) and needs water reducer, always needs to be at max allowable to achieve same workability.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Superplasticized Dense Concrete (SDC)</td>
<td>847 or 8848</td>
<td>20 to 30</td>
<td>60-85</td>
<td>≤ 25% ≤ 15% ≤ 5</td>
<td>1.5” in and grout</td>
<td>Used on typical overlay projects.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asphalt Concrete Overlay (special)</td>
<td>856</td>
<td>10 to 12</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>≤ 20% ≤ 5% ≤ 1% ≤ 6</td>
<td>3” to 4”</td>
<td>Proprietary Form - name brand Rosphalt. Installed at typical asphalt rates. Asphalt with Mix Modifier (not polymer)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asphalt Concrete Overlay with waterproofing membrane</td>
<td>856</td>
<td>10 to 12</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>≤ 25% ≤ 15% ≤ 5 ≤ 5</td>
<td>3” to 4”</td>
<td>- Leave membrane in place after milling of asphalt, replace membrane on subsequent milling project. Can be used as second generation deck treatment or other joints need to be replaced. Can be used on New Decks that have extensive cracks whether or not the cracks have been sealed with HMWM. Not ideal for horizontally curved bridges. Not for uses on bridges that exceed 4.5% super elevation. Cost of deck repair not included.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Existing concrete overlay removed with scarification added $35 Sq/ft (2019)
Existing concrete overlay removed with scarification and Hydrodemolition prep added $55 Sq/ft
Note: hand stripping is an additional cost added $60 Sq/ft.
403.5 DECK REPLACEMENT

Perform removal of existing decks using methods that will not damage supporting superstructure members. Refer to BDM Section 603.2 for sample General Notes that address appropriate deck removal methods.

Use a composite deck design to increase the load carrying capacity of existing beams or girders when replacing the concrete deck of a bridge that was originally designed and constructed as non-composite. See BDM Section 404.1.6 for additional information.

For bridges on curved alignments where shoulders are used to maintain traffic, provide temporary modifications to cross-slopes oriented in the wrong direction. Address this issue in the Narrative of Bridge Alternatives and Preliminary Maintenance of Traffic Plan submitted during the Structure Type Study.

During plan development, record elevations at key points along the bottom of all beams/girders (e.g. above beam seats; at quarter points, mid-span points and splice points; and at intermediate points not to exceed 25-ft). Verify this elevation information against the proposed profile grade and deck surface elevations to ensure the minimum deck thickness and determine haunch heights.

Specify that elevations at these same points be recorded during construction before and after the deck removal. The difference in these elevations becomes the superstructure rebound. Multiply this rebound by the per foot weight of the proposed deck and divide by the per foot weight of the existing deck to determine the deflection due to deck placement. Add this deflection to the Final Deck Surface Elevations to get Screed Elevations. Add this deflection to the Final Deck Surface Elevations and subtract the design deck thickness to get Top of Haunch elevations. Provide a table in the plans similar to that shown in BDM Section C403.5 with known information supplied that allows the contractor to complete during construction.

Table 403-5

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Ψ.R.A.</th>
<th>1/4 Span 1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Beam 1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Final Deck Elev.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>*Bottom of Flange Elev. (Before Removal)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>*Bottom of Flange Elev. (After Removal)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>*Rebound</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>Wt. of Exist. Deck</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>Wt. of Prop. Deck</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>*Deck Deflection</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>Deck Thickness</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>J</td>
<td>*Screed Elev.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K</td>
<td>*Top of Haunch Elev.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* - To be completed by Contractor as follows:
D = C – B
G = D x (F/E)
J = A + G
K = A + G – H
403.5.1 ELIMINATION OF LONGITUDINAL DECK JOINT

If the total bridge width will be 90-ft or less, eliminate existing longitudinal deck joints. When the longitudinal joint is eliminated, replace structural steel bearings (e.g. rockers and bolsters) with elastomeric bearings.

This measurement for bridge width assumes the joint has been removed.

When the joint is removed, transverse movement due to expansion and contraction will be increased. This additional movement cannot be accommodated by rockers and bolsters.

403.5.2 DECK HAUNCH

The minimum haunch above an existing beam/girder is 0.0-in.

When the haunch is used to provide an increase in the profile elevations, reinforce the haunch in areas where the top of the stud does not penetrate at least 2.0-in into the design deck thickness. The maximum stud length shall not exceed 8.5-in. Refer to BDM Figure 308-7 for I-beam haunch reinforcement and BDM Figure 403.5.2 for steel beam/girder haunch reinforcement.

The purpose for the haunch reinforcement is to avoid a horizontal shear plane between the top flange and the bottom of the deck and to reduce the size of concrete spall if concrete deteriorates with age.

---

**Figure 403-1**
403.5.3 CLOSURE POUR

Do not provide a closure pour between adjacent phases of deck placement on an existing superstructure where cross-frames or diaphragms remain fully connected between all phases.

For deck replacements that include integral and semi-integral diaphragms cast against the diaphragms from the in preceding phases, the concrete in the diaphragm shall remain plastic during placement of the deck concrete in the adjacent span. Use either plan note [702.4.2-2] or [702.4.2-4] in BDM Section 702.4.2.

Seal the phase joint with HMWM in accordance with C&MS 511.

Refer to BDM Section 403.6.1 for closure pour requirements in widening projects.

403.5.4 CONCRETE PLACEMENT SEQUENCE

Provide a concrete placement sequence for superstructures subjected to uplift.

For bridges with intermediate hinges and expansion joints, provide a concrete placement sequence in the plans.
The most unsatisfactory sequence is to first place concrete in the span contiguous with the short cantilever, especially if concrete is first placed in half of the span immediately adjoining the short cantilever. This sequence produces the maximum angle change between the joint elements.

Where controlled deck placement sequence alone will not provide adequate protection against damage to the joint, provision should be made for attaching part or all of the joint to the main structural elements after the major portion of the concrete is placed. Another alternative is to have a separate deck pour of approximately 36-in, or of a width necessary to accommodate the joint and its proper placement/installation and alignment, to allow for installation of the joint after the rest of the deck has been placed.

403.6 WIDENING

Design the new beams/girders for widened bridges to have the same dead load deflections (± 0.25-in) as the adjacent existing beam/girder.

403.6.1 CLOSURE POUR

Provide closure pours for widened superstructures constructed in phases as follows:

A. For widened bridges where the existing deck is removed, and a new or wider deck is to be placed with no superstructure members added, no closure pour is necessary. Refer to Detail A in BDM Figure 403-2.

B. For widenings where either the existing deck is to remain, or the phase line of a new deck will be between the existing and new superstructure, provide a closure pour in the bay between the new and existing beams/girders. Refer to Detail B in BDM Figure 403-2. Do not fully connect cross-frames (designated B1 in BDM Figure 403-2) in the bay between the new and existing superstructure until after the phase 1 and 2 deck portions have been placed. Complete the phase 3 placement after the cross-frames have been fully connected. Splice rebar within the closure section.

C403.6

Deflections that differ between adjacent beams/girders will affect deck thickness and concrete cover. These differential deflections will also provide additional loading to bracing members and connections.

C403.6.1

The purpose of the closure pour is to accommodate the differences in deflection that can occur between two phases of construction.
C. For widenings where the deck’s phase line is not between the new and existing superstructure members, provide a closure pour in the bay between the phases. Refer to Detail C in BDM Figure 403-2. Disconnect the existing cross-frames (designated C1 in BDM Figure 403-2) under the closure pour location before the phase 1 deck removal begins. Install the cross-frames between the new and existing beams/girders before the phase 2 pour. Re-install the disconnected cross-frames after the phase 2 pour but before the phase 3 pour. Splice rebar within the closure section.
The minimum width of the closure section shall be 30-in. The 30-in dimension accommodates a lap length and provides some transition if the two phases do not align vertically.

Closure pours may be eliminated if the differential deflection is expected to be less than 1/4-in, regardless of superstructure type.

Seal all construction joints with HMWM according to C&MS 511.19.

Forms and falseworks for decks and slabs constructed in phases shall be independent from the adjacent phase of construction.

For superstructure deflections refer to BDM Section 404.2. The forms shall not span across the closure pour until all cross-frames are fully connected following the sequencing specified above.

403.7 EXPANSION JOINTS

Inspect joints for water tightness during the development of rigid overlay plans and repair leaking joints.

Remove and replace joint systems during deck replacements according to the applicable Standard Bridge Drawing.

For widened superstructures, extend the joint armor and furnish new joint seal in one continuous piece or remove and replace the entire existing joints systems according to the applicable Standard Bridge Drawing.

On projects involving stage construction, provide the location of armor joints in the plans.

For existing strip seal joints which show sign of leakage, identify the joint supplier and specify seal removal and replacement with seal of the same geometry.

It may not always be possible to replace an existing joint seal. In rare cases, the existing seals will still have the manufacturer name visible. More often, it is more practical to contact joint seal suppliers for technical assistance. Sometimes, the suppliers may be able to determine the seal model by a photograph of the seal cross section taken at the joint upturns. If the seal is no longer available or if the joint retainers are damaged, removal of the retainers and installation of adhesive joint seals should be considered.

403.7.1 STRIP SEAL REPLACEMENT

Many designers consider the detailing of joints to be of secondary importance and merely a nuisance. However improper detailing of joints has frequently caused project delays and caused numerous problems. The joints are important to the longevity of the structure or they would not be included in the work. Designers shall take care to ensure that they are designed and detailed in a professional manner.

C403.7

Keeping a leaking joint system in place may lead to unnecessary emergency repairs in the future.

Trying to keep existing expansion joint systems when replacing the deck may lead to unnecessary cost for removal operations, or more likely, irreparable damage to the joint system.

If the existing joint system is leaking or if it is a sliding plate type joint system, replacement of the entire joint is more appropriate than trying to provide an extended sliding plate joint system.

On projects involving stage construction, provide the location of armor joints in the plans.

Many designers consider the detailing of joints to be of secondary importance and merely a nuisance. However improper detailing of joints has frequently caused project delays and caused numerous problems. The joints are important to the longevity of the structure or they would not be included in the work. Designers shall take care to ensure that they are designed and detailed in a professional manner.

C403.7.1

It may not always be possible to replace an existing joint seal. In rare cases, the existing seals will still have the manufacturer name visible. More often, it is more practical to contact joint seal suppliers for technical assistance. Sometimes, the suppliers may be able to determine the seal model by a photograph of the seal cross section taken at the joint upturns. If the seal is no longer available or if the joint retainers are damaged, removal of the retainers and installation of adhesive joint seals should be considered.
403.7.2 VERTICAL JOINT EXTENSION

For existing sliding plate joints, attach steel retainers on roadway surface of sliding plates according to BDM Figure 403-3.

C403.7.2

Existing sliding plate joints typically end at the curb and toe of barriers. The joint armor and steel retainers will need to be extended and bent up the face of the curb or barrier. Develop plan details that show existing concrete removals, attachment methods for new steel armor to existing steel, new concrete anchorages, retainer attachments, finished concrete dimensions, reinforcing steel bar marks and schedule, material requirements and coating requirements. Provide section views from the centerline of the joint looking toward the deck and the backwall, a plan view and cross-section views. Make sure all work is clearly defined and associated with an Item for payment.

This joint repair may not provide sufficient clearance for the larger joint seal installations. Contact seal suppliers to ensure the proposed details will allow installation.

Figure 403-3
403.7.3 ADHESIVE JOINT SEALS

For existing sliding plate joints, remove the horizontal leg of the bridging angle and install an adhesive joint seal according to the manufacturer’s recommendations and the Scope of Services.

For existing joint systems with leaking seals and damaged retainers, remove the retainers and install an adhesive joint seal according to the manufacturer’s recommendations and the Scope of Services.

403.8 RAISING & JACKING

Raise the bridge uniformly in order to minimize induced stresses into the superstructure. The maximum differential elevation change between adjacent superstructure members is 1/4-in as measured at opposite ends of the same cross-frame. The maximum differential elevation change between adjacent bearings of the same superstructure member is 1-in. Perform work in accordance with C&MS 501.05.B.5.

Use structural steel to raise the bearing seat elevation 4-in or less.

403.9 BRIDGE DRAINAGE

Retrofit all non-functional drainage systems. Provide replacement drainage according to BDM Section 309.7.

Perform pavement drainage calculations according to the L&D, Vol. 2. If the calculations indicate that the existing scuppers are not necessary, and the deck is not to be replaced, permanently plug the existing scuppers and collect the additional drainage at the end of the bridge. If the deck is to be replaced, remove the scuppers and grind all scupper weld locations smooth.

Extend the lower portion of existing scuppers to remain so that they terminate at least 8-in below the bottom of the bottom flange. Remove and repair or completely replace existing scuppers with extensive section loss due to corrosion.

For overlay projects, extend existing scuppers to remain upward by the thickness of the overlay.

403.10 RAILING

Use this section to determine whether an existing railing system may remain or shall be upgraded to ODOT’s current railing design requirements defined in BDM Section 309.4.
When the portion of the deck supporting bridge railing will be replaced with the proposed construction project, the proposed bridge railing shall meet the design requirements specified in BDM Section 309.4. If only one side of the supporting deck will be replaced on the project, the existing railing on the remaining portion of the deck shall meet TL-3 or better acceptance criteria contained in NCHRP Report 350 or the AASHTO Manual for Assessing Safety Hardware (MASH) or shall meet the design requirements specified in BDM Section 309.4 or shall be replaced with a bridge railing meeting the design requirements specified in BDM Section 309.4.

When the deck supporting bridge railing will be rehabilitated using a rigid overlay specified in BDM Section 403.4.1, the existing railing shall meet TL-3 or better acceptance criteria contained in NCHRP Report 350 or MASH or shall meet the design requirements specified in BDM Section 309.4 or shall be replaced with a bridge railing meeting the design requirements specified in BDM Section 309.4.

Refer to the following sections for rehabilitation requirements of structurally deficient railing systems.

For construction projects not involving the complete replacement of existing bridge railing, a mechanical connection between the approach guardrail and the bridge railing is required. Refer to the following sections for more information.

403.10.1 EXISTING STANDARD RAILING TYPES

The railing systems identified in this section were all detailed on ODOT Standard Bridge Drawings.

403.10.1.1 CONCRETE DEFLECTOR PARAPETS

403.10.1.1.a BR-1-67

This railing system is commonly referred to as the GM barrier.

The GM barrier does not meet the minimum TL-3 acceptance criteria in either NCHRP Report 350 or MASH.

This requirement will apply to superstructure replacements, complete deck replacements, deck and slab edge replacements and superstructure widenings.

C403.10.1

These drawings are available under the Archived Drawings link on the OSE website.

C403.10.1.1.a

The GM barrier was developed by General Motors in conjunction with the Texas Transportation Institute using full scale crash testing of large passenger cars in the 1960’s. By the early 1970’s, there was ample evidence that impacts involving compact passenger cars often resulted in roll over. By the mid-to-late 1970’s the use of the GM barrier was discontinued across the U.S.

The GM barrier has not been tested nor evaluated to either NCHRP Report 350 or MASH acceptance criteria.
The GM barrier shall be removed and replaced with railing meeting the design requirements specified in BDM Section 309.4 when the deck supporting this railing system will be rehabilitated using a rigid overlay specified in BDM Section 403.4.1.

GM barrier with a condition rating of 3 or 4 shall be rehabilitated as follows:

A. Where the barrier with a condition rating of 3 or 4 is 20% or less than the total length of barrier, this portion of the barrier shall be removed and replaced in kind.

B. Where the barrier with a condition rating of 3 or 4 exceeds 20% of the total length of barrier, the entire barrier shall be removed and replaced with railing meeting the design requirements specified in BDM Section 309.4.

For projects where the GM barrier will remain and that have Type 5 guardrail as the approach railing system, use the Bridge Terminal Assembly from archived Roadway Standard Construction Drawing, GR-3 with a final revision date of 1-21-85 to connect the roadway railing to the bridge railing.

For projects where the GM barrier will remain and that have Type MGS guardrail as the approach railing system, construct a Type D Concrete Barrier End Section similar to Standard Roadway Construction Drawing RM-4.6 except the 10-ft barrier transition shall vary from 2.67-ft at the guardrail end to 2.33-ft at the bridge railing end. Use a Type 1 or Type 2 MGS Bridge Terminal Assembly as specified in Roadway Standard Construction Drawings MGS-3.1 or MGS-3.2 respectively.

403.10.1.1.b BR-1 & BR-1-13

This railing system is commonly referred to as the New Jersey barrier.

C403.10.1.1.b

The New Jersey barrier was initially introduced in the 1950’s and adopted by California and other states throughout the 1960’s and 1970’s. The barrier was not initially developed with crash testing.

ODOT adopted the New Jersey barrier in 1979 with the BR-1 Standard Bridge Drawing. The initial ODOT BR-1 height was 32-in. In 1994, ODOT introduced two new heights: 36-in and 42-in.

The 32-in and 36-in NJ barrier are accepted under NCHRP Report 350 criteria as TL-4.
The New Jersey barrier does not need to be replaced when the deck supporting this railing system will be rehabilitated using a rigid overlay specified in BDM Section 403.4.1 that does not increase the deck surface elevation higher than the 3-in toe of the barrier.

Portions of New Jersey barrier with a condition rating of 3 or 4 shall be removed and replaced in kind.

For projects that have Type 5 guardrail as the approach railing system, use a Type 1 or Type 2 Bridge Terminal Assembly as specified in current Roadway Plan Insert Sheets GR-3.1 or GR-3.2 respectively to connect the roadway railing to the bridge railing.

For projects that have Type MGS guardrail as the approach railing system, use a Type 1 or Type 2 MGS Bridge Terminal Assembly as specified in Roadway Standard Construction Drawings MGS-3.1 or MGS-3.2 respectively.

403.10.1.1.c SBR-1-13

This railing system is commonly referred to as the Single Slope barrier.

The Single Slope barrier does not need to be replaced when the deck supporting this railing system will be rehabilitated using a rigid overlay specified in BDM Section 403.4.1.

Portions of Single Slope barrier with a condition rating of 3 or 4 shall be removed and replaced in kind.

For projects that have Type 5 guardrail as the approach railing system, use a Type 1 or Type 2 Bridge Terminal Assembly as specified in current Roadway Plan Insert Sheets GR-3.1 or GR-3.2 respectively to connect the roadway railing to the bridge railing.

The 42-in NJ barrier is accepted under NCHRP Report 350 criteria as TL-5.

The NJ barrier has not be crash tested under the MASH criteria.

The Single Slope barrier system was developed as a portable concrete barrier shape by the Texas DOT. It has been adopted by many states as a permanent barrier shape.

The Texas 42-in Single Slope shape has been successfully tested and accepted under NCHRP Report 350 criteria as TL-4. The barrier has not been crash tested under MASH criteria. However, the Texas DOT has further evaluated the barrier to have equal strength and like geometry to the Manitoba Tall Wall bridge barrier which satisfies MASH TL-5 acceptance criteria.
For projects that have Type MGS guardrail as the approach railing system, use a Type 1 or Type 2 MGS Bridge Terminal Assembly as specified in Roadway Standard Construction Drawings MGS-3.1 or MGS-3.2 respectively.

403.10.1.2 CONCRETE SAFETY CURB AND SIDEWALK BARRIERS

403.10.1.2.a AR-1-57

This was ODOT’s first railing standard that introduced the design detail commonly referred to as the Safety Curb.

This Safety Curb barrier does not meet the minimum TL-3 acceptance criteria in either NCHRP Report 350 or MASH.

This Safety Curb barrier shall be removed and replaced with railing meeting the design requirements specified in BDM Section 309.4 when the deck supporting this railing system will be rehabilitated using a rigid overlay specified in BDM Section 403.4.1.

Safety Curb barrier with a condition rating of 3 or 4 shall be rehabilitated as follows:

A. Where the barrier with a condition rating of 3 or 4 is 20% or less than the total length of barrier, this portion of the barrier shall be removed and replaced in kind.

B. Where the barrier with a condition rating of 3 or 4 exceeds 20% of the total length of barrier, the entire barrier shall be removed and replaced with railing meeting the design requirements specified in BDM Section 309.4.

To connect the roadway approach guardrail to the bridge railing, use a Type F Bridge Terminal Assembly as detailed on archived Roadway Standard Construction Drawing GR-3A with a final revision date of 2-5-82.

403.10.1.2.b BR-1-65

This ODOT Standard Bridge Drawing replaced AR-1-57 to become the standard railing system commonly referred to as the Safety Curb.

This Safety Curb barrier does not meet the minimum TL-3 acceptance criteria in either NCHRP Report 350 or MASH.
This Safety Curb barrier shall be removed and replaced with railing meeting the design requirements specified in BDM Section 309.4 when the deck supporting this railing system will be rehabilitated using a rigid overlay specified in BDM Section 403.4.1.

Safety Curb barrier with a condition rating of 3 or 4 shall be rehabilitated as follows:

A. Where the barrier with a condition rating of 3 or 4 is 20% or less than the total length of barrier, this portion of the barrier shall be removed and replaced in kind.

B. Where the barrier with a condition rating of 3 or 4 exceeds 20% of the total length of barrier, the entire barrier shall be removed and replaced with railing meeting the design requirements specified in BDM Section 309.4.

To connect the roadway approach guardrail to the bridge railing, use a Type F Bridge Terminal Assembly as detailed on archived Roadway Standard Construction Drawing GR-3A with a final revision date of 2-5-82.

**403.10.1.2.c BR-2-67**

This ODOT Standard Bridge Drawing provided details for a sidewalk barrier system.

This sidewalk barrier does not meet the minimum TL-3 acceptance criteria in either NCHRP Report 350 or MASH.

This sidewalk barrier shall be removed and replaced with railing meeting the design requirements specified in BDM Section 309.4 when the deck supporting this railing system will be rehabilitated using a rigid overlay specified in BDM Section 403.4.1.

Sidewalk barrier with a condition rating of 3 or 4 shall be rehabilitated as follows:

A. Where the barrier with a condition rating of 3 or 4 is 20% or less than the total length of barrier, this portion of the barrier shall be removed and replaced in kind.

B. Where the barrier with a condition rating of 3 or 4 exceeds 20% of the total length of barrier, the entire barrier shall be removed and replaced with railing meeting the design requirements specified in BDM Section 309.4.

**C403.10.1.2.c**

The BR-2-67 sidewalk barrier has not been crash tested.
Use the fabricated connection bracket details provided on the drawing to connect the roadway approach guardrail to the bridge railing.

**403.10.1.2.d BR-2-82**

This ODOT Standard Bridge Drawing replaced BR-2-67 to become the standard sidewalk railing system.

This sidewalk barrier does not meet the minimum TL-3 acceptance criteria in either NCHRP Report 350 or MASH.

This sidewalk barrier shall be removed and replaced with railing meeting the design requirements specified in BDM Section 309.4 when the deck supporting this railing system will be rehabilitated using a rigid overlay specified in BDM Section 403.4.1.

Sidewalk barrier with a condition rating of 3 or 4 shall be rehabilitated as follows:

A. Where the barrier with a condition rating of 3 or 4 is 20% or less than the total length of barrier, this portion of the barrier shall be removed and replaced in kind.

B. Where the barrier with a condition rating of 3 or 4 exceeds 20% of the total length of barrier, the entire barrier shall be removed and replaced with railing meeting the design requirements specified in BDM Section 309.4.

Use the W-Beam Terminal Connector detailed in Roadway Standard Construction Drawing MGS-1.1 to connect the roadway approach guardrail to the bridge railing as shown in BR-2-82.

**403.10.1.2.e BR-2-98 & BR-2-15**


This sidewalk barrier does not need to be replaced when the deck supporting this railing system will be rehabilitated using a rigid overlay specified in BDM Section 403.4.1.

Portions of either BR-2-98 or BR-2-15 sidewalk barrier with a condition rating of 3 or 4 shall be removed and replaced in kind.

**C403.10.1.2.d**

The BR-2-82 sidewalk barrier has not been crash tested.

**C403.10.1.2.e**

The BR-2-98 sidewalk barrier is a slightly modified version of the BR27C which was successfully tested with and without a raised sidewalk in accordance with the 1989 AASHTO Guide Specifications for Bridge Railing to a Performance Level two (PL-2). FHWA accepted this testing under the NCHRP Report 350 criteria as TL-4.
Use the Thrie-Beam Terminal Connector detailed in Roadway Standard Construction Drawing MGS-1.1 to connect the roadway approach guardrail to the bridge railing as shown in BR-2-98 and BR-2-15.

403.10.1.3 METAL RAILING SYSTEMS


This railing system was detailed on the 1946 and 1947 simple span steel beam bridge and continuous span steel beam bridge standard drawings. The railing consisted of a tubular steel posts with two steel angle hand rails mounted on a concrete Safety Curb.

This railing system does not meet the minimum TL-3 acceptance criteria in either NCHRP Report 350 or MASH.

This railing system shall be removed and replaced with railing meeting the design requirements specified in BDM Section 309.4 when the deck supporting this railing system will be rehabilitated using a rigid overlay specified in BDM Section 403.4.1.

This railing system with a condition rating of 3 or 4 shall be rehabilitated as follows:

A. Where the railing system with a condition rating of 3 or 4 is 20% or less than the total length of railing, this portion of the railing shall be removed and replaced in kind.

B. Where the railing system with a condition rating of 3 or 4 exceeds 20% of the total length of railing, the entire railing shall be removed and replaced with railing meeting the design requirements specified in BDM Section 309.4.

Use the Bridge Terminal Assembly Type H detailed in archived Roadway Standard Construction Drawing GR-3B with a final revision date of 1-21-85 to connect the roadway approach guardrail to the bridge railing.

403.10.1.3.b CSB-1-55, CSB-1-63, CSB-2-56, & CSB-2-63

This railing system was detailed on the 1955, 1956 and 1963 continuous span steel beam bridge standard drawings. The railing consisted of a wide flange post with a w-beam rail element and a steel angle hand rail mounted to the side of the deck to allow surface drainage over-the-side of the bridge deck.

This railing system has not been crash tested.

This railing system was the precursor to the Deep Beam Bridge Guard Rail system which was detailed on Standard Bridge Drawing DBR-1-71 which is discussed in BDM Section 403.10.1.3.d.
This railing system does not meet the minimum TL-3 acceptance criteria in either NCHRP Report 350 or MASH.

This railing system shall be removed and replaced with railing meeting the design requirements specified in BDM Section 309.4 when the deck supporting this railing system will be rehabilitated using a rigid overlay specified in BDM Section 403.4.1.

This railing system has not been crash tested.

The anchorage to the deck is identical to the current DBR-2-73 system. Therefore, a replacement railing consisting of the posts and railing elements of DBR-2-73 with the DBR-3-11 retrofit that utilizes the existing anchors will allow the final railing design to comply with NCHRP Report 350 TL-3 acceptance criteria.

The height from the deck surface to the top of the w-beam element for this railing system is ± 25-in. The comparable height of the w-beam element in the Type 5 and Type MGS guardrail are ± 29-in and ± 31-in respectively.

Use a Type 4 Bridge Terminal Assembly as specified in current Roadway Plan Insert Sheets GR-3.4 to connect the Type 5 or Type MGS roadway railing to the bridge railing. The height difference between the bridge and the roadway railing shall be accommodated throughout the length of the Bridge Terminal Assembly. Include a plan note for this information in the contract plans.

This railing system was detailed on the 1955, 1956 and 1963 continuous span steel beam bridge standard drawings. The railing consisted of a wide flange post with a w-beam rail element and a steel angle hand rail mounted to the side of the deck to allow surface drainage over-the-side of the bridge deck.

This railing system was the precursor to the Deep Beam Bridge Guard Rail system which was detailed on Standard Bridge Drawing DBR-1-71 which is discussed in BDM Section 403.10.1.3.d.

This railing system was a deep beam railing element supported by posts that were fastened to a cantilever arms attached to the fascia beam web.

This railing system does not meet the minimum TL-3 acceptance criteria in either NCHRP Report 350 or MASH.
This railing system shall be removed and replaced with railing meeting the design requirements specified in BDM Section 309.4 when the deck supporting this railing system will be rehabilitated using a rigid overlay specified in BDM Section 403.4.1.

ODOT in partnership with Ohio’s Local Public Agencies developed an NCHRP Report 350 TL-3 accepted railing that is very similar to the CSB-4-50 and CSB-5-50 railing system. Designers should consider using this tested railing system as an acceptable replacement. Details of this system can be found on the ODOT Office of Statewide Planning & Research - Ohio’s Research Initiative for Locals (ORIL) website. The final report was entitled “Evaluation & Design of a TL-3 Bridge Guardrail System Mounted to Steel Fascia Beams.”

This railing system with a condition rating of 3 or 4 shall be rehabilitated as follows:

A. Where the railing system with a condition rating of 3 or 4 is 20% or less than the total length of railing, this portion of the railing shall be removed and replaced in kind.

B. Where the railing system with a condition rating of 3 or 4 exceeds 20% of the total length of railing, the entire railing shall be removed and replaced with railing meeting the design requirements specified in BDM Section 309.4.

Use a Type 4 Bridge Terminal Assembly as specified in current Roadway Plan Insert Sheets GR-3.4 to connect the Type 5 or Type MGS roadway railing to the bridge railing. The height difference between the bridge and the roadway railing shall be accommodated throughout the length of the Bridge Terminal Assembly. Include a plan note for this information in the contract plans.

The height from the deck surface to the top of the w-beam element for this railing system is ± 25-in. The comparable height of the w-beam element in the Type 5 and Type MGS guardrail are ± 29-in and ± 31-in respectively.

403.10.1.3.d DBR-1-71

The DBR-1-71 railing is an open railing system utilizing w-beam guardrail supported on wide flange posts attached to the side of the deck. The system allows surface drainage over-the-side of the bridge deck.

This railing system does not meet the minimum TL-3 acceptance criteria in either NCHRP Report 350 or MASH.

This railing system shall be removed and replaced with railing meeting the design requirements specified in BDM Section 309.4 when the deck supporting this railing system will be rehabilitated using a rigid overlay specified in BDM Section 403.4.1.

This railing system has not been crash tested.

C403.10.1.3.d

The DBR-1-71 railing system utilizes a standard w-beam guardrail without tubular backup.

The anchorage to the deck is identical to the current DBR-2-73 system. Therefore, a replacement railing consisting of the posts and railing elements of DBR-2-73 with the DBR-3-11 retrofit that utilizes the existing anchors will allow the final railing design to comply with NCHRP Report 350 TL-3 acceptance criteria.
A. Where the railing system with a condition rating of 3 or 4 is 20% or less than the total length of railing, this portion of the railing shall be removed and replaced in kind.

B. Where the railing system with a condition rating of 3 or 4 exceeds 20% of the total length of railing, the entire railing shall be removed and replaced with railing meeting the design requirements specified in BDM Section 309.4.

Use a Type 4 Bridge Terminal Assembly as specified in current Roadway Plan Insert Sheets GR-3.4 to connect the Type 5 or Type MGS roadway railing to the bridge railing. The height difference between the bridge and the roadway railing shall be accommodated throughout the length of the Bridge Terminal Assembly. Include a plan note for this information in the contract plans.

403.10.1.3.e DBR-2-73

The DBR-2-73 railing is an open railing system utilizing w-beam guardrail structurally backed with a tubular steel rail element supported on wide flange posts attached to the side of the deck. The system allows surface drainage over-the-side of the bridge deck.

This railing system does not meet the minimum TL-3 acceptance criteria in either NCHRP Report 350 or MASH.

This railing system shall be upgraded to NCHRP Report 350 TL-3 acceptance using the DBR-3-11 Deep Beam Bridge Retrofit Railing when the deck supporting this railing system will be rehabilitated using a rigid overlay specified in BDM Section 403.4.1.

This railing system with a condition rating of 3 or 4 shall be rehabilitated as follows:

A. Where the railing system with a condition rating of 3 or 4 is 20% or less than the total length of railing, this portion of the railing shall be removed and replaced in kind.

B. Where the railing system with a condition rating of 3 or 4 exceeds 20% of the total length of railing, the entire railing shall be upgraded using DBR-3-11.

The height from the deck surface to the top of the w-beam element for this railing system is ± 27-in. The comparable height of the w-beam element in the Type 5 and Type MGS guardrail are ± 29-in and ± 31-in respectively.

C403.10.1.3.e

The Deep Beam railing system with tubular backup was crash tested under NCHRP Report 230 criteria. After FHWA adopted NCHRP Report 350 acceptance criteria on the NHS, FHWA accepted the Ohio Deep Beam Bridge Railing, DBR-2-73 as NCHRP Report 350 TL-2 compliant.
Use a Type 4 Bridge Terminal Assembly as specified in current Roadway Plan Insert Sheets [GR-3.4](#) to connect the Type 5 or Type MGS roadway railing to the bridge railing. The height difference between the bridge and the roadway railing shall be accommodated throughout the length of the Bridge Terminal Assembly. Include a plan note for this information in the contract plans.

**403.10.1.3.f LONG SPAN GUARDRAIL ACROSS CULVERT**

The Long Span Guardrail system utilized a single or nested w-beam element backed by structural steel tubing sections.

The height from the deck surface to the top of the w-beam element for this railing system is ± 27.75-in. The comparable height of the w-beam element in the Type 5 and Type MGS guardrail are ± 29-in and ± 31-in respectively.

This railing system was considered a zero-deflection barrier during vehicle impacts.

This railing system does not meet the minimum TL-3 acceptance criteria in either NCHRP Report 350 or MASH.

Replace the Long Span Guardrail system with a MASH acceptable system when condition rating falls to 3 or 4. Otherwise, maintain the existing Long Span Guardrail system throughout its useful life.

The Midwest Guardrail System, Long-Span Guardrail as detailed on current Roadway Standard Construction Drawing, [MGS-2.3](#) may be an acceptable replacement system when used according to the Lateral Offset requirements specified.

For locations where the existing guardrail span is greater than 25-ft, consider using a Single Slope Type D barrier across the structure span.

This requirement applies only to locations where the existing Long-Span Guardrail is repaired. If the existing Long-Span Guardrail is replaced, use the appropriate transition to guardrail compatible with the replacement system.

For projects that have Type 5 guardrail as the approach railing system, use a Type 4 Bridge Terminal Assembly as specified in current Roadway Plan Insert Sheets [GR-3.4](#) to connect the roadway railing to the bridge railing.
403.10.1.3.g TBR-91 & TBR-1-11

The Thrie Beam Retrofit railing system was designed as an economical solution to protect the Safety Curb railing systems. This railing system uses a thrie beam railing element blocked out from the concrete parapet to line up with the toe of the Safety Curb.

The Thrie Beam Retrofit railing system does not need to be replaced when the deck supporting this railing system will be rehabilitated using a rigid overlay specified in BDM Section 403.4.1.

Portions of Thrie Beam Retrofit railing system with a condition rating of 3 or 4 shall be removed and replaced in kind.

For projects that have Type 5 guardrail as the approach railing system, use a Type 3 Bridge Terminal Assembly as specified in current Roadway Plan Insert Sheets GR-3.3 to connect the roadway railing to the bridge railing.

For projects that have Type MGS guardrail as the approach railing system, use a Type 1 MGS Bridge Terminal Assembly as specified in Roadway Standard Construction Drawings MGS-3.1.

403.10.1.3.h TST-1-99

The Twin Steel Tube railing system is an open railing system that utilizes two structural steel tubes attached to wide flange posts connected to the side of the deck. The system allows surface drainage over-the-side of the bridge deck.

The TST-1-99 railing system does not need to be replaced when the deck supporting this railing system will be rehabilitated using a rigid overlay specified in BDM Section 403.4.1.

Portions of TST-1-99 railing system with a condition rating of 3 or 4 shall be removed and replaced in kind.
For projects that have Type 5 guardrail as the approach railing system, use a Type TST Bridge Terminal Assembly as specified in current Roadway Plan Insert Sheets GR-3.6 to connect the roadway railing to the bridge railing.

For projects that have Type MGS guardrail as the approach railing system, use a Type 1 MGS Bridge Terminal Assembly as specified in Roadway Standard Construction Drawings MGS-3.1.

The original version of TST-1-99, dated 07-06-99, included a modified Type 3 Bridge Terminal Assembly that connected to the bridge railing at two W6x25 posts spaced at 1.5-ft located off of the end of the bridge. This assembly did not utilize a terminal connector at the end of the thrie beam. For projects that include this original detail, connect the thrie beam as shown in the original TST-1-99 drawing using either Roadway Plan Insert Sheet GR-3.6 or Roadway Standard Construction Drawing MGS-3.1, as appropriate, without the terminal connector.

403.10.2 EXISTING NON-STANDARD RAILING TYPES

If the existing railing on the bridge to be rehabilitated is not one of the standard systems detailed in BDM Section 403.10.1, determine if the railing system is based on the design of a successfully tested railing system.

Railing systems that are accepted to NCHRP Report 350 or MASH TL-3 or better, do not need to be replaced when the deck supporting this railing system will be rehabilitated using a rigid overlay specified in BDM Section 403.4.1. Otherwise, the railing system shall be removed and replaced with railing meeting the design requirements specified in BDM Section 309.4 when the deck supporting this railing system will be rehabilitated using a rigid overlay specified in BDM Section 403.4.1.

Portions of railing systems that are accepted to NCHRP Report 350 or MASH TL-3 or better with a condition rating of 3 or 4 shall be removed and replaced in kind regardless of the length of deficiency. Otherwise, portions of the railing systems shall be rehabilitated as follows:

A. Where the railing system with a condition rating of 3 or 4 is 20% or less than the total length of railing, this portion of the railing shall be removed and replaced in kind.

B. Where the railing system with a condition rating of 3 or 4 exceeds 20% of the total length of railing, the entire railing shall be removed and replaced with railing meeting the design requirements specified in BDM Section 309.4.

For construction projects not involving the complete replacement of existing bridge railing, a mechanical connection between the approach guardrail and the bridge railing is required.

A listing of railing systems that have been accepted for use on the NHS is provided on the FHWA Office of Safety – Roadway Departure Safety website.
403.11 BEARINGS

Do not use compressible bearings in combination with sliding plate expansion joints.

All bearings at an individual substructure unit shall be the same type. The bearings at any one substructure unit shall be compatible with all the bearings at the other substructure units.

403.11.1 STEEL ROCKER AND BOLSTER BEARINGS, RB-1-55

Only use this bearing type in rehabilitation projects where a match to the existing bearing is required.

This bearing is limited to a 2-in factored movement in one direction from the vertical.

Bevel the upper load plate to match the profile grade for structures where the grade at the bearing is greater than 2 percent. Provide a plan detail of the beveled, upper load plate. The thickness of the upper load plate at the centerline of the bearing (dimension C in the standard drawing) shall be held.

Pier and abutment seats will allow the bearing base plate to achieve full seat area.

The maximum clip shall not remove more than 3-in$^2$ of bearing base plate surface area. Investigate that the substructure can accept the increased loading.

403.11.2 SLIDING BRONZE TYPE & FIXED TYPE STEEL BEARINGS

Only use this bearing type in rehabilitation projects where a match to the existing bearing is required.

If compressible type bearings are used in this situation, the bearing’s reaction will be transferred to the bridging angle on the expansion joint causing distress to the end of the deck and top of backwall.

This bearing type is presented on Standard Bridge Drawing RB-1-55. The standard drawing also includes maximum load capacity requirements (Service Load I) for this bearing type.

The assumed nominal rolling and sliding resistance of rockers is $0.25 \times DL \times \frac{r}{R}$, where: DL is the dead load reaction on the rockers, “r” is the radius of the pin, in inches, and “R” is the radius of the rocker, in inches.

The designer may choose, on structures of extreme skew, the alternative of clipping the corner of the bearing plate to save adding additional width to the pier and abutment seats.

The sliding bronze type expansion bearing is known to freeze up, therefore, not providing the required freedom of movement. This bearing type is normally not recommended even on rehabilitation projects.

This bearing type is found on older steel beam or girder structures and is shown on Standard Bridge Drawing FSB-1-62. This standard is not currently active but copies are available on the OSE Archived Drawings Website. The fixed type bearing shown on Standard Bridge Drawing FB-1-82, originated from the old Standard Bridge Drawing FSB-1-62.

In the design of these bearings for steel bridges, the assumed coefficient of friction of lubricated bronze sliding bearings is 0.10.
403.12 VANDAL FENCE

Replace corroding post sleeves.

Do not install VPF on deteriorated/refaced barriers.

404 SUPERSTRUCTURE

404.1 STRUCTURAL STEEL

404.1.1 DAMAGE OR SECTION LOSS

When it is necessary to repair a section of a steel member that has been damaged by rust or other means the specifics of the repair details are left to the ingenuity of the designer due to the vast number of possible solutions. When a beam is damaged by a vehicle impact refer to plan insert sheets CRHS for repair techniques. Repairing beams by heat straightening is discussed in BDM Section 404.1.8.

When performing welded repairs in compression zones, ensure the chemistry of the existing steel is such that it can be welded. Perform field non-destructive testing (NDT) on the welds. Specify weld procedures, the type and location of the NDT, and other relevant information in the plan notes.

Review old mill certifications or take samples of the base material for chemical analysis to determine the existing material composition.

Do not perform welded repairs in tension zones. Repair damaged sections in tension zones by bolting new steel to existing steel.

If it is absolutely necessary to perform welded repairs in a tension zone, consult the Office of Structural Engineering for recommendations.

404.1.2 FATIGUE

404.1.2.1 GENERAL

Fatigue damage, as it pertains to bridges, is categorized as due to either load-induced or distortion-induced (displacement-induced) stresses. Both types of damage are actually load-induced, the former is directly related to the application of live load and the resulting stresses (in plane), while the latter is the result of secondary stresses (out of plane) typically transmitted by a secondary member as it tends to change the shape of, or distort, the primary member because of displacement. Load-induced damage is dependent on stress range, type of detail, and the number of applications of live load and can be accounted for during design. Distortion-induced damage is not directly quantified in the design of a bridge but can be minimized through proper detailing. Two conditions are necessary for distortion-induced damage to occur: a periodic out-of-plane force or displacement; and an abrupt local change in stiffness where the force/displacement is applied.
Only load-induced fatigue is directly addressed by this section. Since the repairs for distortion-induced fatigue damage are specifically dependent upon the existing detail itself, the repair details are largely up to the designer; are beyond the scope of this section; and may require a special analysis. The designer should consult with the Office of Structural Engineering when developing these types of repairs.

For clarity, the following terms are used as defined throughout BDM Section 404.1.2. A “moment plate” is an existing plate welded to the flanges of a member with the purpose of strengthening the section. A moment plate does not connect members together. A “coverplate” is an existing plate that is welded to the flanges of the section to connect two members together.

Repair or retrofit the detail if cracks are detected.

Retrofit all E or and E’ details on fracture critical members.

404.1.2.2 FATIGUE EVALUATION

Perform a fatigue evaluation of existing steel members/details to be re-used or rehabilitated. The evaluation consists of screening the member/detail and performing a remaining fatigue life analysis when necessary.

In addition to the field survey of the structure as required by BDM Section 401.1, during the Structure Type Study, conduct a detailed arm’s length survey of the bridge’s fatigue-prone details to be evaluated. Also review the bridge inspection records to ascertain if cracking was noted during an inspection.

Submit a fatigue evaluation report to the Department, as part of the Structure Type Study, with recommendations as to whether the members require fatigue related upgrading.

404.1.2.3 DETAILS TO CONSIDER

Evaluate longitudinal rolled steel beams/welded steel girders having either positive or negative welded moment plates, transverse floor beams with welded moment plates, and/or Beam Continuity Welds with and without coverplates.

Bridge inspection records will be available from the District or online at http://biareports.dot.state.oh.us/.
Do not evaluate base metal of rolled beams, welded plate girders without moment plates, cross-frames, cross-frame connections to beams/girders, transverse web stiffeners, longitudinal web stiffeners, lateral bracing, uncracked web welds, riveted members and riveted connections except if member shows signs of distress or is required by the Scope of Services.

If the element of concern has experienced severe corrosion, mechanical damage, or previously repaired fatigue damage it is recommended the detail be replaced during a rehabilitation project.

404.1.2.4 EVALUATION PROCESS

Use the following retrofitting specifications when evaluating the re-use of the existing steel beams/girders for deck replacement projects.

Complete an economic analysis comparing the cost of utilizing the existing steel members with all associated repairs, retrofitting, strengthening, painting, and widening issues considered, versus superstructure replacement to justify the decision to retrofit.

For the economic analysis, use $10.00 per pound (in 2019 dollars) for the estimated cost of “Structural Steel Repair”.

For an estimation of the weight of steel required for the retrofit, the plate sizes from the retired Bolted Splice Standard Drawing (Standard Bridge Drawing BS-1-93, sheet 2 of 3) may be used with the resulting weight increased by 25 percent if the web is not to be retrofitted and with no increase if the web is to be retrofit. When using the standard drawing, no deduction for bolt holes is necessary. The cost estimate should be based on initial cost.

404.1.2.4.a MOMENT PLATES

A. Retrofit the ends of top and bottom moment plates, without performing remaining fatigue life calculations, when:

1. The bridge is known to contain fatigue cracks in either the weld of the flange plate or the primary member.

   Place a plan note in the contract plans describing how the contractor is to inspect the top flange plate welds for cracks after the deck has been removed. Also, define in the plan note how the retrofit of the top flange plate will be paid in the event that cracks are found in the top flange plate welds.

2. The bridge is located on principal arterial roads (interstate, other freeways or express ways) [functional classifications 01 and 02].

B. Conduct a remaining fatigue life analysis, BDM Section 404.1.2.6, on bridges with a present day single lane ADTT (Average Daily Truck Traffic) exceeding 500 trucks.

Not all possible cracks can be seen during the preliminary field survey. A separate survey will be required after the existing deck has been removed.

Functional classification maps can be obtained from the Office of Technical Services website.

The 500 truck ADTT limit for a single lane was set based on the belief that the bridges that are below this criterion will have sufficient fatigue capacity for the remaining life of the superstructure.
During the field visit described in BDM Section 404.1.2.2 if it is observed that the moment plates do not terminate in the correct location a remaining fatigue life analysis should be conducted on the member based on the in-situ conditions.

Retrofitting is not required when the remaining fatigue life is at least 20 years.

Retrofit both ends of a plate when the remaining fatigue life at either end is less than 20 years. Conduct an economic analysis as detailed in BDM Section 404.1.2.4.

C. Bridges not meeting the requirements of (A) or (B) do not require a fatigue analysis. No retrofit is required.

Retrofit both ends of a plate when the remaining fatigue life at either end is less than 20 years. Conduct an economic analysis as detailed in BDM Section 404.1.2.4.

C. Bridges not meeting the requirements of (A) or (B) do not require a fatigue analysis. No retrofit is required.

404.1.2.4.b BEAM CONTINUITY WELDS WITH COVERPLATES

When Ohio began using the concept of continuous spans, one commonly used standard detail is a fatigue concern. The detail consisted of simple span rolled beams butt welded together at the piers with short plates welded to the top and bottom flanges, roughly centered on the piers. The weld line of the beam webs had coped holes at the top and bottom flange, serving as access holes for the flange welds. The plates are not structural in that they are not serving the part of moment plates and were meant to reinforce the welded flanges, using a “belt and suspenders” logic. These details are illustrated on retired Standard Bridge Drawing SD-1-63, sheet 1, and were generally used with the rolled beams shown in retired Standard Bridge Drawing CSB-1-63. When beams of differing depths were used, the web of the shorter beam was cut horizontally, and its flange was raised to match the depth of the adjacent beam and the gap in the web was then filled with weld. This method of joining typically resulted in the top splice plate being kinked or bent at the center of the pier.

Henceforth, the butt welds detailed in “Beam Splice Detail A” and “Beam Splice Detail B” on sheet 1 of retired standard drawing SD-1-63 will be referred to as the “Beam Continuity Weld” throughout BDM Section 404.

A. Retrofit the top coverplate of the Beam Continuity Weld, without performing remaining fatigue life calculations, when:

1. The bridge is known to contain fatigue cracks in either the weld of the flange plate or the primary member.

Not all possible cracks can be seen during the preliminary field survey. A separate survey will be required after the existing deck has been removed.
Place a plan note in the contract plans describing how the contractor is to inspect the top flange plate welds for cracks after the deck has been removed. Also define in the plan note how the retrofit of the top flange plate will be paid in the event that cracks are found in the top flange plate welds.

2. The bridge is located on principal arterial roads (interstate, other freeways or express ways) [functional classifications 01 and 02].

   Functional classification maps can be obtained from the Office of Technical Services website.

   The ends of bottom flange coverplates of the Beam Continuity Weld do not require automatic retrofit. Perform a remaining fatigue life analysis per BDM Section 404.1.2.6 to determine if a retrofit is warranted.

B. Conduct a remaining fatigue life analysis, BDM Section 404.1.2.6, on bridges with a present day single lane ADTT (Average Daily Truck Traffic) exceeding 1000 trucks.

   In most cases the stress range at this location will meet the requirements of \textit{MBE 7.2.3} or \textit{MBE 7.2.4} and a retrofit will not be required.

   The 1000 truck ADTT limit for a single lane was set based on the belief that the bridges that do not meet this criterion will have sufficient fatigue capacity for the remaining life of the superstructure. When the deck is converted from non-composite to composite deck the stress ranges at the areas of concern is reduced enough to provide a remaining fatigue life in excess of 20 years.

Retrofitting is not required when the remaining fatigue life is at least 20 years.

Retrofit both ends of a plate when the remaining fatigue life at either end is less than 20 years. Conduct an economic analysis as detailed herein.

Retrofit the top coverplate of the Beam Continuity Weld at the centerline of the splice (i.e. the location of the flange to flange weld) when retrofitting the ends of coverplates. Refer to BDM Figure 404-2.

Retrofit web welds only when the web is cracked.

C. Bridges not meeting the requirements of (A) or (B) do not require a fatigue analysis. No retrofit is required.

   No retrofitting is required on deck repair projects, unless known fatigue cracks exist.

\textbf{404.1.2.4.c} \hspace{1cm} \textbf{BEAM CONTINUITY WELD WITHOUT COVERPLATES}

Retrofit flange and beam welds when cracks are visually detected or where there is physical evidence of cracking.

\textbf{404.1.2.5} \hspace{1cm} \textbf{CLASSIFICATION OF DETAILS}

Classify the ends of moment plates and ends of Beam Continuity Weld coverplates as either an E or E’ detail.

\textbf{C404.1.2.4.c} \hspace{1cm} \textbf{C404.1.2.5}
In order to qualify as a Category E detail, all of the following criteria must be met, otherwise it is to be classified as a Category E’ detail:

A. The thickness of the welded plate must be less than 1.0-in

AND

B. The thickness of the top flange of rolled beam must be less than or equal to 0.8-in

AND

C. The welded plate is narrower than the beam flange (with or without welds across the ends of the plate) or the welded plate is wider than the beam flange with welds across the ends of the plate.

For the purpose of a remaining life analysis, evaluate Beam Continuity Welds, riveted built-up sections, riveted members and riveted connections based upon the requirements of a Category C detail.

For the purpose of a remaining life analysis, the complete penetration flange weld of the Beam Continuity Weld is to be evaluated based upon the requirements of a Category C detail.

Classify all other details according to LRFD Table 6.6.1.2.3-1.

404.1.2.6 REMAINING FATIGUE LIFE ANALYSIS

Except as noted in BDM Section 404.1.2.4 or the Scope of Services perform remaining fatigue life analyses only on fatigue-prone details.

Fatigue-prone details are all details that fall within Categories D, E, or E’ of LRFD Table 6.6.1.2.3-1.

If a detail falls within the categories listed above but meets the requirements of MBE 7.2.3, the detail may be considered as not fatigue-prone and a remaining fatigue life analysis is not required for that detail.

Prior to completing the remaining fatigue life analysis detailed below perform an infinite-life check. If the detail meets the infinite-life check no retrofit is required.

Refer to MBE 7.2.4 for guidance on the infinite-life check.
Calculate the remaining fatigue life of the fatigue-prone detail as follows:

\[
Y_{REM} = \log \left( \frac{\frac{g}{1+g} \left( N_{av} - N_1 \right)}{365n(ADTT_{SL})_{PRESENT}} + 1 \right)
\]

Where:

- \( N_{av} \) = number of initially available fatigue stress cycles
  
  \[ N_{av} = \frac{R_A A}{(\Delta f_{eff})^3} \]

- \( N_1 \) = number of fatigue stress cycles consumed over the present age of the detail
  
  for \((ADTT_{SL})_{PRESENT} = (ADTT_{SL})_0\)
  
  \[ = 365n(a+1)(ADTT_{SL})_{PRESENT} \]
  
  otherwise:
  
  \[ = 365n(ADTT_{SL})_{PRESENT} \times \left[ \frac{1 - \frac{(ADTT_{SL})_0(ADTT_{SL})_0}{(ADTT_{SL})_{PRESENT}}}{(ADTT_{SL})_{PRESENT}^{\frac{1}{2}} - 1} + 1 \right] \]

- \( g \) = expected annual growth rate of the average number of trucks per day in a single lane; (e.g. 2% = 0.02)

Unless traffic information has been provided by the Department, refer to the ODOT Traffic Monitoring Management System (TMMS) for applicable traffic information. Use all the available traffic data to determine the expected annual growth rate by calculating the average growth rate. For cases when the growth rate is zero or negative, use a very small number for the growth rate (e.g. 0.0001). If historical traffic data is not available use an assumed annual growth rate of 5%.

- \((ADTT_{SL})_{PRESENT}\) = average number of trucks per day in a single lane in the present year

- \((ADTT_{SL})_0\) = average number of trucks per day in a single lane in the first year the detail was in service

- \(RR\) = resistance factor [MBE Table 7.2.5.1-1]

- \(A\) = detail category constant

[LRFD Table 6.6.1.2.5-1]
\[ \Delta f_{\text{eff}} = \text{the effective stress range} \] \[ [MBE \ 7.2.2] \]

When the effective stress range is determined using the factored calculated stress range due to the passage of the fatigue truck, use the stress range for an interior beam. The Department does not believe that the stress range on the exterior beams for each fatigue truck passage is accurately represented using the LRFD distribution factors.

\[ n = \text{number of stress-range cycles per truck passage} \] \[ [LRFD \ 6.6.1.2.5-2] \]

\[ a = \text{current age of the detail in years} \]

Check the following:

\[ (ADTTS_{\text{SL}})_{\text{FUTURE}} \leq (ADTTS_{\text{SL}})_{\text{LIMIT}} \]

\[ (ADTTS_{\text{SL}})_{\text{FUTURE}} = \text{average number of trucks per day in a single lane in the year when the life corresponding to year } Y_{\text{REM}} \text{ is reached} \]

\[ = (ADTTS_{\text{SL}})_{\text{PRESENT}}(1+g)^{Y_{\text{REM}}} \]

\[ (ADTTS_{\text{SL}})_{\text{LIMIT}} = \text{highway design maximum average number of trucks per day in a single lane for the roadway under consideration} \]

By placing an upper limit on the single lane ADTT, it provides the engineer the ability to keep the future number of trucks within a realistic value for the given route. ADTT limit must be approved by the District prior to the fatigue evaluation submission.

When \((ADTTS_{\text{SL}})_{\text{LIMIT}}\) is less than \((ADTTS_{\text{SL}})_{\text{FUTURE}}\), calculate the remaining fatigue life with the \((ADTTS_{\text{SL}})_{\text{LIMIT}}\).

\[ (Y_{\text{ADTT}})_{\text{LIMIT}} = \text{the number of years from the present day until } (ADTTS_{\text{SL}})_{\text{LIMIT}} \text{ is reached} \]

\[ = \log \left( \frac{(ADTTS_{\text{SL}})_{\text{LIMIT}}}{(ADTTS_{\text{SL}})_{\text{PRESENT}}} \right) \log(1+g) \]

\[ (Y_{\text{REM}})_{\text{LIMIT}} = \text{the remaining fatigue life of the fatigue prone details for } (ADTTS_{\text{SL}})_{\text{LIMIT}} \]

\[ = \frac{N_{\text{av}}-N_1}{365n(ADTTS_{\text{SL}})_{\text{LIMIT}}} \]

\[ (1+g)^{(Y_{\text{ADTT}})_{\text{LIMIT}}-1} + (Y_{\text{ADTT}})_{\text{LIMIT}} \]
404.1.2.7 REMAINING LIFE FATIGUE ANALYSIS SUBMISSION INFORMATION

As a minimum, provide the following in the remaining life fatigue analysis submission:

A. Identify and locate all fatigue prone details. Provide recommendations regarding whether or not the details require retrofitting and are suitable for retrofitting.

B. Provide recommendations regarding necessary strengthening of members to meet loading requirements.

C. Include a summary table showing the following at each fatigue prone detail and location being evaluated: remaining fatigue life; moments; stress ranges; fatigue detail category; live load distribution factor; ADTT, whether ADTT is for one way or total traffic; directional distribution factor; present age of structure in years; impact percentage.

The owner may request the detailed calculations showing the remaining life computations and the economic analysis. Do not submit voluminous pages of computer output. Provide the information in summary table form only.

404.1.3 FATIGUE RETROFIT DESIGN

404.1.3.1 GENERAL

Provide retrofits for details that have cracked or whose remaining fatigue life has been determined to be less than the desired service life. Only place splice plates across the Beam Continuity Weld when the flange and web welds have cracked.

Refer to BDM Section 404.1.2.4.c for additional information on crack detection.

404.1.3.2 VERTICAL CLEARANCES

Check the vertical clearance for retrofit details that may decrease the vertical clearance.

If the clearance is reduced and is unacceptable to the District, a modified retrofit will be necessary.

A modified retrofit consists of a combination of a partial bolted plate along with a mechanical treatment of the existing weld (i.e. peening). Contact the Office of Structural Engineering for further guidance in developing the details.

404.1.3.3 ENDS OF MOMENT PLATES (BEAM FLANGES)

The retrofit for moment plates is done by bolting flange plates at the ends of the existing welded plates in accordance with the procedures outlined in the following sections.

This design procedure applies equally to moment plates and coverplate ends on the bottom and top flanges.
A. Design the retrofit in accordance with the current edition of the *AASHTO LRFD Bridge Design Specifications* and the Bridge Design Manual except as noted in this section.

B. Design the bolted flange plates for the entire moment, both from dead load and live load at the section and any contribution from the web is to be discounted.

C. Design the connection as a slip-critical connection.

D. Refer to BDM Section 401.3 for the design loading.

E. Design the retrofit so that the stress range in the flange and in the bolted flange plates, does not exceed the constant-amplitude fatigue threshold for a Category B detail. Standard Bridge Drawing BS-1-93 may be used as a preliminary guide in the initial sizing of the plate and determination of the number of bolts. Do not directly use the bolted plate designs shown on the retired Standard Bridge Drawing, BS-1-93 for the retrofit design.

F. For plates with tapered ends, place the number of bolts required for design before the beginning of the taper and beyond the end of the taper. Place additional seal bolts in the range of the plate taper. (See BDM Figure 404-1)

G. Provide and detail filler plates equal to the thickness of the moment plate in the plans, as required.

H. If the flange is cracked and the crack extends into the beam web, drill a 2-in diameter hole through the web at the tip of the crack to stop the web crack from progressing and specify the exposed steel to be sealed with a non-aerosol paint containing zinc dust. If the web crack is longer than one sixth of the beam depth, splice the web across the cracked section. Detail the drilling of the hole in the plans.

![Figure 404-1](image-url)
The retrofit for Beam Continuity Weld coverplates is done by bolting flange plates at the ends of the existing welded plates and over the flange butt weld in accordance with the procedures outlined in the following sections.

This design procedure applies equally to moment plates and coverplate ends on the bottom and top flanges.

A. Design the retrofit in accordance with the current edition of the AASHTO LRFD Bridge Design Specifications and the Bridge Design Manual except as noted in this section.

B. Design the bolted flange plates for the entire moment, both from dead load and live load at the section and any contribution from the web is to be discounted, except for when the web is also retrofitted at the Beam Continuity Weld detail.

C. Design the connection as a slip-critical connection.

D. Refer to BDM Section 401.3 for the design loading.

E. Design the retrofit so that the stress range in the flange and in the bolted flange plates, does not exceed the constant-amplitude fatigue threshold for a Category B detail.

F. For plates with tapered ends, place the number of bolts required for design before the beginning of the taper and beyond the end of the taper. Place additional seal bolts in the range of the plate taper. (See BDM Figure 404-1)

G. Provide and detail filler plates equal to the thickness of the coverplate in the plans, as required.

H. If the flange is cracked and the crack extends into the beam web, drill a 2-in diameter hole through the web at the tip of the crack to stop the web crack from progressing and specify the exposed steel to be sealed with a non-aerosol paint containing zinc dust. If the web crack is longer than one sixth of the beam depth, splice the web across the cracked section. Detail the drilling of the hole in the plans.
I. When bolting splice plates at the end of the existing welded plates and over the Beam Continuity Weld, use three individual bolted flange plates. (See BDM Figure 404-2)

![Figure 404-2](image)

**Figure 404-2**

### 404.1.3.5 BEAM WEBS

Retrofit webs only when web is cracked

A. The design is to be in accordance with the current edition of the *AASHTO LRFD Bridge Design Specifications* and the Bridge Design Manual except as noted in this section.

B. When the web retrofit is located under an end of a coverplate retrofit, design the bolted web plates for the applied shear, from both dead load and live load. All the moment is assumed to be taken by the flange. Center the bolted web plates on the ends of the coverplates.

If the web retrofit is located at a Beam Continuity Weld, also plate the beam flange per BDM Figure 404-2. Design the bolted web plates for the applied shear, from both dead load and live load, the portion of the moment that is carried by the web, and the moment caused by the eccentricity of the bolts.

C. Design the connection as a slip-critical connection.

D. Refer to BDM Section 401.3 for the design loading.

E. Design the retrofit so that the stress range in the bolted web plates, does not exceed the constant-amplitude fatigue threshold for a Category B detail.

F. Provide and detail filler plates equal to half the difference in thickness of the beam webs in the plans, as required

Standard Bridge Drawing BS-1-93 may be used as a preliminary guide in the initial sizing of the plate and determination of the number of bolts. Do not directly use the bolted plate designs shown on the retired Standard Bridge Drawing, BS-1-93 for the retrofit design.

Refer to BDM Section 404.1.3.6 for thickness requirements.
G. Arrest the crack by drilling a 2-in diameter hole at the crack tip and specify the exposed steel to be sealed with a non-aerosol paint containing zinc dust.

404.1.3.6 FILLER PLATES

Consider filler plates 0.25-in or thicker as underdeveloped and include their effects in the design of the fasteners (LRFD 6.13.6.1.4). Apply the reduction factor to the fasteners on both sides of the connection to ensure a symmetrical splice. Filler plates need not extend beyond the plates.

Detail fill plates to the nearest 1/16-in in thickness. The minimum fill plate thickness shall be 1/8-in.

When the difference in thickness of the two sections being plated is less than 1/8-in, no filler plate is necessary.

When plating the top flange coverplate for a Beam Continuity Weld detail, determine the thickness of the filler plate by examining the details shown on sheet 1 of retired Standard Bridge Drawing SD-1-63.

Detail filler plates in the plans.

404.1.3.7 FATIGUE CRACKS IN OTHER MEMBERS AND DETAILS

Since the repair of fatigue cracks in members and details is dependent on the specifics of a situation, it is not practical to provide specific guidelines or repair details, so only a general discussion will be made. To properly devise a repair scheme, it must be determined if the crack resulted from load-induced or distortion-induced stresses. The source of the cracking should also be identified. More than one factor could contribute to cracking. Defects from poor fabrication may need to be considered. Cracking can also occur during shipment and/or erection. The retrofit may need to include modifying the stiffness of an existing connection. The repair should be logically thought out and its influence on the other steel members investigated. A poorly designed repair may worsen the situation as repaired cracks can reinitiate and propagate further into the member, the repair detail itself may experience cracking and new cracking may occur elsewhere if load patterns were modified or member response to loads has been modified.
404.1.4  BOX GIRDER PIER CAPS RETROFIT

Retrofit box girders only when cracking is evident.

Often box girders were constructed using non-continuous back-up bars that were stitch welded in place. The discontinuity in the back-up bar is of major concern since it acts like a crack in the member and may be a source of crack propagation into the flange or web. The stitch welds may or may not be a problem depending on the stress ranges at their location.

404.1.5  MISCELLANEOUS FATIGUE RETROFITS

Various retrofits have been used for fatigue prone details such as small web gaps which result in stress concentration and subsequent cracking, intersecting welds, lateral connection plates, longitudinal stiffeners, cracks and many others. The Office of Structural Engineering may be contacted for assistance in determining the best retrofit for specific details.

404.1.6  STRENGTHENING OF STRUCTURAL STEEL MEMBERS

Install welded stud shear connectors the full length on all steel beam or girder bridges in which the deck is being removed and replaced. Design the stud spacing in accordance with LRFD 6.10.10.

Bolted plates in tension zones or compression zones can be used to increase strength.

Perform field welding and non-destructive testing (NDT) in strict compliance with AWS Specifications, S1011 and the C&MS. Specify the type and location of the NDT in the plans. Do not specify overhead welding in the plans.

Consider jacking the stringers to relieve stresses prior to installing cover plates. In this manner the cover plates will carry dead load and live load stresses. If the plates are installed without relieving the stresses, they will carry live load only. This is merely a suggestion as to how extra strength might be obtained if it is needed.

Other methods of increasing the strength are to attach angles or structural shapes to the web or flanges. The possibilities are numerous and is left to the ingenuity of the designer. However, pay strict attention to practicality as well as strength and fatigue requirements. Consult the Office of Structural Engineering for recommendations or to review unusual details before proceeding.

When retrofitting or repairing truss members, provide temporary support where needed.

Many truss members are non-redundant, and their removal could result in the collapse of the structure.
404.1.7 TRIMMING BEAM ENDS

Provide Plan and Elevation views in the plans showing where the beam is to be cut. Also provide pertinent notes and include the work with ITEM 513 - TRIMMING OF BEAM ENDS for payment. Pay attention to the clearance to the end cross-frames and detail their removal and replacement if necessary.

C404.1.7

Trimming of beam ends is sometimes necessary due to tilting of the abutment and closure of the end dam. In lieu of trimming the beam ends, consider modifying the backwall if backwall removal and replacement is being performed as part of the work. Modifying the backwall would be a viable option if it were necessary to remove and replace the end cross-frames as a result of trimming the beam ends. Another option to consider is converting the existing abutment into a semi-integral abutment as discussed in BDM Sections 404.6 and 405.7.

404.1.8 HEAT STRAIGHTENING

Do not heat straighten fracture critical members.

Provide details showing the location of all repairs and include Item 513 pay items for repair of damaged members.

C404.1.8

Beams or girders that have been struck by trucks or bent by other causes can often be repaired by heat straightening only, or in combination with field welding to install new sections for the damaged steel member portions. The District Bridge Engineer or other ODOT representative with experience in heat straightening should assess the practicality of this type of repair before proceeding. If heat straightening is deemed to be practical, SS849 is available which describes and controls the operation. Refer to the SS849 Designer Notes for more information. Refer to Plan Insert Sheet CRHS for repair and heat straightening details.

404.1.9 HINGE ASSEMBLIES

Consideration should be given to removing hinges and making the members continuous.

If the hinge cannot be removed, consideration should be given to the need of providing redundancy in the event of a hinge failure or seismic event.

If a pin and hanger assembly is to be rehabilitated, consult the Office of Structural Engineering for recommendations, including suggested lubrication and NDT requirements.

C404.1.9

404.1.10 BOLTS

The Department will permit oversize and slotted holes rehabilitation work. Design oversize and slotted holes in accordance with LRFD 6.13.2.4. Design connections as slip critical.

C404.1.10

Oversize or slotted holes may be desirable in some remedial applications especially where the fit of repair or replacement members or parts becomes tedious.
Since all C&MS requirements are for standard size holes, specify requirements for the holes and necessary washers in the plans.

The Department will accept the use of blind fasteners (e.g. Huck Bolts) when clearance problems arise. Since the installation specifications in the C&MS deal strictly with the installation and testing of normal high strength bolts, if blind fasteners are specified, modify the installation specifications by plan note.

**404.1.11 EXISTING STEEL COATING SYSTEMS**

If the total existing structure is to be field painted, the coating should be a three-coat paint system consisting of an organic zinc prime coat, an epoxy intermediate coat and a urethane finish coat (formerly referred to as system OZEU) according to C&MS 514. The OZEU system is better for field application on existing steel since the organic zinc prime coat is more surface-tolerant.

For widened structures, the new steel shall be coated with the inorganic zinc prime coat in the shop and the existing steel shall receive the organic prime coat. The intermediate and finish coats are the same for each system. Refer to BDM Section 308.2.2.1.d for additional coating information.

Field metallizing is another option, but its costs are typically more than twice the cost of OZEU.

When estimating the quantity for ITEM 514 - GRINDING FINS, TEARS, SLIVERS ON EXISTING STRUCTURAL STEEL, provide 1 minute for each linear foot of beam/girder to be coated.

**404.2 SUPERSTRUCTURE DEFLECTIONS**

Design the beams/girders of the widened section so that the live load deflections between the new and existing beams/girders at each end of a lateral bracing location does not exceed S/100. Where S is the center to center beam spacing measured in the direction of the lateral bracing.

An effort should be made to use a beam/girder section that closely matches the moment of inertia as the existing beams/girders to keep the relative deflections to a minimum.
404.3 PRESTRESSED CONCRETE I-BEAM

404.3.1 IMPACT DAMAGE

When a prestressed concrete I-beam has been damaged by impact, conduct a detailed survey of the bridge. Complete the survey so that sufficient information is obtained to perform a comprehensive load rating of the bridge’s current condition. For these requirements refer to BDM Section 900.

Design all bridge repairs requiring structural strengthening in accordance to C&MS 501.05.

404.3.1.1 CRACK REPAIR

Repair cracks, 7 to 100 mils in thickness, with epoxy injection per C&MS 512.07.

404.3.1.2 CONCRETE PATCHING AND BEAM REPAIR

When strengthening is not required, repair damaged beam(s) with the following repair techniques.

Repair spalls with concrete patching when the spall exposes the beam reinforcing. If the reinforcing is not exposed, seal the damaged portion(s) of the beam with an epoxy coating conforming to C&MS 512.03.

When patching is required, patch the beam according to SS843, C&MS 519, or C&MS 520.

Confine the concrete patch with a Fiber Reinforced Polymer (FRP) wrap. Install two layers of unidirectional FRP wrap. Orient the first layer of the FRP wrap parallel to the centerline of the beam. Install this layer on the bottom of the beam flange. Orient the second layer of the FRP wrap perpendicular to the beam centerline. Wrap the second layer of FRP transversely around the bottom flange and outside web of the beam. Install the both layers of FRP a minimum of 12-in beyond the concrete patching in the longitudinal direction. Refer to BDM Figure 404-3 for the limits of the FRP in the longitudinal and transverse direction. Seal all repaired beam area with an epoxy-urethane sealer per C&MS 512.03.

C404.3.1

When the damage to the bridge/beam causes the bridge load rating to require a Design Exception in accordance with BDM Section 401.4, repair or replacement of the damaged elements is necessary.

Numerous strategies have been developed to structurally repair damaged prestressed concrete beams. However, due to the uniqueness of each damage scenario the repair must be designed to suit each individual case.

C404.3.2

The Scope of Services will provide the patching specification based on the type and degree of concrete damage. Patching per SS843 will be used in most cases because it works well in overhead applications without requiring formwork. Patching per C&MS 520 will likely only be cost effective if a large area of patching is required.

The concrete patch and FRP wrap are not designed to strengthen beam. This application is only intended to provide corrosion protection for the reinforcement. Strengthening the beam with FRP will require a detail design based on the strengthening requirements of the repair.

The FRP repair may be completed with carbon fiber reinforced polymer (CFRP) or E-glass fiber reinforced polymer (EGFRP). However, CFRP is thinner and will be much easier to install in an overhead placement application. The ease of construction will likely offset the increased material cost of the CFRP relative to the EGFRP.
Install FRP wrap in accordance with PN519 – Composite Fiber Wrap System. However, if the repair is being conducted as described in this section the requirement for an Ohio Registered Engineer to prepare, sign, seal and date the cover sheet or submittal letter according to ORC 4733 and OAC 4733-35 is not mandatory.

**Figure 404-3**

### 404.3.1.3 DAMAGED BEAM REPLACEMENT CRITERIA

Independent of the bridge rating, replace the beam when the following damaged is observed during the bridge survey.

A. Over 25% of the strands have been lost.

B. The bottom flange is displaced from the horizontal position more than ½-in per 10-ft of girder length.

C. If the alignment of the girder has been permanently altered by the impact causing a bend point in the beam.

D. Abrupt lateral offset in the beams cross section indicating that stirrups have yielded.

E. Concrete damage at harping point resulting in permanent loss of prestressing in the strand.

A strand is considered lost when the effective strand section is reduced by over 25% (e.g. 2 or more of the 7-wire strand bundle is broken).

An example of this type of failure would be when large cracks at the web-flange interface remain open indicating that the vertical reinforcing has yielded.
F. Severe concrete damage at girder ends resulting in permanent loss of prestressing in the strand.

404.4 PRESTRESSED CONCRETE BOX BEAMS

404.4.1 IMPACT DAMAGE

When a prestressed concrete I-box beam has been damaged by impact, conduct a detailed survey of the bridge. Complete the survey so that sufficient information is obtained to perform a comprehensive rating of the bridge’s current condition. For these requirements refer to BDM Section 900.

Design all bridge repairs requiring structural strengthening in accordance to C&MS 501.05.

C404.4.1

When the damage to the bridge/beam causes the bridge load rating to require a Design Exception in accordance with BDM Section 401.4, repair or replacement of the damaged elements is necessary.

Numerous strategies have been developed to structurally repair damaged prestressed concrete beams. However, due to the uniqueness of each damage scenario the repair must be designed to suit each individual case.

404.4.1.1 CRACK REPAIR

Repair cracks, 7 to 100 mils in thickness, with epoxy injection per C&MS 512.07.

404.4.1.2 CONCRETE PATCHING AND BEAM REPAIR

When strengthening is not required, repair damaged beam(s) with the following repair techniques.

Repair spalls with concrete patching when the spall exposes the beam reinforcing. If the reinforcing is not exposed, seal the damaged portion(s) of the beam with an epoxy coating conforming to C&MS 512.03.

When patching is required, patch the beam according to SS843, C&MS 519, or C&MS 520.

The Scope of Services will provide the patching specification based on the type and degree of concrete damage. Patching per SS843 will be used in most cases because it works well in overhead applications without requiring formwork. Patching per C&MS 520 will likely only be cost effective if a large area of patching is required.
Confine the concrete patch with a Fiber Reinforced Polymer (FRP) wrap. On an exterior beam, install two layers of unidirectional FRP wrap. Orient the first layer of the FRP wrap parallel to the centerline of the beam. Install this layer on the bottom of the beam flange. Orient the second layer of the FRP wrap perpendicular to the beam centerline. Wrap the second layer of FRP transversely around the bottom flange and outside web of the beam. Install the both layers of FRP a minimum of 12-in beyond the concrete patching in the longitudinal direction. Refer to BDM Figure 404-4 for the limits of the FRP in the longitudinal and transverse direction. Seal all repaired beam area with an epoxy-urethane sealer per C&MS 512.03. On an interior beam, only the longitudinal layer is necessary. All other items apply.

Install FRP wrap in accordance with PN519 – Composite Fiber Wrap System. However, if the repair is being conducted as described in this section the requirement for an Ohio Registered Engineer to prepare, sign, seal and date the cover sheet or submittal letter according to ORC 4733 and OAC 4733-35 is not mandatory.

The concrete patch and FRP wrap are not designed to strengthen beam. This application is only intended to provide corrosion protection for the reinforcement. Strengthening the beam with FRP will require a detail design based on the strengthening requirements of the repair.

The FRP repair may be completed with carbon fiber reinforced polymer (CFRP) or E-glass fiber reinforced polymer (EGFRP). However, CFRP is thinner and will be much easier to install in an overhead placement application. The ease of construction will likely offset the increased material cost of the CFRP relative to the EGFRP.

![Figure 404-4](image)

**404.4.1.3 DAMAGED BEAM REPLACEMENT CRITERA**

Independent of the bridge rating, replace the beam when the following damaged is observed during the bridge survey.

A. Over 25% of the strands have been lost.

**C404.4.1.3**

Damage severe enough to warrant beam replacement is rare due to the relatively stiff beam section

A strand is considered lost when the effective strand section is reduced by over 25% (e.g. 2 or more of the 7-wire strand bundle is broken).
B. If the alignment of the girder has been permanently altered by the impact causing a bend point in the beam.

C. Severe concrete damage at girder ends resulting in permanent loss of prestressing in the strand.

404.4.2 HIGH SKEW STRUCTURE

Do not use box beams with a skew greater than 30-degrees.

C404.4.2

When beam ends that are skewed greater than 30-degrees the asymmetric prestressing force becomes large enough to create a torque in the beams that can lift the beam off its bearings. Then the beam ends will rock when subjected to live load. Ultimately the rocking can cause the bearings to walk from underneath the beams.

When replacing the superstructure of an existing box beam bridge with a skew greater than 30-degrees the beams cannot be replaced in kind.

A possible solution is to use box beams for a 30-degree skew and stagger them along the centerline of bearing. Bearing pads must be installed per BD-1-11 when the beams are being staggered. The anchored bearing secures the bearing from ever moving from below the beam. Refer to BDM Figure 404-5 for additional details.

Figure 404-5
## 404.5 REINFORCED CONCRETE SLAB BRIDGES

For single span slab bridges where stage construction is used, screen all bridges to determine whether the main reinforcement is parallel to the centerline of the roadway or is perpendicular to the abutment.

Early standard drawings called for the main reinforcement to be placed perpendicular to the abutments when the skew angle became larger than a certain value. This angle was revised over the years as new standard drawings were introduced.

Concrete slab bridges should be screened according to the following criteria:

A. Prior to 1931 the slab bridge standard drawing required the main reinforcement to be placed perpendicular to the abutments when the skew angle was equal to or greater than 20-degrees. This angle was revised to 25-degrees in 1931, 30-degrees in 1933 and finally 35-degrees in 1946. The standard drawing in 1973 required the main reinforcement to be parallel with the centerline of roadway regardless of the skew angle.

B. If the skew angle of the bridge is equal to or greater than the angles listed above for the year built, a temporary longitudinal bent will have to be designed to support the slab where it is cut. For example, a bridge built in 1938 with a 25-degree skew does not require a bent, however a bridge built in 1928 with a 25-degree skew does require a bent to be designed.

C. The deck should be inspected in the field to make a visual verification of the reinforcing steel direction.

## 404.6 SEMI-INTEGRAL ABUTMENT CONVERSIONS

For substructure semi-integral conversion details refer to BDM Section 405.7.

When the superstructure and/or deck is being replaced, converting of an existing jointed structure to semi-integral should be considered.

Converting to a semi-integral structure is encouraged where possible due to the decreased maintenance relative to a jointed structure.

The detail presented in BDM Figure 404-6 may be used to alleviate the lateral earth pressure induced into the superstructure. By utilizing these details, semi-integral conversions can be achieved on structures with a fix pier and curved or dog-legged beams/girders.
If these details are used a fixed bearing is required for bridge stability. Design an expansion device to be installed at the end of the approach slab. Design and install the expansion device in accordance with standard drawing AS-2-15.

Figure 404-6

404.6.1  STRUCTURAL STEEL

Prior to encasing the beam ends prepare the ends per SSPC SP11 and paint beam ends with non-organic zinc prime coat per C&MS 514. Extend the limits of the beam preparation and painting 1-ft beyond the limits of the end diaphragm concrete.

After the diaphragm concrete is set, seal the interface between the beam and the concrete with caulk.

404.6.1.1  INADEQUATE BEARING CLEARANCE

The beam end may be coped when the clearance between the beam seat and the bottom of the flange is not sufficient to install the semi-integral bearing device. For additional details on the beam coping refer to BDM Figure 404-7. It is the responsibility of the engineer to ensure the coped beam end has sufficient capacity to carry the required loads.
This detail should only be used as an attempt to avoid performing modifications to the beam seat. Modifications to beam seat can be expensive and labor intensive. There is also a concern that the seat reinforcing will be damaged during the installation of the dowels. If seat modifications are inevitable the beam shall not be cope.

The modification to the existing beam and the components of the coping detail shall be designed by an engineer. Specify the bearing assembly to be either metalized, galvanized per C&MS 711.02, or prime coated per C&MS 514.

![Diagram showing the bearing assembly and coping detail.](image)

**Figure 404-7**
405 SUBSTRUCTURE

405.1 SUBSTRUCTURE CONDITION SURVEY

Provide a Substructure Condition Survey for every bridge rehabilitation project. Prepare the survey as near as practicable to the plan preparation stage and before beginning detail design work for the rehabilitation. The survey shall include the following information for each substructure unit on the project:

A. All bridge inventory information
B. Most recent bridge inspection findings
C. Age and history of existing rehabilitation work on the substructure units
D. Dates and results of all evaluation techniques performed on the substructure units
E. Sketches of the substructure units dimensioning: locations of unsound areas; delamination; cracking/crack density; spalling; patching; discoloration, efflorescence and moisture staining; section loss; and all testing/sampling locations
F. Photos and descriptions of all substructure units
G. Photos and descriptions of all cores and core holes (if applicable)
H. Estimate of the total substructure area deemed unsound
I. Scour assessment (if applicable)
J. Load Rating results for each substructure unit (if required by the Scope of Services)

C405.1

The purpose of the Substructure Condition Survey is to identify and estimate deterioration effects. Focus areas are locations exposed to de-icing chemicals from roadway drainage or concrete disintegration where exposed in splash zones or stream flows.

These surveys are critical in determining the condition of the substructure and whether or not it is economical to reuse. The survey provides documentation of the location and type of distress in the substructure and should be detailed similar to the deck surveys. The surveys will be used later to develop detailed repair plans, if applicable.

Extra care for should be taken for pile bents, these are the simplest and least expensive piers to construct. This pier type consists of driven piles (H-pile, circular pile, or fluted mono-tubes) with a concrete cap beam cast over the top of the piles to support the superstructure. Steel piling should be checked immediately below the splash zone, water line, and mud lines for deterioration and possible loss of section. High section loss is common these areas due to corrosion from bacterial attack at 3-ft to 6-ft below the water line or mud lines.

Abutment and pier concrete reuse may require core tests to determine the quality and strength of the concrete.

Footings and pilings exposed due to erosion and undermining shall be assessed for loss of bearing capacity and/or section.

If elements of the substructure are thought to have sufficient damage that significantly affects the load capacity then a Load Rating should be made.
K. Recommendations for substructure rehabilitation treatments and estimated service life.
   All exposed piling shall be encased during the rehabilitation project.

L. Temporary shoring requirements (if necessary)
M. Cost estimate for rehabilitation
N. Maintenance of traffic considerations for rehabilitation

405.1.1 SUBSTRUCTURE PROTECTION FOR VEHICLE COLLISION

Refer to BDM Figure 1003-1.

405.1.2 SEISMIC REHABILITATION

Evaluate all substructure units scheduled for rehabilitation according to BDM Section 303.1.4.

405.1.3 CORING

If required by Scope of Service, core substructure units concrete according to ASTM C42.

Take a minimum of two (2) cores per substructure unit.

Take at least one core from an apparently sound area to compare with core(s) taken from questionable areas. Take cores in suspicious areas to verify and further define areas of unsoundness.

Repair core holes using an ODOT approved non-shrink mortar, C&MS 705.22, installed according to the manufacturer’s recommended specifications. Seal repair with HMWM according to C&MS 512.04.

Inspect the cores for: obvious crumbling; stratification or delamination zones; soundness of aggregate; and depth and condition of reinforcing steel.

If required by the Scope of Services, test core samples for compressive strength according to ASTM C39 and for permeability according to ASTM C1202.

Substructures units with greater than 40% of the element in a condition state of 3 and 4 are candidates for replacement. Upon completion of the rehabilitation work, no portion of a main element should be below a condition state 2.

C405.1.1

An economical option when evaluating a non-redundant two column pier for vehicular collision is to make the pier redundant with the addition of a solid wall between the two columns. The minimum wall height above the ground line is 90-in.

C405.1.3

Coring is a destructive technique that provides samples for strength, permeability and chloride concentration testing whose results can indicate extent of deterioration. More importantly, this technique also provides visual evidence of the integrity of the substructure unit.

Cores should be taken when:

A. Original plan or material information is not available.
B. Determining type of repair material.
C. Aid in determining integrity of concrete
D. Multiple materials have been used.

Provide the location of all cores taken. Provide a description of the cores and all test results.
405.1.4 CHLORIDE CONCENTRATION TESTING

When specified in the Scope of Services, analyze the chloride ion content of all cores according to ASTM C1218.

For projects with no coring requirements specified, drill 1-in diameter holes in the substructure to a maximum depth of 2-in, or as specified in the Scope of Services, with a rotary impact drill. Collect powdered concrete samples at every 0.5-in of hole depth. After collecting each sample, thoroughly clean hole with compressed air before proceeding to avoid contaminating future sample collection. Label all sample containers by location and sample depth. Analyze the chloride ion content of all collected samples according to ASTM C1218. Repair all holes according to BDM Section 403.1.2. Determine the number of drill holes using the coring requirements of BDM Section 403.1.2.

Prepare a report of all test results. Include a sketch that identifies all hole locations and chloride ion concentrations.

405.2 CONCRETE REPAIR

Clearly denote areas of concrete removal on the plans. No corners of the saw cut perimeter shall be less than 90-degrees.

Provide minimum lap splices for replacement reinforcement to existing reinforcement or provide mechanical splices according to C&MS 509.07.

The coating of the replacement reinforcing steel shall match the existing reinforcement’s coating.

When replacement reinforcing steel is anticipated, provide the following pay item: ITEM 509 – REINFORCING STEEL, REPLACEMENT OF EXISTING REINFORCING STEEL, AS PER PLAN. Provide a plane note to specify reinforcement to be replaced in-kind.

C405.1.4

The purpose of chloride concentration testing is to determine the extent of chloride ingress into the concrete surface. Corrosion of the reinforcement due to chloride ingress is a primary cause of damage to reinforced concrete structures. Corrosion typically exists when the chloride ion content exceeds 2-lb/yr [500 ppm].

C405.2

Most bridge substructure rehabilitations will require some type of concrete repair. The following sections provides some conventional guidance when to use the several patching options listed in the Departments specifications.

Replacement reinforcement is required for steel damaged during concrete removal or deteriorated steel with 10% or more cross-section reduction. For an estimated quantity for replacement steel, use 5-10% of the existing steel in the repair area.
### 405.2.1 CONCRETE PATCHING WITH FORMWORK

Repair concrete reinforced with uncoated reinforcing steel according to SS844. Repair concrete reinforced with epoxy coated reinforcing steel according to C&MS 519 or SS844.

For projects that do not include provisions for temporary support, provide a plan note that clearly defines the removal limitations and loading restrictions for the concrete members under repair.

Blister concrete repair areas shall meet the minimum concrete cover requirements specified in BDM Section 304.4.8.

### 405.2.2 TROWELABLE MORTAR

Repair concrete according to SS843, Patching Concrete Structures with Trowelable Mortar.

Show the areas to be repaired with Trowelable Mortar in the plans.

Trowelable mortar should generally be specified when the repair depth is less than 1.5-in deep, and the repair area is less than 150-ft². Trowelable mortar should also be specified in lieu of pneumatically placed mortar for the case where the depth of patch is equal to or less than 3-in and the quantity is less than 150-ft². The maximum depth of patch that should be attempted with this type of mortar is 3-in.

Trowelable mortar is typically specified for overhead and vertical surfaces of substructures. These hand-applied repair mortars are generally recommended for repairs cosmetic in nature.

Generally, placement thickness should be less than 2-3/4-in on vertical surfaces, and 2-in on overhead surfaces. While, deeper placements can be made, this will require additional time and multiple lifts according to most manufacturer recommendations.
Overhead spalls less than 1-in in depth are not candidates for trowelable mortar unless plan notes are provided to indicate removal depths greater than 1-in.

C405.3

Shotcrete is used in lieu of conventional concrete patching C&MS ITEM 519 – PATCHING CONCRETE STRUCTURES, in most instances for reasons of cost or convenience. Shotcrete is advantageous in situations when formwork is cost prohibitive or impractical. Shotcrete operations can often be accomplished in areas of limited access to make repairs to structures and is a good option for large areas (i.e. ≥ 150-ft²) of vertical and overhead patching.

C405.4

Galvanic anodes consist of pure zinc encapsulated within a cylindrical cementitious shell approximately 3-in diameter and 1-in thick. The galvanic anodes provide localized corrosion protection to existing uncoated steel reinforcement. The anodes are typically placed along the perimeter of concrete patches or along the interface between new/existing concrete to mitigate the formation of new corrosion sites in the existing concrete.

C405.5

The important first step of repairing damaged or deteriorated concrete is to correctly determine the cause of damage. Knowing what caused the damage, and reducing or eliminating that cause, will make the repair last longer. If no attempt is made to eliminate the original cause of damage, the repair may fail as the original concrete did, resulting in wasted effort and investment.

C405.6

There are several strategies for abutment rehabilitation. These strategies are focused around safety, capacity, functionality, operational need, life cycle, and financial constraints at the time of rehabilitation. The amount of analysis needed to determine the appropriate rehabilitation will vary.

C405.6

Consider the following guidelines for substructure rehabilitation.
A. After rehabilitation, an abutment may be assumed to have the same life cycle as the rehabilitated superstructure.

B. Address scour problems or other hydraulics issues.

C. Perform complete removal and replacement of deteriorated bridge seats beneath and adjacent to the bearings in lieu of remedial patching.

D. Consider modifying beam seats by placing new concrete in front of the breastwall.

### 405.7 SEMI-INTEGRAL CONVERSIONS

On projects, where the deck is being replaced, consideration shall be giving to eliminating the expansion joints and converting to a semi-integral superstructure. Bridges without joints provide better protection from water and salt damage to the superstructure and substructure.

The Department will not permit the use of semi-integral abutments founded on a single row of piles. Because the superstructure is not mechanically attached to the foundation, the abutment foundation shall be stable. Abutments on a single row of piling will deflect which can cause damage to bearings or possibly even a loss of bearing.

Spread footings supported on soil may be considered for semi-integral conversions provided the analysis of all applied loadings do not cause a settlement, bearing capacity or sliding problem for the foundation.

Abutments founded on two or more rows of piling, drilled shafts and spread footings on rock do not require additional analysis in order to convert to semi-integral.

The semi-integral design is appropriate for a total unfactored expansion/contraction movement of 3-in or less. This movement equates to approximately a 250-ft expansion length for steel assuming a temperature range of 150°F and coefficient of thermal expansion of 6.5x10^-6/°F or a 500-ft expansion length for concrete assuming a temperature range of 80°F and coefficient of thermal expansion of 6.0x10^-6/°F.

Detail the geometry and layout of the approach slab, wingwalls, curbs, sidewalks, utilities and transition parapets to permit the anticipated longitudinal movement of the superstructure. Wingwalls details shall accommodate the relative movement of between the walls and the approach slab since the superstructure and approach slab move together. If the approach slab were connected to turned back wings in any manner, then movement of the entire superstructure would be restricted. Also refer to BDM Section 306.2.2.6 for further discussion.
For bridges with skews, design the rehabilitated substructures for the forces caused by superstructure expansion/contraction. Refer to BDM Section 306.2.2.6 for more information. These forces could be transferred with Diaphragm Guides, wingwalls or guided bearings. Installing new Diaphragm Guides and guided bearings may be difficult because of the primary steel in the bearing seats and should therefore be considered when bearing seats are also being replaced. These forces may also be too large for a typical turned back wingwall to resist.

405.8 PIER REHABILITATION

Repair concrete according to BDM Section 405.2.

Seal all surfaces of piers adjacent to roadways as described in BDM Section 306.1.2 with epoxy-urethane or non-epoxy sealer according to C&MS 512.

Protect pier supports added to widened substructures according to BDM Section 1003.10 S3.6.5.1.

Provide sufficient details and plan notes to clearly identify the limits and methods of the proposed repairs on the plans.

405.9 PIER CAP STRENGTHENING

The shear capacity of existing reinforced concrete pier caps may be a common item contributing to an inventory level rating factor less than 1.00 for the Design Loading defined in BDM Section 401.3.

Refer to BDM Section 401.4 for more information related to Design Exception requirements and considerations.
Regardless of the method used to increase the structural capacity of a pier cap, perform an analysis and detail the rehabilitation to represent the correct sequence of load application.

Provide a Composite Fiber Wrap System in accordance with PN519. Clearly dimension the FRP locations in the plans and specify the factored capacity increase (in Kips) required for each location identified. Include pay items for the work necessary to restore damaged and/or unsound concrete substrate deeper than 0.5-in and larger than 4-in². Provide a pay item for epoxy injection when cracks in the existing substrate are greater than 10 mils (0.010-in).

Designate each appurtenance attached to existing members to be wrapped to be removed and reinstalled. The Department will pay for this work separately from the Composite Fiber Wrap System.

For example, if the existing pier cap is not jacked and supported to remove dead load, then the strengthening methodology will not contribute to the dead load carrying capacity of the member.

The Department considers the use of externally applied composite FRP as the most feasible and economical method to address strengthening of pier caps in good condition. PN519 does not include work to repair concrete surfaces. This work needs to be paid for under separate pay items.

Other methods to consider for strengthening pier caps experiencing varying degrees of deterioration include externally applied post-tensioning and normally reinforced concrete encasement. In both cases, all steel shall be encased in concrete with adequate cover and sufficient room to permit the flow of concrete and aggregate.

**405.10 PIER COLUMN WRAPPING**

Provide a Composite Fiber Wrap System in accordance with PN519. Clearly dimension the FRP locations in the plans and specify the factored capacity increase (in Kips) or confining stress required for each location identified.

Include pay items for the work necessary to restore damaged and/or unsound concrete substrate deeper than 0.5-in and larger than 4-in². Provide a pay item for epoxy injection when cracks in the existing substrate are greater than 10 mils (0.010-in).

Designate appurtenances attached to existing members receiving FRP to be removed and reinstalled. The Department will pay for this work separately from the Composite Fiber Wrap System.

When 15% or more of the surface area contains corroded reinforcing steel, provide a layer of concrete encasement to be placed around it. To add a concrete encasement:

A. Place anchor bars in existing solid concrete using expansion anchors or epoxy anchors.
B. Place horizontal and vertical reinforcement or welded wire reinforcement in the encasement.
C. Place forms and pour concrete with no less than a 6-in thickness.
D. Provide FRP
405.11 FOUNDATIONS

The Department will allow the reuse of bridge foundations for rehabilitation projects provided each of the following items are met:

A. There are no scour issues.
B. The foundations are structurally sound.
C. The foundations are not exhibiting settlement or rotational issues.
D. Foundations are not timber.

Reusing existing bridge foundations can save considerable costs and shorten delivery times significantly.

The determination of structural soundness requires consideration of section loss due to corrosion. Refer to BDM Section 405.11.1 for more information on corrosion rates.

405.11.1 EXISTING PILE

When the Scope of Services for a rehabilitation project requires an assessment of the existing foundation, evaluate both the structural and geotechnical resistance of existing piling to be reused.

To determine the factored structural resistance for existing steel piling, utilize a corrosion rate of 0.47-mils/yr (0.00047-in/yr) and a total service life equal to the current age plus an additional 75-yr service life.

Steel piling should be inspected immediately below the splash zone or water line for deterioration and possible loss of section. High section loss has occurred in some areas due to corrosion from bacterial attack at 3-ft to 6-ft below the water line. Calculated structural resistance of existing piling and pile caps shall account for measured and estimated section loss.

Provide pile encasement for exposed steel piling for bridges over waterways. The pile encasement shall extend a minimum of 3-ft below the ground line/stream bottom.

A form of pile encasement for new bridges is detailed on Standard Bridge Drawing CPP-1-08. For existing bridges, the polyethylene pipe may be cut and half and held in place after installation with steel straps. The top of the encasement shall be located no more than 1-ft from the bottom of the pile cap and the concrete fill shall be sloped to drain.

Alternatively, the exposed piling can be coated in accordance with ITEM 514 – PAINTING OF STRUCTURAL STEEL or SS845 – SHOP AND FIELD METALLIZING OF STRUCTURAL STEEL.

405.11.2 PILE ANALYSIS

Determine the geotechnical resistance of existing piling to be reused in a rehabilitation project using the following criteria:

A. For foundations where the loading to any single pile in a group is not modified by the addition of new piling, determine the geotechnical resistance using a resistance factor equal to 0.70 on the original minimum driven pile capacity.

This requirement applies to pile groups whose capacity will not be augmented by additional new piling. This also applies to strip foundations where new piling added for widenings do not affect the loading applied to the existing piling in the strip.

This requirement assumes the original plans for the existing piling provides the minimum driven pile capacity.
If driving logs from the installation of the existing piling are available, use the driven pile capacity specified on the logs.

If the original plans are not available or do not include the minimum driven pile capacity, proceed to (C) below.

This requirement assumes pile driving logs are available from the installation of the existing piling. If logs are not available, proceed to (C) below.

This requirement assumes the length of the existing pile is known, and boring logs of the soil profile are available.

If boring logs are not available, a new subsurface investigation will be necessary to generate new boring logs.

If the length of the existing pile is unknown, non-destructive test methods can be performed on the existing piling to determine their length.

This requirement assumes the length of existing pile is unknown, there are no boring logs, and there are no driving logs available.

If no pile driving logs or boring logs are available for the piles. The piles may not be considered for re-use.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition/Resistance Determination Method for existing pile</th>
<th>Resistance Factor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pile driving logs available</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nominal Bearing Resistance of Single Pile—Dynamic Analysis Methods, $\varphi_{\text{dyn}}$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WSDOT Pile Driving Formula (WA-RD 610.1: Development of the WSDOT Pile Driving Formula and Its Calibration for LRFD; Allen, March 2005)</td>
<td>0.55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FHWA-modified Gates dynamic pile formula (as defined by LRFD EQ 10.7.3.8.5-1)</td>
<td>0.40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engineering News dynamic pile formula (as defined by LRFD EQ. 10.7.3.8.5-2)</td>
<td>0.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Boring logs available</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nominal Bearing Resistance of Single Pile—Static Analysis Methods, $\varphi_{\text{stat}}$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Side Resistance and End Bearing: Clay and Mixed Soils $\alpha$-method (Tomlinson, 1987)</td>
<td>0.35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Side Resistance and End Bearing: Sand Nordlund/Thurman Method (Hannigan et al., 2005)</td>
<td>0.45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CPT-method (Schmertmann)</td>
<td>0.50</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
405.11.3 MICROPILES

Micropiles can withstand axial and/or lateral loads and may be considered a substitute for conventional piles or as one component in a composite soil/pile mass, depending upon the design concept employed. Micropiles are installed by methods that cause minimal disturbance to adjacent structures, soil, and the environment. They can be installed in access-restrictive environments and in all soil types and ground conditions. Micropiles can be installed at angles using the same type of equipment used for ground anchor and grouting projects.

405.11.4 SPREAD FOOTINGS

Do not modify the footprint for an existing spread footing founded on soil.

405.11.5 DRILLED SHAFT

When the Scope of Services requires an evaluation of existing drilled shaft foundations for a rehabilitation project, perform analysis of both the structural and geotechnical resistance.

405.12 WIDENING

Design anchorage into existing concrete according to ACI 318-14, Chapter 17 using non-shrink, non-metallic grouts according to C&MS Item 510.

The Department will not permit the use of concrete anchors loaded under sustained tension.

405.12.1 ABUTMENT WIDENING

Make abutments and footings continuous by splicing new reinforcement to either:

A. Dowels anchored into the existing substructure.
B. The existing substructure’s reinforcement exposed by concrete removal operations.
Seal abutment surfaces according to BDM Section 303.1.

### 405.12.2 PIER WIDENING

Provide separate caps for widenings requiring three or more columns.

C405.12.2

Consider connecting new caps for multi-columned piers, in which two or less columns are required, to the existing caps and avoid non-redundant members.

For bridge widening projects, the pier cap may be widened and cantilevered off the existing stem. Refer to BDM Section 405.12 for restrictions on anchor dowels.

Refer to BDM Section C405.8 for more information on pier protection for non-redundant members.

### 405.12.3 FOUNDATION WIDENING

Support widened foundations on piles, drilled shafts or spread footings on rock to limit differential settlement.

C405.12.3

Consider differential foundation settlements. For example, if it is required to widen a bridge adjacent to an existing spread footing, it is possible that the existing foundation has settled as much as it is going to. However, if the widened portion is placed on a new spread footing, then that portion will settle with respect to the original and distress to the structure will result.

### 405.13 MECHANICALLY STABILIZED EARTH (MSE) WALLS

Refer to Design Data Sheet, MSEWR-1-18 for repairs to MSE walls -MSE Wall Repairs located on the OSE website.

### 405.14 SUBSTRUCTURE DRAINAGE

Retrofit all dysfunctional drainage systems. Provide replacement drainage according to BDM Sections 200 and 300.

Perform pavement drainage calculations according to the L&D, Vol. 2. If the calculations indicate that the existing scuppers are not necessary, and the deck is not to be replaced, permanently plug the existing scuppers and collect the additional drainage at the end of the bridge. If the deck is to be replaced, remove the scuppers and grind all scupper weld locations smooth.

For existing scuppers to remain, extend the length so that the termination is at least 8-in below the bottom of the bottom flange. Remove and repair or completely replace existing scuppers with extensive section loss due to corrosion.

Damage often occurs to existing bridges as a result of poorly designed drainage. Proper drainage is extremely important to the longevity of the structure.
405.15 BRIDGE SCOUR

Evaluate all existing foundations to be reused for scour.

C405.15

Review available hydraulic analysis results and records of flood history.

At a minimum the investigation should consist of:

A. Determining on what the substructures are founded.
B. Determining depth of the foundations.
C. Determining whether potential scour will endanger the substructure’s integrity. Local scour and stream meander need to be considered.

Hydraulic considerations include:

A. Changes in the channel location or hydraulic opening through the structure since initial construction.
B. Changes in drainage conditions affecting the bridge.
C. Where the existing vertical alignment is to be maintained.
SECTION 500 – TEMPORARY STRUCTURES
501 GENERAL ................................................................................................................................................. 5-1
502 PRELIMINARY DESIGN ........................................................................................................................ 5-1
502.1 HYDRAULICS .................................................................................................................................. 5-1
503 DETAIL DESIGN ..................................................................................................................................... 5-1
504 GENERAL NOTES ................................................................................................................................... 5-2
SECTION 500 – TEMPORARY STRUCTURES

501 GENERAL

This section is a supplement to C&MS 502, Structures For Maintaining Traffic. All design guidelines of C&MS 502 apply.

502 PRELIMINARY DESIGN

For the Structure Type Study, the Designer shall show the grade, alignment, approximate location and width of the temporary structure on the Preliminary Structure Site Plan.

For the Preliminary Design Report, the Designer shall show the grade and the alignment of the temporary structure on the Site Plan. The Designer shall also determine the roadway width, hydraulic design, clearance requirements, and all other design parameters in conjunction with the development of the preliminary design. When the temporary structure can adequately be shown on the Site Plan for the permanent bridge, a Site Plan for the temporary structure is not required. The required Site Plan information shall be as detailed in Section 200. The Designer shall submit the preliminary design of the temporary structure concurrently with the Preliminary Design Report at the Stage 1 Detailed Design Review Submission for the permanent structure.

502.1 HYDRAULICS

Designers shall refer to the L&D, Vol. 2, Section 1011 for more information.

503 DETAIL DESIGN

The temporary structure detail plans shall be complete and independent of the permanent structure plans. The temporary structure detail plans shall include general plan and elevation views, general notes, a table of estimated quantities, a reinforcing steel bar list and all necessary detail plan sheets. The Designer should clearly indicate that the temporary structure will be paid for under one Lump Sum bid item - ITEM 502 - STRUCTURE FOR MAINTAINING TRAFFIC, and the table provided for estimated quantities is “For Estimating Purposes Only”.

Temporary bridge structures shall be designed as permanent structures in accordance with the AASHTO LRFD Bridge Design Specifications and this Manual except that the design live loading, HL-93, may be reduced by 25 percent. The temporary bridge plans shall include Design Data in the General Notes as defined in BDM Section 602.

For ice pressure loads, the thickness of ice shall be assumed to be 6-in, with a 200-psi effective ice strength. The force shall be assumed to act at the level of the design year highwater elevation.

The bridge railing for the temporary structures shall meet the requirements of BDM Section 309.4. If the Designer elects to use standard Type 5 or 5A guardrail or standard portable concrete barrier, the Designer should account for the deflection characteristics of the barrier.

Generally, a temporary structure should be designed to be easily constructed and removed with minimal cost. The following items should be considered when designing a temporary bridge:

A. Timber decks, H-pile bents, and simple spans are commonly used.
B. Locally available lumber should be specified. The allowable design unit stresses of the lumber used in the design shall be specified in the plans. State whether timber sizes are full sawn or standard dressed sizes.
C. The nominal thickness of wood plank or strip floor shall be 3-in minimum.
D. Timber floors shall be securely fastened to the stringers and stringers shall be securely fastened to the pier and abutment caps.
E. When circumstances permit, all or part of the existing bridge may be used for the run-around.
F. Field welded connections shall require nondestructive testing as per C&MS 513. Bolted connections are preferred generally and are more economical.

G. Designs that minimize debris accumulation should be considered.

H. Shop Drawings are not required. Adequate plan details need to be provided.

I. The road surface on the temporary structure shall have antiskid characteristics, crown, drainage and superelevation in accordance with all ODOT and AASHTO publications.

504 GENERAL NOTES

The designer should provide plan note(s) with the Temporary Structure plans similar to the following:

A. The Contractor may substitute used or alternate members for the members shown on the Temporary Structure Plans, provided that the strength of the substitute or alternate member is equal to or greater than the original member. Maintain waterway opening size and required clearances. Submit calculations for the substitute or alternate member according to C&MS 502. Use only new bolts.

B. Structural steel need not be painted.

The following instructions are provided to assist in developing the necessary general notes.

When ITEM 513 - STRUCTURAL STEEL is specified in the plans, only the following C&MS descriptions shall apply:

A. Straightening ................................................................................................................................. C&MS 513.11
B. Holes for High Strength and Bearing Bolts .................................................................................. C&MS 513.19
C. High Strength Steel Bolts, Nuts and Washers ........................................................................... C&MS 513.20
D. Welding ........................................................................................................................................ C&MS 513.21
E. Nondestructive Testing ................................................................................................................ C&MS 513.25
F. Shipping, Storage and Erection ..................................................................................................... C&MS 513.26

When Item 511 is specified in the plans, the C&MS 511 surface finish requirements shall be waived.

The following notes shall be included in the Structure General Notes. In the roadway plans the pay item description “614 Maintenance of Traffic” shall include an “as per Plan.” Coordination with the roadway plans for this item is required.

A. MAINTENANCE: Maintain all portions of the temporary structure in good condition with regard to strength, safety and rideability. The Department will consider this maintenance to be incidental to ITEM 614 - MAINTAINING TRAFFIC. Maintain the waterway opening shown on the plans at all times. If debris accumulates within the waterway opening or on any part of the structure promptly remove the debris. The Department will compensate for debris removal according to C&MS 109.05.

B. CLOSING OF THE TEMPORARY STRUCTURE: If for any reason or at any time the temporary structure’s ability to safely carry traffic is in question, immediately take the actions necessary to protect traffic, repair and reopen the temporary structure. When closing a temporary structure for this purpose, immediately notify the Engineer and the appropriate law enforcement agency. Water elevations exceeding the design (5) year highwater elevation or an excessive accumulation of debris within the waterway opening shall be sufficient reasons to close the temporary structure. Mark the design (5) year highwater elevation with fluorescent paint on the temporary structure, at a visible location. The Department will consider the costs associated with closing the temporary structure to be incidental to ITEM 614 - MAINTAINING TRAFFIC.
SECTION 600 – TYPICAL GENERAL NOTES

601 DESIGN REFERENCES.............................................................................................................. 6-1
601.1 GENERAL.......................................................................................................................... 6-1
601.2 STANDARD DRAWINGS AND SUPPLEMENTAL SPECIFICATIONS.............................. 6-1
601.3 DESIGN SPECIFICATIONS.............................................................................................. 6-1

602 DESIGN DATA......................................................................................................................... 6-2
602.1 LRFD LOAD MODIFIERS.................................................................................................. 6-2
602.2 DESIGN LOADING.......................................................................................................... 6-3
602.3 DESIGN STRESSES........................................................................................................ 6-3
602.4 FOR RAILWAY PROJECTS............................................................................................. 6-4
602.5 MONOLITHIC WEARING SURFACE.............................................................................. 6-4
602.6 SEALING OF CONCRETE SURFACES........................................................................... 6-5

603 EXISTING STRUCTURE REMOVAL NOTES......................................................................... 6-5
603.1 GENERAL REMOVAL NOTES.......................................................................................... 6-5
603.2 CONCRETE DECK REMOVAL PROJECTS........................................................................ 6-5

604 TEMPORARY STRUCTURE CONSTRUCTION....................................................................... 6-7

605 EMBANKMENT CONSTRUCTION......................................................................................... 6-7
605.1 FOUNDATIONS ON PILES IN NEW EMBANKMENTS...................................................... 6-7
605.2 FOUNDATIONS ON SPREAD FOOTINGS IN NEW EMBANKMENTS.............................. 6-9
605.3 EMBANKMENT CONSTRUCTION NOTE ......................................................................... 6-10
605.4 UNCLASSIFIED EXCAVATION...................................................................................... 6-10
605.5 PROPRIETARY RETAINING WALLS................................................................................ 6-11
605.6 FOUNDATIONS ON DRILLED SHAFTS IN NEW EMBANKMENTS.................................. 6-11

606 FOUNDATIONS...................................................................................................................... 6-12
606.1 PILES DRIVEN TO BEDROCK.......................................................................................... 6-12
606.2 FRICTION TYPE PILES.................................................................................................. 6-14
606.3 STEEL PILE POINTS OR SHOES................................................................................... 6-15
606.4 PILE SPLICES............................................................................................................... 6-16
606.5 PILE ENCASEMENT......................................................................................................... 6-17
606.6 SPREAD FOOTING FOUNDATIONS............................................................................... 6-17
606.7 PILE DRIVING............................................................................................................... 6-20
606.8 DRILLED SHAFTS.......................................................................................................... 6-25

607 MAINTENANCE OF TRAFFIC............................................................................................... 6-27

608 RAILROAD GRADE SEPARATION PROJECTS..................................................................... 6-28
608.1 CONSTRUCTION CLEARANCE......................................................................................... 6-28
608.2 RAILROAD AERIAL LINES.............................................................................................. 6-28

609 UTILITY LINES...................................................................................................................... 6-28

610 REHABILITATION OF EXISTING STRUCTURES................................................................... 6-28
610.1 EXISTING STRUCTURE VERIFICATION........................................................................ 6-28
610.2 REINFORCING STEEL REPLACEMENT......................................................................... 6-29
610.3 REHABILITATION – STRUCTURAL STEEL....................................................................... 6-29
610.4 REFURBISHED BEARINGS............................................................................................. 6-29
610.5 JACKING BRIDGE SUPERSTRUCTURES......................................................................... 6-30
610.6 FATIGUE MEMBER INSPECTION..................................................................................... 6-30

611 MISCELLANEOUS GENERAL NOTES.................................................................................. 6-30
611.1 BEARING PAD SHIMS, PRESTRESSED......................................................................... 6-30
611.2 CLEANING STEEL IN PATCHES...................................................................................... 6-31
611.3 COFFERDAMS AND EXCAVATION BRACING.............................................................. 6-31
611.4 DECK PLACEMENT NOTES............................................................................................ 6-31
611.4.1 FALSEWORK AND FORMS........................................................................................ 6-31
611.4.2 DECK PLACEMENT DESIGN ASSUMPTIONS............................................................ 6-32
611.5 VANDAL PROTECTION FENCING.................................................................................. 6-32
611.6 PRECAST WALLS.............................................................................................................. 6-32
SECTION 600 – TYPICAL GENERAL NOTES

601 DESIGN REFERENCES

601.1 GENERAL

This section contains various typical general notes. The designer needs to assure that the typical notes are complete and apply to the specific project. These notes may need to be revised or specific notes must be written to conform to the actual conditions that exist on each individual project.

601.2 STANDARD DRAWINGS AND SUPPLEMENTAL SPECIFICATIONS

The designer shall list all Standard Bridge Drawings and Supplemental Specifications that apply, giving date of approval or latest revision date, if revised.

The Designer shall also ensure the listed Standard Bridge Drawings and Supplemental Specifications are transferred to the project plans title sheet and match the information on the title sheet.

[601.2-1] REFER to the following Standard Bridge Drawing(s):

________ Dated (revised) _______
________ Dated (revised) _______
________ Dated (revised) _______

and to the following Supplemental Specification(s):

________ Dated _______
________ Dated _______

601.3 DESIGN SPECIFICATIONS

The designer shall include the following note specifying the design specifications used on the structure. If the note is not correct, then the note should be revised with the correct criterion that describes the design specifications for the structure.


NOTE TO DESIGNER:

* Designer should fill-in current edition.

The use of note [601.3-1] stipulates the use of live load distribution and designs based on AASHTO specifications, assumptions and standard beam theory design. For the vast majority of ODOT bridges this criterion is not only adequate but also advantageously conservative. There are structure types which, due to either AASHTO’s own limitations or the type of structure, require specific live load distribution factors or other analysis methods other than classical beam theory to analyze the structure. Some examples may include a highly skewed slab bridge, a curved steel girder bridge, cable stayed bridges, etc. If the structure’s analysis required the use of 2D or 3D models including grillage, finite element, finite strip, classical plate solutions the following note should be added.
601.3-2  SPECIAL DESIGN SPECIFICATIONS: This bridge required the use of a # (# two or three) dimensional model using the ## (# grillage, finite element, finite strip, classical plate theory, etc.) design method to analyze the structure. The computer program used for structural analysis was _______. The bridge components designed by this method and the live load distribution factors used were:

Dead Load Distribution: (The designer is to explain the assumptions used in how the dead load was applied and distributed)

Live Load Distribution Factors:
Exterior Members- ___ for wheel (or axle) load & ___ for lane load moments.
   - ___ for wheel (or axle) load & ___ for lane load shears
Interior Members- ___ for wheel (or axle) load & ___ for lane load moments.
   - ___ for wheel (or axle) load & ___ for lane load shears

NOTE TO DESIGNER: Modify the wording of the note as necessary. Also amend the Design Specifications note 601.3-1 with the wording “excepted as noted elsewhere in the plans”

602  DESIGN DATA
The designer shall include the following pertinent design information with the Structure General Notes for all bridge plans:

602.1  LRFD LOAD MODIFIERS
For bridges with non-redundant components, the following note shall be included:

[602.1-1]  REDUNDANCY: The following item(s) were considered non-redundant for design and include a load modifier equal to 1.05 in accordance with the AASHTO LRFD Bridge Design Specifications, Article 1.3.4:

NOTE TO DESIGNER: Include a list of all items considered non-redundant for design in accordance with BDM Section 1001.2

For bridges with non-redundant foundation components, the following notes shall be included:

[602.1-2]  REDUNDANCY: The piles supporting the following substructure(s) were considered non-redundant for design and include a modified resistance factor equal to (1) in accordance with the AASHTO LRFD Bridge Design Specifications, Article 10.5.5.2.3.

[602.1-3]  REDUNDANCY: The drilled shafts supporting the following substructure(s) were considered non-redundant for design and include a modified resistance factor equal to (1) in accordance with the AASHTO LRFD Bridge Design Specifications, Article 10.5.5.2.4.

NOTE TO DESIGNER: Include a list of all substructures with pile foundations or drilled shafts considered non-redundant for design in accordance with AASHTO LRFD 10.5.5.2.3 & 10.5.5.2.4.

(1) Provide the modified resistance factor value. This should be equal to 80% of the resistance factor used for design on redundant pile foundations.

For all bridges the following note shall be included:
OPERATIONAL IMPORTANCE: A load modifier of ___ has been assumed for the design of this structure in accordance with the AASHTO LRFD Bridge Design Specifications, Article 1.3.5 and the ODOT Bridge Design Manual.

NOTE TO DESIGNER: Refer to BDM Section 1001.3 for guidance.

602.2 DESIGN LOADING

For bridges designed for highway loads, the design loading shall be:

[602.2-1] DESIGN LOADING: HL-93
Future Wearing Surface (FWS) of 0.0XX * kips/ft².

NOTE TO DESIGNER: *
Designer should fill-in FWS allowance based on BDM Section 301.4 or 401.3.

For bikeway/pedestrian bridges that will not accommodate vehicular traffic the design loading shall be:

[602.2-2] DESIGN LOADING: 0.090 kips/ ft²

For bikeway/pedestrian bridges subject to vehicular traffic the design loading shall be:

[602.2-3] DESIGN LOADING: 0.090 kips/ft² and H15-44 vehicle

602.3 DESIGN STRESSES

A. General Design Data:

[602.3-1] DESIGN DATA :
Concrete Class (1) - compressive strength 4.5 ksi (superstructure)
Concrete Class (2) - compressive strength 4.0 ksi (substructure)
Concrete Class QC (3), with (4) -in max. aggregate size - compressive strength 4.5 ksi (drilled shaft)
Reinforcing steel - minimum yield strength 60 ksi
Structural Steel - ASTM A709 Grade (5) - yield strength (4) ksi
Steel H-piles - ASTM A572 - yield strength 50 ksi

NOTE TO DESIGNER: Modify note [602.3-1] as necessary. Delete references that are not applicable to project.

(1) Class QC2 Concrete for superstructure
(2) Class QC1 Concrete for substructure
(3) Class QC5 Concrete for drilled shafts < 7'-0", Class QC4 Concrete for drilled shafts ≥ 7'-0"
(4) For all drilled shafts, specify the maximum coarse aggregate size based on the spacing of the reinforcing steel. See BDM Section 305.4.4.3 for guidance.
(5) Grade 50 - yield strength 50 ksi, or
Grade 50W - yield strength 50 ksi, or
Grade HPS70W - yield strength 70 ksi, or
Grade 36 - yield strength 36 ksi

If more than one grade of steel is selected, the description shall clearly indicate where the different grades are used in the structure.
B. Additional Design Data for Prestressed Concrete Members:

Provide the following note in addition to note [602.2-1].

[602.3-2] DESIGN DATA:

Concrete for prestressed beams:
Compressive Strength (final) - (1) ksi
Compressive Strength (release) - (2) ksi
Welded Wire Fabric:
Yield Strength – 70 ksi (4)
Prestressing strand:
Area = (3) in²
Ultimate Strength = 270 ksi
Initial stress = 202.5 ksi (Low relaxation strands)

NOTE TO DESIGNER:
(1) Specify 28-day compressive strength from the following range: 5.5 – 7.0 ksi
(2) Specify compressive strength at release from the following range: 4.0 – 5.0 ksi
(3) Specify prestressing strand area from the following: 0.167 in², or 0.217 in²
(4) Reference to Welded Wire Fabric applies to I-beams only.

602.4 FOR RAILWAY PROJECTS

For structures carrying railroad traffic, provide notes [602.3-1]; [602.3-2] (if necessary); and the following notes on the project plans:

[602.4-1] DESIGN SPECIFICATIONS: This structure conforms to the requirements of the "Manual for Railway Engineering" by the American Railway Engineering and Maintenance- of- way Association, XXXX * Edition.

CONSTRUCTION AND MATERIAL SPECIFICATIONS: State of Ohio, Department of Transportation, dated January 1, XXXX. *

NOTE TO DESIGNER: Note [601.3-2] may be required if special criteria or distributions have been used for the design of this rail structure. See [601.3-2] and determine if a modified note is required for inclusion. Fill-in items above marked “*” with current edition.

Provide the following note, modified as necessary to meet AREMA and/or a specific railroad criterion, with all railroad structures.

[602.4-2] DESIGN LOADING: Cooper E-80 with diesel impact

602.5 MONOLITHIC WEARING SURFACE

Furnish the following note for concrete bridge decks.

[602.5-1] MONOLITHIC WEARING SURFACE is assumed, for design purposes, to be 1 inch thick.
**602.6 SEALING OF CONCRETE SURFACES**

Use the following notes when permanent anti-graffiti coatings are required:

[602.6-1] ITEM 512 SEALING OF CONCRETE SURFACES, AS PER PLAN, (PERMANENT GRAFFITI PROTECTION):

Apply a permanent graffiti coating qualified according to S1083 that is compatible with the concrete sealer over which it is applied. Apply the graffiti coating in accordance with the manufacturer’s printed instructions.

**603 EXISTING STRUCTURE REMOVAL NOTES**

**603.1 GENERAL REMOVAL NOTES**

The following sample notes will serve as a guide in composing the note(s) for the removal of the existing structure. Modify the notes as required to fit the conditions. Use the following note if it is the desire of the owner to salvage any portion of the bridge.

[603.1-1] REMOVAL OF EXISTING STRUCTURE: Carefully dismantle the _________ and store along the right-of-way for disposal by the State's forces.

Describe the degree of care to be exercised in the removal in sufficient detail to allow accurate bidding. If this option is used, the pay item shall be “as per plan”.

Use the following note when removal of structure to 1 foot below ground line as specified in C&MS 202 will not fill the specific requirements of the project.

[603.1-2] ITEM 202, PORTIONS OF STRUCTURE REMOVED, AS PER PLAN:

Remove abutments to Elev. ___ Remove piers to Elev. ___.

Use the following note when special protection of an existing structure to be incorporated into a new structure is required.

[603.1-3] ITEM 202, PORTIONS OF STRUCTURE REMOVED, AS PER PLAN: This item shall include the elements indicated in the plans and general notes and that are not separately listed for payment, except for wearing course removal. Items to be removed include all existing materials being replaced by new construction and miscellaneous items that are not shown to be incorporated into the final construction and are directed to be removed by the Engineer. The use of explosives, headache balls and/or hoe-rams will not be permitted. The method of removal and the weight of hammer shall be approved by the Engineer. Perform all work in a manner that will not cut, elongate or damage the existing reinforcing steel to be preserved. Chipping hammers shall not be heavier than the nominal 90-pound class. Pneumatic hammers shall not be placed in direct contact with reinforcing steel that is to be retained in the rebuilt structure. Submit construction plans according to C&MS 501.05.

**603.2 CONCRETE DECK REMOVAL PROJECTS**

Use the following removal note for concrete deck removal projects, where the existing superstructure is to remain. Delete the portions in the note that are not appropriate for the specific project.

[603.2-1] ITEM 202, PORTIONS OF STRUCTURE REMOVED, AS PER PLAN DESCRIPTION: This work consists of the removal of concrete decks including sidewalks, parapets, railings, deck joints and other appurtenances from steel supporting systems (beams, girders, cross-frames, etc.). The provisions of Item 202 apply except as specified by the following notes. Perform work carefully during deck removals to protect portions of such systems that are to be salvaged and incorporated into the proposed structure. The use of explosives, headache balls and/or hoe ram type of equipment is prohibited. Submit construction plans according to C&MS 501.05.
PROTECTION OF STEEL SUPPORT SYSTEMS: Before deck slab cutting is permitted, draw the outline of primary steel members in contact with the bottom of the deck on the surface of deck. Drill small diameter pilot holes 2 inches outside these lines to confirm the location of flange edges. Deck cuts over or within 2 inches of flange edges shall not extend lower than the bottom layer of deck slab reinforcing steel. Cuts made outside 2 inches of flange edges may extend the full depth of the deck. Perform work carefully during cutting of the deck slab to avoid damaging steel members that are to be incorporated into the proposed structure. Replace or repair steel members damaged by the deck slab cutting operations at no cost to the project. At least 7 days before performing repair work, submit a proposed repair plan, developed by an Ohio registered professional engineer to the Engineer. Obtain the Engineer’s approval before performing repair.

PROTECTION OF PRESTRESSED CONCRETE SUPPORT SYSTEMS: Before deck slab cutting is permitted, draw the outline of primary prestressed concrete members in contact with the bottom of the deck on the surface of deck. Drill small diameter pilot holes 2 inches outside these lines to confirm the location of the edges of those members. Deck cuts over or within 2 inches of flange edges shall not extend lower than the bottom layer of deck slab reinforcing steel. Cuts made outside 2 inches of flange edges may extend the full depth of the deck. Perform work carefully during cutting of the deck slab to avoid damaging prestressed concrete members that are to be incorporated into the proposed structure. Replace or repair prestressed concrete members damaged by the deck slab cutting operations at no cost to the project. At least 7 days before performing repair work, submit a proposed repair plan, developed by an Ohio registered professional engineer to the Engineer. Obtain the Engineer’s approval before performing repair.

REMOVAL METHODS: The Contractor may remove concrete by cutting and by means of hand operated pneumatic hammers employing pointed or blunted chisel type tools. For removals over structural members (prestressed box beam, I-beam, steel beam steel girder, etc.), the Contractor may use a hammer heavier than 35 pounds but not to exceed 90 pounds unless approved by the Engineer. Removal methods over structural members shall ensure adequate depth control and prevent nicking or gouging the primary structural members. Due to the possible presence of attachments (e.g., finishing machine, scupper and form supports, etc.) to existing structural members, perform work carefully during deck removal to avoid damaging structural members that are to remain. Replace or repair structural members damaged by the removal operations at no cost to the project. At least 7 days before performing repair work, submit a proposed repair plan, developed by an Ohio registered professional engineer to the Engineer. Obtain the Engineer’s approval before performing repair.

DECK REMOVALS - COMPOSITE DECK DESIGNS – STEEL SUPERSTRUCTURES: Due to the presence of welded studs to the existing structural steel, submit a detailed procedure of the deck removal to the Engineer at least 7 days before construction begins. Department acceptance is not required. The procedure shall include all details, equipment and methods to be used for removal of the concrete over the flanges and around the studs. Replace or repair main steel and studs damaged by the removal operations at no cost to the project. At least 7 days before performing repair work, submit a proposed repair plan, developed by an Ohio registered professional engineer to the Engineer. Obtain the Engineer’s approval before performing repair.

DECK REMOVALS - COMPOSITE DECK DESIGNS – PRESTRESSED SUPERSTRUCTURES: Due to the presence of composite reinforcing steel between the deck and the prestressed beam flanges, submit a detailed procedure of the deck removal to the Engineer at least 7 days before construction begins. Department acceptance is not required. The procedure shall include all details, equipment and methods of removal over the prestressed beams and around the composite reinforcing steel. Replace or repair prestressed members and composite reinforcing damaged by the removal operations at no cost to the project. At least 7 days before performing repair work, submit a proposed repair plan, developed by an Ohio registered professional engineer to the Engineer. Obtain the Engineer’s approval before performing repair.
EXISTING WELDED ATTACHMENTS: Remove existing welded attachments (e.g., finishing machine and form supports; and supports for scuppers and bulb angles which are to be removed) located in the designated tension portions of the top flanges of existing steel members and grind the flange surfaces smooth. Carefully grind parallel to the flanges.

MEASUREMENT & PAYMENT: The Department will measure the quantity of removals on a lump sum basis. The Department will pay for the accepted quantities of removals at the contract price for ITEM 202 - PORTIONS OF STRUCTURE REMOVED, AS PER PLAN. For modifications to or extensions of existing concrete substructure members where aesthetics is a concern, include the following notes in an Item 202, as per plan note.

[603.2-2] CUT LINE CONSTRUCTION JOINT PREPARATION: Saw cut boundaries of proposed concrete removals 1 inch deep. Remove concrete to a rough surface. Leave the existing reinforcing steel, if required in the plans, in place. Install dowel bars if specified. Prior to concrete placement abrasively clean joint surfaces and existing exposed reinforcement to remove loose and disintegrated concrete and loose rust. Thoroughly clean the joint surface and exposed reinforcement of all dirt, dust, rust or other foreign material by the use of water, air under pressure, or other methods that produce satisfactory results. Existing reinforcing steel does not have to have a bright steel finish but remove all pack and loose rust. Thoroughly drench existing concrete surfaces with clean water and allow to dry to a damp condition before placing concrete.

[603.2-3] SUBSTRUCTURE CONCRETE REMOVAL: Remove concrete by means of approved pneumatic hammers employing pointed and blunt chisel tools. Hydraulic hoe-ram type hammers will not be permitted. The weight of the hammer shall not be more than 35 pounds for removal within 18 inches of portions to be preserved. Outside the 18 inch limit, the contractor may use hammers not exceeding 90 pounds upon the approval of the Engineer. Do not place pneumatic hammers in direct contact with reinforcing steel that is to be retained in the rebuilt structure.

604 TEMPORARY STRUCTURE CONSTRUCTION

Include the applicable portions of the following temporary structure note on the plans if the bridge roadway width is other than 23-ft, or if the use of the existing structure is part of the temporary road. See BDM Section 500 for additional information.

[604-1] TEMPORARY STRUCTURE roadway width shall be _____ feet. The existing structure may be moved and used for the temporary structure without strengthening.

605 EMBANKMENT CONSTRUCTION

For all substructure units where embankment construction is involved, provide appropriate embankment construction notes in the Structure General Notes. Consult the Office of Geotechnical Engineering for the recommended notes to use at a specific project site.

605.1 FOUNDATIONS ON PILES IN NEW EMBANKMENTS

The following construction method should minimize the effect of lateral forces acting on substructure units and their piles.
For structures with abutments on piles placed in new embankments use the following note:

[605.1-1] PILE DRIVING CONSTRAINTS: Prior to driving piles, construct the spill through slopes and the bridge approach embankment behind the abutments up to the level of the subgrade elevation for a minimum distance of (1) behind each abutment. Do not begin the excavation for the abutment footings and the installation of the abutment piles until after the above required embankment has been constructed and a (2) calendar day waiting period has elapsed. The Engineer may adjust the length of the waiting period based on settlement platform readings. After the specified waiting period has elapsed, drive abutment piles to the UBV* or to refusal on bedrock.

NOTE TO DESIGNER:

(1) Generally, 200-ft. Optionally, this distance may be defined by station-to-station dimensions.

(2) Estimate the length of the waiting period by determining the time required for 90% of primary settlement to occur. If the designer determines that a waiting period is not necessary, this portion of the plan note may be removed.

* Typically, choose one or the other (UBV or to refusal on bedrock), based on whether friction piles or piles to refusal on bedrock are being driven. If setup is to be utilized in the design of friction piles, replace UBV with EOID.

For structures with abutments and piers on piles placed in new embankments use the following note:

[605.1-2] PILE DRIVING CONSTRAINTS: Prior to driving piles, construct the spill through slopes and the bridge approach embankment behind the abutments up to the level of the subgrade elevation for a minimum distance of (1) behind each abutment. Do not begin the excavation for the abutment footings and the installation of the abutment and pier piles, for pier(s) (2), until after the above required embankment has been constructed and a (3) calendar day waiting period has elapsed. The Engineer may adjust the length of the waiting period based on settlement platform readings. After the specified waiting period has elapsed, drive the abutment and pier piles, for pier(s) (2) to the UBV* or to refusal on bedrock.

NOTE TO DESIGNER:

(1) Generally, 200-ft. Optionally, this distance may be defined by station-to-station dimensions.

(2) Identify specific piers.

(3) Estimate the length of the waiting period by determining the time required for 90% of primary settlement to occur. If the designer determines that a waiting period is not necessary, this portion of the plan note may be removed.

* Typically, choose one or the other (UBV or to refusal on bedrock), based on whether friction piles or piles to refusal on bedrock are being driven. If setup is to be utilized in the design of friction piles, replace UBV with EOID.

For structures with wall type abutments on piles placed in new embankment use the following note:

[605.1-3] PILE DRIVING CONSTRAINTS: Prior to driving piles at the abutments, construct the bridge approach embankment behind the abutments up at a 1:1 slope from the top of the heel of the footing* to the subgrade elevation and for a minimum distance of 250-ft behind the abutments. Do not begin the installation of the abutment piles until after the above required embankment has been constructed and a (1) calendar day waiting period has elapsed. The Engineer may adjust the length of the waiting period based on settlement platform readings. After the specified waiting period has elapsed, drive abutment piles to the UBV** or to refusal on bedrock. After the footing and the breastwall have been constructed, construct the embankment immediately behind the abutments up to the beam seat elevation and on a 1:1 slope up to the subgrade elevation prior to setting the beams on the abutments.
NOTE TO DESIGNER:

* In some cases, the bottom of the heel may be used.

(1) Estimate the length of the waiting period by determining the time required for 90% of primary settlement to occur. If the designer determines that a waiting period is not necessary, this portion of the plan note may be removed.

** Typically, choose one or the other (UBV or to refusal on bedrock), based on whether friction piles or piles to refusal on bedrock are being driven. If setup is to be utilized in the design of friction piles, replace UBV with EOID.

For MSE wall supported abutments with driven piles use the following note:

605.1-4

PILE DRIVING CONSTRAINTS: Prior to driving abutment piles to the Ultimate Bearing Value (UBV) or to refusal on bedrock, construct the MSE wall and the bridge approach embankment behind the abutment up to the bottom of the footing for a minimum distance of (1) behind each abutment. The Contractor may pre-drive abutment piles before constructing MSE walls. Pre-driving consists of installing the abutment piles into the soil only as far as necessary so that the pile will remain vertical during MSE wall construction. If pre-driving piles, install pile sleeves around piles before constructing the MSE wall. Provide at least 3-ft of pile above the top of the pile sleeve to meet the requirements of C&MS 507.09 regarding splices. Do not drive abutment piles to the UBV* or to refusal on bedrock until after the above required MSE wall and embankment have been constructed and a (2) calendar day waiting period has elapsed. The Engineer may adjust the length of the waiting period based on settlement platform readings. After the specified waiting period has elapsed, drive abutment piles to the UBV* or to refusal on bedrock. In order to remove any negative skin friction that has developed during the waiting period, drive each abutment pile a distance of at least 0.5-in.

If not pre-driving abutment piles, install the abutment piles through pile sleeves after the above required MSE wall and embankment have been constructed and the specified waiting period has elapsed.

NOTE TO DESIGNER:

(1) Generally, 200-ft. Optionally, this distance may be defined by station-to-station dimensions.

(2) Estimate the length of the waiting period by determining the time required for 90% of primary settlement to occur. If the designer determines that a waiting period is not necessary, this portion of the plan note may be removed.

* Typically, choose one or the other (UBV or to refusal on bedrock), based on whether friction piles or piles to refusal on bedrock are being driven. If setup is to be utilized in the design of friction piles, replace UBV with EOID.

605.2 FOUNDATIONS ON SPREAD FOOTINGS IN NEW EMBANKMENTS

The following construction method helps to eliminate any lateral forces on the foundation due to the construction of the embankment and/or settlement of the subgrade under the embankment. For stub abutments on spread footings being constructed in new embankments provide note [605.3-1] or [605.3-2] and the following note:

605.2-1

CONSTRUCTION CONSTRAINTS:

NOTE TO DESIGNER: Modify the note, as appropriate, for piers constructed on a spread footing foundation.

(1) Generally, 250-ft. Optionally, this distance may be defined by station-to-station dimensions.

(2) Estimate the length of the waiting period by determining the time required for 90% of primary settlement to occur. If the designer determines that a waiting period is not necessary, this portion of the plan note may be removed.
For wall type abutments on spread footings with no new embankment provide note [605.3-1] or [605.3-2] and the following note:

[605.2-2] CONSTRUCTION CONSTRAINTS: Fill the void created by excavating for the abutment footings with Type B granular material, C&MS 703.16.C. After the footing and the breastwall have been constructed, fill the void behind each abutment up to the beam seat elevation and from the beam seat up on a 1:1 slope to the subgrade elevation prior to constructing the backwall and setting the beams on the abutment.

605.3 EMBANKMENT CONSTRUCTION NOTE

In an attempt to reduce settlements of the roadway approaches, specify the placement of embankment materials in 6-in lifts. Include one of the following plan notes in the Project General Notes and make reference to the work defined below at the appropriate locations within the plans.

Note that Item 203 is a roadway quantity and coordination with the roadway plans is necessary.

To define the limits of measured pay quantities for bridges with wall-type abutments, provide excavation, backfill, and embankment diagrams (or a composite diagram, where suitable), using schematic abutment cross-sections, showing the boundaries between structure and roadway excavation, and between structure backfill and roadway embankment.

[605.3-1] ITEM 203 EMBANKMENT, AS PER PLAN: Place and compact embankment material in 6 inch lifts for the construction of the approach embankment between stations ** to **.

NOTE TO DESIGNER:
** The approximate limits should be 100-ft behind each abutment

[605.3-2] ITEM 203 EMBANKMENT, AS PER PLAN: Place and compact embankment material in 6-in lifts for the construction of the approach embankment.

605.4 UNCLASSIFIED EXCAVATION

Compute and use pay items for Item 503 as follows:

When an excavation includes 10 yd³ or more of rock (or shale), itemize the quantity of rock excavation separately under:
ITEM 503 - ROCK (OR SHALE) EXCAVATION

When the rock (or shale) excavation is under 10 yd³, do not itemize the rock (or shale) excavation separately. Provide the following pay item:
ITEM 503 - UNCLASSIFIED EXCAVATION, INCLUDING ROCK (AND/OR SHALE)

When excavation includes no rock (or shale), provide the following pay item:
ITEM 503 - UNCLASSIFIED EXCAVATION

In computing the quantity of Item 503 excavation, the designer should confirm that all removals under items 201, 202 or 203 have been excluded, according to C&MS 503.01. Generally, the basis of payment for Item 503 should be yd³. Lump sum quantities may be used if authorized by the District and with the understanding that cost may be higher than when specific quantities are used.
605.5 PROPRIETARY RETAINING WALLS

For projects with proprietary retaining wall systems supporting bridge abutments on pile foundations, provide the following note:

[605.5-1] PROPRIETARY RETAINING WALL DATA: The proprietary wall supplier shall design the internal stability of a mechanically stabilized earth (MSE) wall in accordance with SS840 to support the abutment. The design for internal stability shall include a nominal (i.e. unfactored) horizontal strip load due to friction (FR) from the superstructure of _____ k/ft applied perpendicular to the face of wall at the base of the concrete footing. This strip load does not include earth pressure loads from the abutment backfill. However, the proprietary wall supplier shall include earth pressure loads from the abutment backfill in the design calculations.

NOTE TO DESIGNER:

The note above applies to the design of abutments supporting expansion bearings only. Longitudinally applied superstructure loads are assumed to be transferred to the substructure as a friction loads (FR) equal to the nominal frictional resistances supplied by the bearings (see BDM Section 303.1.3). This assumption does not apply to fixed bearings. For fixed bearings, provide revised versions of these notes that list all applicable longitudinally applied superstructure loads transferred to the substructure through the bearing connections.

Provide the following note, with the blanks filled in as appropriate for each individual project, if there are mechanically stabilized earth (MSE) retaining walls or abutments.

[605.5-2] FOUNDATION BEARING RESISTANCE: The (1) reinforced soil mass, as designed, produces a maximum Service Limit State bearing pressure of (2) kips per square foot and a maximum Strength Limit State bearing pressure of (2) kips per square foot. The factored bearing resistance is (3) kips per square foot.

NOTE TO DESIGNER:

(1) Specify the location of the MSE wall.
(2) Specify the maximum factored bearing pressures.
(3) Specify the factored bearing resistance according to LRFD 10.6.3 and 11.10.5.4 and BDM Section 305.2.1.

605.6 FOUNDATIONS ON DRILLED SHAFTS IN NEW EMBANKMENTS

The following construction methods should minimize the effect of lateral and downdrag loads acting on substructure units and their drilled shafts.

For structures with abutments on drilled shafts placed in new embankments use the following note:

[605.6-1] SHAFT DRILLING CONSTRAINTS: Prior to drilling shafts, construct the spill through slopes and the bridge approach embankment behind the abutments up to the level of the subgrade elevation for a minimum distance of (1) behind each abutment. Do not begin the excavation for the abutment footings and the drilling of the abutment shafts until after the above required embankment has been constructed and a (2) calendar day waiting period has elapsed. The Engineer may adjust the length of the waiting period based on settlement platform readings.

NOTE TO DESIGNER:

(1) Generally, 200-ft. Optionally, this distance may be defined by station-to-station dimensions.
(2) Estimate the length of the waiting period by determining the time required for 90% of primary settlement to occur. If the designer determines that a waiting period is not necessary, this portion of the plan note may be removed.

For structures with abutments and piers on drilled shafts placed in new embankments use the following note:
SHAFT DRILLING CONSTRAINTS: Prior to drilling shafts, construct the spill through slopes and
the bridge approach embankment behind the abutments up to the level of the subgrade elevation for
a minimum distance of (1) behind each abutment. Do not begin the excavation for the abutment
footings and the drilling of the abutment and pier shafts, for pier(s) (2), until after the above required
embankment has been constructed and a (3) calendar day waiting period has elapsed. The Engineer
may adjust the length of the waiting period based on settlement platform readings.

NOTE TO DESIGNER:
(1) Generally, 200-ft. Optionally, this distance may be defined by station-to-station dimensions.
(2) Identify specific piers.
(3) Estimate the length of the waiting period by determining the time required for 90% of primary settlement to
occur. If the designer determines that a waiting period is not necessary, this portion of the plan note may be
removed.

For structures with wall type abutments on drilled shafts placed in new embankment use the following note:

SHAFT DRILLING CONSTRAINTS: Prior to drilling shafts at the abutments, construct the bridge
approach embankment behind the abutments up at a 1:1 slope from the top of the heel of the footing*
to the subgrade elevation and for a minimum distance of 250-ft behind the abutments. Do not begin
the drilling of the abutment shafts until after the above required embankment has been constructed
and a (1) calendar day waiting period has elapsed. The Engineer may adjust the length of the waiting
period based on settlement platform readings. After the footing and the breastwall have been
constructed, construct the embankment immediately behind the abutments up to the beam seat
elevation and on a 1:1 slope up to the subgrade elevation prior to setting the beams on the abutments.

NOTE TO DESIGNER:
* In some cases, the bottom of the heel may be used.
(1) Estimate the length of the waiting period by determining the time required for 90% of primary settlement to
occur. If the designer determines that a waiting period is not necessary, this portion of the plan note may be
removed.

606 FOUNDATIONS

606.1 PILES DRIVEN TO BEDROCK

The following note generally will apply where steel-H piles are to be driven to bedrock:

PILES TO BEDROCK: Drive piles to refusal on bedrock. The Department will consider refusal to
be obtained when the pile penetration is an inch or less after receiving at least 20 blows from the
pile hammer. Select the hammer size to achieve the required depth to bedrock and refusal.

The total factored load is (1) kips per pile for the (2) abutment piles. The total factored load
is (1) kips per pile for the (2) pier piles.

Abutment piles:
(3) piles (4) feet long, order length
Pier piles:
(3) piles (4) feet long, order length
NOTE TO DESIGNER:

(1) Specify the total factored load according to BDM Section 305.3.5.2.
(2) Specify the location of piles for each total factored load.
(3) Specify the size of pile (e.g. HP 10 x 42 or 12-in diameter).
(4) Specify the order length according to BDM Sections 305.3.5.2.

The following note, modified to fit the conditions, will apply where piles are located within a waterway and the scour depth is significant.

[606.1-2]

PILES TO BEDROCK: Drive piles to refusal on bedrock. The Department will consider refusal to be obtained when the pile penetration is an inch or less after receiving at least 20 blows from the pile hammer. Select the hammer size to achieve the required depth to bedrock and refusal.

The total factored load is \( (1) \) kips per pile for the \( (2) \) abutment piles. The abutment piles were designed to accommodate \( (3) \) ft. of scour. The total factored load is \( (1) \) kips per pile for the \( (2) \) pier piles. The pier piles were designed to accommodate \( (3) \) ft. of scour.

Abutment piles:
- \( (4) \) piles \( (5) \) feet long, order length
Pier piles:
- \( (4) \) piles \( (5) \) feet long, order length

NOTE TO DESIGNER:

(1) Specify the total factored load according to BDM Section 305.3.2.
(2) Specify the location of piles for each total factored load.
(3) Specify the depth of anticipated scour.
(4) Specify the size of pile (e.g. HP 10 x 42 or 12-in diameter).
(5) Specify the order length according to BDM Sections 305.3.5.2.

The following note, modified to fit the conditions, will apply where downdrag loads on the piles are anticipated.

[606.1-3]

PILES TO BEDROCK: Drive piles to refusal on bedrock. The Department will consider refusal to be obtained when the pile penetration is an inch or less after receiving at least 20 blows from the pile hammer. Select the hammer size to achieve the required depth to bedrock and refusal.

The total factored load is \( (1) \) kips per pile for the \( (2) \) abutment piles. The abutment piles include an additional \( (3) \) kips of factored load per pile to account for possible downdrag loading. The total factored load is \( (1) \) kips per pile for the \( (2) \) pier piles.

Abutment piles:
- \( (4) \) piles \( (5) \) feet long, order length
Pier piles:
- \( (4) \) piles \( (5) \) feet long, order length

NOTE TO DESIGNER:

(1) Specify the total factored load according to BDM Section 305.3.2.
(2) Specify the location of piles for each total factored load.
(3) Specify the anticipated factored downdrag loading.
(4) Specify the size of pile (e.g. HP 10 x 42 or 12-in diameter).
(5) Specify the order length according to BDM Sections 305.3.5.2.
FRICITION TYPE PILES

The following notes, modified to fit the specific conditions for the foundation required, will apply in all cases except where the piles are to be driven to bedrock. Provide the actual calculated Ultimate Bearing Value as shown below:

PILE DESIGN LOADS (ULTIMATE BEARING VALUE): The Ultimate Bearing Value is _ (1) _ kips per pile for the _ (2) _ abutment piles. The Ultimate Bearing Value is _ (1) _ kips per pile for the _ (2) _ pier piles.

Abutment piles:
_ (3) _ piles _ (4) _ feet long, order length
_ (5) _ Dynamic load testing items

Pier piles:
_ (3) _ piles _ (4) _ feet long, order length
_ (5) _ Dynamic load testing items

NOTE TO DESIGNER:

(1) Specify the Ultimate Bearing Value according to BDM Section 305.3.2.
(2) Specify the location of piles for each Ultimate Bearing Value.
(3) Specify the size of pile (e.g. HP 10 x 42 or 12-in diameter).
(4) Specify the order length according to BDM Sections 305.3.5.2.
(5) Specify the number of dynamic load testing items according to BDM Section 305.7.1.

The following note, modified to fit the conditions, will apply where piles are located within a waterway and the scour is anticipated.

PILE DESIGN LOADS (ULTIMATE BEARING VALUE): The Ultimate Bearing Value (UBV) is _ (1) _ kips per pile for the _ (2) _ abutment piles. The UBV is _ (1) _ kips per pile for the pier piles. The UBV for the pier piles includes an additional _ (3) _ kips per pile due to the possibility of losing _ (7) _ ft. of frictional resistance due to scour. Drive the pier piles to the UBV or a tip elevation of _ (8) _, whichever is deeper.

Abutment piles:
_ (4) _ piles _ (5) _ feet long, order length
_ (6) _ Dynamic load testing items

Pier piles:
_ (4) _ piles _ (5) _ feet long, order length
_ (6) _ Dynamic load testing items

NOTE TO DESIGNER:

(1) Specify the Ultimate Bearing Value according to BDM Section 305.3.2.
(2) Specify the location of piles for each Ultimate Bearing Value.
(3) Specify the additional amount of Ultimate Bearing Value according to BDM Section 305.3.2.
(4) Specify the size of pile (e.g. HP 10 x 42 or 12-in diameter).
(5) Specify the order length according to BDM Sections 305.3.5.2.
(6) Specify the number of dynamic load testing items according to BDM Section 305.7.1.
(7) Specify the scour depth.
(8) Specify the tip elevation according to BDM Section 305.3.2.1.

Provide the following note when Static Load Testing is required according to BDM Section 305.7.2. Modify the note as necessary to fit the specific condition.
STATIC LOAD TEST Perform dynamic testing on the first two production piles to determine the required blow count for the specified Ultimate Bearing Value. Perform the static load test on either pile. Do not over-drive the selected pile. Drive the third and fourth production piles to 75% and 85% of the determined blow count, respectively and perform dynamic testing on each. The test piles and the reduced capacity piles shall not be battered. After installation of the first four production piles, cease all driving operations at the substructure for a minimum of 7 days. After the waiting period, perform the static load test, and then perform pile restrikes on the four piles (two restrike test items). Perform a CAPWAP analysis on each pile tested for every dynamic load test and every restrike test. The Engineer will review the results of the pile restrikes and establish the driving criteria for the remaining piling represented by the testing. Submit all test results to the Office of Geotechnical Engineering.

If the restrike test results indicate that any of the four piles did not achieve the required UBV, drive the pile to the established driving criteria.

For subsequent static load tests, upon completion of a 10,000-ft increment of driven length, repeat the above procedure for the initial static load test. If necessary, the Engineer will revise the driving criteria for the remaining piling accordingly.

NOTE TO DESIGNER:
* The typical wait period is 7 days. If substantial pile setup is expected, consult BDM Table 606-1 for a recommended wait period. Potential impact on the construction schedule may also prove to be the limiting factor.

The following note, modified to fit the specific conditions for the foundation required, will apply when uplift loads control the design of the pile. In this case, the piles are typically driven to a pile tip elevation and dynamic load testing of the pile is not performed.

PILES DRIVEN TO TIP ELEVATION FOR UPLIFT: Drive the piles to the pile tip elevation shown on the plans. Do not perform dynamic load testing on piles driven to a tip elevation. Select the hammer size to achieve the required depth. Provide plain cylindrical casings with a minimum pile wall thickness of (1) inch for piles driven to a tip elevation.

Abutment piles:
(2) piles (3) feet long, order length

NOTE TO DESIGNER:
(1) Specify the minimum pile wall thickness for cast-in-place reinforced concrete piles. Determine the minimum pile wall thickness from a pile drivability analysis. Remove this sentence if the piles are H-piles.
(2) Specify the size of pile (e.g. HP 10 x 42 or 12-in diameter).
(3) Specify the order length according to BDM Sections 305.3.5.2.

STEEL PILE POINTS OR SHOES

Where steel points or shoes are required, add one of the following sentences to the end of the provided plan note from BDM Section 606.1 or 606.2, as appropriate. See BDM Section 305.3.5.6 for guidance.
Where steel H-piles are specified add the following note:

[606.3-1] Use steel pile points to protect the tips of the proposed steel H-piles at (1). *

Where CIP reinforced concrete pipe piles are specified add the following note:

[606.3-2] Use conical steel pile points to protect the tips of the proposed steel CIP reinforced concrete pipe piles at (1). *

Where steel open-ended pipe piles are specified add the following note:

[606.3-3] Use open-end cutting shoes to protect the tips of the proposed steel open-ended pipe piles at (1). *

When driving open-ended pipe piles to refusal on bedrock, and driving stresses at the bedrock contact are expected to exceed the compressive driving resistance of the pipe pile, provide the following note:

[606.3-4] ITEM 507, PILING, MISC.: (2) DIAMETER PIPE PILES, FURNISHED, AS PER PLAN: The minimum pile wall thickness for the bottom (3) feet of the piles is be (4) inches at (1). Perform welding of this pile section in shop.

NOTE TO DESIGNER:

* Include ITEM 507, STEEL POINTS OR SHOES in the estimated quantities.

(1) Specify the substructure unit(s) or location(s) of piles to be protected by steel points or shoes.

(2) Specify the diameter of the open-ended pipe piles in inches.

(3) Specify the length of the thickened section of the open-ended pipe piles. Provide one pile diameter when the angle between the axis of the pile and the bedrock surface is greater than 60°; otherwise, provide two pile diameters.

(4) Specify the thickness of the thickened section of the open-ended pipe piles.

606.4 PILE SPLICES

Provide the following note when H-piles are specified.

[606.4-1] PILE SPLICES: In lieu of using the full penetration butt welds specified in C&MS 507.09 to splice steel H-piles, the Contractor may use a manufactured H-pile splicer. Furnish splicers from the following manufacturer:

Associated Pile and Fitting Corporation
8 Wood Hollow Rd. Plaza 1
Parsippany, New Jersey 07054

Install and weld the splicer to the pile sections in accordance with the manufacturer’s written assembly procedure supplied to the Engineer before the welding is performed.
606.5 PILE ENCASEMENT

The following note shall be used where capped pile piers and steel "H" piles are being used for a bridge structure crossing a waterway. The exposed steel piling corrodes at the waterline, or near there. The note should not be used if the capped pile pier standard drawing is being used as standard drawing already specifies pile encasement methods.

[606.5-1] ITEM SPECIAL - PILE ENCASEMENT

Encase all steel H-piles for the capped pile piers in concrete conforming to C&MS 511 (f’c = 4.0 ksi). Provide a concrete slump between 6 to 8 inches with the use of a superplasticizer. Place the concrete within a form that consists of polyethylene pipe (C&MS 707.33), or PVC pipe (C&MS 707.42). The encasement shall extend from 3 feet below the finished ground surface up to the concrete pier cap. Position the pipe so that at least 3 inches of concrete cover is provided around the exterior of the pile.

The Department will measure pile encasement by the number of feet. The Department will determine the sum as the length measured along the axis of each pile from the bottom of the encasement to the bottom of the pier cap. The Department will pay for accepted quantities at the contract price for ITEM - SPECIAL, PILE ENCASEMENT.

606.6 SPREAD FOOTING FOUNDATIONS

Provide the following note, with the blanks filled in as appropriate for each individual project, if there are abutments, piers, or retaining walls which are supported by spread footings.

[606.6-1] FOUNDATION BEARING RESISTANCE: (1) footings, as designed, produce a maximum Service Limit State bearing pressure of (2) kips per square foot and a maximum Strength Limit State bearing pressure of (2) kips per square foot. The factored bearing resistance is (3) kips per square foot.

NOTE TO DESIGNER:

(1) Specify the location of the spread footing.
(2) Specify the maximum factored bearing pressures.
(3) Specify the factored bearing resistance according to LRFD 10.6.3 and BDM Section 305.2.1.

When abutments or piers are supported by spread footings on soil, include the following note to require that reference monuments be constructed in each footing. The purpose of the reference monuments is to document the performance of the spread footings, both short and long term.

[606.6-2] ITEM 511, CLASS * CONCRETE, * , AS PER PLAN : * In addition to the requirements of Item 511*, install a reference monument at each end of each spread footing. The reference monument shall consist of a #8, or larger, epoxy coated rebar embedded at least 6” into the footing and extended vertically 4 to 6 inches above the top of the footing. Install a six-inch diameter, schedule 40, plastic pipe around the reference monument. Center the pipe on the reference monument and place the pipe vertical with its top at the finished grade. The pipe shall have a removable, schedule 40, plastic cap. Permanently attach the bottom of the pipe to the top of the footing.

Establish a benchmark to determine the elevations of the reference monuments at various monitoring periods throughout the length of the construction project. The benchmark shall be the same throughout the project and shall be independent of all structures.

Record the elevation of each reference monument at each monitoring period shown in the table below.

The original completed tables will become part of the District’s project plan records.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Monitoring Period</th>
<th>Left monument</th>
<th>Right monument</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>After footing concrete is placed</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Before placement of superstructure members</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Before deck placement</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>After deck placement</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Project completion</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NOTE TO DESIGNER:**

* The Designer shall modify items marked with an asterisk to describe the class of concrete, pier and/or abutment location, bridge number, SFN, maximum factored bearing pressure and to correctly describe the “As Per Plan” bid item.

When retaining walls are supported by spread footings on soil, include the following note to require that reference monuments be constructed in each footing. The purpose of the reference monuments is to document the performance of the spread footings, both short and long term.

ITEM 511, CLASS * CONCRETE, *, AS PER PLAN : * In addition to the requirements of Item 511, install reference monuments in the retaining wall footing at the locations shown in the Table below. The reference monument shall consist of a #8, or larger, epoxy coated rebar embedded at least 6" into the footing and extended vertically 4 to 6 inches above the top of the footing. Install a six-inch diameter, schedule 40, plastic pipe around the reference monument. Center the pipe on the reference monument and place the pipe vertical with its top at the finished grade. The pipe shall have a removable, schedule 40, plastic cap. Permanently attach the bottom of the pipe to the top of the footing.

Establish a benchmark to determine the elevations of the reference monuments at various monitoring periods throughout the length of the construction project. The benchmark shall be the same throughout the project and shall be independent of all structures.

Record the elevation of each reference monument at each monitoring period shown in the table below.

The original completed tables will become part of the District’s project plan records.
**NOTE TO DESIGNER:**

* The Designer shall modify items marked with an asterisk to describe the class of concrete, project county-route-section (C-R-S) designation and PID, wall number or name, monument locations (baseline, stations, and offsets), maximum factored bearing pressures, and to correctly describe the “As Per Plan” bid item. Specify a number of reference monuments appropriate for the length and geometry of each wall. At least one reference monument should be included per each of the foundation sub-units for which bearing pressures and resistances are calculated in the SFE Report, or wherever there is a change in geometry, such as a step in the footing; with one monument per every approximately 50-ft to 100-ft of wall length; including one reference monument at each end of the wall, located approximately 1.0-ft in from the ends of the wall footing. Modify the table to include a column for each reference monument if there are more than four.

Provide the following note if the footing excavation is mainly bedrock and the footings are to be at an elevation no higher than plan elevation:

[606.6-4] FOOTINGS: Place footings in bedrock at the elevation shown.

Provide the following note where footings are to be founded in bedrock at an elevation no higher than plan elevation.

[606.6-5] FOOTINGS shall extend a minimum of 3 inches* into bedrock or to the elevation shown, whichever is lower.

**NOTE TO DESIGNER:**

* Shall be greater than 3-in if required by design considerations.

Provide the following note where footings are to be founded in bedrock, and where the encountering of bedrock at an elevation considerably above plan elevation may make it desirable to raise the footing to an elevation not above the specified maximum in order to affect an appreciable saving:

[606.6-6] FOOTINGS shall extend a minimum of 3 inches* into bedrock. If necessary due to poor bedrock material, the footings should be lowered. If the low point of the bedrock surface occurs 2 feet or more above plan elevation, the final footing elevations may be raised, upon approval by the Office of Geotechnical Engineering, but to an elevation not higher than ** feet. Stepping of individual footings will not be permitted unless shown on the plans.
NOTE TO DESIGNER:
* Shall be greater than 3-in if required by design considerations.
** The maximum elevation allowed should assure that minimum soil cover over the footing is obtained; clearance from the superstructure to the finished ground elevation meets standards; quality of bedrock material at that elevation is adequate; and minimum embedment into the bedrock material will not be adversely affected.

606.7 PILE DRIVING

Provide the following note for all driven piling.

[606.7-1] PILE DRIVING: The minimum rated energy of the hammer used to install the piles shall be (1) foot-pounds. Ensure that stresses in the piles during driving do not exceed (2) pounds per square inch.

NOTE TO DESIGNER:

(1) Specify the hammer minimum rated energy per BDM Section 305.3.1.2.
(2) Specify the limiting pile driving stress. If piles of multiple types or steel grades are to be driven, specify the pile groups and locations separately in the note.

Provide the following note whenever vibration monitoring is specified. See BDM Section 305.3.6 for guidance.

[606.7-2] ITEM SPECIAL - STRUCTURE MISC.: VIBRATION MONITORING

Monitor ground vibrations caused by pile driving to minimize the potential damage to existing structures.

Retain an experienced vibration specialist to establish the acceptable vibration limits and to perform the vibration monitoring. Use a vibration specialist that is an expert in the interpretation of vibration data, and who meets one of the following criteria: 1) is a registered engineer with at least two years of proven experience in monitoring vibrations on similar construction projects, or 2) has at least five years of proven experience in monitoring vibrations on similar construction projects. Do not use a vibration specialist that is an employee of the Contractor.

Submit a resume of the credentials of the proposed vibration specialist at or before the Preconstruction Meeting. Include in the resume a list of construction projects on which the vibration specialist was responsibly in charge of monitoring the vibrations. List a description of the projects, with details of the vibration interpretations made on the project. List the names and telephone numbers of project owners with sufficient knowledge of the projects to verify the submitted information. Obtain the Engineer’s acceptance of the vibration specialist before beginning any pile driving work. Allow 30 days for the review of this documentation.

Use seismographs capable of continuously recording the peak particle velocity for three mutually perpendicular components of vibration, and of providing a permanent record of the entire vibration event. Use a sufficient number of seismographs to provide redundancy in case one device should fail. Submit a plan of the proposed seismograph locations to the Engineer for review.
The vibration specialist shall perform the following:

1. Measure the ambient ground vibrations near existing structures before pile driving begins.

2. Establish vibration limits to minimize potential damage to existing structures and explain why they are being used to the Engineer before driving piles near existing structures.

3. Monitor ground vibrations during pile driving.

4. Immediately inform the Contractor and Engineer if the vibration limits are reached or exceeded.

5. Furnish the data recorded and include the following:
   
   A. Identification of seismograph.
   
   B. Distance and direction of seismograph from pile driving.
   
   C. Start time and duration of pile driving.
   
   D. List of piles driven during each monitoring interval.

Immediately suspend all pile driving if the vibration limits are reached or exceeded. Evaluate alternative construction procedures, such as prebored holes, to reduce the vibrations.

Submit three copies of the final report which contains all measurements, interpretations, and recommendations to the Engineer.

The Department will pay for this item at the contract lump sum price for ITEM SPECIAL – STRUCTURE MISC.: VIBRATION MONITORING. The Department will pay the final twenty percent after the Engineer receives the final report.

The Department will pay according to C&MS 109.05 for alternative construction procedures that the Engineer determines are necessary to reduce vibrations.

Provide the following note whenever a preconstruction condition survey is specified. See BDM Section 305.3.6 for guidance.

[606.7-3] ITEM SPECIAL - STRUCTURE MISC.: PRECONSTRUCTION CONDITION SURVEY

Before pile driving begins, conduct a condition survey of all existing buildings, structures, and utilities within 200-ft of the pile driving work. The purpose of the survey is to document the condition of the buildings, structures, or utilities prior to pile driving, so that claims of damage caused by the pile driving can be verified.

Retain an experienced vibration specialist to perform or supervise the condition survey. Use a vibration specialist that meets the qualification requirements for vibration monitoring.

Record the condition of existing structures and building materials, using written text, photographs, and video recordings. Inspect interior walls, ceilings, and floors that are accessible. Inspect the exterior of the building that is visible from ground level. Also record the location, size, and type of all cracks and other structural deficiencies.

If owners or occupants fail to allow access to the property for the preconstruction condition survey, send a certified letter to the owner or occupant. Document the notification effort and the certified letter in the report.

Submit three copies of a report to the Engineer that summarizes the preconstruction condition of the buildings, structures, and utilities, and that identifies areas of concern.
The Department will pay for this item at the contract lump sum price for ITEM SPECIAL – STRUCTUR MISC.: PRECONSTRUCTION CONDITION SURVEY.

Provide the following note whenever piles are to be driven to a specified end of initial drive resistance (EOID) using setup and a waiting period with restrikes to prove the final ultimate bearing value (UBV).

[606.7-4] PILES DRIVEN TO INITIAL DRIVE RESISTANCE WITH PILE/SOIL SETUP

The Ultimate Bearing Value (UBV) is (1) kips per pile for the (2) (3) piles. Part of the UBV will be achieved through pile/soil setup, which is a time dependent increase in resistance that occurs in some soils.

Notify the Engineer at least 5 days before driving piles so that the Engineer can notify the District Geotechnical Engineer, the Office of Construction Administration, and the Office of Geotechnical Engineering.

Drive the first two piles in each substructure to an end of initial drive resistance (EOID) of (4) kips. Perform dynamic load testing on both piles while driving. After the initial drive, cease all driving operations at the substructure for a period of * days. Include the waiting period as a separate activity in the progress schedule. After the waiting period, perform pile restrikes on both piles (one restrike pay item).

Submit all test results to the Engineer. If the restrike test results indicate that both piles achieved the required UBV, use the initial drive dynamic load testing and EOID to establish driving criteria for installation of the remaining piles in the substructure according to C&MS 507.05 and 523.04.

If the restrike test results indicate that either of the two piles did not achieve the required UBV, immediately notify the Engineer so that the Engineer can notify the District Geotechnical Engineer, the Office of Construction Administration, and the Office of Geotechnical Engineering. The Engineer will review the test results and establish driving criteria for the piling in the substructure with the assistance of the District Geotechnical Engineer, the Office of Construction Administration, and the Office of Geotechnical Engineering.

Drive all piles in the substructure to the established driving criteria. The Department will pay for splicing of the piles beyond the estimated length provided in the plans under C&MS 109.05 with a negotiated price per splice.

This plan note includes a quantity of one each ITEM 523 DYNAMIC LOAD TESTING, AS PER PLAN and a quantity of one each ITEM 523 RESTRIKE, AS PER PLAN per each substructure unit.

NOTE TO DESIGNER:

(1) Specify the Ultimate Bearing Value according to BDM Section 305.3.2.
(2) Specify the size of pile (e.g. 12-inch diameter cast-in-place reinforced concrete or HP10x42).
(3) Specify the location of piles (e.g. rear abutment, rear and forward abutment, or pier 2).
(4) Specify the EOID resistance according to BDM Section 305.3.2.4.

* Specify the waiting period. This is generally related to the amount of setup expected; the greater the expected percent setup or setup factor, the longer the wait time. Calculate the expected setup factor as \( f_{su} = \frac{UBV}{EOID} \), and use the following table as a guide for wait times.
Table 606-1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setup Factor ((f_{su}))</th>
<th>Percent Setup (%)</th>
<th>Wait Time (\text{Days})</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.0 – 1.2</td>
<td>0 – 20</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2 – 1.4</td>
<td>20 – 40</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4 – 1.6</td>
<td>40 – 60</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6 – 2.0</td>
<td>60 – 100</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt; 2.0</td>
<td>&gt; 100</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Provide the following note whenever piles are to be driven to variable specified lengths, and then use setup and a waiting period with restrikes to determine the length to achieve the final ultimate bearing value \((UBV)\).

### [606.7-5] PILES DRIVEN TO TIP ELEVATION FOR PILE/SOIL SETUP

The Ultimate Bearing Value \((UBV)\) is (1) kips per pile for the (2) (3) piles. Part of the \(UBV\) will be achieved through pile/soil setup, which is a time dependent increase in resistance that occurs in some soils.

Notify the Engineer at least 5 days before driving piles so that the Engineer can notify the District Geotechnical Engineer, the Office of Construction Administration, and the Office of Geotechnical Engineering.

Drive the first two piles in each substructure to the tip elevation specified for each substructure. Drive the third and fourth piles to 75% and 85% of the length of the first two piles. Perform dynamic load testing on all four piles while driving. After driving the four piles, cease all driving operations at the substructure for a minimum of 10 days. Include the waiting period as a separate activity in the progress schedule. After the waiting period, perform pile restrikes on all four piles (two restrike items). Perform a CAPWAP analysis on each pile tested for every dynamic load test and every restrike test.

Submit all test results to the Engineer. The Engineer will review the test results and establish driving criteria for the piling in the substructure with the assistance of the District Geotechnical Engineer, the Office of Construction Administration, and the Office of Geotechnical Engineering. Perform the driving criteria with pile setup for the first stage of bridge construction. Do not order piles for subsequent phases until after the driving criteria has been established with setup. The Department will adjust the furnished pile quantities based on the restrike test results.

If the dynamic load testing indicates a pile has achieved the required \(UBV\) above the tip elevation during the initial driving (before the waiting period), stop driving and notify the Engineer. If the restrike test results indicate that any of the four piles did not achieve the required \(UBV\), drive the pile to the established driving criteria. The Department will pay for splicing of the piles beyond the estimated length provided in the plans under C&MS 109.05 with a negotiated price per splice.

This plan note includes a quantity of 2 each ITEM 523 DYNAMIC LOAD TESTING, AS PER PLAN and a quantity of 2 each ITEM 523 RESTRIKE, AS PER PLAN per each substructure unit.

### NOTE TO DESIGNER:

1. Specify the Ultimate Bearing Value according to BDM Section 305.3.2.
2. Specify the size of pile (e.g. 12-inch diameter cast-in-place reinforced concrete or HP10x42).
3. Specify the location of piles.

Provide the following note whenever piles are to be driven pre-construction with a site-specific evaluation of driving criteria through a test pile program.
TEST PILE PROGRAM

The Ultimate Bearing Value (UBV) is (1) kips per pile for the (2) (3) piles. Part of the UBV will be achieved through pile/soil setup, which is a time dependent increase in resistance that occurs in some soils.

Notify the Engineer at least 5 days before driving piles so that the Engineer can notify the District Geotechnical Engineer, the Office of Construction Administration, and the Office of Geotechnical Engineering.

At each substructure, drive a test pile, identical to the production piles, and using the same production pile hammer, to a length equal to 125% of the estimated length. Perform continuous dynamic monitoring and testing of the test pile during driving from 50% to 125% of the estimated length. Perform two CAPWAP analyses on the test pile, one at 75% of the estimated length, and one at 125% of the estimated length. After driving the test pile, cease all driving operations at the substructure for 7 days. At the end of 7 days, perform a pile restrike on the test pile, with a CAPWAP analysis. Continue the waiting period to 45 days after the end of initial drive. At the end of the 45 days, perform a second pile restrike on the test pile, with a CAPWAP analysis.

Submit all test results to the Engineer. The Engineer will review the test results with the assistance of the District Geotechnical Engineer, the Office of Construction Administration, and the Office of Geotechnical Engineering. The Engineer will develop a profile of cumulative setup with depth. At each elevation along the pile, setup is defined as the difference between the side resistance calculated in the CAPWAP analyses for the end of initial drive and for each of the restrikes. Tip resistance shall be the most conservative result from the four CAPWAP analyses (for the initial drive at 75% and 125% of the estimated length, for the 7 day restrike, and for the 45 day restrike). From these analyses, the engineer will determine a depth at which the UBV was achieved at the 45 day restrike, and for that depth, will subtract the cumulative setup to establish a target end of initial drive resistance (EOID).

Drive the first two production piles in the substructure to the established target EOID. Perform dynamic load testing on both piles, with a CAPWAP analysis on one of the two piles. (If the test pile was driven within the foundation footprint and can be incorporated into the foundation as a production pile, then only one additional production pile need be dynamically tested with a CAPWAP analysis.) After driving the first two production piles, again cease all driving operations at the substructure for 7 days. At the end of 7 days, perform a pile restrike on the first production pile(s), with a CAPWAP analysis on the same pile that received a CAPWAP analysis at the end of initial drive. Include each of the above waiting periods as separate activities in the progress schedule.

The Engineer will compare the 7 day restrike and CAPWAP analysis results for the production pile and for the test pile and will compare the plots of cumulative setup with depth developed from each 7 day restrike and CAPWAP analysis.

If the production pile 7 day restrike demonstrates the same or greater resistance than the test pile 7 day restrike at the same tip elevation, then use the more conservative of the end of initial drive dynamic testing results – between the test pile and production pile – to establish driving criteria according to C&MS 507.05 and 523.04 for the remaining production piles for the established target EOID. Drive all remaining production piles to these driving criteria.

If the production pile 7 day restrike demonstrates lesser resistance than the test pile 7 day restrike at the same tip elevation, then reduce the cumulative setup with depth plot from the test pile 45 day restrike by the same percentage that the production pile fell short of the test pile 7 day restrike cumulative setup. From this reduced plot, the engineer will determine a greater depth at which the UBV was achieved at the 45 day restrike. All production piles will be driven to this depth, including the production pile that demonstrated lesser resistance at the 7 day restrike. The Department will pay for splicing of the piles beyond the estimated length provided in the plans under C&MS 109.05 with a negotiated price per splice.
This plan note includes a quantity of 1 each ITEM 507 STEEL PILES, MISC.: TEST PILE FURNISHED; a quantity of 1 each ITEM 507 STEEL PILES, MISC.: TEST PILE DRIVEN; a quantity of 3 each ITEM 523 DYNAMIC LOAD TESTING, AS PER PLAN; and a quantity of 3 each ITEM 523 RESTRIKE, AS PER PLAN per each substructure unit.

NOTE TO DESIGNER:
(1) Specify the Ultimate Bearing Value according to BDM Section 305.3.2.
(2) Specify the size of pile (e.g. 12-inch diameter cast-in-place reinforced concrete or HP10x42).
(3) Specify the location of piles.

606.8 DRILLED SHAFTS

Use the following drilled shaft notes when applicable for the specific project. Revise the note for the project conditions and the different drilled shaft designs, if any, on the project.

[606.8-1] ROCK-OCKETED DRILLED SHAFTS: The maximum factored load to be supported by each drilled shaft is * kips at the abutments and * kips at the piers. This load is resisted by side resistance within a portion of the bedrock socket and by tip resistance. At the abutments, the factored side resistance is * kips, assumed to act along the bottom * feet of the bedrock socket, and the factored tip resistance is * kips. At the piers, the factored side resistance is * kips, assumed to act along the bottom * feet of the bedrock socket, and the factored tip resistance is * kips.

NOTE TO DESIGNER:
* Complete the loads and dimensions in this note. Abutment and Pier sections of the note should be removed or revised as required.

[606.8-2] FRICTION DRILLED SHAFTS: The maximum factored load to be supported by each drilled shaft is * kips at the abutments and * kips at the piers. This load is resisted by frictional side resistance along the length of the drilled shaft and by tip resistance. At the abutments, the factored side resistance is * kips, assumed to act along the bottom * feet of the drilled shaft, and the factored tip resistance is * kips. At the piers, the factored side resistance is * kips, assumed to act along the bottom * feet of the drilled shaft, and the factored tip resistance is * kips.

NOTE TO DESIGNER:
* Complete the loads and dimensions in this note. Abutment and Pier sections of the note should be removed or revised as required.

[606.8-3] LATERALLY LOADED DRILLED SHAFTS: The maximum factored lateral load and bending moment to be supported by each drilled shaft are * kips, and * kip-feet, respectively. These loads produce a maximum factored bending moment of * kip-feet, and a maximum factored shear of * kips, within the drilled shaft.

NOTE TO DESIGNER:
* Complete the loads and dimensions in this note. If the maximum factored lateral loading of drilled shafts varies between substructure units, specify the drilled shaft groups and locations separately in the note.

The following note, modified to fit the specific conditions for the foundation required, will apply when uplift loads control the design of the drilled shaft. In this case, the drilled shafts are typically installed to a tip elevation.

[606.8-4] DRILLED SHAFTS INSTALLED TO TIP ELEVATION FOR UPLIFT: Uplift loading controls the length of the drilled shafts at the *. Install the drilled shafts to the tip elevation shown on the plans.

NOTE TO DESIGNER:
* Specify the substructure locations where uplift controls.
Provide the following note whenever a demonstration drilled shaft is specified. See BDM Section 305.4.4.6 for guidance.

[606.8-5] ITEM 524 - DRILLED SHAFTS, MISC.: DEMONSTRATION DRILLED SHAFT

PART 1: DESCRIPTION
This work consists of all labor, materials, equipment and incidentals to construct a demonstration drilled shaft for testing and evaluation to verify the proposed construction methods for the production drilled shafts.

Complete the installation of the demonstration drilled shaft within (1) days of contract award date. The Department will consider the demonstration drilled shaft installation complete after receiving written acceptance from the Engineer.

PART 2: MATERIALS
The demonstration drilled shaft shall use the same concrete mix design and steel reinforcement as the production drilled shafts.

PART 3: EXECUTION
Submit a drilled shaft installation plan to the Engineer for acceptance in accordance with the requirements of C&MS 524.03. Construct at least one demonstration drilled shaft in the area shown in the plans and in accordance with the accepted written installation. Upon construction of the demonstration drilled shaft, and receipt of testing and evaluation results confirming the demonstration drilled shaft has been installed in accordance with contract documents, the Engineer will issue a letter accepting the installation plan for the construction of the subsequent production drilled shafts.

If modification(s) to the installation plan are made, whether due to the testing and evaluation results or for other reason, the Department will require construction of an additional demonstration shaft constructed in accordance with the modified installation plan, at no additional cost. The diameter, length, reinforcing, installations methods, and other miscellaneous details of the demonstration shaft shall be the same as the production drilled shafts.

Submit the location of the demonstration shaft to the Engineer for acceptance. Locate the demonstration drilled shaft such that no interference occurs with the foundations of existing or proposed structures, the proposed maintenance of traffic, or existing or proposed utilities.

Test the demonstration drilled shaft by Thermal Integrity Profiling (TIP) according to ASTM D7949, Method B; by Crosshole Sonic Logging (CSL) according to ASTM D6760; and by high-strain dynamic testing according to ASTM D4945.

PART 4: MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT
The Department will measure demonstration drilled shaft by the number of feet, measured along the axis of the drilled shaft from the required bottom elevation of the shaft to the proposed top plan elevation.

In addition to the provisions of C&MS 524.17, the Department will pay for accepted quantities of demonstration drilled shaft after installation of the demonstration shaft and after being provided with written testing and evaluation results acceptable to the Engineer. The contract price is full compensation for furnishing and installing drilled shafts in accordance with the above requirements, including mobilization, site access, and final removal of the shaft to 36 inches below final grade.

The Department will pay for testing and evaluation of the accepted demonstration shaft separately. The Department will not pay for testing and evaluation of additional demonstration drilled shafts. The Department will pay for accepted quantities at the contract price as follows:

ITEM 524 – DRILLER SHAFTS, MISC.: DEMONSTRATION DRILLED SHAFT
NOTE TO DESIGNER:
(1) This is generally a period of from 50 to 200 days.

Provide the following note whenever drilled shaft integrity testing by Thermal Integrity Profiling (TIP) is specified. See BDM Section 305.4.6 for guidance.

[606.8-6] ITEM 524 - DRILLED SHAFTS, MISC.: THERMAL INTEGRITY PROFILER (T.I.P.) WIRE CABLE TESTING OF DRILLED SHAFTS
Perform integrity testing on (1) of the drilled shafts at the (2) by Thermal Integrity Profiling (TIP). Perform TIP testing per ASTM D7949, “Standard Test Methods for Thermal Integrity Profiling of Concrete Deep Foundations,” Method B, and per the project special provisions.

NOTE TO DESIGNER:
(1) Specify the number of drilled shafts to be tested (e.g. all, 10%, one, 50%, etc.).
(2) Specify the substructure locations where testing is to be performed.

Provide the following note whenever drilled shaft integrity testing by Crosshole Sonic Logging (CSL) is specified. See BDM Section 305.4.5 for guidance.

[606.8-7] ITEM 524 - DRILLED SHAFTS, MISC.: CSL TESTING, (1)" DIA. SHAFT
Perform integrity testing on (2) of the drilled shafts at the (3) by Crosshole Sonic Logging (CSL). Perform CSL testing per ASTM D6760, “Standard Test Method for Integrity Testing of Concrete Deep Foundations by Ultrasonic Crosshole Testing,” and per the project special provisions.

NOTE TO DESIGNER:
(1) Specify the diameter of drilled shafts to be tested. Because of the difference in labor for different diameter drilled shafts, a separate pay item is typically specified for each diameter of drilled shaft to be tested.
(2) Specify the number of drilled shafts to be tested (e.g. all, 10%, one, 50%, etc.).
(3) Specify the substructure locations where testing is to be performed.

Provide the following note whenever field verification of nominal axial resistance of drilled shafts by high-strain dynamic testing is specified in lieu of static load testing. See BDM Sections 305.7.2 and 305.7.3 for guidance.

[606.8-8] ITEM 524 - DRILLED SHAFTS, MISC.: HIGH-STRAIN DYNAMIC TESTING OF DRILLED SHAFTS
Perform field verification of nominal axial resistance on (1) of the drilled shafts at the (2) by high-strain dynamic testing. Perform high strain dynamic testing per ASTM D4945, “Standard Test Method for High-Strain Dynamic Testing of Deep Foundations,” and per the project special provisions.

NOTE TO DESIGNER:
(1) Specify the number of drilled shafts to be tested (e.g. all, 10%, one, 50%, etc.).
(2) Specify the substructure locations where testing is to be performed.

607 MAINTENANCE OF TRAFFIC

Notes concerning maintenance of traffic often are required for bridge work, especially in phased construction projects. The designer is responsible for any bridge maintenance of traffic notes being coordinated with the project’s overall maintenance of traffic plans. Any phased construction lane widths, temporary or construction vertical and horizontal clearances, or construction access requirements must match requirements in project’s maintenance of traffic plans.
608  RAILROAD GRADE SEPARATION PROJECTS

608.1  CONSTRUCTION CLEARANCE

Obtain the actual dimensions used in the text of this note from the "Agreement" (a legal document signed by the Director and Railroad). To help limit project construction problems, validate those dimensions with the district railroad coordinator before the note is considered complete. Revise the note to define the agreed upon restraints, including items such as short term clearances, if different than the construction clearances; maximum period of time for restricted clearances; or other project specific controls.

[608.1-1]  CONSTRUCTION CLEARANCE: Maintain a construction clearance of __ feet horizontally from the center of tracks and __ feet vertically from a point level with the top of the higher rail, and __ feet from the center of tracks, at all times.

NOTE TO DESIGNER:
* The Designer shall fill in the dimensions.

608.2  RAILROAD AERIAL LINES

Modify the note below to match the specific requirements of the "Agreement" (a legal document signed by the Director and Railroad). Contact the District railroad coordinator to confirm whether the railroad will move, maintain, or reconstruction their lines or other cable systems attached to the bridge or whether the note must specify this scope of work as part of the project.

[608.2-1]  RAILROAD AERIAL LINES will be relocated by the Railroad. Use all precautions necessary to see that the lines are not disturbed during the construction stage and cooperate with the Railroad in the relocation of these lines. The cost of the relocation will be included in the railroad force account work.

609  UTILITY LINES

The District Utility Coordinator shall coordinate utilities. The District utilities coordinator shall be contacted for required notes. If existing utilities contain asbestos or other hazardous materials, plan notes will be required to identify the location of the utility and identify the material. The Designer shall assure any plan notes added are coordinated with the bid item descriptions to assure the Contractor properly bids the item.

610  REHABILITATION OF EXISTING STRUCTURES

610.1  EXISTING STRUCTURE VERIFICATION

Provide the following note on plans for altering, widening or repairing existing structures in order to qualify the plans and to ensure that the Contractor's obligation is clearly stated. The inclusion of this note in the plans does not relieve the designer of the requirements stated in BDM Sections 401 and 403:

[610.1-1]  EXISTING STRUCTURE VERIFICATION: Details and dimensions shown on these plans pertaining to the existing structure have been obtained from plans of the existing structure and from field observations and measurements. Consequently, they are indicative of the existing structure and the proposed work but they shall be considered tentative and approximate. The Contractor is referred to C&MS Sections 102.05, 105.02 and 513.04*. Base contract bid prices upon a recognition of the uncertainties described above and upon a prebid examination of the existing structure. However, the Department will pay for all project work based upon actual details and dimensions that have been verified in the field.

* Delete the reference to 513.04 if structural steel is not involved.
610.2 REINFORCING STEEL REPLACEMENT

Place the following note in the plans where the preserved existing reinforcing steel which projects from the existing structure after partial removal is to be lapped with new reinforcing steel.

[610.2-1] ITEM 509 - REINFORCING STEEL, REPLACEMENT OF EXISTING REINFORCING STEEL, AS PER PLAN: Replace all existing reinforcing bars deemed by the Engineer to be unusable because of corrosion. The Department will measure the replacement reinforcing steel by the number of pounds accepted in place. Replace all existing reinforcing steel bars which are to be incorporated into the new work and are deemed by the Engineer to be made unusable by concrete removal operations with new epoxy coated reinforcing steel of the same size at no cost to the Department.

NOTE TO DESIGNER: Include a bid item as defined above with a specific weight of reinforcing steel. On rehabilitation plans where new reinforcing steel may require field bending and cutting, use the following note. Clearly designate in the plans the bar marks to which this note applies.

[610.2-2] ITEM 509 - EPOXY COATED REINFORCING STEEL, AS PER PLAN: In addition to the provisions of item 509, field bend and/or field cut the reinforcing steel designated in the plans, as necessary, in order to maintain the required clearances and bar spacings. Repair all damage to the epoxy coating, as a result of this work, according to C&MS 709.00.

610.3 REHABILITATION – STRUCTURAL STEEL

Use the following note on bridge rehabilitation projects where repair or replacement of members not designed to carry tension live loads (i.e. cross-frames, bearing plates, etc.) consist of materials readily available from a structural warehouse (i.e. angles, channels, bars, etc.) and must be field fabricated to dimensions obtained in the field after contract letting. The recommended bid item quantity for rehabilitation work is in pounds rather than Lump Sum. The Designer should adequately define all steel members to be included in this pay item.

[610.3-1] ITEM 513 - STRUCTURAL STEEL MEMBERS, LEVEL UF, AS PER PLAN: All requirements of C&MS 513 apply to shop fabricated members. Perform work for field fabricated members according to Item 513, except as modified herein. The Department will not require the contractor performing field fabrication to be pre-qualified as specified in S1078. Submit a written letter of material acceptance in accordance with C&MS 501.06, to the Engineer. Provide the Engineer “as-built” drawings according to C&MS 513.06, except C&MS 501.04 does not apply. Upon receipt of the Engineer’s acceptance, supply a copy of the drawings, according to S1002, to the Office of Material Management for record purposes.

The following members are included in this item: ______, ______ and ______.

610.4 REFURBISHED BEARINGS

When the following note is used, a separate plan note and pay quantity for jacking or temporary support of the superstructure is required. Revise this note, as appropriate, to describe the work for the type of bearing being refurbished.

[610.4-1] ITEM 516 - REFURBISHING BEARING DEVICES, AS PER PLAN: This item shall include all work necessary to properly align bridge bearings as well as their cleaning and painting. Included shall be the disassembly of the bearings, hand tool cleaning (grinding if necessary), painting according to Item 514, replacement of any damaged sheet lead with preformed bearing pads (C&MS 711.21), installation of any necessary steel shims of the same size as the bearings to provide a snug fit, realignment of the upper bearing plate by removing existing welds and rewelding so that the bearings are vertically aligned at 60° F, lubricating sliding surfaces, and reassembly of the bearings. Assure all bearings are shimmed adequately and that no beams and/or bearing devices are “floating”. At no additional cost to the State, the Contractor may install new bearings of the same type as the existing in place of refurbishing the bearings. All work shall be to the satisfaction of the Engineer. Payment for all of the above described labor and materials will be made at the contract price bid for ITEM 516 - REFURBISH BEARING DEVICES, AS PER PLAN.
610.5  JACKING BRIDGE SUPERSTRUCTURES

Use the following note, modified as necessary, where jacking and/or temporary support of the existing superstructure is required. Modifications to this note are often not being performed by the designers. Use of this not without a review of the project may add unnecessary requirements to the jacking process or, in reverse, not be restrictive enough. Designers are again cautioned to appropriately review this note before incorporation into a set of plans.

[610.5-1]  ITEM 516, JACKING AND TEMPORARY SUPPORT OF SUPERSTRUCTURE, AS PER PLAN:

This work consists of raising or re-positioning existing structures to the dimensions and requirements defined in the project plans. Submit construction plans in accordance with C&MS 501.05. If, during the jacking operations, cracking of the concrete superstructure, separation of the concrete deck from the steel stringers, or other damage to the structure is visually observed, immediately cease the jacking operation and install supports to the satisfaction of the Engineer. Analyze the damage and submit a method of correction to the Engineer for approval. Epoxy inject all beams that separate from the deck for the distance of the separation in accordance with C&MS 512.07. The Department will not pay for the cost of this epoxy injection or other required repairs. The bridge bearings shall be fully seated at all contact areas. If full seating is not attained, submit a repair plan to the Engineer. The Department will not pay for the repair costs to ensure full seating on bearings. The Department will measure this work on a lump sum basis. The Department will pay for the accepted quantities at the contract price for ITEM 516, JACKING AND TEMPORARY SUPPORT OF SUPERSTRUCTURE, AS PER PLAN.

610.6  FATIGUE MEMBER INSPECTION

When re-decking a continuous beam bridge containing top flange fillet-welded cover plates and/or field butt-welded beams, provide the following note to facilitate the Engineer's inspection of the welded connections.

[610.6-1]  INSPECTION OF EXISTING STRUCTURAL STEEL: The Engineer will visually inspect all existing butt-welded splices and/or top flange cover plate fillet welds to ensure the welds, plates and beams or girders are free of defects and cracks. If necessary, remove all deck slab haunch forms immediately adjacent to such welds that may interfere with the Engineer's inspection. The inspection will not take place until the top flanges are cleaned according to C&MS 511.10, but it will be done before the deck slab reinforcement is installed. The Department will pay for the cost associated with this inspection with ITEM 511 - SUPERSTRUCTURE CONCRETE. The Engineer will report all cracks found to the Office of Construction Administration, Bridge Construction Specialist, along with specific information on location of the cracks, length, and depth so an evaluation and repair or replacement recommendation can be made.

611  MISCELLANEOUS GENERAL NOTES

611.1  BEARING PAD SHIMS, PRESTRESSED

Add the following note to ensure proper seating of prestressed concrete box beams for skewed bridges.

[611.1-1]  BEARING PAD SHIMS: Place 1/8" thick preformed bearing pad shims, plan area ___ inches by ___ inches, under the elastomeric bearing pads where required for proper bearing. Furnish two shims per beam. The Department will measure this item by the total number supplied. The Department will pay for accepted quantities at the contract price for ITEM 516 - 1/8" PREFORMED BEARING PADS. Any unused shims will become the property of the State.

NOTE TO DESIGNER: The plan area of the shim pad shall be the same as the elastomeric bearing.
611.2  CLEANING STEEL IN PATCHES

Use this note with all concrete patching bid items that refer to the cleaning requirements specified in 519.04

[611.2-1]  ITEM 519 - PATCHING CONCRETE STRUCTURES, AS PER PLAN: Prior to the surface cleaning specified in C&MS 519.04 and within 24 hours of placing patching material, blast clean all surfaces to be patched including the exposed reinforcing steel. Acceptable methods include high-pressure water blasting with or without abrasives in the water, abrasive blasting with containment, or vacuum abrasive blasting.

611.3  COFFERDAMS AND EXCAVATION BRACING

Use this note when the plans include detail designs for temporary shoring.

[611.3-1]  ITEM 503 - COFFERDAMS AND EXCAVATION BRACING, AS PER PLAN:

The design shown on the plans for temporary support of excavation is one representative design that may be used to construct the project. The Contractor may construct the design shown on the plans or prepare an alternate design to support the sides of excavations. If constructing an alternate design for temporary support of excavation, prepare and provide plans in accordance with C&MS 501.05. The Department will pay for the temporary support of excavation at the contract lump sum price for Cofferdams and Excavation Bracing. The Department will not make additional payment for providing an alternate design.

611.4  DECK PLACEMENT NOTES

611.4.1  FALSEWORK AND FORMS

Use the following note when web depths greater than 84 in. are specified.

[611.4.1-1]  ITEM 511 - CLASS QC2 CONCRETE, SUPERSTRUCTURE, AS PER PLAN *

Locate the lower contact point of the overhang falsework at least ** inches ± 2 in. above the top of the girder’s bottom flange. The bracket contact point location requirements of C&MS 508 do not apply.

NOTE TO DESIGNER:

*  Modify the pay item description to fit the specific project requirements.

**  The minimum dimension for the location for the lower point of contact should be 76 in. below the bottom of the top flange. Designers should verify the acceptability of the design within the range of tolerance specified.
611.4.2 DECK PLACEMENT DESIGN ASSUMPTIONS

Use the following note on all projects requiring mechanized finishing machines to place deck concrete.

[611.4.2-1] DECK PLACEMENT DESIGN ASSUMPTIONS:

The following assumptions of construction means and methods were made for the analysis and design of the superstructure. The Contractor is responsible for the design of the falsework support system within these parameters and will assume responsibility for superstructure analysis for deviation from these design assumptions.

An eight wheel finishing machine with a maximum wheel load of _____ kips.

A minimum out-to-out wheel spacing at each end of the machine of 103”.

A maximum spacing of overhang falsework brackets of 48 in.

A maximum distance from the centerline of the fascia girder to the face of the safety handrail of 65”.

NOTE TO DESIGNER: Refer to BDM Section 309.3.8.1 for design information regarding finishing machine loads.

611.5 VANDAL PROTECTION FENCING

For bridges where non-standard vandal protection fencing is provided in accordance with BDM Section 305.6 and the bridge is constructed in phases, provide the following plan note:

[611.5-1] VANDAL PROTECTION FENCING

Install fencing for each construction phase prior to opening that phase to vehicular and/or pedestrian traffic.

611.6 PRECAST WALLS

Use note [611.6-1] for 4-sided box culverts (C&MS 706.05), 3-sided flat top culverts (C&MS 706.051), arch culverts (C&MS 706.052) and circular arch culverts (C&MS 706.053) where the angle between the centerline of the waterway and the exposed face of the wall is 30-degrees or more.

[611.6-1] ITEM 511 - CLASS QC1 CONCRETE, RETAINING/WINGWALL NOT INCLUDING FOOTING, AS PER PLAN:

The Department will permit the use of precast concrete in lieu of cast-in-place concrete for headwalls and wingwalls in accordance with C&MS 602.03. The Department will pay for the wingwall and headwall concrete in Square Yard as determined from plan dimensions using the wall heights above the footing and length along the exterior faces of the walls. The Department will consider the reinforcing steel in the wingwalls and headwalls, including the reinforcement that extends into the footings, as incidental to the retaining/wingwall concrete. The total quantity of cast-in-place wingwall and headwall concrete is ____ Cu Yd. The total quantity of cast-in-place wingwall and headwall reinforcing steel is ____ Lbs.

NOTE TO DESIGNER: Where note [611.6-1] applies, the Department will pay for the concrete and reinforcing steel in wingwalls and headwalls on a Square Yard basis to avoid the need to non-perform multiple work items associated with the change from cast-in-place to precast concrete. For informational purposes only, include the reinforcing steel for the cast-in-place wingwalls and headwalls in the plan’s Reinforcing Steel List and include bending diagrams. The Department will pay for concrete and reinforcing steel in the footings as Item 511 (Cu Yd) and Item 509 (Lb) respectively. The Department will consider the bars that extend from the footing into the wingwalls as wingwall reinforcement. Do not locate foundations for other roadway items (e.g. sign supports) in the soils retained behind wingwalls.
SECTION 700 – TYPICAL DETAIL NOTES

701 SUBSTRUCTURE DETAIL ................................................................. 7-1
701.1 STEEL SHEET PILING ................................................................. 7-1
701.2 BRIDGE SEAT REINFORCING ..................................................... 7-1
701.3 BRIDGE SEAT ELEVATIONS FOR ELASTOMERIC BEARINGS .... 7-1
701.4 PROPER SEATING OF STEEL BEAMS AT ABUTMENTS ............ 7-1
701.5 BACKWALL CONCRETE PLACEMENT FOR PRESTRESSED BOX BEAMS 7-1

702 SUPERSTRUCTURE DETAILS ....................................................... 7-2
702.1 STEEL BEAM DEFLECTION AND CAMBER .............................. 7-2
702.2 STEEL NOTCH TOUGHNESS REQUIREMENT (CHARPY V-NOTCH) 7-3
702.3 HIGH STRENGTH BOLTS ......................................................... 7-3
702.4 CONCRETE PLACEMENT SEQUENCE NOTES ......................... 7-3
702.4.1 CONCRETE INTERMEDIATE DIAPHRAGM FOR PRESTRESSED CONCRETE I-BEAMS. 7-3
702.4.2 SEMI-INTEGRAL OR INTEGRAL ABUTMENT CONCRETE PLACEMENT FOR DIAPHRAGMS 7-3
702.5 CONCRETE DECK SLAB DEPTH AND PAY QUANTITIES ............. 7-5
702.6 PRESTRESSED CONCRETE I-BEAM BRIDGES ......................... 7-6
702.7 PRESTRESSED CONCRETE BOX BEAM BRIDGE ....................... 7-6
702.8 ASPHALT CONCRETE WEARING COURSE ............................... 7-8
702.9 PAINTING OF A588/A709 GRADE 50 STEEL ............................ 7-9
702.10 ERECTION BOLTS ................................................................. 7-9
702.11 WELDED ATTACHMENTS .................................................... 7-9
702.12 DECK ELEVATION TABLES .................................................... 7-9
702.12.1 SCREED ELEVATION TABLES ............................................. 7-9
702.12.2 TOP OF HAUNCH ELEVATION TABLES ................................. 7-10
702.12.3 FINAL DECK SURFACE ELEVATION TABLES ..................... 7-11
702.13 ELASTOMERIC BEARING MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS ............ 7-11
702.14 BEARING SEAT ADJUSTMENTS FOR SPECIAL BEARINGS ....... 7-11
702.15 HAUNCHED GIRDER FABRICATION NOTE ............................. 7-12
702.16 FRACTURE CRITICAL FABRICATION NOTE ............................ 7-12

703 SITE PLAN REQUIREMENTS FOR SECTION 401 AND 404 OF THE CLEAN WATER ACT.... 7-12
**SECTION 700 – TYPICAL DETAIL NOTES**

**701 SUBSTRUCTURE DETAIL**

**701.1 STEEL SHEET PILING**

Place the following note on the substructure or retaining wall sheet with the details of steel sheet piling that is to be left in place.

**[701.1-1]** STEEL SHEET PILING left in place shall have a minimum section modulus of _____ in³ per foot of wall.

**701.2 BRIDGE SEAT REINFORCING**

For structures that contain bearing anchors, place one of the two following notes on an appropriate abutment or pier detail sheet near the "Bearing Anchor Plan". Where the Contractor is allowed the option of presetting bearing anchors (or formed holes), or of drilling bearing anchor holes, provide the first note. Where drilling of anchors into the bridge seat is required, provide the second note. (Formed holes are not practical for prestressed concrete box beam bridges.)

**[701.2-1]** BRIDGE SEAT REINFORCING, SETTING ANCHORS: Accurately place reinforcing steel in the vicinity of the bridge seat to avoid interference with the drilling of bearing anchor holes or the presetting of bearing anchors.

**[701.2-2]** BRIDGE SEAT REINFORCING, SETTING ANCHORS: Accurately place reinforcing steel in the vicinity of the bridge seat to avoid interference with the drilling of anchor bar holes.

**701.3 BRIDGE SEAT ELEVATIONS FOR ELASTOMERIC BEARINGS**

Where bridge seats have been adjusted to compensate for the vertical deformation of elastomeric bearings, place the following note with the necessary modifications on the appropriate substructure detail sheet.

**[701.3-1]** BRIDGE SEAT ELEVATIONS have been adjusted upward _____ inches at abutments and _____ inches at piers to compensate for the vertical deformation of the bearings.

**701.4 PROPER SEATING OF STEEL BEAMS AT ABUTMENTS**

For a steel beam bridge with concrete backwalls and sealed deck joints employing superstructure support or armor steel of considerable stiffness where there is a possibility of individual beams being lifted off of their bearings in a clamping operation, a note similar to the following shall be provided:

**[701.4-1]** INSTALLATION OF SEAL: During installation of the support/armor for the superstructure side of the expansion joint seal, observe the seating of beams on bearings to assure that positive bearing is maintained.

**701.5 BACKWALL CONCRETE PLACEMENT FOR PRESTRESSED BOX BEAMS**

For prestressed concrete box beam bridges where the placement of the wingwall concrete above the bridge seat needs to occur after the beams have been erected to allow for the tolerances of the beam fit-up and for beam erection clearances, provide the following note:
ABUTMENT CONCRETE: Do not place the abutment concrete above the bridge seat construction joint until the prestressed concrete box beams have been erected.

SUPERSTRUCTURE DETAILS

STEEL BEAM DEFLECTION AND CAMBER

For steel beam or built-up girder bridges provide a table similar to BDM Table 702-1 on a structural steel detail sheet. Tabulation is required regardless of the amount of deflection and is required for all beams or girders, if the deflection is different.

Show the deflection and camber data as described in BDM Section 308.2.1.f. The table is to include bearing points, quarter points, center of span, splice points, and maximum 30-ft increments. Unique geometry may require an even closer spacing.

Table 702-1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DEFLECTION AND CAMBER</th>
<th>SPAN NUMBER (1)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bearing Pt 1/4 Pt Pt (3) Mid Span Pt (3) 1/4 Pt Splice Pt Bearing Pt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deflection due to weight of steel</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deflection due to remaining deadload (4)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjustment required for vertical curve</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjustment required for horizontal curve</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjustment required for heat curving (5)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Required Shop Camber</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(1) Table is only an example. For multiple span structures include each span and the bearing points in a single table.
(2) Define distance and position
(3) Additional points required in a span if the distance between bearing points, 1/4 points, mid span and/or splice points exceeds 30-ft. If the distance does exceed 30-ft locate the additional point midway between standard points.
(4) Do not include a separate wearing surface that is not installed during the project
(5) For horizontally curved girders the designer is responsible for establishing the required additional camber to be included in the girder per LRFD 6.7.7.3. Include these values.
702.2  **STEEL NOTCH TOUGHNESS REQUIREMENT (CHARPY V-NOTCH)**

CVN material is a requirement to help assure fracture toughness of main material. Designers using this note should understand not only why CVN is specified but what is a main member. BDM Section 308.2.2.1.h helps with the definition of main members and specially highlights that cross-frames of curved steel structures, because they are actual designed members carrying live load forces, are also main members. Designers are reminded they must indicate specific pieces, members, shapes, etc. that are main members.

Place the following note on a structural steel detail sheet for bridges having main load-carrying members that must meet minimum notch toughness requirements:

[702.2-1] CVN: Where a shape or plate is designated (CVN), furnish material that meets the minimum notch toughness requirements as specified in C&MS 711.01.

702.3  **HIGH STRENGTH BOLTS**

For all structural steel superstructures, place the following note on the structural detail sheet:

[702.3-1] HIGH STRENGTH BOLTS shall be __________ diameter A325 unless otherwise noted.

702.4  **CONCRETE PLACEMENT SEQUENCE NOTES**

Also see BDM Section 701.4 notes.

702.4.1  **CONCRETE INTERMEDIATE DIAPHRAGM FOR PRESTRESSED CONCRETE I-BEAMS**

If the design plans do not reference Standard Bridge Drawing PSID-1-13, provide the following note.

[702.4.1-1] INTERMEDIATE DIAPHRAGMS: Do not place the deck concrete until all intermediate diaphragms have been properly installed. If concrete diaphragms are used, complete the installation of the intermediate diaphragms at least 48 hours before deck placement begins. Concrete shall conform to C&MS 511 with a design strength of 4.5 ksi.

702.4.2  **SEMI-INTEGRAL OR INTEGRAL ABUTMENT CONCRETE PLACEMENT FOR DIAPHRAGMS**

Hardened concrete end diaphragms restrain the movement and rotation of beam/girder ends that occur during deck placement. This restraint will increase stress in both the beam/girder and diaphragm. Factors that can contribute to detrimental stress increases include large structure skew and phased construction. When these factors exist, hardened diaphragms should be avoided during the deck placement. BDM Table 702-2 provides guidelines for concrete diaphragm placement options.
Table 702-2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description of Superstructure</th>
<th>Note</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No phased construction, and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steel superstructures with skew &lt; 30°, or</td>
<td>702.4.2-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I-beam superstructure with skew &lt; 10°</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No phased construction, and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steel superstructures with skew ≥ 30°, or</td>
<td>702.4.2-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I-beam superstructure with skew ≥ 10°</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phased construction with closure pour, and</td>
<td>702.4.2-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steel superstructures with skew &lt; 30°, or</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I-beam superstructure with skew &lt; 10°</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phased construction with closure pour, and</td>
<td>702.4.2-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steel superstructures with skew ≥ 30°, or</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I-beam superstructure with skew ≥ 10°</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phased construction without closure pour, and</td>
<td>702.4.2-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steel superstructures with skew &lt; 30°, or</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I-beam superstructure with skew &lt; 10°</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phased construction without closure pour, and</td>
<td>702.4.2-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steel superstructures with skew ≥ 30°, or</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I-beam superstructure with skew ≥ 10°</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Designers should consider the absence of restraint at the diaphragm location and when calculating the unbraced length of beam/girder flanges. If necessary, temporary bracing details should be included in the plans. Temporary end bracing should be oriented perpendicular to beam/girder webs.

Use the following notes as prescribed in the table above:

**[702.4.2-1]** ABUTMENT DIAPHRAGM CONCRETE: Place the diaphragm concrete encasing the structural member ends with the deck concrete or at least 48 hours before placement of the deck concrete. If placed separately, locate a horizontal construction joint in the diaphragm as shown on PSID-1-13, sheet 7 of 10 for prestressed I-beam superstructures or as shown on SICD-1-96 for steel superstructures and place remaining diaphragm concrete with the deck.

**NOTE TO DESIGNER:** (Applies only to [702.4.2-2])
Locate the deck construction joint parallel to the centerline of the abutment offset 1-ft from the face of the diaphragm toward the span.

**[702.4.2-3]** ABUTMENT DIAPHRAGM CONCRETE, PHASED CONSTRUCTION: Place the diaphragm concrete encasing the structural member ends of an individual phase with the deck concrete or at least 48 hours before placement of the deck concrete. If placed separately, locate a horizontal construction joint in the diaphragm as shown on PSID-1-13, sheet 7 of 10 for prestressed I-beam superstructures or as shown on SICD-1-96 for steel superstructures and place remaining diaphragm concrete with the deck. Place closure pour concrete in the diaphragm and deck concurrently.

**NOTE TO DESIGNER:** (Applies only to [702.4.2-3])
If a closure pour is required in the deck per BDM Section 309.3.8.5, provide a closure pour in the diaphragm as well. Locate the closure pour in the diaphragm, as near as practical, to mid-bay and orient the vertical construction joints parallel to the centerline of the adjacent beam/girders. Provide 3-in chamfers at the acute corners.
[702.4.2-4]  ABUTMENT DIAPHRAGM CONCRETE, PHASED CONSTRUCTION: Place the diaphragm concrete encasing the structural member ends of an individual phase after the deck placement in the adjacent span is complete. Procedures that place the abutment diaphragm with the deck concrete may be approved by the Engineer if the placement submittal can assure that the deck concrete in the adjacent span will be placed before concrete in the diaphragm has reached its initial set. Place closure pour concrete in the diaphragm and deck concurrently.

NOTE TO DESIGNER: (Applies only to [702.4.2-4])
If a closure pour is required in the deck per BDM Section 309.3.8.5, provide a closure pour in the diaphragm as well. Locate the closure pour in the diaphragm, as near as practical, to mid-bay and orient the vertical construction joints parallel to the centerline of the adjacent beam/girders. Locate the deck construction joint parallel to the centerline of the abutment offset 1-ft from the face of the diaphragm toward the span. Provide 3-in chamfers at the acute corners.

[702.4.2-5]  ABUTMENT DIAPHRAGM CONCRETE, PHASED CONSTRUCTION: Place the diaphragm concrete encasing the structural member ends of an individual phase with the deck concrete.

NOTE TO DESIGNER: (Applies only to [702.4.2-5])
Do not use this note where a deck closure pour is required per BDM Section 309.3.8.5.

[702.4.2-6]  ABUTMENT DIAPHRAGM CONCRETE, PHASED CONSTRUCTION: Place the diaphragm concrete encasing the structural member ends of an individual phase after the deck placement in the adjacent span is complete. Procedures that place the abutment diaphragm with the deck concrete may be approved by the Engineer if the placement submittal can assure that the deck concrete in the adjacent span will be placed before concrete in the diaphragm has reached its initial set.

NOTE TO DESIGNER: (Applies only to [702.4.2-6])
Do not use this note where a deck closure pour is required per BDM Section 309.3.8.5. Locate the deck construction joint parallel to the centerline of the abutment offset 1-ft from the face of the diaphragm toward the span.

702.5  CONCRETE DECK SLAB DEPTH AND PAY QUANTITIES

For all steel beam and girder bridges with a concrete deck, provide the following note that describes how the quantity of deck concrete was calculated.

[702.5-1]  DECK SLAB CONCRETE QUANTITY: The estimated quantity of deck slab concrete is based on the constant deck slab thickness, as shown, plus the quantity of concrete that forms each beam/girder haunch. The estimate assumes a constant haunch thickness of ___ inches and a haunch width equal to the top flange width. Deviate from this haunch thickness as necessary to place the deck surface at the finished grade.

The haunch thickness was measured at the centerline of the beam/girder, from the surface of the deck to the bottom of the top flange minus the deck slab thickness. The area of all embedded steel plates has been deducted from the haunch quantity in accordance with 511.23.

NOTE TO DESIGNER: The note above applies to both rolled beams and plate girders, and measures the haunch to the top of the web (bottom of top flange). The note above applies to new structures with beams/girders placed parallel to the profile grade line. A constant depth haunch may not be practical for new structures whose beams/girders are not placed parallel to the profile grade line. In these special cases, the note shall be modified to fit the exact conditions.
702.6 PRESTRESSED CONCRETE I-BEAM BRIDGES

For prestressed concrete I-beam bridges with concrete deck, compute the concrete topping depth over the top of the beams according to BDM Section 308.2.3.4.b. Provide a longitudinal cross section showing the topping thickness at each centerline of bearing and at each midspan.

In addition to the deck elevation tables required by BDM Section 702.12, provide the following notes in the plans for every beam:

[702.6-1] CAMBER:

Estimated camber at Day 0 \((D_0)\) is _____ inches.

Estimated camber at Day 30 \((D_{30})\) is _____ inches.

Deflection due to remaining dead load (e.g. concrete deck, cross-frames, diaphragms, barriers, utilities, etc.) is _____ inches.

The beam seat elevations assume estimated camber \(D_{30}\) with a sacrificial haunch thickness of 2-inches.

NOTE TO DESIGNER: Refer to BDM Section 308.2.3.4.b for description of camber values. If the sacrificial haunch depth differs from 2-inches, revise the note accordingly. In accordance with C&MS 511, the Contractor will adjust the bearing seat elevations based on the actual project schedule. To accommodate this adjustment, Designers shall detail vertical reinforcement in the bearing seats with adjustable lap splices such that the minimum lap length coincides with \(D_{30}\). Do not include deflection due to the weight of FWS.

[702.6-2] DECK SLAB THICKNESS FOR CONCRETE QUANTITY: The estimated quantity of deck concrete is measured according to C&MS 511. In addition to the design slab thickness, the quantity includes a variable haunch thickness that provides an allowance for: vertical grade adjustment, beam camber and additional sacrificial haunch thickness.

NOTE TO DESIGNER: Delete “vertical grade adjustment” from the above note when the project does not include such an adjustment.

Use the following note when the length of the I-beam, measured along the grade, differs from the length, measured horizontally, by more than 3/8-in:

[702.6-3] NOTE TO FABRICATOR: The dimensions measured along the length of the beam, marked with a *, do not contain an allowance for the effect of the longitudinal grade. Include the proper allowance for these dimensions in the Shop Drawings.

NOTE TO DESIGNER: Indicate the dimensions that require a grade adjustment with an asterisk or some other easily recognizable symbol and include that symbol in the note above.

702.7 PRESTRESSED CONCRETE BOX BEAM BRIDGE

For prestressed composite concrete box beam bridges with concrete deck, compute the concrete topping depth over the top of the beams according to BDM Section 308.2.3.3.e. Provide a longitudinal cross section showing the topping thickness at each centerline of bearing and at each midspan.

In addition to the deck elevation tables required by BDM Section 702.12, provide the following notes in the plans for every beam:
CAMBER:
Estimated camber at Day 0 (D₀) is _____ inches.
Estimated camber at Day 30 (D₃₀) is _____ inches.
Deflection due to remaining dead load (e.g. concrete deck, diaphragms, barriers, utilities, etc.) is _____ inches.
The beam seat elevations assume estimated camber D₃₀.

NOTE TO DESIGNER: Refer to BDM Section 308.2.3.3.e for description of camber values. In accordance with C&MS 511, the Contractor will adjust the bearing seat elevations based on the actual project schedule. To accommodate this adjustment, Designers shall detail vertical reinforcement in the bearing seats with adjustable lap splices such that the minimum lap length coincides with D₃₀. Do not include deflection due to the weight of FWS.

DECK SLAB THICKNESS FOR CONCRETE QUANTITY: The estimated quantity of deck concrete is measured according to C&MS 511. In addition to the design slab thickness, the quantity includes a variable haunch thickness that provides an allowance for: vertical grade adjustment and beam camber.

NOTE TO DESIGNER: Delete “vertical grade adjustment” from the above note when the project does not include such an adjustment.

Use the following note when the length of the box beam, measured along the grade, differs from the length, measured horizontally, by more than 3/8-in:

NOTE TO FABRICATOR: The dimensions measured along the length of the beam, marked with a *, do not contain an allowance for the effect of the longitudinal grade. Include the proper allowance for these dimensions in the Shop Drawings.

NOTE TO DESIGNER: Indicate the dimensions that require a grade adjustment with an asterisk or some other easily recognizable symbol and include that symbol in the note above.

For prestressed non-composite box beam bridges with asphalt wearing surface, compute the topping depth over the top of the beams according to BDM Section 308.2.3.3.e. Provide a longitudinal cross section showing the thickness of each Item 441 surface course at each centerline of bearing and at midspan. Refer to BDM Figure 702-1. Additionally, provide the following note in the plans for every beam:

CAMBER:
Estimated camber at Day 0 (D₀) is _____ inches.
Estimated camber at Day 30 (D₃₀) is _____ inches.
Deflection due to remaining dead load (e.g. concrete deck, diaphragms, barriers, utilities, etc.) is _____ inches.
The beam seat elevations assume estimated camber D₃₀. Increase the thickness of the intermediate course at each centerline of bearing by the same distance each seat elevation was lowered per C&MS 511.07. No adjustment shall be made to the overlay thickness at midspan.

NOTE TO DESIGNER: Refer to BDM Section 308.2.3.3.e for description of camber values. In accordance with C&MS 511, the Contractor will adjust the bearing seat elevations based on the actual project schedule. To accommodate this adjustment, Designers shall detail vertical reinforcement in the bearing seats with adjustable lap splices such that the minimum lap length coincides with D₃₀. Do not include deflection due to the weight of FWS.
702.8  ASPHALT CONCRETE WEARING COURSE

Place note [702.8-1] on the plans for prestressed concrete box beam bridges having an asphalt concrete wearing course. If the nominal thickness of 441 varies from the 1.5-in shown, revise the note accordingly.

While this note specifies how to place only the two 441 bid items, the designer should recognize that two ITEM 407 - TACK COAT items are also required. One tack coat is applied before the first surface course. The other tack coat is applied between the first and second surface courses.
ASPHALT CONCRETE WEARING COURSE shall consist of a variable thickness of 441 asphalt concrete surface course, Type 1, PG70-22M and a second 1½” thickness of 441 asphalt concrete surface course, Type 1, PG70-22M. Place the first 441 surface course in two operations. The first portion of the course shall be of 1½” uniform thickness. Feather the second portion of the course to place the surface parallel to and 1½” below final pavement surface elevation.

PAINTING OF A588/A709 GRADE 50 STEEL

Provide the following note for bridge superstructures using unpainted A588/A709 Grade 50W steel and having deck expansion joints at the abutments. Modify the note accordingly for structures with intermediate expansion joints. Bridges with an integral or semi-integral type abutment will not require painting of the beam ends.

PARTIAL PAINTING OF A709 GRADE 50W STEEL: Paint the last 10 ft of each beam/girder end adjacent to the abutments including all cross-frames and other steel within these limits. The prime coat shall be 708.01. The top coat color shall closely approach Federal Standard No. 595B - 20045 or 20059 (the color of weathering steel).

ERECTION BOLTS

Where erection bolts are specified for attaching cross-frames on steel girder or rolled beam bridges, and the expected dead load differential deflection at each end of the cross-frames is less than or equal to 0.5-in provide the following note. (Do not use the note if standard drawing GSD-1-19 is being referenced.)

ERECTION BOLTS: The hole diameter in the cross-frames and girder stiffeners shall be 3/16" larger than the diameter of the erection bolts. Erection bolts shall be high strength bolts and shall remain in place. Supply two hardened washers with each high strength bolt. Fully torque the bolts or use a lock washer in addition to the two hardened washers. Furnish erection bolts as part of Item 513.

WELDED ATTACHMENTS

Provide the following note on plans for steel beam or girder bridges:

WELD ATTACHMENT of supports for concrete deck finishing machine to areas of the fascia stringer flanges designated "Compression". Do not weld attachments to areas designated "Tension". Fillet welds to compression flanges shall be at least 1" from edge of flange, be no more than 2" long, and be at least 1/4" for thicknesses up to 3/4" or 5/16" for greater than 3/4" thick.

SCREED ELEVATION TABLES

Screed elevation tables are required for concrete decks on structural steel beam, structural steel girder, prestressed I-beam, composite box beam and other superstructure types with cast-in-place concrete decks. Screed elevations are not required for slab bridges. The general criteria for screed elevation tables are defined in BDM Section 309.3.3.3. Refer to BDM Table 702.12-1 for an example screed table for structural steel members and BDM Table 702-4 for an example screed table for composite box beams. In lieu of a table format, the designer may supply screed elevations through the use of a deck plan view showing elevations and stations of the points required in BDM Section 309.3.3.3.

In addition to the screed elevation table or diagram, provide a screed elevation note similar to the one below to define the elevations that are given. The screed elevation locations should be identified on the transverse section.

SCREED ELEVATIONS shown represent the theoretical deck surface location prior to deflections caused by deck placement and other anticipated dead loads.
Table 702-3

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Point (2)</th>
<th>SPAN NUMBER (1)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Station</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bearing Pt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Left Curb Line</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phased Const Line</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Centerline</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Right Curb Line</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(1) Detail all spans.
(2) Station all Points for screeds.
(3) Additional points required in a span if the distance between bearing points, 1/4 points, mid span and/or splice points exceeds 30-ft. If the distance does exceed 30-ft, locate the additional point midway between standard points.

Table 702-4

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Point (2)</th>
<th>SPAN NUMBER (1)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Station</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bearing Pt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Left Curb line</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phased Const. Line</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Centerline</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Right Curb Line</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(1) Detail all spans
(2) Station all Points for screeds.
(3) Additional points required in a span if the distance between bearing points, 1/4 points and/or mid span points exceeds 30-ft. If the distance does exceed 30-ft, locate the additional point midway between standard points.

702.12.2 TOP OF HAUNCH ELEVATION TABLES

Top of haunch elevation tables are required for concrete decks on structural steel beam, structural steel girder, prestressed I-beam and other superstructure types requiring deck falsework. Top of haunch elevations are not required for slab bridges. The general criteria for top of haunch elevation tables are defined in BDM Section 309.3.3.3.

In addition to the top of haunch elevation table, provide a top of haunch elevation note similar to the one below to define the elevations that are given. The top of haunch elevation locations should be identified on the transverse section.

702.12.2-1 TOP OF HAUNCH ELEVATIONS shown represent the theoretical location of the bottom of the deck above the beam/girder haunch prior to deflections caused by deck placement and other anticipated dead loads.
702.12.3 FINAL DECK SURFACE ELEVATION TABLES

Final deck surface elevation tables are required for concrete decks on structural steel beam, structural steel girder, prestressed I-beam, composite box beam and other superstructure types with cast-in-place concrete decks including slab bridges. The general criteria for final deck surface elevation tables are defined in BDM Section 309.3.3.

In addition to the final deck surface elevation table, provide a final deck surface elevation note similar to the one below to define the elevations that are given.

[702.12.3-1] FINAL DECK SURFACE ELEVATIONS shown represent the deck surface location after all anticipated dead load deflections have occurred.

702.13 ELASTOMERIC BEARING MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS

Use the following note for elastomeric bearings designed in accordance with LRFD 14.7.6 (i.e. Method A)

[702.13-1] ELASTOMERIC BEARINGS: The elastomer shall have a hardness of ___ (50 or 60) durometer. The bearings were designed in accordance with Section 14.7.6 (Method A) of the AASHTO LRFD Bridge Design Specifications. The Long-term Compression Proof Load Test (AASHTO Standard Specifications for Highway Bridges, Division II, Section 18.7.2.6) is not required.

Use the following note for elastomeric bearings designed in accordance with LRFD 14.7.5 (i.e. Method B)

[702.13-2] ELASTOMERIC BEARINGS: The elastomer shall have a hardness of ___ (50 or 60) durometer. The bearings were designed in accordance with Section 14.7.5 (Method B) of the AASHTO LRFD Bridge Design Specifications. Perform the Long-term Compression Proof Load Test in accordance with the AASHTO Standard Specifications for Highway Bridges, Division II, Section 18.7.2.6 and 18.7.4.5.

702.14 BEARING SEAT ADJUSTMENTS FOR SPECIAL BEARINGS

Provide the following plan note in project plans that specify specialized bearings such as pot, spherical or disc. This note is intended to ensure that the contractor builds the bearing seats to the proper elevation in the event that the bearing manufacturer adjusts the height from the height assumed in the design plans.

[702.14-1] The pier and abutment beam seat elevations are based on bearing heights provided in the table below. If the Contractor’s selected bearing manufacturer has a design that does not conform to the heights provided in the table, adjust the bearing seat elevations at no additional cost to the state. Adjust the location of reinforcing steel horizontally as necessary to avoid interference with the bearing anchor bolts. Maintain the minimum concrete cover and minimum spacing required by the project plans. If the reinforcing steel cannot be moved to provide the required position for the anchor bolts, the Contractor’s bearing manufacturer shall re-design the bearings to accommodate an acceptable anchor bolt configuration.

Table 702-5

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Rear Abutment</th>
<th>Pier No #</th>
<th>Forward Abutment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Member Line 1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Member Line 2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Member Line 3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Member Line 4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
702.15  HAUNCHED GIRDER FABRICATION NOTE

For steel haunched girders, add the following note on the design plan sheet that shows an elevation view of the typical haunched girder section defining web size, flange size, depth of member, CVN, etc.

[702.15-1]  HAUNCHED GIRDER: Near the bearing, at the intersection of the horizontal bottom flange with the curved (haunched) portion of the bottom flange, the Contractor’s fabricator shall hot bend the flange in accordance with AASHTO LRFD Bridge Construction Specifications, Section 11.4.3.3.3 or provide a full penetration weld, with 100% radiographic inspection.

702.16  FRACTURE CRITICAL FABRICATION NOTE

For structures that contain fracture critical components and members, place the following note in the design plans.

[702.16-1]  FCM: All items designated FCM (including ________ )* are Fracture Critical Members and Components and shall be furnished and fabricated according to the requirements of Section 12 of the AASHTO/AWS Bridge Welding Code D1.5.

* - Include this additional wording if there exists fracture critical components such as welds, attachments, etc. that are not easily or clearly identified in the plan details. Write descriptions of such components as specific as necessary to prevent any possible confusion during fabrication.

703  SITE PLAN REQUIREMENTS FOR SECTION 401 AND 404 OF THE CLEAN WATER ACT

For waterway crossing projects, include the following information on the Preliminary Structure Site Plan. Refer to BDM Section 201.2.2 for additional information.

[703-1]  For this project, permits for Sections 401 and 404 of the Clean Water Act, are based on the limits of temporary construction fill placed in “Waters of the United States” as shown below. If either of the limits provided are exceeded, then a 404/401 permit modification will be required. If a permit modification is required, refer to SS832.09 for the application requirements.

Plan Area of Temporary Fill Material = _____ acres

Total Volume of Temporary Fill Material = _____ yd³
SECTION 800 – NOISE BARRIERS

801 INTRODUCTION ..................................................................................................................................... 8-1
802 DESIGN CONSIDERATIONS ................................................................................................................... 8-3
  802.1 NOISE BARRIER FOUNDATIONS ................................................................................................ 8-3
    802.1.1 GENERAL .................................................................................................................................. 8-3
    802.1.2 DRILLED SHAFT DESIGN ..................................................................................................... 8-3
  802.2 NOISE BARRIER AESTHETICS .................................................................................................... 8-7
803 DETAIL DESIGN SUBMISSION REQUIREMENTS .............................................................................. 8-7
  803.1 NOISE BARRIER PLAN SHEET ORDER .................................................................................... 8-7
  803.2 NOISE BARRIER PLAN REQUIREMENTS .................................................................................. 8-8
  803.3 ADDITIONAL DETAIL DESIGN SUBMISSION REQUIREMENTS ............................................. 8-10
804 NOISE BARRIERS – APPROVAL OF WALL DESIGNS .................................................................. 8-10
805 NOISE BARRIER SUBMISSION REQUIREMENTS ........................................................................... 8-10
  805.1 ENVIRONMENTAL DESIGN REQUIREMENTS ...................................................................... 8-11
  805.2 STRUCTURAL DESIGN REQUIREMENTS ................................................................................ 8-11
  805.3 MATERIAL DESIGN REQUIREMENTS ..................................................................................... 8-12


SECTION 800 – NOISE BARRIERS

801 INTRODUCTION

When noise barriers are necessary, the Office of Environmental Services will furnish the required noise barrier height, length and location(s). The detail design for noise barriers shall be included in the Stage 2 Detailed Design Review Submission.

Design specifications for ground mounted precast concrete noise barrier walls are provided in Standard Bridge Drawing NBS-1-09. Associated designer notes are provided in Design Data Sheet NBSDD-1-09. The Department occasionally permits the use of noise barrier walls consisting of material types other than precast concrete. These wall types are pre-approved according to the requirements of the Department’s Standard Procedure 27-005(SP) for new products and this Manual. Alternate noise barrier material types currently approved include: metal; fiberglass; brick or masonry; and acrylic. A complete listing of approved noise barrier suppliers for material types other than precast concrete are provided in BDM Table 801-1 and BDM Table 801-2.

Table 801-1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Suppliers</th>
<th>Drawings &amp; Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Metal</td>
<td>Faddis Concrete Products 3515 Kings Hwy. Downingtown, Pennsylvania 19335 Telephone: 1-800-777-7973 or (610)269-4685 Fax: (215)873-8431 or (610)873-8431</td>
<td>Faddis – Metal Noise Barrier “ACOUSTAX” (AIR FORCE 1) Sound Absorptive Noise Barrier Panels Drawings 1 thru 8 dated 6/7/01</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Table 801-2

### Approved Reflective Barrier Suppliers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Suppliers</th>
<th>Drawings &amp; Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Centria&lt;br&gt;1005 Beaver Grade Road&lt;br&gt;Moon Township, PA 15108&lt;br&gt;Phone: (888)348-2406 or (412)299-8170&lt;br&gt;www.ecosoundbarrier.com</td>
<td>Centria Reflective Eco-Sound Barrier System - Steel Panel Option (02/19/09)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fiberglass Wood</td>
<td>CorTec Company&lt;br&gt;3401 S. Delaware&lt;br&gt;Milwaukee, Wisconsin 53207&lt;br&gt;Phone: (414)486-1876 or 1-800-879-4377&lt;br&gt;Fax: (740)636-3250</td>
<td>Crane CorTec Sound Barrier System Manual (4/1/90)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brick or Block Masonry</td>
<td>Masonry Institute of Dayton&lt;br&gt;2077 Embury Park Road&lt;br&gt;P.O. Box 14026&lt;br&gt;Dayton, Ohio 45414&lt;br&gt;Phone: (937)278-7821&lt;br&gt;Fax: (937)599-3683</td>
<td>Block Masonry Drawing Rev. (4/83) Notes Rev. (3/83) Brick Masonry Drawings Rev. (3/83)(2/85) Notes Rev. (12/91)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Advanced Masonry Technology, Inc.&lt;br&gt;2786 Center Road&lt;br&gt;P.O. Box 878&lt;br&gt;Brunswick, Ohio 44212&lt;br&gt;Phone: (330)225-9496&lt;br&gt;Fax: (330)273-0046</td>
<td>Advanced Masonry Technology Brick Masonry Sound Barrier Panel&lt;br&gt;Drawings: SBC1, SB1, SB2 &amp; SB3 Dated 8/6/02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fiberglass</td>
<td>Carsonite International&lt;br&gt;10 Bob Gifford&lt;br&gt;P.O. Box 98&lt;br&gt;Early Branch, South Carolina 29916&lt;br&gt;Phone: (803)943-1172</td>
<td>#9106121-02-2 (3/5/92) Product Binder #30-02180-92 #SBSA1001, Sheets 1 thru 8, (10/22/97) #SBSA1002, Sheet 1, (10/22/97)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acrylic</td>
<td>M.H. Corbin, Inc.&lt;br&gt;9021G Heritage Drive&lt;br&gt;Plain City, Ohio 43064&lt;br&gt;Phone: (614)873-8216 or 1-800-380-1718&lt;br&gt;Fax: (614)873-8095</td>
<td>FiberCor Composite Reflective Noise Barrier System&lt;br&gt;sheets 1, 2 &amp; 3 dated 3/8/04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Durisol Inc./Evonik Cyro LLC&lt;br&gt;67 Frid St.&lt;br&gt;Hamilton, Ontario&lt;br&gt;Canada, L8P 4M3&lt;br&gt;Phone: (905)521-8658&lt;br&gt;Email: <a href="mailto:Edwards@Durisol.com">Edwards@Durisol.com</a></td>
<td>Paraglas Soundstop Noise Barrier Sheet 20 mm&lt;br&gt;Paraglas Soundstop Noise Barrier Sheet 25 mm&lt;br&gt;Paraglas Soundstop GSCC Noise Barrier Sheet 20 mm (Structure Mounted Applications)&lt;br&gt;Paraglas Soundstop GSCC Noise Barrier Sheet 25 mm (Structure Mounted Applications)&lt;br&gt;Paraglas Soundstop Ready-Fit Panels&lt;br&gt;Paraglas Soundstop TL4 System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Faddis Concrete Products &amp; Plaskolite&lt;br&gt;3515 Kings Hwy&lt;br&gt;Downingtown, Pennsylvania 19335&lt;br&gt;Phone: 1-800-777-7973 or (610)269-4685&lt;br&gt;Fax: (215)873-8431 or (610)873-8431</td>
<td>AcoustiClear Noisebarrier with Optix NB Extruded Acrylic&lt;br&gt;Drwg. No. GSF-B-2008-01 (18 sheets) dated 5/8/08</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
802  DESIGN CONSIDERATIONS

802.1  NOISE BARRIER FOUNDATIONS

802.1.1  GENERAL

The Design Agency shall perform a subsurface investigation at all noise barrier locations. The subsurface work shall be in accordance with the most current revision of the ODOT Specifications for Geotechnical Explorations. The noise barrier borings shall be included in the plans with the soil profile/foundation investigation sheets.

The standard foundation for noise barrier walls is a 30-in diameter drilled shaft with a maximum length of 30-ft. Consult the Office of Structural Engineering when specifying longer or larger diameter drilled shafts.

In regions of poor soils or where obstructions (e.g. underground utilities, drainage facilities, MSE wall components, etc.) preclude the use of 30-in diameter drilled shafts as the appropriate foundation type, consult the Office of Structural Engineering for the use of an alternate foundation type (e.g. larger diameter drilled shafts, spread footings, etc.). If bedrock is anticipated within the drilled shaft length required by BDM Section 802.1.2 and the bedrock has an unconfined compressive strength of 7500-psi or better, provide the required shaft length or a reduced length with a 3-ft minimum length rock socket. For weaker bedrock, provide the required shaft length or a reduced length with a 5-ft minimum length rock socket.

802.1.2  DRILLED SHAFT DESIGN

The following foundation design procedure applies to only 30-in diameter drilled shafts. For shafts of other diameter or for design parameters that exceed those herein, the foundation shall be designed in accordance with the AASHTO LRFD Bridge Design Specifications, Section 10.

A. At each noise barrier boring location determine the SPT “N” blow counts from 2.5-ft to 25-ft in 2.5-ft increments. The SPT “N”-value is the total number of blows required to drive the sampler from 6-in to 12-in and from 12-in to 18-in.

B. Correct the N-values for hammer efficiency and depth. Use the depth correction factors in BDM Table 802-1:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Depth (ft.)</th>
<th>Correction Factor</th>
<th>Depth (ft.)</th>
<th>Correction Factor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>15.0</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.0</td>
<td>1.4</td>
<td>17.5</td>
<td>0.96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.5</td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>20.0</td>
<td>0.91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.0</td>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>22.5</td>
<td>0.88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.5</td>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>25.0</td>
<td>0.84</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
C. The final design “N”-value used to establish the required minimum shaft length should be based on either average or lowest corrected “N”-values as follows. When the corrected “N”-values are consistent with depth or when the corrected values increase with depth, the final design “N”-value shall be the average of the corrected values along the length of drilled shaft. Otherwise, the final design “N”-value shall be the lowest corrected value along the length of the drilled shaft. The following examples assumes a drilled shaft with a design length of 15-ft.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Depth (ft.)</th>
<th>Corrected “N”-value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Design “N” = (8+15+16)/3 = 13

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Depth (ft.)</th>
<th>Corrected “N”-value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

D. Establish the soil type as granular or cohesive at each boring. Soil should be considered granular when the plasticity index is less than 7.

E. Select the Granular Soil Foundation Depth Table (BDM Figure 802-1) or the Cohesive Soil Foundation Depth Table (BDM Figure 802-2) to determine the required drilled shaft length for the assumed post spacing and wall height at each boring location. Refer to the Design Data Sheet, NBSDD-1-09, for guidelines for establishing post spacing. Frequently varying plan specified shaft lengths throughout the project should be avoided, and the minimum increment of plan specified shaft length should be 2-ft.
### Granular Soil Foundation Depth Table

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Post Spacing (PS) [ft]</th>
<th>Foundation Depth [ft]</th>
<th>Soil Properties</th>
<th>N&lt;sup&gt;(3)&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
<th>2-3</th>
<th>4-9</th>
<th>10-19</th>
<th>20-29</th>
<th>30-49</th>
<th>50-60</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PS ≤ 8’</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>N&lt;sup&gt;(3)&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>2-3</td>
<td>4-9</td>
<td>10-19</td>
<td>20-29</td>
<td>30-49</td>
<td>50-60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8’ &lt; PS ≤ 12’</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Level</td>
<td>8.0</td>
<td>8.0</td>
<td>6.5</td>
<td>6.0</td>
<td>6.0</td>
<td>6.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12’ &lt; PS ≤ 16’</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>5:1</td>
<td>8.0</td>
<td>8.0</td>
<td>7.0</td>
<td>6.5</td>
<td>6.0</td>
<td>6.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16’ &lt; PS ≤ 24’</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4:1</td>
<td>8.5</td>
<td>8.5</td>
<td>7.0</td>
<td>7.0</td>
<td>6.0</td>
<td>6.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H ≤ 12’</td>
<td>H ≤ 10’</td>
<td>H ≤ 8’</td>
<td>3:1</td>
<td>9.0</td>
<td>8.5</td>
<td>7.5</td>
<td>7.0</td>
<td>6.5</td>
<td>6.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>H ≤ 6’</td>
<td>2:1</td>
<td>10.0</td>
<td>9.5</td>
<td>8.0</td>
<td>7.5</td>
<td>7.0</td>
<td>6.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Barrier Height (H) [ft]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Level</td>
<td>9.5</td>
<td>9.5</td>
<td>8.0</td>
<td>7.5</td>
<td>7.5</td>
<td>6.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12’ &lt; H ≤ 16’</td>
<td>10’ &lt; H ≤ 14’</td>
<td>8’ &lt; H ≤ 12’</td>
<td>5:1</td>
<td>10.5</td>
<td>10.0</td>
<td>8.5</td>
<td>8.0</td>
<td>8.0</td>
<td>7.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16’ &lt; H ≤ 20’</td>
<td>14’ &lt; H ≤ 20’</td>
<td>12’ &lt; H ≤ 16’</td>
<td>4:1</td>
<td>11.0</td>
<td>10.5</td>
<td>9.0</td>
<td>8.5</td>
<td>8.0</td>
<td>7.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>6’ &lt; H ≤ 10’</td>
<td>3:1</td>
<td>11.5</td>
<td>11.0</td>
<td>9.5</td>
<td>9.0</td>
<td>8.5</td>
<td>7.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2:1</td>
<td>12.5</td>
<td>12.0</td>
<td>10.0</td>
<td>9.5</td>
<td>9.0</td>
<td>8.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transverse Ground Slope</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Level</td>
<td>11.5</td>
<td>11.0</td>
<td>9.5</td>
<td>9.0</td>
<td>8.0</td>
<td>8.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16’ &lt; H ≤ 20’</td>
<td>14’ &lt; H ≤ 20’</td>
<td>10’ &lt; H ≤ 14’</td>
<td>5:1</td>
<td>12.5</td>
<td>11.5</td>
<td>10.0</td>
<td>10.0</td>
<td>8.5</td>
<td>8.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4:1</td>
<td>13.0</td>
<td>12.0</td>
<td>10.5</td>
<td>10.5</td>
<td>9.0</td>
<td>8.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3:1</td>
<td>13.5</td>
<td>13.0</td>
<td>11.0</td>
<td>10.5</td>
<td>9.5</td>
<td>9.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2:1</td>
<td>14.5</td>
<td>14.5</td>
<td>12.0</td>
<td>11.5</td>
<td>10.0</td>
<td>9.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Level</td>
<td>15.5</td>
<td>14.0</td>
<td>12.0</td>
<td>11.0</td>
<td>10.5</td>
<td>10.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>5:1</td>
<td>19.0</td>
<td>16.0</td>
<td>13.5</td>
<td>12.5</td>
<td>11.0</td>
<td>11.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4:1</td>
<td>20.5</td>
<td>17.5</td>
<td>14.0</td>
<td>13.0</td>
<td>12.0</td>
<td>11.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3:1</td>
<td>24.0</td>
<td>19.5</td>
<td>15.0</td>
<td>14.0</td>
<td>12.5</td>
<td>12.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2:1</td>
<td>*</td>
<td>30.0</td>
<td>19.0</td>
<td>16.0</td>
<td>14.0</td>
<td>13.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes:**

1. The foundation depth is the required embedment into in-situ soil. Assume the corrected SPT N-value = 20 where soil will be placed as new embankment in conformance with C&MS Item 203.

2. Barrier Height [H] is the distance from the top of the drilled shaft to the top of the higher barrier wall at the post rounded to the nearest ft.

3. N = Corrected SPT N-value (see BDM Section 802.1.2)

4. φ = Estimated friction angle based on N-value

5. * = exceeds maximum drilled shaft length
# Cohesive Soil Foundation Depth Table

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Post Spacing (PS) [ft]</th>
<th>Foundation Depth [ft]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PS ≤ 8'</td>
<td>N&lt;sup&gt;(3)&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8' &lt; PS ≤ 12'</td>
<td>0-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12' &lt; PS ≤ 16'</td>
<td>2-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16' &lt; PS ≤ 24'</td>
<td>4-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9-15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>16-32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soil Properties</td>
<td>Level</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>15.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>17.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>17.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>18.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>18.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>18.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>20.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>20.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>21.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>21.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>23.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>23.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>23.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>23.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>25.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>24.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>15.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>25.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>24.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>16.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>20.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>21.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>22.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>15.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>24.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>15.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes:**

1. The foundation depth is the required embedment into in-situ soil. Assume the corrected SPT N-value = 20 where soil will be placed as new embankment in conformance with C&amp;MS item 203.
2. Barrier Height [H] is the distance from the top of the drilled shaft to the top of the higher barrier wall at the post rounded to the nearest ft.
3. N = Corrected SPT N-value (see BDM Section 802.1.2)
4. * = exceeds maximum drilled shaft length
802.2  NOISE BARRIER AESTHETICS

The Department limits standard aesthetic treatments for noise barriers.

Aesthetic limitations include:

A. Concrete wall panels shall use an Ashlar stone pattern form liner, or other approved formliner. The surface treatment detail shall be shown in the project plans. The Office of Environmental Services will approve formliners other than Ashlar stone pattern. Other wall panel materials (steel, fiberglass, etc.) will not require a form liner.

B. Concrete posts shall be used except when mounted on bridges and other structures.

C. Noise barrier panels and posts shall have a cap to create a shadow line. Caps for posts should be of the same material as the posts and shall be integral with or mechanically fastened to the top of the post. Caps for panels shall be integral with the panel.

D. General dimensions for the cap are:
   1.  6-in high
   2.  4-in wider than the post and panel selected and centered so the cap horizontally extends 2-in beyond the panel or posts vertical surfaces. (Other options may be acceptable depending on limits of manufacturing process and final visual effect.)

E. The Department is standardizing color for panels and posts. Color choices should be selected from the Department’s acceptable colors. The coating material used to produce the color is to be approved by the Office of Environmental Services. The noise barrier color(s) shall be determined by the designer in conjunction with the District Aesthetic Coordinator. The posts, caps and joints may have a color(s) different from the panels, but the color combination shall be visually appealing.

Color choices may also be limited due to noise panel material types. Agencies and/or designers specifying both color and wall panel material type should assure that the color is available.

Aesthetic treatments beyond these limitations require review and approval by the Office of Environmental Services.

The aesthetic requirements for each project shall be clearly defined in the noise barrier plan general notes. Those notes shall be detailed enough to assure detail finishes, form liners, caps, colors, coatings, application requirements, special design dimensions, etc. are not only adequately specified to assure the visual effect but to also assure quality of construction and materials.

803  DETAIL DESIGN SUBMISSION REQUIREMENTS

803.1  NOISE BARRIER PLAN SHEET ORDER

The noise barrier plan sheets shall be an individually numbered plan subset within the project plans. The plan sheet order should conform to the following:

A. Noise Barrier Schematic Plan
B. Noise Barrier Typical Sections
C. General Notes
D. Noise Barrier Subsummary
E. Plan & Profile Sheets
F. Cross Sections
G. Noise Barrier Data Tables
H. Miscellaneous Noise Barrier Details

Ensure that the soil profile/foundation investigation sheets are included in the project plans.
803.2 NOISE BARRIER PLAN REQUIREMENTS

The noise barrier plans for Stage 2 Detailed Design Review shall include the following:

A. Noise Barrier Schematic Plan

The purpose of the schematic plan is to show the location of each noise barrier wall on the project (using a 1-in=200-ft scale) and provide baseline geometry for the wall. The scale shall be shown in bar format. A north arrow shall be provided. All reference lines (e.g. centerlines of construction, baselines of ramps, etc.) should be shown. Provide roadway stationing tick marks at 100-ft. intervals.

Each noise barrier on the project shall be given a unique designation (e.g. Noise Barrier #1, Noise Barrier #2, etc.) and unique stationing. The noise barrier stationing shall be independent of the roadway stationing. Provide the noise barrier station; the roadway station; and the offset from the roadway reference line for the beginning and ending points for each wall on the project.

The baseline geometry for the wall may be provided in tabular format. At a minimum, the geometry shall provide the noise barrier station; the roadway station and offset; and the bearing from for all points of tangency along the barrier alignment.

B. Noise Barrier Typical Sections

1. Identify the roadway centerline and dimension the outside traffic lanes, paved shoulder width and graded shoulder width.
2. Dimension the location and identify the type of roadside barrier protection (if required). Noise barrier located within the clear zone requires protection in the form of guardrail or concrete barrier. The clear zone shall be measured to the nearest face of the post.
3. Dimension the location of the noise barrier with respect to the roadway centerline or the face of the roadside barrier protection (if available).
4. Provide the paved shoulder and graded shoulder cross slopes.
5. Provide the limiting stations where the typical section is applicable.
6. Provide typical grading details around the noise barrier in cut sections and fill sections. Include earth berm dimensions and cross slopes, distance from the noise barrier to the ditch centerlines, ditch dimensions, foreslope and backslope rates, and erosion control or seeding details.
7. Provide typical grading details around the noise barrier in a backslope location, including typical drainage and backfill details, and erosion control or seeding details.

C. General Notes

Provide general notes, not included in the standard bridge drawings or elsewhere in the project plans, that are necessary to complete the project plans and properly construct the noise barrier. For wall types other than precast concrete, include the approved supplier contact information provided in BDM Table 801-1 and BDM Table 801-2.

D. Noise Barrier Subsummary

Provide a noise barrier subsummary as described in Section 1307 of the L&D, Vol. 3, which includes all quantities required to construct the noise barriers that are not summarized elsewhere in the project plans.

E. Plan and Profile Sheets

Plan and profile sheets should conform to Section 1309 of the L&D, Vol. 3, and should detail the horizontal and vertical alignments of the noise barrier as follows:

1. In addition to the requirements of the L&D, Vol. 3, include the following information in the plan view (using a 1-in=20-ft horizontal scale):
a. All horizontal alignment data for the noise barrier. Provide the noise barrier stationing at the begin point, end point and all intermediate deflection points of the barrier alignment; the bearing direction for all noise barrier segments; the deflection angle at all deflection points.

b. Graphically accurate representation of the panel segments and post locations including alignment centerline. In order to avoid congestion, post and panel labels should not be shown.

c. All existing and proposed utilities, boundary lines, drainage facilities and other roadway incidentals (e.g. signs, fences, etc.) located within the construction limits of the noise barrier.

d. All soil boring locations and designations.

e. All proposed roadway, erosion control and drainage items and features to be constructed as part of the noise barrier installation.

f. The locations of all existing and proposed reference monuments. Locate all proposed monuments on the roadway side of the noise barrier and relocate any existing monument as necessary to place it on the roadway side of the barrier. (Provide a pay item to relocate every existing Reference Monument located on the outside of proposed noise walls.)

g. Proposed construction limits encompassing the area that will be disturbed by the noise barrier construction.

2. In addition to the requirements of the L&D, Vol. 3, include the following information in the profile view (using a 1-in=5-ft vertical scale and a 1-in=20-ft horizontal scale with vertical gridlines at 10-ft increments, horizontal gridlines at 25-ft increments and no grid subdivisions):

a. A profile of the existing ground line taken along the centerline of the proposed noise barrier, with elevations provided every 25-ft and at abrupt elevation changes.

b. All existing and proposed underground utilities and drainage facilities located within the construction limits of the noise barrier. Label the disposition of existing items.

c. The acoustic profile line and elevations determined from the preliminary data in the project noise analysis report.

d. The length of all panel spans.

e. Each panel number or designation.

f. A profile of the final ground line taken along the centerline of the proposed noise barrier with elevations provided every 25-ft and at abrupt elevation changes.

g. The top and bottom elevations of each noise barrier panel between adjacent posts.

h. The locations of noise barrier panels with special architectural surface treatments, form liners or icons that differ from the normal surface treatment for the project.

i. The locations of drilled shafts with a diameter greater than 30-in or other special foundation types.

j. The approximate top of bedrock elevation at each soil boring location (where applicable).

F. Cross Sections

Provide cross sections along the centerline alignment of each noise barrier. The cross section shall conform to Section 1310 of the L&D, Vol. 3 and include the following:

1. Earth berms or other special grading that is required to construct the noise barrier at the proper elevation.

2. Proposed ditches required to properly convey stormwater runoff around the noise barrier.

3. Profiles of proposed drainage facilities within the construction limits of the noise barrier (not including the noise barrier underdrains) that are not shown elsewhere in the project plans.

Cross sections may be omitted if the project does not require cut and/or fill to construct the noise barrier wall.
The noise barrier cross sections as described above may be shown on the roadway cross sections. If provided with the roadway sections, in addition to the roadway station, provide the noise barrier station at each cross-section. Also include cross-references in the noise barrier plan subset listing the location of the noise barrier cross sections in the overall plan set.

G. Noise Barrier Data Tables

Provide completed data tables for each noise barrier similar to those shown in the sample noise barrier plans.

H. Miscellaneous Noise Barrier Details

Provide details not provided in the standard drawings or elsewhere in the project plans. Examples include: special architectural surface treatments or other aesthetic details; special post or panel cap details; noise barrier transitions at bridges; special panel details to accommodate fire hose connections; etc.

Sample Noise Barrier Plans are available on the Office of Structural Engineering website.

803.3 ADDITIONAL DETAIL DESIGN SUBMISSION REQUIREMENTS

In addition to the project plans, the following information should be provided during the Stage 2 Detail Design Submission:

A. A copy of the Office of Environmental Services requirements for location and height of noise barrier walls.
B. The District Production Administrator should be contacted for the approved noise barrier material types, suppliers, alternate bid requirements, and special features in accordance with the Department’s Noise Wall Policy 417-001(P). A copy of the letter from the District Production Administrator stipulating the information in this paragraph should be part of the detailed design submission.

804 NOISE BARRIERS – APPROVAL OF WALL DESIGNS

Individual manufacturers of noise barrier for material types other than precast concrete shall submit panel designs. If approved, those designs will be added to BDM Table 801-1 or BDM Table 801-2. A modification to an approved wall design requires a resubmission to the Department for approval. The Department will not allow a modified design to be used on a construction project prior to its approval.

Environmental, structural and acoustic design for the walls shall meet the requirements of BDM Sections 805.1, 805.2 and 805.3.

There are two types of noise barriers, reflective and absorptive. Noise barrier manufacturers interested in having their noise barrier wall approved should submit their proposed designs in accordance with BDM Section 805.

805 NOISE BARRIER SUBMISSION REQUIREMENTS

Manufacturers interested in having their noise barrier design approved shall submit an approval package to the Office of Environmental Services.

As a minimum, the submission package shall show compliance with the following design requirements:

A. Environmental .................................................................BDM Section 805.1
B. Structural .................................................................BDM Section 805.2
C. Material .................................................................BDM Section 805.3

Submit three copies of the complete submission package to the Office of Environmental Services. Include the specific product trade name; company address; and name, phone number, and email address of a technical representative available to answer questions during the product review period. The Department will evaluate the submission and provide a written decision to the manufacturer no later than 60 days after the submission package is received.
805.1 ENVIRONMENTAL DESIGN REQUIREMENTS

The Manufacturer’s wall system shall show compliance with the Department’s Aesthetic limitations provided in BDM Section 802.2 and the following Acoustic requirements:

A. Reflective noise barriers - Minimum STC (Sound Transmission Class) = 30
B. Absorptive noise barriers:
   1. Minimum STC (Sound Transmission Class) = 30
   2. Minimum NRC (Noise Reduction Coefficient) = 0.70

All barrier material submitted shall be acoustically tested at an independent laboratory capable of performing the following tests:

A. ASTM Standard Test Method for Sound Absorption and Sound Absorption Coefficients by Reverberation Room Method
B. ASTM C423 and E795 (Latest editions)
C. ASTM E90 and E413 (Latest editions)

805.2 STRUCTURAL DESIGN REQUIREMENTS

As a minimum, the structural design of the Manufacturer’s wall system shall conform to the current edition of the “AASHTO LRFD Bridge Design Specifications” and this Manual.

The structural design submission shall also include:

A. All design assumptions including:
   1. Physical and mechanical strengths of the component raw materials
   2. Physical and mechanical strengths of the final composite material
   3. Design method(s) and governing specifications used
   4. Design safety factors used including information on why the factors were chosen and how the material’s environmental and loading durability affect those factors.

B. Complete design calculations:
   1. Signed, sealed and dated by a registered professional engineer
   2. Using the following minimum wind pressures:
      a. Ground mounted = 25-psf
      b. Structure mounted = 30-psf
   3. Include all fabrication, shipping, handling and erection loads

C. Fabrication and construction drawings showing wall details, dimensions, connections and any other information required to define the wall system.
805.3 MATERIAL DESIGN REQUIREMENTS

The material design submission shall include:

A. Test data documenting the physical and mechanical properties used for structural design.
B. Test data documenting any long term decrease in physical and/or mechanical properties due to fatigue, creep, bond deterioration, etc.
C. Test data documenting material durability to environmental variables including: UV, temperature, moisture, freeze-thaw, fire, salt, petroleum, pH, etc.
D. Test data documenting material’s performance to temperature changes expected under service conditions.
E. Test data documenting durability of any applied coatings used to protect material from environmental deterioration.
SECTION 900 – BRIDGE LOAD RATING

901 PURPOSE ......................................................................................................................... 9-1
902 SCOPE ............................................................................................................................... 9-1
903 APPLICABILITY ................................................................................................................ 9-1

903.1 APPLICABILITY OF AASHTO DESIGN SPECIFICATIONS ........................................... 9-1
903.2 APPLICABILITY TO HIGHWAY BRIDGES ................................................................. 9-1
904 QUALITY MEASURES ....................................................................................................... 9-1
905 DEFINITIONS AND TERMINOLOGY .................................................................................. 9-1
906 REFERENCES FROM OHIO REVISED CODE ................................................................. 9-5

907 BRIDGE FILES (RECORDS) ............................................................................................. 9-10

907.1 CONSTRUCTION PLANS ............................................................................................... 9-10
907.2 CONSTRUCTION & MATERIAL SPECIFICATIONS ....................................................... 9-10
907.3 SHOP AND WORKING DRAWINGS ............................................................................. 9-10
907.4 AS-BUILT DRAWINGS .................................................................................................. 9-10
907.5 CORRESPONDENCE ..................................................................................................... 9-10
907.6 INVENTORY DATA .......................................................................................................... 9-10
907.7 INSPECTION HISTORY ................................................................................................ 9-10
907.8 PHOTOGRAPHS ........................................................................................................... 9-10
907.9 RATING RECORDS ......................................................................................................... 9-11
907.10 ACCIDENT DATA ........................................................................................................ 9-11
907.11 MAINTENANCE AND REPAIR HISTORY .................................................................. 9-11
907.12 POSTING HISTORY .................................................................................................... 9-11

908 GENERAL ......................................................................................................................... 9-11
908.1 APPLICATION ............................................................................................................... 9-11
908.2 INVENTORY AND OPERATING RATING LOADS .......................................................... 9-11
908.3 RATING LOADS ............................................................................................................ 9-13

909 UNIT WEIGHTS & DENSITIES ........................................................................................ 9-15

910 STRUCTURES EXEMPT FROM LOAD RATING CALCULATIONS ...................................... 9-15

910.1 STRUCTURES THAT NEED A BR100 ........................................................................... 9-16
911 STRUCTURES UNDER 6.5-FT OR MORE FILL .............................................................. 9-16
912 WHICH PORTION OF BRIDGES SHALL BE LOAD RATED ................................................ 9-16

913 PROCEDURE FOR LOAD RATING .................................................................................... 9-16
914 WHEN LOAD RATING SHALL BE REVISED .................................................................. 9-17
915 ANALYSIS OF BRIDGES WITH SIDEWALKS ................................................................. 9-17
916 ANALYSIS FOR MULTILANE LOADING ......................................................................... 9-18
917 ANALYSIS FOR PERMIT OR SPECIAL VEHICLE ............................................................ 9-18

917.1 FIRST ANALYSIS OF BRIDGE FOR PERMIT OR SPECIAL VEHICLE ................................ 9-18

917.1.1 FIRST ANALYSIS OF BRIDGE WITH THREE OR MORE LANES ................................. 9-18
917.1.2 FIRST ANALYSIS OF BRIDGE WITH TWO LANES ...................................................... 9-18
917.1.3 FIRST ANALYSIS OF BRIDGE WITH A SINGLE LANE .............................................. 9-18

917.2 SECOND ANALYSIS OF BRIDGE FOR PERMIT OR SPECIAL VEHICLE ........................ 9-18

918 LOAD RATING OF LONG SPAN BRIDGES .................................................................... 9-18

918.1 WHEN THE LOAD RATING SHALL BE DONE ................................................................. 9-18
918.2 HOW THE LOAD RATING SHALL BE DONE ................................................................. 9-19

918.2.1 INVENTORY & OPERATING LEVEL RATING USING HL93 LOADING ........................... 9-19
918.2.2 INVENTORY & OPERATING LEVEL RATING USING HS20 TRUCK .............................. 9-19
918.2.3 LOAD RATING FOR OHIO LEGAL LOADS ................................................................. 9-19

918.2.3.1 LONG SPAN BRIDGES WITH THREE OR MORE LANES ...................................... 9-19
918.2.3.2 LONG SPAN BRIDGES WITH TWO LANES .......................................................... 9-19
918.2.3.3 LONG SPAN BRIDGES WITH A SINGLE LANE ...................................................... 9-19

919 BRIDGE POSTING FOR REDUCED LOAD LIMITS ............................................................. 9-20

919.1 PURPOSE ........................................................................................................................ 9-20
919.2 REFERENCE .................................................................................................................. 9-20

919.3 PROCEDURE FOR BRIDGE POSTING ......................................................................... 9-20

919.3.1 BRIDGE POSTING FOLLOWING LOAD RATING ........................................................... 9-20
919.3.2 PROCEDURE FOR PLACING POSTING ON ODOT BRIDGES .................................. 9-21
919.4  PROCEDURE FOR RESCINDING POSTING OF ODOT BRIDGES................................................. 9-22
919.5  PROCEDURE FOR CHANGING POSTING OF ODOT BRIDGES............................................ 9-22
919.6  REQUIRED INFORMATION FOR POST, RESCIND AND CHANGE REQUESTS FROM
       DISTRICTS......................................................................................................................... 9-23
919.7  POSTING FOR EMERGENCY VEHICLES.................................................................................. 9-23
920  SOFTWARE TO BE USED FOR LOAD RATING OF ODOT BRIDGES........................................ 9-24
920.1  LIST OF ODOT PREFERRED LOAD RATING PROGRAMS..................................................... 9-24
920.2  OTHER LOAD RATING PROGRAMS.......................................................................................... 9-24
921  LOAD RATING REPORT SUBMISSION...................................................................................... 9-25
922  LOAD RATING USING AASHTO BrR PROGRAM........................................................................ 9-28
922.1  GENERAL.............................................................................................................................. 9-28
922.2  BrR LOAD RATING REPORT SUBMISSION............................................................................ 9-28
922.3  BrR COMPUTER INPUT AND OUTPUT FILES..................................................................... 9-28
923  LOAD ANALYSIS USING LARS PROGRAM............................................................................. 9-28
923.1  GENERAL.............................................................................................................................. 9-28
923.2  LARS LOAD RATING REPORT SUBMISSION........................................................................ 9-28
923.3  LARS COMPUTER INPUT AND OUTPUT FILES.................................................................. 9-28
924  LOAD ANALYSIS USING BRASS-CULVERT PROGRAM........................................................... 9-28
924.1  GENERAL.............................................................................................................................. 9-28
924.2  BRASS-CULVERT LOAD RATING REPORT SUBMISSION.................................................... 9-29
924.3  BRASS COMPUTER INPUT AND OUTPUT FILES................................................................. 9-29
925  LOAD RATING OF BRIDGES USING LRFR SPECIFICATIONS.................................................. 9-29
925.1  APPLICABILITY OF AASHTO DESIGN SPECIFICATIONS..................................................... 9-29
925.2  GENERAL LOAD RATING EQUATION..................................................................................... 9-29
925.3  LIMIT STATES AND LOAD FACTORS FOR LOAD RATING................................................... 9-30
925.4  DYNAMIC LOAD ALLOWANCE (IM).................................................................................... 9-31
925.5  CONDITION FACTOR (φc)...................................................................................................... 9-31
925.6  SYSTEM FACTOR (φs)............................................................................................................ 9-31
925.7  RESISTANCE FACTOR (φr)..................................................................................................... 9-32
925.8  EFFECT OF SKEW................................................................................................................ 9-32
926  LOAD RATING OF NEW BRIDGES............................................................................................ 9-33
926.1  LOADS TO BE USED FOR LOAD RATING.............................................................................. 9-33
926.2  LOAD RATING OF NEW BURIED BRIDGES.......................................................................... 9-33
926.2.1  GENERAL.......................................................................................................................... 9-33
926.2.2  HOW THE LOAD RATING SHALL BE DONE..................................................................... 9-33
926.2.3  CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE BOX & FRAME STRUCTURES........................................... 9-34
926.2.4  PRECAST CONCRETE STRUCTURES................................................................................ 9-34
926.2.4.1  PRECAST CONCRETE BOXES OF SPAN GREATER THAN 12-FT................................. 9-34
926.2.4.2  PRECAST BOXES OF SPAN EQUAL TO OR LESS THAN 12-FT................................. 9-34
926.2.4.3  PRECAST FRAMES, ARCHES, AND CONSPANS & BEBO TYPE STRUCTURES..... 9-34
926.3  LOAD RATING OF NON-BURIED STRUCTURES................................................................. 9-34
926.3.1  GENERAL.......................................................................................................................... 9-34
926.3.2  HOW THE LOAD RATING SHALL BE DONE..................................................................... 9-34
926.3.3  WHEN THE BRIDGE LOAD RATING SHALL BE DONE................................................... 9-35
926.3.3.1  BRIDGES DESIGNED UNDER MAJOR OR MINOR PLAN DEVELOPMENT PROCESS.. 9-35
926.3.3.2  BRIDGES DESIGNED UNDER MINIMAL PLAN DEVELOPMENT PROCESS........... 9-35
926.3.3.3  BRIDGES DESIGNED UNDER DESIGN-BUILD PROCESS.......................................... 9-35
926.3.4  BRIDGES DESIGNED UNDER VALUE ENGINEERING CHANGE PROPOSAL............ 9-35
927  LOAD RATING OF EXISTING BRIDGES.................................................................................. 9-35
927.1  LOADS TO BE USED FOR LOAD RATING.............................................................................. 9-35
927.2  LOAD RATING OF BRIDGES TO BE REHABILITATED.......................................................... 9-36
927.2.1  HOW THE LOAD RATING SHALL BE DONE..................................................................... 9-36
927.2.2  WHEN THE BRIDGE LOAD RATING SHALL BE DONE................................................... 9-38
927.2.2.1  BRIDGES DESIGNED UNDER MAJOR OR MINOR PLAN DEVELOPMENT PROCESS.. 9-39
927.2.2.2 BRIDGES DESIGNED UNDER MINIMAL PLAN DEVELOPMENT PROCESS........ 9-39
927.2.2.3 BRIDGES DESIGNED UNDER DESIGN-BUILD PROCESS................................. 9-39
927.2.2.4 BRIDGES DESIGNED UNDER VALUE ENGINEERING CHANGE PROPOSAL .... 9-39
927.2.3 LOAD RATING OF EXISTING BURIED BRIDGES.................................................. 9-39
927.2.3.1 CAST-IN-PLACE STRUCTURES............................................................................. 9-39
927.2.3.2 PRECAST BOXES OF SPAN GREATER THAN 12-FT........................................... 9-39
927.2.3.3 PRECAST BOXES OF SPAN EQUAL TO OR LESS THAN 12-FT......................... 9-39
927.2.3.4 PRECAST FRAMES, ARCHES, AND CONSANS & BEBO TYPE STRUCTURES.... 9-39
927.2.3.5 ANALYSIS OF CONCRETE BOX SECTIONS & FRAMES.................................. 9-40
927.2.4 LOAD RATING OF EXISTING NON-BURIED STRUCTURES................................. 9-40
927.3 LOAD RATING OF EXISTING BRIDGES WITH NO REPAIR PLANS.................... 9-40
927.3.1 HOW THE LOAD RATING SHALL BE DONE ..................................................... 9-40
927.3.2 WHEN THE BRIDGE LOAD RATING SHALL BE DONE ...................................... 9-40
927.3.3 LOAD RATING OF EXISTING BURIED BRIDGES............................................... 9-40
927.3.4 LOAD RATING OF EXISTING NON-BURIED STRUCTURES.................................... 9-41
928 LOAD RATING OF NON-ODOT BRIDGES.................................................................. 9-41
929 CULVERT TYPE BRIDGES DESIGNED USING ASTM C1577 (LRFD), C1433 (LFD), C789 (LFD) AND C850 (LFD) ................................................................................................................................. 9-41
930 REFERENCES.................................................................................................................. 9-42
931 LOAD RATING FLOW CHART............................................................................................ 9-43
SECTION 900 – BRIDGE LOAD RATING

901 PURPOSE

The purpose of this Section is to provide consistency and uniformity in the procedures, guidelines and policies for determining safe live load carrying capacity or load rating of the highway bridges in the State of Ohio.

902 SCOPE

The guidelines, policies and recommendations provided in this Section are meant to assist bridge owners and bridge raters by establishing evaluation practices that meet the Ohio Revised Code (ORC), the National Bridge Inspection Standards (NBIS), ODOT Bridge Design Manual (BDM) and American Association of State Highway Transportation Officials (AASHTO). The intent of this Section is to establish standardized load rating procedures conforming to FHWA reporting requirements and posting of bridges in the State of Ohio.

903 APPLICABILITY

903.1 APPLICABILITY OF AASHTO DESIGN SPECIFICATIONS

BDM Section 900 is consistent with the current AASHTO LRFD Bridge Design Specifications and Standard Specifications for Highway Bridges (14th Edition). Where this Section is silent, the current AASHTO LRFD Bridge Design Specifications or Standard Specifications for Highway Bridges shall govern for LRFR and LFR methods respectively.

903.2 APPLICABILITY TO HIGHWAY BRIDGES

The provisions of this Section apply to all highway structures in Ohio that qualify as bridges in accordance with the definition for a bridge set herein. These provisions may be applied to smaller structures which do not qualify as bridges.

904 QUALITY MEASURES

To maintain the accuracy and consistency of load rating, bridge owners should implement appropriate quality assurance and quality control (QA/QC) measures. Typical quality control procedures include the use of checklists to ensure uniformity and completeness, the review of reports and computations by a person other than originating individual and periodic field review of the inspection teams and their work.

Each load rating analysis shall be performed under the supervision of an Ohio registered professional engineer (i.e. the load rater) who will sign and stamp (seal) the final load rating report before submission to the bridge owner.

905 DEFINITIONS AND TERMINOLOGY

**ASR:** Allowable Stress Rating (also known as Working Stress Rating)

**ADT:** Average Daily Traffic volume

**ADTT:** Average Daily Truck Traffic volume

**BR100:** A load rating summary form (spreadsheet) internally developed by ODOT.

**Bridge:** A structure, including supports, erected over a depression or an obstruction such as water, highway, bikeway or railway; and having a roadway to carry vehicular traffic and having an opening measured along the centerline of the roadway of 10-ft or more between under-copings of abutments or spring lines of arches or extreme ends of openings for multiple boxes. It may also include multiple pipes where the clear distance between openings is less than half that of the smaller contiguous opening.
**Bridge Number:** A combination of 3-letter County Abbreviation – Route Number – County Log Point, in miles, followed by special designation, if any (e.g., HAM-00071-10.680R); 3-letter County Abbreviations are given in L&D, Vol. 1.

**Bridge Management System (BMS):** A system designed to optimize the use of available resources for the inspection, maintenance, rehabilitation, and replacement of bridges.

**Bridge Owner:** A public or private entity that has jurisdiction over the bridge or an agency having major maintenance responsibility for a bridge. Generally, an entity responsible for the major maintenance of a bridge is considered owner of the bridge.

**Buried Structure:** A structure, including a flat slab, an arch, a frame, a box section, etc. that has a fill or pavement material of 2-ft or more on top of it.

**Collapse:** A major change in the geometry of the bridge rendering it unfit for its intended use.

**Condition Rating:** The result of the assessment of the functional capability and the physical condition of a bridge’s components by considering the extent of deterioration and other defects. Generally, Condition Rating is evaluated on a scale “0” through “9” (where “9” is the best).

**Control Authority Program Manager (CAPM):** The designated person at a public transportation entity (Control Authority) responsible for overseeing FHWA’s National Bridge Inspection Program for that entity.

**County Log Point:** Distance in miles from the point where a route enters the county or the starting point of a route within the county traveling in the up-station direction from south-to-north or west-to-east.

**Emergency Vehicle (EV):** An emergency vehicle, as defined in the Fixing America’s Surface Transportation Act (FAST Act), is designed to use under emergency conditions to transport personnel and equipment to support the suppression of fires and mitigation of other hazardous situations (23 U.S.C. 127(r)(2)). The GVW limit for an EV is 86,000 pounds. The statute imposes the following additional limits:

A. 24,000 pounds on a single steering axle;
B. 33,500 pounds on a single drive axle;
C. 62,000 pounds on a tandem axle; or
D. 52,000 pounds on a tandem rear drive steering axle.

For the purposes of load rating, two EV configurations are shown in BDM Figure 908-3.

**Exemption List:** A list of structures exempt from the requirements of load rating calculations, given in BDM Section 910.

**Failure:** A condition where a limit state is reached or exceeded. This may or may not involve collapse or other catastrophic occurrences.

**FHWA:** Federal Highway Administration – U.S. Department of Transportation.

**General Appraisal (GA):** The lowest of the Condition or Appraisal Summary Rating of the substructure and the superstructure of a bridge; or in case of a culvert, the Summary Rating of the culvert.

**GVW:** Gross Vehicle Weight.

**Inventory Rating:** Load ratings based on the inventory level allow comparisons with the capacity for new structures and, therefore, result in a live load that can safely utilize a structure for an indefinite period of time.

**Health Index:** An indicator of the structural health of an element, a bridge or a group of bridges expressed as a value (0 to 100), where 100 corresponds to best possible condition.
**Legal Weight**: Rating Factor (RF) times legal GVW of truck; legal weight cannot be more than the GVW of the legal load

**LFR**: Load Factor Rating

**Limit State**: A condition beyond which a bridge or a component ceases to satisfy the criteria for which it was designed

**Load Effect**: The response (axial force, shear force, bending moment, torque, etc.) in a member or an element due to the loading

**Load Factor**: A load multiplier accounting for the variability of the loads, the lack of accuracy in analysis and the probability of simultaneous occurrence of different loads

**Load Rater**: An individual person responsible for the load rating of a bridge. The Load Rater shall be a professional engineer registered in the State of Ohio.

**Load Rating**: The determination of the safe live-load carrying capacity of a bridge

**Long Span Bridge**: Any single or multi-span bridge that has at least one span greater than 200-ft

**LRFD**: Load and Resistance Factor Design

**LRFR**: Load and Resistance Factor Rating

**MBE**: AASHTO Manual for Bridge Evaluation

**NBI**: National Bridge Inventory; the aggregation of structure inventory and appraisal data collection to fulfill the requirements of National Bridge Inspection Standards (NBIS).

**NBI Bridge**: A structure including supports over a depression or an obstruction such as water, highway, or railway; having a roadway to carry vehicular traffic and having an opening measured along the centerline of the roadway of more than 20-ft, between under-copings of abutments or spring lines of arches or extreme ends of openings for multiple boxes. It may also include multiple pipes, where the clear distance between openings is less than half that of the smaller contiguous opening.

**NBIS**: National Bridge Inspection Standards; Federal regulations establishing requirements for the bridge inspection organization, its inspection procedures, the frequency of inspection, the qualification of personnel, inspection reports, and preparation and maintenance of bridge inventory records. The NBIS applies to all structures defined as NBIS bridges located on or over all public roads.

**Nominal Resistance**: Resistance of a component or connection to load effect, based on its geometry, permissible stresses and specified strength of materials

**Non-Buried Structure**: A structure, including a flat slab, an arch, a frame, a box section, etc., that has a fill or pavement material of less than 2-ft on top of it

**Non-ODOT Bridge**: A bridge on which ODOT does not have jurisdiction or major maintenance responsibility

**ODOT**: Ohio Department of Transportation

**ODOT Bridge**: A bridge on which ODOT has jurisdiction or major maintenance responsibility

**Ohio Legal Loads**: A set of vehicles which is legally allowed to operate on the public roads in Ohio without any permit. It consists of commercial vehicles 2F1, 3F1, 4F1, and 5C1; Special Hauling Vehicles, SU4, SU5, SU6, and SU7; and Emergency Vehicles EV2 and EV3.
Operating Rating: Load ratings based on the operating rating level generally describe the maximum permissible live load to which the structure may be subjected. Allowing unlimited numbers of vehicles to use the bridge at operating level may shorten the life of the bridge.

ORC: Ohio Revised Code (as amended and adopted)

OSE: ODOT Office of Structural Engineering


Pavement of a Roadway: The pavement of a roadway includes all the paved or unpaved portions of a roadway including graded shoulders that may support vehicular traffic

PDF: Portable Document Format, a type of industry standard electronic file format developed by the Adobe Corporation

Posting: Signing a bridge for load restriction

Posting Load: Rating Factor (RF) times legal GVW of Ohio Legal Load; posting load cannot be more than the GVW of the legal load

Preliminary Design Date: The date when Federal-aid funds are obligated for the studies or design activities related to identification of the type, size, and/or location of bridges. For ODOT projects following the Project Development Process (PDP), this date corresponds to the initiation of Step 1 for a Minimal Project, Step 3 for a Minor Project or Step 6 for a Major Project.

Quality Assurance: The use of sampling and other measures to assure the adequacy of quality control procedures in order to verify and measure the quality level of the entire bridge inspection and load rating program

Reliability Index: A computed quantity defining the relative safety of a structural element or structure expressed as the number of standard deviations that the mean of the margin of safety falls on the safe side

Resistance Factor: A resistance multiplier accounting for the variability of material properties, structural dimensions, workmanship and the uncertainty in the prediction of resistance

RF: Rating Factor, an indicator of live load carrying capacity of a member or a bridge for a specific truck or load

Safe Load Capacity: A live load that can safely utilize a bridge repeatedly over the duration of a specified inspection cycle

Service Limit State: Limit state related to stress, deformation and cracking

Serviceability: A term that denotes restrictions on stress, deformation, and crack opening under regular service conditions

Serviceability Limit State: Collective term for service and fatigue limit states

Strength Limit State: Safety limit state relating to strength and stability

Structurally Deficient (SD): Starting January 1, 2018, when the lowest rating of the 3 NBI Items 58-Deck, 59-Superstructure, 60-Substructure for a bridge or the Item 62-Culvert for a culvert is 4, 3, 2, 1, or 0, the bridge or culvert shall be classified as Poor or Structurally Deficient.

Structure Management System (SMS): ODOT’s new Bridge Information & Collection System which replaced the old BMS, designed to optimize the use of available resources for the inspection, maintenance and rehabilitation of structures. SMS is based on Bentley’s Inspect Tech System.

Superload: In Ohio, a Superload is any highway vehicular load with the total gross load equal to or more than 120,000 pounds (60 tons)
Target Reliability: A desired level of reliability in a proposed evaluation

**REFERENCES FROM OHIO REVISED CODE**

Selected references from the ORC related to bridge load rating and posting are as follows:

5577.02 Operation of vehicle on highways in excess of prescribed weights forbidden.

No trackless trolley, traction engine, steam roller, or other vehicle, load, object, or structure, whether propelled by muscular or motor power, not including vehicles run upon stationary rails or tracks, fire engines, fire trucks, or other vehicles or apparatus belonging to or used by any municipal or volunteer fire department in the discharge of its functions, shall be operated or moved over or upon the improved public streets, highways, bridges, or culverts in this state, upon wheels, rollers, or otherwise, weighing in excess of the weights prescribed in sections 5577.01 to 5577.14, inclusive, of the Revised Code, including the weight of vehicle, object, structure, or contrivance and load, except upon special permission, granted as provided by section 4513.34 of the Revised Code.

Effective Date: 10-01-1953

5577.03 Weight of load - width of tire.

No person, firm, or corporation shall transport over the improved public streets, alleys, intercounty highways, state highways, bridges, or culverts, in any vehicle propelled by muscular, motor, or other power, any burden, including weight of vehicle and load, greater than the following:

(A) 

1. In vehicles having metal tires three inches or less in width, a load of five hundred pounds for each inch of the total width of tire on all wheels;

2. When the tires on such vehicles exceed three inches in width, an additional load of eight hundred pounds shall be permitted for each inch by which the total width of the tires on all wheels exceeds twelve inches.

(B) In vehicles having tires of rubber or other similar substances, for each inch of the total width of tires on all wheels, as follows:

1. For tires three inches in width, a load of four hundred fifty pounds;

2. For tires three and one-half inches in width, a load of four hundred fifty pounds;

3. For tires four inches in width, a load of five hundred pounds;

4. For tires five inches in width, a load of six hundred pounds;

5. For tires six inches and over in width, a load of six hundred fifty pounds.

The total width of tires on all wheels shall be, in case of solid tires of rubber or other similar substance, the actual width in inches of all such tires between the flanges at the base of the tires, but in no event shall that portion of the tire coming in contact with the road surface be less than two thirds the width so measured between the flanges.

In the case of pneumatic tires, of rubber or other similar substance, the total width of tires on all wheels shall be the actual width of all such tires, measured at the widest portion thereof when inflated and not bearing a load.

In no event shall the load, including the proportionate weight of vehicle that can be concentrated on any wheel, exceed six hundred fifty pounds to each inch in width of the tread as defined in this section for solid tires, or each inch in the actual diameter of pneumatic tires measured when inflated and not bearing a load.

Effective Date: 10-01-1953
5577.04 Maximum axle load, wheel load, gross weights, for pneumatic tired vehicles.

(A) The maximum wheel load of any one wheel of any vehicle, trackless trolley, load, object, or structure operated or moved upon improved public highways, streets, bridges, or culverts shall not exceed six hundred fifty pounds per inch width of pneumatic tire, measured as prescribed by section 5577.03 of the Revised Code.

(B) The weight of vehicle and load imposed upon a road surface that is part of the interstate system by vehicles with pneumatic tires shall not exceed any of the following weight limitations:

(1) On any one axle, twenty thousand pounds;

(2) On any tandem axle, thirty-four thousand pounds;

(3) On any two or more consecutive axles, the maximum weight as determined by application of the formula provided in division (C) of this section.

(C) For purposes of division (B)(3) of this section, the maximum gross weight on any two or more consecutive axles shall be determined by application of the following formula:

\[ W = 500((LN/N-1) + 12N + 36) \]

In this formula, \( W \) equals the overall gross weight on any group of two or more consecutive axles to the nearest five hundred pounds, \( L \) equals the distance in rounded whole feet between the extreme of any group of two or more consecutive axles, and \( N \) equals the number of axles in the group under consideration. However, two consecutive sets of tandem axles may carry a gross load of thirty-four thousand pounds each, provided the overall distance between the first and last axles of such consecutive sets of tandem axles is thirty-six feet or more.

(D) Except as provided in division (I) of this section, the weight of vehicle and load imposed upon a road surface that is not part of the interstate system by vehicles with pneumatic tires shall not exceed any of the following weight limitations:

(1) On any one axle, twenty thousand pounds;

(2) On any two successive axles:
   (a) Spaced four feet or less apart, and weighed simultaneously, twenty-four thousand pounds;
   (b) Spaced more than four feet apart, and weighed simultaneously, thirty-four thousand pounds, plus one thousand pounds per foot or fraction thereof, over four feet, not to exceed forty thousand pounds.

(3) On any three successive load-bearing axles designed to equalize the load between such axles and spaced so that each such axle of the three-axle group is more than four feet from the next axle in the three-axle group and so that the spacing between the first axle and the third axle of the three-axle group is no more than nine feet, and with such load-bearing three-axle group weighed simultaneously as a unit:
   (a) Forty-eight thousand pounds, with the total weight of vehicle and load not exceeding thirty-eight thousand pounds plus an additional nine hundred pounds for each foot of spacing between the front axle and the rearmost axle of the vehicle;
   (b) As an alternative to division (D)(3)(a) of this section, forty-two thousand five hundred pounds, if part of a six-axle vehicle combination with at least twenty feet of spacing between the front axle and rearmost axle, with the total weight of vehicle and load not exceeding fifty-four thousand pounds plus an additional six hundred pounds for each foot of spacing between the front axle and the rearmost axle of the vehicle.

(4) The total weight of vehicle and load utilizing any combination of axles, other than as provided for three-axle groups in division (D) of this section, shall not exceed thirty-eight thousand pounds plus an additional nine hundred pounds for each foot of spacing between the front axle and rearmost axle of the vehicle.
(E) Notwithstanding divisions (B) and (D) of this section, the maximum overall gross weight of vehicle and load imposed upon the road surface shall not exceed eighty thousand pounds.

(F) Notwithstanding any other provision of law, when a vehicle is towing another vehicle, such drawbar or other connection shall be of a length such as will limit the spacing between nearest axles of the respective vehicles to a distance not in excess of twelve feet and six inches.

(G) As used in division (B) of this section, "tandem axle" means two or more consecutive axles whose centers may be included between parallel transverse vertical planes spaced more than forty inches but not more than ninety-six inches apart, extending across the full width of the vehicle.

(H) This section does not apply to passenger bus type vehicles operated by a regional transit authority pursuant to sections 306.30 to 306.54 of the Revised Code.

(I) Either division (B) or (D) of this section applies to the weight of a vehicle and its load imposed upon any road surface that is not a part of the interstate system by vehicles with pneumatic tires. As between divisions (B) and (D) of this section, only the division that yields the highest total gross vehicle weight limit shall be applied to any such vehicle. Once that division is determined, only the limits contained in the subdivisions of that division shall apply to that vehicle.

Effective Date: 06-29-2001

5577.042 [Effective 6/29/2011] Weight provisions for farm, log and coal trucks and farm machinery

(A) As used in this section:

(1) “Farm machinery” has the same meaning as in section 4501.01 of the Revised Code.

(2) “Farm commodities” includes livestock, bulk milk, corn, soybeans, tobacco, and wheat.

(3) “Farm truck” means a truck used in the transportation from a farm of farm commodities when the truck is operated in accordance with this section.

(4) “Log truck” means a truck used in the transportation of timber from the site of its cutting when the truck is operated in accordance with this section.

(5) “Coal truck” means a truck transporting coal from the site where it is mined when the truck is operated in accordance with this section.

(6) “Solid waste” has the same meaning as in section 3734.01 of the Revised Code.

(7) “Solid waste haul vehicle” means a vehicle hauling solid waste for which a bill of lading has not been issued.

(B)(1) Notwithstanding sections 5577.02 and 5577.04 of the Revised Code, the following vehicles under the described conditions may exceed by no more than seven and one-half per cent the weight provisions of sections 5577.01 to 5577.09 of the Revised Code and no penalty prescribed in section 5577.99 of the Revised Code shall be imposed:

(a) A coal truck transporting coal, from the place of production to the first point of delivery where title to the coal is transferred;

(b) A farm truck or farm machinery transporting farm commodities, from the place of production to the first point of delivery where the commodities are weighed and title to the commodities is transferred;

(c) A log truck transporting timber, from the site of its cutting to the first point of delivery where the timber is transferred;

(d) A solid waste haul vehicle hauling solid waste, from the place of production to the first point of delivery where the solid waste is disposed of or title to the solid waste is transferred.
(2) In addition, if any of the vehicles listed in division (B) (1) of this section and operated under the conditions described in that division does not exceed by more than seven and one-half percent the gross vehicle weight provisions of sections 5577.01 to 5577.09 of the Revised Code, no wheel or axle-load limits shall apply and no penalty prescribed in section 5577.99 of the Revised Code for a wheel or axle overload shall be imposed.

(C) If any of the vehicles listed in division (B) (1) of this section and operated under the conditions described in that division exceeds by more than seven and one-half percent the weight provisions of sections 5577.01 to 5577.09 of the Revised Code, both of the following apply without regard to the seven and one-half percent allowance provided by division (B) of this section:

(1) The applicable penalty prescribed in section 5577.99 of the Revised Code;

(2) The civil liability imposed by section 5577.12 of the Revised Code.

(D) (1) Division (B) of this section does not apply to the operation of a farm truck, log truck, or farm machinery transporting farm commodities during the months of February and March.

(2) Regardless of when the operation occurs, division (B) of this section does not apply to the operation of a vehicle on either of the following:

(a) A highway that is part of the interstate system;

(b) A highway, road, or bridge that is subject to reduced maximum weights under section 4513.33, 5577.07, 5577.071, 5577.08, 5577.09, or 5591.42 of the Revised Code.

Amended by 129th General Assembly File No. 7, HB 114, § 101.01, eff. 6/29/2011.

Effective Date: 03-31-2003; 09-16-2004

This section is set out twice. See also § 5577.042, effective until 6/29/2011.


(A) Notwithstanding sections 5577.02 and 5577.04 of the Revised Code, the following vehicles under the described conditions may exceed by no more than five percent the weight provisions of sections 5577.01 to 5577.09 of the Revised Code and no penalty prescribed in section 5577.99 of the Revised Code shall be imposed:

(1) A surface mining truck transporting minerals from the place where the minerals are loaded to any of the following:

(a) The construction site where the minerals are discharged;

(b) The place where title to the minerals is transferred;

(c) The place of processing.

(2) A vehicle transporting hot mix asphalt material from the place where the material is first mixed to the paving site where the material is discharged;

(3) A vehicle transporting concrete from the place where the material is first mixed to the site where the material is discharged;

(4) A vehicle transporting manure, turf, sod, or silage from the site where the material is first produced to the first place of delivery;

(5) A vehicle transporting chips, sawdust, mulch, bark, pulpwood, biomass, or firewood from the site where the product is first produced or harvested to first point where the product is transferred.

(B) In addition, if any of the vehicles listed in division (A) of this section and operated under the conditions described in that division does not exceed by more than five percent the gross vehicle weight provisions of sections 5577.01 to
5577.09 of the Revised Code, no wheel or axle load limits shall apply and no penalty prescribed in section 5577.99 of the Revised Code for a wheel or axle overload shall be imposed.

(C) If any of the vehicles listed in division (A) of this section and operated under the conditions described in that division exceeds by more than five percent the weight provisions of sections 5577.01 to 5577.09 of the Revised Code, both of the following apply without regard to the allowance provided by division (A) of this section:

(1) The applicable penalty prescribed in section 5577.99 of the Revised Code;

(2) The civil liability imposed by section 5577.12 of the Revised Code.

(D) Divisions (A) and (B) of this section do not apply to the operation of a vehicle listed in division (A) of this section on either of the following:

(1) A highway that is part of the interstate system;

(2) A highway, road, or bridge that is subject to reduced maximum weights under section 4513.33, 5577.07, 5577.071, 5577.08, 5577.09, or 5591.42 of the Revised Code.

Added by 129th General Assembly File No. 7, HB 114, § 101.01, eff. 6/29/2011.

5577.071 Reduction of weight of vehicle or load or speed on deteriorated or vulnerable bridge

(A) When deterioration renders any bridge or section of a bridge in a county insufficient to bear the traffic thereon, or when the bridge or section of a bridge would be damaged or destroyed by heavy traffic, the board of county commissioners may reduce the maximum weight of vehicle and load, or the maximum speed, or both, for motor vehicles, as prescribed by law, and prescribe whatever reduction the condition of the bridge or section of the bridge justifies. This section does not apply to bridges on state highways.

(B) A schedule of any reductions made pursuant to division (A) of this section shall be filed, for the information of the public, in the office of the board of county commissioners in each county in which the schedule is operative. A board of county commissioners that makes a reduction pursuant to division (A) of this section shall, at least one day before a reduction becomes effective, cause to be placed and retained on any bridge on which a reduction is made, at both ends of the bridge, during the period of a reduced limitation of weight, speed, or both, signs of substantial construction conspicuously indicating the limitations of weight or speed or both which are permitted on the bridge and the date on which these limitations go into effect. No person shall operate upon any such bridge a motor vehicle whose maximum weight or speed is in excess of the limitations prescribed. The cost of purchasing and erecting the signs provided for in this division shall be paid from any fund for the maintenance and repair of bridges and culverts.

(C) Except as otherwise provided in this division, no reduction shall be made pursuant to division (A) of this section on a joint bridge as provided in section 5591.25 of the Revised Code unless the board of county commissioners of every county sharing the joint bridge agrees to the reduction, the amount of the reduction, and how the cost of purchasing and erecting signs indicating the limitations of weight and speed is to be borne. A board of county commissioners may make a reduction pursuant to division (A) of this section on a section of a joint bridge, without the agreement [of] any other county sharing the bridge, if the section of the bridge on which the reduction is to be made is located solely in that county.

5591.42 Carrying capacity of bridges - warning notice

The board of county commissioners together with the county engineer or an engineer to be selected by the board, or the director of transportation, may ascertain the safe carrying capacity of the bridges on roads or highways under their jurisdiction. Where the safe carrying capacity of any such bridge is ascertained and found to be less than the load limit prescribed by sections 5577.01 to 5577.12 of the Revised Code, warning notice shall be conspicuously posted near each end of the bridge. The notice shall caution all persons against driving on the bridge a loaded conveyance of greater weight than the bridge’s carrying capacity.

Effective Date: 11-02-1989
907  BRIDGE FILES (RECORDS)

Bridge owners shall maintain a complete, accurate and current record of each bridge under their jurisdiction. Complete information, in good usable form, is vital to the effective management of bridges. Such information provides a record that may be important for repair, rehabilitation, replacement and future planning.

Items that shall be assembled as part of the bridge record are discussed below. Some or all of the information pertaining to a bridge may be stored in electronic format as part of a bridge management system.

907.1  CONSTRUCTION PLANS

Each bridge record should include one clear and readable set of all drawings used to construct, repair and/or rehabilitate the bridge. In lieu of hard copies, the construction plans may be stored in an electronic format in such a way that clear and readable paper copies can easily be reproduced from the electronic records.

907.2  CONSTRUCTION & MATERIAL SPECIFICATIONS

Each bridge record should include the reference to the construction and material specification used during the construction of the bridge. Where general technical specifications were not used, only the special technical provisions need to be incorporated in the bridge record.

907.3  SHOP AND WORKING DRAWINGS

One set of all shop and working drawings approved for the construction or repair of a bridge should be saved or preserved as a part of the bridge record.

907.4  AS-BUILT DRAWINGS

If available, each bridge record should include one set of final drawings showing the “as-built” condition of the bridge, complete with signature of the individual responsible for recording the as-built conditions.

907.5  CORRESPONDENCE

Include all pertinent letters, memoranda and notices of project completion, telephone memos and other related information directly concerning the bridge in chronological order in the bridge record.

907.6  INVENTORY DATA

A complete inventory of a bridge in the ODOT BMS/SMS shall be done as soon as a bridge is open to traffic. FHWA mandates an ODOT bridge shall be inventoried within 90 days and a non-ODOT bridge shall be inventoried within 180 days from the day the bridge was open to traffic. The same rule applies to modifications in the inventory record of replaced bridges or bridges that have been reopened after repairs are done. Initial inventory can be completed using the bridge plans. However, a history of dates of physical closing or opening of the traffic on the bridge should be maintained in the bridge record.

907.7  INSPECTION HISTORY

Each bridge record shall include a chronological record of the date and the type of all inspections performed on the bridge. When available, scour, seismic, wind and fatigue evaluation studies; fracture critical information; deck evaluations; field load testing, and; corrosion studies should be part of the bridge record.

907.8  PHOTOGRAPHS

Each bridge record shall at least contain photographs of the bridges showing top view, approach views and the elevation. For bridges crossing over waterways and relief, include photos of the hydraulic openings on the upstream and the downstream sides. Other photos necessary to show major defects, damages or other important features such as utilities on or under the bridge should also be included.
907.9 RATING RECORDS
The bridge record shall include a complete record of the determination of bridge’s load-carrying capacity.

907.10 ACCIDENT DATA
Details of accidents or damage occurrences including date, description of accident, member damage and repairs, as supported by photographs and investigation reports, shall be included in the bridge record.

907.11 MAINTENANCE AND REPAIR HISTORY
Each bridge record shall include a chronological record documenting the maintenance and repairs that have occurred since the initial construction of the bridge. Include details such as date, description of project, contractor cost and related data for in-house projects as well as contracted work.

907.12 POSTING HISTORY
Each bridge record shall include a summary of all load posting and rescinding actions taken for the bridge, including load capacity calculations, date of posting and description of signing used.

908 GENERAL

908.1 APPLICATION
The provisions of BDM Section 900 apply to ODOT bridges. All provisions of BDM Section 900 may also be applied to non-ODOT bridges at the discretion of the bridge owner. Refer to BDM Section 928.

For load rating of new bridges, BDM Sections 911 through 926 shall apply.

For load rating of existing bridges, BDM Sections 911 through 925 and 927 shall apply.

908.2 INVENTORY AND OPERATING RATING LOADS
Inventory and Operating Rating Loads are shown in BDM Figure 908-1 and BDM Figure 908-2.
Figure 908-1: AASHTO HS20 LOADING

Figure 908-2: AASHTO HL93 LOADING
908.3 RATING LOADS

A. All bridges shall be load rated for all the Ohio Legal Loads (BDM Figure 908-3 through BDM Figure 908-5) at the operating level.

Figure 908-3: COMMERCIAL VEHICLES
Figure 908-4: SPECIAL HAULING VEHICLE (SHV)
UNIT WEIGHTS & DENSITIES

The following assumptions should be made while performing the load rating analysis unless more accurate site information is available:

A. Unit weight of asphalt ........................................145 lb. /ft³
B. Unit weight of concrete ........................................150 lb. /ft³
C. Unit weight of latex modified concrete ................150 lb. /ft³
D. Unit weight of soil .............................................120 lb. /ft³
E. Unit weight of steel ...........................................490 lb. /ft³
F. Water density ....................................................62.4 lb. /ft³

STRUCTURES EXEMPT FROM LOAD RATING CALCULATIONS

The following types of buried structures are exempt from load rating calculations under the provisions of this Section:

A. Circular plastic pipes
B. Concrete pipes (circular, or elliptical)
C. Buried metal frames
D. Junction chambers
E. Manhole flat slab tops, catch basins, inlet tops
F. Structures that do not carry vehicular traffic
G. Structures not carrying a public road
H. Structures meeting requirements of Section 911
**910.1 STRUCTURES THAT NEED A BR100**

All structures maintained in the SMS and not exempt from load rating per Section 910 shall have a load rating summary form (BR100) filed based on the original design load of the structure. If the design load is unknown, the load rating summary form shall be filed based on the engineering evaluation.

**911 STRUCTURES UNDER 6.5-FT OR MORE FILL**

A research conducted by the Ohio State University (sponsored by ODOT) has concluded that when a buried structure has 6.5-ft or more fill on the top, the live load effect on the structure due to vehicular traffic is negligible.

Ref: [http://cdm16007.cotentdm.oclc.org/cdm/ref/collection/P267401ccp2/id/4590](http://cdm16007.cotentdm.oclc.org/cdm/ref/collection/P267401ccp2/id/4590). In such case, a load rating analysis of the structure is not needed provided there are no other signs of distress, structural damage or deterioration. Load rating factors of 1.000 for inventory, 1.250 for operating and 1.500 for Ohio legal loads shall be used.

**912 WHICH PORTION OF BRIDGES SHALL BE LOAD RATED**

Any structural member of a bridge that could carry vehicular traffic shall be load rated. Typically, the structural members of the bridge superstructure are load rated. Substructure elements, such as pier caps and columns, should be analyzed for their load carrying capacities in situations when they are either scoped to be analyzed or when the bridge owner or the rating engineer has reason to believe that the capacity of a substructure element may control the capacity of the bridge.

**913 PROCEDURE FOR LOAD RATING**

A. New Bridges
   1. Load rate new (proposed) bridges at the design stage per BDM Section 926.
   2. The Project Manager shall forward the load rating report, bridge structure plans and data input files to the OSE Load Rating Engineer for review.

B. Existing Bridges
   1. Perform a field inspection of the existing bridge according to the ODOT Manual of Bridge Inspection to determine its condition and the percent of effectiveness of the various members for carrying load, if included in the scope. All information shown in the Bridge Inventory and the Inspection Reports shall also be carefully reviewed.
   2. If a field inspection of the bridge is not a part of the Scope of Services, as a minimum, review the most current inspection report (and inspection notes, if available).
   3. Use the date of construction to determine the yield stresses for the construction materials in older bridges for which plan information is not available.
   4. For a load rating being requested to the OSE, the District Bridge Engineer (DBE) shall make available to the OSE, Load Rating Engineer, a complete inspection report (including comments), bridge photographs, field measurements and a copy of the previous rating calculation sheets. OSE will review the submitted material, analyze the bridge and return a copy of the final rating summary (BR100) to the DBE, along with any recommendations.
   5. For load rating performed by the consultant and tasked by the District, the DBE or Project Manager (PM) shall forward the load rating report, bridge structure plans, and data input files to the OSE Load Rating Engineer for review. The OSE Load Rating Engineer shall review the submittal and send the comments to the DBE/PM or the recommended BR100 to the DBE or PM.
   6. For load rating performed by the consultant and tasked by the OSE, the consultant shall submit the load rating report, bridge structure plans, and data input files to the OSE Load Rating Engineer for review. The OSE Load Rating Engineer shall review the submittal and send the recommended BR100 to the DBE, after all comments are addressed.
   7. Using pertinent current information and load rating analysis, the District Bridge Engineer/Bridge Owner shall determine and record the Inventory, Operating and Ohio Legal Load Ratings in the SMS.
8. The District Bridge Engineer/Bridge Owner shall keep the final rating summary, rating calculations or computer output (if any) and the rating report along with any recommendations in the bridge file.

C. Influence Line Connected Rating Spreadsheets

1. If directed and included in the Scope of Services, prepare Microsoft Excel spreadsheets connected to influence lines/surfaces to analyze a permit vehicle of up to 25 axles.

2. The Project Manager shall forward the load rating report, bridge structure plans, data input files and spreadsheets to the OSE Load Rating Engineer for review.

914 WHEN LOAD RATING SHALL BE REVISED

The load rating of a bridge should be revised when:

A. The superstructure is replaced
B. The existing deck is replaced with a new deck
C. The existing deck width has changed or there is an addition of new beam(s) or girder(s) in the cross-section
D. There is a change in the dead load on the superstructure, like addition or removal of wearing Surfaces, addition or removal of sidewalks, parapets, railings, etc.
E. There is a physical change in the condition of a structural member of the bridge, which may change the capacity of the structural member
F. Rusting or damage to a slab, beam, girder or other structural element has resulted in section loss and change in capacity
G. There is structural damage to steel, due to a hit by a vehicle or excessive deflection or elongation under temperature or highway loads
H. The inspection GA rating drops below 5 and every time it drops any step further below
I. When exposed or broken prestressing strands are discovered. For each broken or exposed strand, consider the adjacent strand(s) in the same row as ineffective
J. When a bridge is rated based on “Field evaluation and documented engineering judgement (code:0)” and GA rating drops a step

The load rating of a bridge does not need to be revised when:

A. The change in the thickness of external wearing surface is less than 1/2-in.
B. The change in the dead load on a beam member is not more than 10-lbs/ft.

915 ANALYSIS OF BRIDGES WITH SIDEWALKS

Pedestrian loads on sidewalks are not typically considered in a load rating analysis of a highway bridge, regardless of if a sidewalk on the bridge is present or not. If a bridge owner has reasons to believe that the sidewalk loads shall be included in the load rating analysis of a bridge, a pedestrian load of 75-lbs/ft2 shall be applied to all sidewalks wider than 2-ft and considered simultaneously with the live load in the vehicle lane.

When pedestrian load is present, the pedestrian load effect multiplied with applicable load factor should be subtracted from the capacity of the member at the location being investigated when calculating the RF.

For bridges load rated according to the AASHTO Standard Specifications for Highway Bridges, AASHTO Table 3.22.1A applies. For bridges load rated according to the AASHTO LRFD Bridge Design Specifications, refer to BDM Section 925.2.

Pedestrian loads shall not be considered when performing Special or Permit Load Analysis as per BDM Section 917.
916 ANALYSIS FOR MULTILANE LOADING
A. Traffic lanes to be used for rating purposes shall be in accordance with AASHTO Specifications.
B. For rating analysis of floor beams, trusses, non-redundant girders or other non-redundant main structural members, position identical rating vehicles in one or more of the through traffic lanes on the bridge, spaced and shifted laterally on the deck within the traffic lanes to produce the maximum stress in the member under consideration.
C. Apply the multiple presence factors of AASHTO Standard Specification for Highway Bridges, Section 3.12 or AASHTO LRFD Bridge Design Specification, Section 3.6.1, accordingly.
D. If necessary, when combined with other unrestricted legal loads for rating purposes, the EVs need only to be considered in a single lane of one direction of a bridge. For rating analysis of transverse members, the EVs need only to be placed in one lane on the bridge, spaced and shifted laterally on the deck to produce maximum stress in the member under consideration. If there are more than one through traffic lanes on the bridge, use other unrestricted legal loads in other lanes.

917 ANALYSIS FOR PERMIT OR SPECIAL VEHICLE
When the Scope of Services requires a structure to be analyzed for a special or permit load vehicle, two analyses shall be performed as per BDM Sections 917.1 through 917.2, at the operating level.

917.1 FIRST ANALYSIS OF BRIDGE FOR PERMIT OR SPECIAL VEHICLE
917.1.1 FIRST ANALYSIS OF BRIDGE WITH THREE OR MORE LANES
A. In the right-most lane, place the permit or special vehicle positioned to produce the maximum live load effect on the component to be rated.
B. In the adjacent lanes, simultaneously place single 5C1 vehicles. These vehicles shall be positioned to produce the maximum live load effect on the component to be rated. No partial 5C1 vehicles shall be used. If applicable, BDM Section 916 shall apply.

917.1.2 FIRST ANALYSIS OF BRIDGE WITH TWO LANES
A. In the right-most lane, place the permit or special vehicle positioned to produce the maximum live load effect on the component to be rated.
B. In the adjacent lane, place a series of 5C1 vehicles positioned to produce maximum live load effect on the component to be rated. The 5C1 vehicles should be spaced in the longitudinal direction, such that the distance between the rear axle of the leading vehicle and the front axle of trailing vehicle shall be 36-ft. Place as many 5C1 vehicles as necessary to produce the maximum load effect on the component to be rated. No partial 5C1 vehicles shall be used. If applicable, BDM Section 916 shall apply.

917.1.3 FIRST ANALYSIS OF BRIDGE WITH A SINGLE LANE
In the traffic lane, place the permit or special vehicle positioned to produce the maximum live load effect on the component to be rated.

917.2 SECOND ANALYSIS OF BRIDGE FOR PERMIT OR SPECIAL VEHICLE
Place the permit or special vehicle positioned on the bridge to produce the maximum live load effect on the component to be rated. No other vehicle shall be placed on the bridge.

918 LOAD RATING OF LONG SPAN BRIDGES
918.1 WHEN THE LOAD RATING SHALL BE DONE
Perform the load rating of long span bridges according to BDM Sections 926.3.3, 927.2.2, or 927.3.2.
918.2 HOW THE LOAD RATING SHALL BE DONE

918.2.1 INVENTORY & OPERATING LEVEL RATING USING HL93 LOADING

A. The HL93 live load, shown in BDM Figure 908-2, shall be used and applied as per AASHTO LRFD Design Specification.

B. Multilane loading factors shall be applied as per BDM Section 916.

918.2.2 INVENTORY & OPERATING LEVEL RATING USING HS20 TRUCK

A. The AASHTO HS20 truck or lane loading, whichever controls, shall be applied as per AASHTO.

B. Multilane loading factors shall be applied as per BDM Section 916.

918.2.3 LOAD RATING FOR OHIO LEGAL LOADS

A. The Ohio Legal Loads shown in BDM Figure 908-3 and BDM Figure 908-4 shall be used. The provisions of BDM Sections 912 through 916 and 918 shall apply.

B. Multilane loading factors shall be applied as per BDM Section 916.

918.2.3.1 LONG SPAN BRIDGES WITH THREE OR MORE LANES

A. In the right-most lane, place a series of Ohio 5C1 vehicles. The 5C1 vehicles should be spaced such that the distance between the rear axle of the leading vehicle and the front axle of trailing vehicle shall be 36-ft. Place as many 5C1 vehicles as necessary to produce the maximum load effect on the component to be rated. No partial 5C1 vehicles shall be used.

B. In all other lanes in the same direction, simultaneously place single 5C1 vehicles. These vehicles shall be positioned to produce the maximum live load effect on the component to be rated.

C. For bridges with two-way traffic, apply the live load for the opposing traffic in the same manner as the one-way traffic.

918.2.3.2 LONG SPAN BRIDGES WITH TWO LANES

A. In the right-most lane, place a series of Ohio 5C1 vehicles. The 5C1 vehicles should be spaced such that the distance between the rear axle of the leading vehicle and the front axle of trailing vehicle shall be 36-ft. Place as many 5C1 vehicles as necessary to produce the maximum load effect on the component to be rated. No partial 5C1 vehicles shall be used.

B. For bridges with one-way traffic, in the other lane simultaneously place a single 5C1 vehicle positioned to produce the maximum live load effect on the component to be rated.

C. For bridges with two-way traffic, in the other lane place a series of Ohio 5C1 vehicles. The 5C1 vehicles should be spaced such that the distance between the rear axle of the leading vehicle and the front axle of trailing vehicle shall be 36-ft. Place as many 5C1 vehicles as necessary to produce the maximum load effect on the component to be rated. No partial 5C1 vehicles shall be used.

918.2.3.3 LONG SPAN BRIDGES WITH A SINGLE LANE

The live load shall be a series of Ohio 5C1 vehicles. The 5C1 vehicles should be spaced such that the distance between the rear axle of the leading vehicle and the front axle of trailing vehicle shall be 36-ft. Place as many 5C1 vehicles as necessary to produce the maximum load effect on the component to be rated. No partial 5C1 vehicles shall be used.
BRIDGE POSTING FOR REDUCED LOAD LIMITS

PURPOSE

The Procedure outlined in this section is to be followed for posting or rescinding warnings of bridge strength deficiencies on ODOT bridges. Owners of non-ODOT bridges may modify and adapt the guidelines given in this section to post or rescind warnings of bridge strength deficiencies on their bridges.

REFERENCE

Ohio Revised Code, Section 5591.42:

PROCEDURE FOR BRIDGE POSTING

BRIDGE POSTING FOLLOWING LOAD RATING

A. A load rater performs the bridge load rating per the ODOT Bridge Design Manual (BDM).
B. For an existing or in-service bridge, the bridge shall be load rated based on current dead loads and the last field inspection report. The current operating status, inspection comments, photographs, and condition rating of structural elements shall be considered in the load rating.
C. Any structural deficiencies discovered during the most current field inspection, as recorded on the bridge field inspection report shall be considered during the load rating process. The Control Authority Program Manager (CAPM) shall contact the load rater to request to reanalyze a bridge in service.
D. If load rating is performed by load testing, the test load configuration shall be noted.
E. The Load Rating Report shall be signed, sealed and dated by an Ohio registered Professional Engineer. The load rating results shall be communicated to the CAPM who will enter/update the load rating results in the ODOT SMS.
F. Subsequent to load rating, if it is determined that the bridge needs to be posted for reduced loads (i.e., below Ohio Legal Loads), the CAPM shall mark in the SMS, “Bridge Posting Required.” The CAPM shall initiate the process to have the posting signs installed on the bridge no later than 90 days from the date of load rating.

Starting October 1, 2019, FHWA requires, bridge load postings are to be made as soon as possible but no later than 30 days after a load rating determines a need for such posting.

For ODOT bridges, the date on Director’s letter of posting will be used as the date of posting determination.
For Ohio Turnpike bridges, the date when the Chief Engineer approves the bridge posting will be used as the date of posting determination.

For county bridges that require a resolution from the county commissioners, the date of resolution will be used as the date of posting determination. For other county bridges, the date of rating on the BR100 will be used as the date of posting determination.

For city bridges that require a resolution from the city council, the date of resolution will be used as the date of posting determination. For other city bridges, the date of rating on the BR100 will be used as the date of posting determination.

G. It will be the responsibility of the CAPM to periodically verify that the posting signs are in place.

H. If the load rating determines a need for the bridge posting, then the bridge will be analyzed by both LFR and LRFR methods. The method which produces generally higher rating factors shall be used to determine the need for bridge posting. The BR100 shall be prepared based on the method selected.
Table 919-1: ODOT Bridge Posting Policy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>% Ohio Legal Value</th>
<th>Reported % Ohio Legal in SMS</th>
<th>Posting for Reduced Loads Needed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>≥150%</td>
<td>150%</td>
<td>NO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>≥100% and &lt;150%</td>
<td>Actual percentage rounded to the nearest 5 (i.e., 100, 115, etc.)</td>
<td>NO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;100%</td>
<td>Actual percentage rounded to the nearest 5 (i.e., 95%, 30%, etc.)</td>
<td>YES</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

919.3.2 PROCEDURE FOR PLACING POSTING ON ODOT BRIDGES

A. The ODOT District Bridge Engineer shall submit a written bridge posting request according to BDM Section 919.6 to the OSE Bridge Rating Engineer.

B. After the Director signs the posting request:
   1. The OSE Bridge Rating Engineer shall send a copy to each of the following:
      a. District Bridge Engineer
      b. Manager, ODOT Special Hauling Permits
      c. Superintendent of State Highway Patrol
      d. Executive Director Ohio Trucking Association
      e. Board of County Commissioners
      f. Respective County Engineer’s Office
   2. The District Roadway Services Manager shall prepare, erect and maintain all necessary signs until the bridge is either strengthened or replaced or the posting is rescinded per Section 919.6. The sign placement may require the maintaining agency to obtain a permit to install the bridge signs from the local county/city if a route is carried inside local jurisdiction.
   3. The District Bridge Engineer shall update all bridge inventory and inspection records to show the latest official posted capacity.

C. When posting of a bridge is determined necessary and no unusual or special circumstance at the bridge dictates otherwise:
   1. Standard regulatory signs (as per the Ohio Manual of Uniform Traffic Control Devices (OMUTCD), an example of the standard wording to be used on the signs is given in BDM Figure 919-1), shall be used. Sign placement shall be in accordance with OMUTCD Section 2B.59.
   2. Weight limits on the sign shown in BDM Figure 919-1 (R12-H5) are safe loads allowed for Single Unit trucks except the silhouette near bottom which represents the safe load allowed for 5-axle 5C1 truck shown in BDM Figure 908-3: COMMERCIAL VEHICLES.
D. **Bridges that are determined to be incapable of carrying vehicles of GVV of 3 tons shall be closed for all traffic.**

**919.4 PROCEDURE FOR RESCINDING POSTING OF ODOT BRIDGES**

A. When a posted bridge has been strengthened or replaced and no longer needs posting, the District Bridge Engineer shall forward to the Bridge Rating Engineer a written request to rescind the existing signed posting. The request shall include a complete statement of the reason for the action as specified in BDM Section 919.6.

B. The Bridge Rating Engineer shall review the data submitted by the District Bridge Engineer and upon concurrence, shall forward to the Director a request to rescind the posting.

C. The Bridge Rating Engineer shall distribute copies of the rescind notice as described in BDM Section 919.3.2.

**919.5 PROCEDURE FOR CHANGING POSTING OF ODOT BRIDGES**

When the rated capacity of a posted bridge changes, to require a revised posting level, the procedures in BDM Section
919.3 apply. Additionally, the existing posting must be rescinded as set forth in BDM Section 919.4.

**919.6 REQUIRED INFORMATION FOR POST, RESCIND AND CHANGE REQUESTS FROM DISTRICTS**

The following minimum information is required on all post, rescind and change requests:

A. Posting Request (Reduction in Load Limits)
   1. Current Bridge Number
   2. Structure File Number
   3. Feature intersected (over or under bridge)
   4. Posting Load for each Ohio Legal Load
   5. Rating of the bridge expressed as a percent of legal loads
   6. Explanation as to why the posting is required
   7. Attach copies of all official documentation for any associated actions by involved agencies other than the state

B. Rescinding Request (Removal of Existing Load Limits)
   1. Current Bridge Number
   2. Structure File Number
   3. Feature intersected (over or under bridge)
   4. Existing posting (% reduction or weight limit currently in effect for each of the Ohio Legal Loads)
   5. Date existing posting was effective
   6. Explanation as to why the posting restrictions can now be removed (include: contract project numbers or indicate force account or other work method used to correct problem, if applicable)
   7. New load rating for the rehabilitated or new structure (for each Ohio Legal Load)

C. Change Request (Revision of Existing Posted Limits)
   1. Current Bridge Number
   2. Structure File Number
   3. Feature intersected (over or under bridge)
   4. Existing posting (% reduction or weight limit currently in effect for each of the Ohio Legal Loads)
   5. Revised posting request (revised weight limit for each of the Ohio Legal Load)
   6. Date of existing posting
   7. Explanation as to why posting change is necessary (include project numbers etc., involved, if applicable)

**919.7 POSTING FOR EMERGENCY VEHICLES**

When a bridge is analyzed or evaluated and determined to be incapable of carrying 100% of the loads of the EVs (shown in BDM Figure 908-5), and the bridge is not already posted for the reduced legal loads, it shall then be posted for the reduced weights of EVs. The 2 Axle weight limit shall be for the maximum gross vehicle weight (GVW) of the EV2, which can safely be carried on the bridge, and the 3 Axle weight limit shall be the maximum GVW of the EV3, which can safely be carried on the bridge. Ohio Sign R12-H7 (shown in BDM Figure 919-3) shall be used.

If a bridge is posted for reduced commercial legal loads, it shall be load rated for EVs, but will not be posted for EVs simultaneously. Sign placement shall be in accordance the OMUTCD Section 2B.59.
SOFTWARE TO BE USED FOR LOAD RATING OF ODOT BRIDGES

LIST OF ODOT PREFERRED LOAD RATING PROGRAMS

The bridge models developed during the load rating analyses are being used by ODOT Superload system to analyze and process hundreds of overload-permits every day. Superload system is configured to analyze bridges on a route in a fast and efficient batch process and minimize the permit analysis turnaround time. ODOT uses preferred programs to maintain and update the bridge models in the Superload system. ODOT has licenses of a few other load rating and analysis programs but not every analysis program is interfaced with the Superload system. The bridges which are not modeled using preferred programs require to be analyzed manually for permit loads, which substantially increase the process time.

A. AASHTOWare BrR (formerly Virtis): BrR is a load rating and analysis program developed and licensed by AASHTO. BrR can rate the bridges by LRFR and LFR methods. BrR can load rate a variety of bridge types including reinforced concrete box culverts and curved beam bridges. ODOT has a site license for BrR. Through a special pricing option, Counties, Cities and Consultants working on bridges in Ohio can obtain a stand-alone single user license of the BrR program from AASHTO. Please contact the ODOT Load Rating Engineer in the Central Office for a reference email.

B. AASHTOWare BrD (formerly Opis): BrD is a bridge design check program developed and licensed by AASHTO. BrD can perform design check of a bridge by LRFR and LFR methods for compliance with current AASHTO Specifications. BrD program is fully compatible with BrR program, as data files created in BrD program can be used in BrR program to load rate a bridge. ODOT has a site license for BrD from AASHTO. Through a special pricing option, Counties, Cities and Consultants working on bridges in Ohio can obtain a stand-alone single user license of the BrD program from AASHTO. Please contact the ODOT Load Rating Engineer in the Central Office for a reference email.

OTHER LOAD RATING PROGRAMS

For the analysis of the structures that cannot be accurately modeled using ODOT’s Preferred Load Rating Programs stated in 920.1, contact the OSE Load Rating Engineer for software pre-approval prior to performing any load rating. The Department will not accept load ratings performed using any software not on ODOT’s preferred load rating program list or pre-approved for a bridge. Currently, ODOT licenses following additional bridge analysis programs:
A. Bentley LARS Bridge: LARS Bridge is a bridge analysis program maintained and licensed by Bentley Systems. It can load rate bridges by LRFR and LFR methods. Through a special pricing option, Counties, Cities and Consultants working on bridges in Ohio can obtain a stand-alone single user license of the LARS Bridge program. Please contact the ODOT Load Rating Engineer in the Central Office for a reference email. (http://www.bentley.com)

B. WYDOT BRASS-Culvert: BRASS-Culvert can load rate reinforced concrete flat-topped 3-sided frames and 4-sided boxes buried under the fill by LRFR and LFR methods. The BRASS family of programs is developed, maintained and licensed by the Wyoming Department of Transportation. Technical support on BRASS-Culvert program is available to the BRASS licensed users from the Wyoming DOT. (http://www.dot.state.wy.us/wydot/engineering_technical_programs/bridge/brass)

C. MDX Software: MDX software can only be used to load rate ODOT slab-girder/beam bridges that have horizontal curvature of more than 4 degrees. This program supports Load Factor or Load and Resistance Factor methods. Do not use this program to load rate straight or low curvature bridges that can be accurately modeled using the AASHTO BrR. (http://www.mdxsoftware.com/)

D. DESCUS I: Design and Analysis of Curved I-girder Bridge Systems, marketed by OPTI-MATE, Inc. Use the most current version of the software; (www.opti-mate.com)

E. Midas Civil: Midas Civil is a finite element analysis program by Midas IT Co., Ltd., Use this program to load rate only complex bridges that cannot be accurately modeled using the AASHTO BrR. (http://www.midasuser.com).

921 LOAD RATING REPORT SUBMISSION

The load rating report shall be submitted to the ODOT project manager, ODOT District Bridge Engineer or the respective owner (in case of a non-ODOT bridge). The submission shall include:

A. Two printed copies of the Load Rating Report with the Summary Sheet. The Load Rating Reports shall be signed, sealed and dated by an Ohio Registered Professional Engineer.

B. One electronic copy of the Load Rating Report in PDF format

C. One copy of all electronic input data files

For an ODOT-bridge, the District Bridge Engineer or the Project Manager will send one printed copy, or an electronic copy of the report, all the electronic data files and a copy of the final bridge plans to the OSE for review.

The report summary must list final inventory and operating ratings of each structure unit, and the final ratings of the entire bridge summarized in a tabular form. The ratings of each member and the overall ratings of the structure shall be presented for each Ohio Legal Load and either AASHTO HS20 or HL93 live load.

An example of a Bridge Load Rating Report Summary is given as BDM Figure 921-1 and BDM Figure 921-2.

For existing bridges, the report shall state how the material properties were determined. Any specific details about the current conditions and bridge geometry shall be listed.

All calculations related to the load rating should be included with the load rating report.

Submit copies of the input and output computer files in electronic format. Input files must be error free and ready to be run. The engineer who performed the load rating shall be responsible to incorporate any changes in the input files recommended by ODOT subsequent to its review.
Figure 921-1: BR100 - LOAD RATING SUMMARY FORM (Non-NBI Bridge)
Figure 921-2: BR100 - LOAD RATING SUMMARY FORM (NBI Bridge)
LOAD RATING USING AASHTO BrR PROGRAM

GENERAL

BrR is a load rating program licensed from AASHTO. BrR runs on Microsoft Windows and can load rate a variety of bridges by LFR as well as LRFR methods.

The BrR Vehicle library can be customized to include ODOT Legal Loads. Alternatively, ODOT’s BrR library can be requested from OSE or downloaded using the web address below.

ftp://ftp.dot.state.oh.us/pub/structures/bms/Web_download_files/ODOT_Custom_Files/

BrR LOAD RATING REPORT SUBMISSION

The load rating report shall be submitted to the Project Manager, the District Bridge Engineer or the non-ODOT bridge owner.

BrR COMPUTER INPUT AND OUTPUT FILES

Submit the error-free and working electronic copies of the input file exported as an “XML” file. To get the electronic copy of a bridge data file in BrR, open the “Bridge Workspace,” select File>Export from the main menu and save the export when prompted to do so by BrR.

LOAD ANALYSIS USING LARS PROGRAM

GENERAL

LARS (Load Analysis and Rating System) is a family of bridge load analysis and rating programs maintained and licensed by Bentley Systems.

LARS can run on any Microsoft Windows compatible machine.

LARS Vehicle library can be customized to include ODOT Legal Loads.

LARS LOAD RATING REPORT SUBMISSION

The load rating report shall be submitted to the Project Manager, the District Bridge Engineer or the non-ODOT bridge owner.

LARS COMPUTER INPUT AND OUTPUT FILES

Submit the error-free and working electronic copies of all the input and output files of LARS program.

LOAD ANALYSIS USING BRASS-CULVERT PROGRAM

GENERAL

Wyoming DOT BRASS-Culvert program can be used to analyze reinforced concrete three-sided flat-topped frames and four-sided box sections.

If haunch dimensions are not constant, use the smallest dimension in the analysis.

BRASS can run on any Microsoft Windows compatible machine.

The BRASS Vehicle library can be customized to include ODOT Legal Loads. An ODOT customized BRASS-Culvert Vehicle library is available on the ODOT FTP which can be downloaded and copied in the C:\BRASS\Culvert folder.
924.2 BRASS-CULVERT LOAD RATING REPORT SUBMISSION

The load rating report shall be submitted to the Project Manager, the District Bridge Engineer or the non-ODOT bridge owner.

924.3 BRASS COMPUTER INPUT AND OUTPUT FILES

Use the Structural File Number (SFN) of the bridge with prefix “R” to name and appropriate extension to name the input and output files. For example, if the SFN of a bridge is 4729854, the input and output file names should be “R4729854.dat” and “R4729854.cus” and “R4729854.xml”, etc.

925 LOAD RATING OF BRIDGES USING LRFR SPECIFICATIONS

925.1 APPLICABILITY OF AASHTO DESIGN SPECIFICATIONS

This Section is consistent with the current AASHTO LRFD Bridge Design Specifications. Where this Section is silent, the current AASHTO LRFD Bridge Design Specification shall govern.

925.2 GENERAL LOAD RATING EQUATION

The following general equation shall be used in determining the load rating of each component and connection subject to a single force effect (axial force, flexure or shear) [MBE 6A.4.2]:

\[
RF = \frac{C - (\gamma_{DC})(DC) - (\gamma_{DW})(DW) \pm (\gamma_P)(P) - (\gamma_{PL})(PL)}{(\gamma_{LL})(LL)(1 + IM/100)}
\]

For Strength Limit States:

\[
C = \varphi_c \cdot \varphi_s \cdot \varphi \cdot R_n
\]

Where the following lower limit shall apply:

\[
\varphi_c \cdot \varphi_s \geq 0.85
\]

For Service Limit States:

\[
C = f_R
\]

Where:

- **C** = Capacity
- **DC** = Dead load effect due to structural components and attachments
- **DW** = Dead load effect due to wearing surface and utilities
- **f_R** = Allowable stress specified in LRFD Code
- **IM** = Dynamic load allowance expressed as percentage (%)
- **LL** = Live Load effect
- **P** = Permanent loads other than dead loads, such earth pressure, shrinkage etc.
- **PL** = Pedestrian Load effect only to be applied when a sidewalk is present
- **RF** = Rating Factor
- **R_n** = Nominal member resistance
- **\(\gamma_{DC}\)** = Load factor for DC load
- **\(\gamma_{DW}\)** = Load factor for DW load
- **\(\gamma_P\)** = Load factor for P load = 1.0
- **\(\gamma_{PL}\)** = Evaluation live load factor
- **\(\gamma_{LL}\)** = Load factor for Sidewalk load = 1.0
\( \phi_c \) = Condition factor
\( \phi_s \) = System factor
\( \phi \) = LRFD Resistance factor

For Limit States and factors see BDM Section 925.3.

### 925.3 LIMIT STATES AND LOAD FACTORS FOR LOAD RATING

Strength is the primary limit state for load rating; Service and Fatigue limit states are selectively applied in accordance with the provisions of *AASHTO Manual of Bridge Evaluation [MBE 6A.4.2]*:

For Inventory and Operating Rating for AASHTO HL93 Loading, use the following limit states and load factors:

#### Table 925-1: LRFR Design Load Limit States and Load Factors [MBE 6A.4.2.2-1]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bridge Type</th>
<th>Limit State</th>
<th>Dead Load</th>
<th>Dead Load</th>
<th>HL93 Loading</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>( \gamma_{DC} )</td>
<td>( \gamma_{DW} )</td>
<td>Inventory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steel</td>
<td>Strength I</td>
<td>1.25</td>
<td>1.50</td>
<td>1.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Service II</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Fatigue</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>0.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reinforced</td>
<td>Strength I</td>
<td>1.25</td>
<td>1.50</td>
<td>1.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Concrete</td>
<td>Service III</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prestressed</td>
<td>Strength I</td>
<td>1.25</td>
<td>1.50</td>
<td>1.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Concrete</td>
<td>Service III</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>0.80*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wood</td>
<td>Strength I</td>
<td>1.25</td>
<td>1.50</td>
<td>1.75</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Use \( \gamma_{LL} = 1.0 \) when time-dependent losses are calculated per *LRFD Design Article 5.9.5.4*

For rating for Ohio Legal Loads, use the following limit states and load factors:

#### Table 925-2: Legal Loads Limit States and Load Factors [MBE 6A.4.4.2.3a-1]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bridge Type</th>
<th>Limit State</th>
<th>Dead Load</th>
<th>Dead Load</th>
<th>Ohio Legal Loads</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>( \gamma_{DC} )</td>
<td>( \gamma_{DW} )</td>
<td>( \gamma_{LL} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steel</td>
<td>Strength I</td>
<td>1.25</td>
<td>1.50</td>
<td>1.45*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Service II</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reinforced</td>
<td>Strength I</td>
<td>1.25</td>
<td>1.50</td>
<td>1.45*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Concrete</td>
<td>Service III</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prestressed</td>
<td>Strength I</td>
<td>1.25</td>
<td>1.50</td>
<td>1.45*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Concrete</td>
<td>Service III</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wood</td>
<td>Strength I</td>
<td>1.25</td>
<td>1.50</td>
<td>1.45*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*For EV2, use \( \gamma_{LL} = 1.30 \)
*For EV3, use \( \gamma_{LL} = 1.20 \) for mainline Interstate bridges; use \( \gamma_{LL} = 1.10 \) for all other bridges
For Rating for Special and Permit Loads, use the following limit states and load factors:

### Table 925-3: Permit Load Limit States and Load Factors [MBE 6A.4.5.4.2a-1]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bridge Type</th>
<th>Limit State</th>
<th>Dead Load $\gamma_{DC}$</th>
<th>Dead Load $\gamma_{DW}$</th>
<th>Permit or Special Loads* $\gamma_{LL}$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Steel</td>
<td>Strength II</td>
<td>1.25</td>
<td>1.50</td>
<td>1.40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Service II</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reinforced Concrete</td>
<td>Strength II</td>
<td>1.25</td>
<td>1.50</td>
<td>1.40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Service I</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prestressed Concrete</td>
<td>Strength II</td>
<td>1.25</td>
<td>1.50</td>
<td>1.40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Service I</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wood</td>
<td>Strength II</td>
<td>1.25</td>
<td>1.50</td>
<td>1.40</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*For unlimited crossings or multiple trips

#### 925.4 DYNAMIC LOAD ALLOWANCE (IM)

A. A dynamic load allowance of 33% shall be used for all non-buried bridges, except for fatigue evaluation.

B. For fatigue evaluation, a dynamic load allowance of 15% shall be used.

C. Dynamic load allowance shall only be applied to the truck or tandem portion of HL93 loading (dynamic load allowance shall not be provided to the lane portion).

D. Dynamic load allowance shall not be applied to wood components of a bridge.

E. Dynamic allowance may be ignored for slow moving (speed less than 10 mph), special or permit loads under controlled conditions.

F. For buried bridges, dynamic allowance (IM) shall be taken as:

$$ IM = 33 \left( 1.0 - 0.125 \text{ DE} \right) \geq 0\% \quad [\text{AASHTO 3.6.2.2-J}] $$

Where:

DE = the minimum depth of cover above the structure (ft.)

#### 925.5 CONDITION FACTOR ($\phi_c$)

A Condition Factor shall be applied to the calculated capacity of the structure, as follows:

### Table 925-4: Condition Factors [MBE 6A.4.2.3]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Structural Condition of a Member</th>
<th>NBI General Appraisal</th>
<th>Condition Factor $\phi_c$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Good or Satisfactory</td>
<td>6 or higher</td>
<td>1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fair</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>0.95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poor</td>
<td>4 or lower</td>
<td>0.85</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 925.6 SYSTEM FACTOR ($\phi_S$)

System factors are multiplied to the nominal resistance to reflect the level of redundancy of the complete superstructure [MBE 6A.4.2.4]. Bridges that are less redundant will have their factored member capacities reduced.
The following system factors may be used for Flexural and Axial Effects:

### Table 925-5: System Factors [MBE 6A.4.2.4]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Superstructure Type</th>
<th>( \varphi )</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Welded members in two-girder/truss/arch bridges</td>
<td>0.85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Riveted members in two-girder/truss/arch bridges</td>
<td>0.90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multiple eye bar members in truss bridges</td>
<td>0.90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Three-girder bridges with girder spacing 6-ft.</td>
<td>0.85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Four-girder bridges with girder spacing ( \leq 4 )-ft.</td>
<td>0.95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Floor beams with spacing ( &gt; 12.0 )-ft. and non-continuous stringers</td>
<td>0.85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Redundant stringer subsystems between floor-beams</td>
<td>1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All other girder and slab bridges</td>
<td>1.00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 925.7 RESISTANCE FACTOR (\( \varphi \))

Resistance factor (\( \varphi \)) for the load rating has the same value as for a new design as given in *AASHTO LRFD Specification*. Also, \( \varphi = 1.0 \) for all non-strength limit states [MBE C6A.4.2.1]. See appropriate section in the *LRFD Specification* for recommended values for resistance factors [LRFD 5.5.4.2, 6.5.4.2, 8.5.2, 12.5.5].

Some of the commonly used Resistance Factors are given here:

### Table 925-6: Resistance Factors

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>( \varphi )</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tension controlled reinforced concrete section</td>
<td>0.90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tension controlled prestressed concrete section</td>
<td>1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shear and torsion in normal weight concrete</td>
<td>0.90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flexure in steel</td>
<td>1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shear in steel</td>
<td>1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Axial Compression in steel only</td>
<td>0.95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Axial Compression in composite</td>
<td>0.90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shear connectors, steel</td>
<td>0.85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Web crippling, steel</td>
<td>0.80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>For block shear</td>
<td>0.80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>For shear rupture in connection element</td>
<td>0.80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>For weld metal in partial penetration and fillet weld</td>
<td>0.80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flexure in wood</td>
<td>0.85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shear in wood</td>
<td>0.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wood connections</td>
<td>0.65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RC cast-in-place buried box structures in flexure</td>
<td>0.90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RC cast-in-place buried box structures in shear</td>
<td>0.85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RC precast buried box structures in flexure</td>
<td>1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RC precast buried box structures in shear</td>
<td>0.90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RC precast buried 3-sided structures in flexure</td>
<td>0.95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RC precast buried 3-sided structures in shear</td>
<td>0.90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Structural steel pipe, minimum wall area and buckling</td>
<td>1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Structural steel pipe, minimum longitudinal seam strength</td>
<td>0.67</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 925.8 EFFECT OF SKEW

Effect of skew on the distribution of live loads shall be considered according to *AASHTO LRFD Specifications* (LRFD 4.6.2.2.2 and 4.6.2.2.3).
926 LOAD RATING OF NEW BRIDGES

926.1 LOADS TO BE USED FOR LOAD RATING

A. All new and replacement bridges, whose preliminary design was started after October 1, 2010 and requiring load rating, shall be load rated by the AASHTO LRFR method to comply with FHWA requirements. The load to be used for inventory and operating rating based on the LRFR method shall be AASHTO’s HL93 loading (truck and lane or tandem and lane), according to BDM Figure 931-1.

B. All bridges shall be load rated for all the legal loads, using LRFR method.

C. Future wearing surface dead loads shall be applied in load rating calculations unless directed otherwise.

D. Newly designed timber bridges shall be load rated using the LRFR method.

E. All legal loads used for analysis shall have transverse spacing, between centerline of wheels and wheel-groups of 6-ft.

F. For a bridge being designed, if the rating factor (RF) at inventory level (for design load) is less than 1.00, the design shall be revised to bring up the RF to 1.0 or higher. The minimum acceptable RF for AASHTO design load at inventory level is 1.000.

G. Long span bridges shall use the special load configurations given in BDM Section 918.

H. The inventory and operating ratings for the AASHTO HL93 loading shall be expressed in terms of rating factors, rounded to the nearest third decimal point.

I. The operating ratings for each of the Ohio Legal Loads shall also be expressed in terms of rating factors of respective legal load rounded to the nearest third decimal point. The Ohio Legal Loads Rating shall be the smallest rating factor of the four legal loads expressed as a percentage rounded off to the nearest 5 (i.e. smallest RF multiplied by 100).

J. The Bridge Owner may also require load rating to be done for special loads in addition to those specified above. The owner shall include full configurations of the special load used in the analysis, including, but not limited to, axle weights and spacing, number of tires on each axle, tire gauges and overall dimensions of the load. All special loads are to be analyzed by the LRFR method of analysis at the operating level as per BDM Section 917 unless specified otherwise by the Owner.

926.2 LOAD RATING OF NEW BURIED BRIDGES

926.2.1 GENERAL

A. All new pre-cast and cast-in-place bridge structures under the fill of two feet or more and supporting vehicular loads shall be load rated according to the provisions of this Section.

B. The ODOT Preferred load rating programs shall be used to load rate the structure.

C. For structures under 6.5-feet or more fill on top, see BDM Section 911.

926.2.2 HOW THE LOAD RATING SHALL BE DONE

A. All spans that are designed to carry vehicular traffic shall be load rated.

B. The load rating analysis shall be based on the final design plans. At the inventory level, the load rating shall be equal to or greater than the design loading.

C. All structural members shall have actual net section and current conditions incorporated into the member analysis.

D. All dead loads are to be calculated based on the final field conditions. Future dead loads shall be applied unless directed otherwise.

E. Unless more accurate soil data exists, calculate the rating based on a lateral pressure as specified in AASHTO.

F. Apply a live load surcharge as per AASHTO.

G. The effect of soil-structure interaction shall be taken into account as per AASHTO.
H. Assume hinged connections between the walls and the top and bottom slabs unless there is adequate reinforcing steel continuous between the slab and the walls at the joint. In that case, continuity between the slab and the walls can be assumed.

926.2.3 CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE BOX & FRAME STRUCTURES
A. Cast-in-place bridges shall be load rated by the designer of the bridge.
B. The AASHTO BrR or the BRASS-Culvert program shall be used to load rate the structure.

926.2.4 PRECAST CONCRETE STRUCTURES
926.2.4.1 PRECAST CONCRETE BOXES OF SPAN GREATER THAN 12-FT
A. The load rating analysis for precast concrete box culverts of spans up to 20 feet is provided in SS940.
B. The load rating analysis for precast concrete box culverts of spans greater than 20 feet shall be performed by the designer.

926.2.4.2 PRECAST BOXES OF SPAN EQUAL TO OR LESS THAN 12-FT
A. The manufacturer shall submit the actual information about the dimensions and reinforcing bars/cage to the OSE along with the Shop Drawings before the placement of structure.
B. The load rating analysis will be performed by the OSE using AASHTO BrR or the BRASS-Culvert program.

926.2.4.3 PRECAST FRAMES, ARCHES, AND CONSPANS & BEBO TYPE STRUCTURES
A. The load rating analysis will be performed by the manufacturer.
B. The load rating report shall be submitted along with the Shop Drawings before the placement of the precast units.
C. Use the design software to load rate the bridge.

926.3 LOAD RATING OF NON-BURIED STRUCTURES
926.3.1 GENERAL
A. All structures, including arch structures, frames, box sections, etc., having a fill or pavement thickness of less than 2-ft on top shall be load rated according to the provisions of this Section.
B. All main structural members of the superstructure affected by live load shall be analyzed.

926.3.2 HOW THE LOAD RATING SHALL BE DONE
A. The designer shall analyze and load rate all spans that are designed to carry vehicular traffic.
B. The load rating analysis shall be based on the final design plans. At the inventory level, the load rating shall be equal to or greater than the design loading.
C. All members shall have actual net section and current conditions incorporated into the member analysis.
D. Bridge members designed as non-composite with the deck slab should be analyzed as non-composite.
E. All dead loads are to be calculated based on the actual field conditions. Future dead loads shall not be applied unless directed otherwise.
F. The total thickness of the composite concrete slab shall be used in load rating for the calculations of section properties. Do not subtract for the monolithic wearing surface.
G. Live load distribution factors, as defined in the current AASHTO LRFD, shall be used.
926.3.3 WHEN THE BRIDGE LOAD RATING SHALL BE DONE

The load rating of new bridges shall be done as per the following sub-sections:

926.3.3.1 BRIDGES DESIGNED UNDER MAJOR OR MINOR PLAN DEVELOPMENT PROCESS

For bridges designed under the Major or Minor Plan Development Process (PDP), perform the load rating and include the load rating report in the Stage 2 Detail Design Submission. When design modifications that affect the previously submitted load rating analysis occur after Stage 2 and prior to contract sale, revise and resubmit the load rating report to the District Project Manager. The District Project Manager will forward the final load rating report to the District Bridge Engineer.

926.3.3.2 BRIDGES DESIGNED UNDER MINIMAL PLAN DEVELOPMENT PROCESS

For bridges designed under the Minimal Plan Development Process (PDP), perform the load rating and include the load rating report in the Stage 3 Detail Design Submission. When design modifications that affect the previously submitted load rating analysis occur after Stage 3 and prior to contract sale, revise and resubmit the load rating report to the District Project Manager. The District Project Manager will forward the final load rating report to the District Bridge Engineer.

926.3.3.3 BRIDGES DESIGNED UNDER DESIGN-BUILD PROCESS

Unless otherwise indicated in the project scope, include the load rating report for bridges designed as part of a Design Build project with the Stage 2 Detail Design Submission. When design modifications that affect the previously submitted load rating analysis occur after Stage 2, revise and resubmit the load rating report to the District Project Manager. The District Project Manager will forward the final load rating report to the District Bridge Engineer.

926.3.4 BRIDGES DESIGNED UNDER VALUE ENGINEERING CHANGE PROPOSAL

For bridges re-designed under a Value Engineering Change Proposal (VECP), perform a load rating of the altered bridge design and submit the load rating report to the District Construction Engineer (DCE) with the Final VECP submission. The DCE will supply this information to the District Bridge Engineer.

927 LOAD RATING OF EXISTING BRIDGES

927.1 LOADS TO BE USED FOR LOAD RATING

A. Existing bridges shall be load rated at inventory and operating rating by either LFR or LRFR method with the prior approval of the bridge owner. When the LFR method is used, the load for inventory and operating rating shall be AASHTO HS20. When the LRFR method is used, the load for inventory and operating rating shall be AASHTO HL93. The default load rating method shall be LRFR starting June 13, 2019.

B. Existing bridges shall also be load rated for all the legal loads at the operating level. Use the same method (LFR or LRFR) consistent with the A above.

C. Existing timber bridges may be load rated using the ASR method.

D. All legal loads used for analysis shall have transverse spacing, between centerline of wheels or wheel-groups, of 6-ft.

E. For long span bridges, as defined in BDM Section 905, use the special load configurations given in BDM Section 918.

F. The inventory and operating ratings for the AASHTO HL93 or HS20 loading shall be expressed in terms of rating factors, rounded to the nearest three decimal points.

G. The operating ratings for each of the Ohio Legal Loads shall also be expressed in terms of rating factors of the respective legal loads, rounded to the nearest three decimal points. The Ohio Legal Loads Rating shall be the smallest rating factor of the four legal loads expressed as a percentage rounded to the nearest 5 (i.e. smallest RF multiplied by 100).
H. The Bridge Owner may also require load rating to be done for special loads in addition to those specified above. The Owner shall include full configurations of the special load used in the analysis, including but not limited to, axle weights and spacing, number of tires on each axle, tire gauges and overall dimensions of the load. All special loads are to be analyzed by the LRFR method of analysis at the operating level as per BDM Section 917 unless specified otherwise by the Owner.

927.2 LOAD RATING OF BRIDGES TO BE REHABILITATED

927.2.1 HOW THE LOAD RATING SHALL BE DONE

A. The designer shall analyze and load rate all spans that are designed to carry vehicular traffic.
B. The load rating analysis shall be based on the final design or as-built plans.
C. Future wearing surface dead loads shall be applied in load rating calculations unless directed otherwise.
D. All members shall have actual net section and current conditions incorporated into the member’s analysis. Any known section losses, defects or damage to the existing structural members shall be considered in the rating analysis.
E. Bridge members designed as non-composite with the deck slab should be analyzed as non-composite.
F. Structures to be rehabilitated shall be analyzed using the original design plans, the actual field conditions, and all major changes in the final rehabilitation plans.
G. A complete review of all the available inspection information, as well as a thorough site inspection of the existing bridge, must be performed to establish the current conditions prior to proceeding with the analysis.
H. The total thickness of the composite concrete slab shall be used in load rating for the calculations of section properties. Do not subtract for the monolithic wearing surface.
I. Live load distribution factors, in accordance with the governing AASHTO specifications, shall be used.
J. For existing bridges, the rater should review the original design plans as the first source of information for material strengths and stresses. If the material strengths are not explicitly stated on the design plans, ODOT Construction and Material Specifications (C&MS) applicable at the time of the bridge construction shall be reviewed. This may require investigations into old ASTM or AASHTO Material Specifications active at the time of construction.
K. Ultimate or yield strengths of materials shall be as specified on the original design plans unless it is required in the Scope of Services to conduct specific tests to determine the material strengths.
L. General information about Allowable Stresses in bending and shear and material strengths based on the year of construction provided in BDM Table 927-1 and BDM Table 927-2. Any material stresses and strengths specified on the design plans shall supersede the values given in BDM Table 927-1, BDM Table 927-2 and BDM Table 927-3.
M. The rater is cautioned to pay extra attention to the design plans and the year of construction when determining material strengths for structures built during the transition years of BDM Table 927-1, BDM Table 927-2 and BDM Table 927-3 (e.g. for member type SS, years 1964-68, or 1988-93, etc.), as materials of the newer (or older) specifications may have been substituted.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Material of Construction</th>
<th>Type of Rating</th>
<th>Year of Construction</th>
<th>Fy / Fe' (ksi)</th>
<th>Fy / Fe' (MPa)</th>
<th>Inventory (ksi)</th>
<th>Inventory (MPa)</th>
<th>Operating (ksi)</th>
<th>Operating (MPa)</th>
<th>Posting (ksi)</th>
<th>Posting (MPa)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Structural Steel (SS), (CSC)</td>
<td>&lt; 1900</td>
<td>26.00</td>
<td>179</td>
<td>14.00</td>
<td>97</td>
<td>19.00</td>
<td>131</td>
<td>19.00</td>
<td>131</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1901 To 1930</td>
<td>30.00</td>
<td>207</td>
<td>16.00</td>
<td>110</td>
<td>22.00</td>
<td>152</td>
<td>22.00</td>
<td>152</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1931 To 1965</td>
<td>33.00</td>
<td>228</td>
<td>18.00</td>
<td>124</td>
<td>25.00</td>
<td>172</td>
<td>25.00</td>
<td>172</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1966 To 1990</td>
<td>36.00</td>
<td>248</td>
<td>20.00</td>
<td>138</td>
<td>27.00</td>
<td>186</td>
<td>27.00</td>
<td>186</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1991 To Date</td>
<td>50.00</td>
<td>345</td>
<td>27.00</td>
<td>186</td>
<td>37.50</td>
<td>259</td>
<td>37.50</td>
<td>259</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reinforcing Steel (RC)</td>
<td>&lt; 1935</td>
<td>32.00</td>
<td>221</td>
<td>16.00</td>
<td>110</td>
<td>24.00</td>
<td>165</td>
<td>24.00</td>
<td>165</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1936 To 1950</td>
<td>36.00</td>
<td>248</td>
<td>18.00</td>
<td>124</td>
<td>27.00</td>
<td>186</td>
<td>27.00</td>
<td>186</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1951 To 1983</td>
<td>40.00</td>
<td>276</td>
<td>20.00</td>
<td>138</td>
<td>30.00</td>
<td>207</td>
<td>30.00</td>
<td>207</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1984 To Date</td>
<td>60.00</td>
<td>414</td>
<td>24.00</td>
<td>165</td>
<td>36.00</td>
<td>248</td>
<td>36.00</td>
<td>248</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prestress. Strands (F's') (CPS), (PSC)</td>
<td>All Years</td>
<td>270.0</td>
<td>1862</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cast-in-Place Reinf. Conc. (Compression in Bending) (RC), (CSC)</td>
<td>&lt; 1930</td>
<td>2.00</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>0.70</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>1.30</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>1.30</td>
<td>9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1931 To 1950</td>
<td>3.00</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>1.50</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>1.50</td>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1951 To 1980</td>
<td>4.00</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>1.30</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>2.00</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>2.00</td>
<td>14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1981 To Date</td>
<td>4.50</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>1.50</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>2.20</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>2.20</td>
<td>15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prestressed Concrete (Fc)' (PSC), (CPS)</td>
<td>All Years</td>
<td>5.50</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cast-in-Place Comp. Slab for Prestress. Conc. (Fc)' (CPS)</td>
<td>All Years</td>
<td>4.00</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Timber (fb) (TMB)</td>
<td>All Years</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>2.128</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>2.128</td>
<td>15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cast-in-Place Slab for Composite Reinforced Concrete</td>
<td>&lt; 1930</td>
<td>2.00</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>0.70</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>1.30</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>1.30</td>
<td>9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1931 To 1950</td>
<td>3.00</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>1.50</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>1.50</td>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1951 To 1980</td>
<td>4.00</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>1.30</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>2.00</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>2.00</td>
<td>14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1981 To Date</td>
<td>4.50</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>1.50</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>2.20</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>2.20</td>
<td>15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 927-2: Custom Allowable Stresses in Shear

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Material of Construction</th>
<th>Year of Construction</th>
<th>Fy / Fe' (ksi)</th>
<th>Inventory (ksi)</th>
<th>Fy / Fe' (MPa)</th>
<th>Inventory (MPa)</th>
<th>Operating (ksi)</th>
<th>Operating (MPa)</th>
<th>Posting (ksi)</th>
<th>Posting (MPa)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Structural Steel (SS),(CSC)</td>
<td>&lt; 1900</td>
<td>26.00</td>
<td>179</td>
<td>8.50</td>
<td>59</td>
<td>11.50</td>
<td>79</td>
<td>11.50</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1901 To 1930</td>
<td>30.00</td>
<td>207</td>
<td>9.50</td>
<td>66</td>
<td>13.50</td>
<td>93</td>
<td>13.50</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1931 To 1965</td>
<td>33.00</td>
<td>228</td>
<td>11.00</td>
<td>76</td>
<td>15.00</td>
<td>103</td>
<td>15.00</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1966 To 1990</td>
<td>36.00</td>
<td>248</td>
<td>12.00</td>
<td>83</td>
<td>16.00</td>
<td>110</td>
<td>16.00</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1991 To Date</td>
<td>50.00</td>
<td>345</td>
<td>17.00</td>
<td>117</td>
<td>22.50</td>
<td>155</td>
<td>22.50</td>
<td>155</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reinforcing Steel (RC)</td>
<td>&lt; 1935</td>
<td>32.00</td>
<td>221</td>
<td>16.00</td>
<td>110</td>
<td>24.00</td>
<td>165</td>
<td>24.00</td>
<td>165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1936 To 1950</td>
<td>36.00</td>
<td>248</td>
<td>18.00</td>
<td>124</td>
<td>27.00</td>
<td>186</td>
<td>27.00</td>
<td>186</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1951 To 1983</td>
<td>40.00</td>
<td>276</td>
<td>20.00</td>
<td>138</td>
<td>30.00</td>
<td>207</td>
<td>30.00</td>
<td>207</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1984 To Date</td>
<td>60.00</td>
<td>414</td>
<td>24.00</td>
<td>165</td>
<td>36.00</td>
<td>248</td>
<td>36.00</td>
<td>248</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cast-in-Place Reinforced Conc. (RC),(CSC)</td>
<td>&lt; 1930</td>
<td>2.00</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>0.70</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>1.30</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>1.30</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1931 To 1950</td>
<td>3.00</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>1.50</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>1.50</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1951 To 1980</td>
<td>4.00</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>1.30</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>2.00</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>2.00</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1981 To Date</td>
<td>4.50</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>1.50</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>2.20</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>2.20</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prestressed Concrete (Fe') (PSC),(CPS)</td>
<td>All Years</td>
<td>5.50</td>
<td>38</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Timber (Horizontal Shear Stress) (fb) (TMB)</td>
<td>All Years</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>0.09</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.12</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.12</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 927-3: Custom Allowable Stresses for Fasteners

| Material            | Constructed | LRFR \( \Phi_F \)  | ASD |  | 
|---------------------|-------------|---------------------|-----|---|---|---|---|---|
|                     |             | Inventory          |     | Operating |     | Posting |     |
| Riveted             | <1939       | 18.0 ksi           | 9.5 | 12.5 ksi    | 12.5 ksi |
|                     | 1936 to 1950| 21.0 ksi           | 11.0| 15.0 ksi    | 15.0 ksi |
|                     | 1950 to Date| 25.0 ksi           | 13.5| 18.0 ksi    | 18.0 ksi |
| Bolted – Bearing    | < 1965      | 17.0 ksi           | 11.0| 15.0 ksi    | 15.0 ksi |
|                     | 1965 to Date| 36.5 ksi *         | NA  | NA          |     |
|                     | < 1965      | 32.0 ksi **        | NA  | NA          |     |
| Bolted – Slip Critical| 1965 to Date| 17.0 ksi *         | 15.0| 20.0 ksi *  |     |

* Diameter ≤ 1”.

** Diameter > 1”.

#### 927.2.2 WHEN THE BRIDGE LOAD RATING SHALL BE DONE

The load rating of bridges to be rehabilitated shall be done as per following:
927.2.2.1 BRIDGES DESIGNED UNDER MAJOR OR MINOR PLAN DEVELOPMENT PROCESS

For bridges designed under the Major or Minor Plan Development Process (PDP), perform the load rating and include the load rating report in the Stage 2 Detail Design Submission. When design modifications that affect the previously submitted load rating analysis occur after Stage 2 and prior to contract sale, revise and resubmit the load rating report to the District Project Manager. The District Project Manager will forward the final load rating report to the District Bridge Engineer.

927.2.2.2 BRIDGES DESIGNED UNDER MINIMAL PLAN DEVELOPMENT PROCESS

For bridges designed under the Minimal Plan Development Process (PDP), perform the load rating and include the load rating report in the Stage 3 Detail Design Submission. When design modifications that affect the previously submitted load rating analysis occur after Stage 3 and prior to contract sale, revise and resubmit the load rating report to the District Project Manager. The District Project Manager will forward the final load rating report to the District Bridge Engineer.

927.2.2.3 BRIDGES DESIGNED UNDER DESIGN-BUILD PROCESS

Unless otherwise indicated in the project scope, include the load rating report for bridges designed as part of a Design Build project with the Stage 2 Detail Design Submission. When design modifications that affect the previously submitted load rating analysis occur after Stage 2, revise and resubmit the load rating report to the District Project Manager. The District Project Manager will forward the final load rating report to the District Bridge Engineer.

927.2.2.4 BRIDGES DESIGNED UNDER VALUE ENGINEERING CHANGE PROPOSAL

For bridges re-designed under a Value Engineering Change Proposal (VECP), perform a load rating of the altered bridge design and submit the load rating report to the District Construction Engineer (DCE) with the Final VECP submission. The DCE will supply this information to the District Bridge Engineer.

927.2.3 LOAD RATING OF EXISTING BURIED BRIDGES

927.2.3.1 CAST-IN-PLACE STRUCTURES

A. Cast-in-place bridges shall be load rated by the designer of the bridge.
B. The AASHTO BrR or the BRASS-Culvert program shall be used to load rate the structure. For information on the BRASS-Culvert Analysis, also see BDM Section 924.

927.2.3.2 PRECAST BOXES OF SPAN GREATER THAN 12-FT

A. The load rating analysis will be performed by the OSE.
B. The AASHTO BrR or the BRASS-Culvert program shall be used to load rate the structure. For information on the BRASS-Culvert Analysis, see BDM Section 924.

927.2.3.3 PRECAST BOXES OF SPAN EQUAL TO OR LESS THAN 12-FT

The load rating analysis will be performed by the OSE using AASHTO BrR or the BRASS-Culvert program.

927.2.3.4 PRECAST FRAMES, ARCHES, AND CONSPANS & BEBO TYPE STRUCTURES

A. The load rating analysis for any new or replacement precast sections will be performed by the manufacturer; otherwise, the load rating analysis will be performed as per the Scope of Services.
B. The load rating report shall be submitted along with the Shop Drawings before the placement of the units.
C. The design software shall be used to load rate the bridge.
927.2.3.5 ANALYSIS OF CONCRETE BOX SECTIONS & FRAMES

Unless more accurate soil data exits, calculate the rating based on a lateral pressure as specified in AASHTO.

Apply a live load surcharge according to AASHTO.

The effect of soil-structure interaction shall be taken into account according to AASHTO.

Assume hinged connections between the walls and the top and bottom slabs unless there is adequate reinforcing steel continuous between the slab and the walls at the joint. In that case, continuity between the slab and the walls can be assumed.

927.2.4 LOAD RATING OF EXISTING NON-BURIED STRUCTURES

All structures, including flat slabs, arch structures, frames, box sections, etc., having a fill or pavement material of less than 2-ft on top shall be load rated according to the provisions of BDM Sections 912 through 925 (as applicable).

927.3 LOAD RATING OF EXISTING BRIDGES WITH NO REPAIR PLANS

927.3.1 HOW THE LOAD RATING SHALL BE DONE

A. The rater shall analyze and load rate all spans that are designed to carry vehicular traffic.

B. Existing structures shall be analyzed using the information from the original design plans and the actual field conditions.

C. A complete review of all the available inspection information, as well as a thorough site inspection of the existing bridge, must be performed to establish the current conditions prior to proceeding with the analysis.

D. The bridges rated using design plans shall be noted as such in the load rating report.

E. Allowable stresses for the working stress and the ultimate or yield strengths of materials for Load Factor ratings shall be as specified on the original design plans unless it is required in the scope of services to conduct specific tests to determine the material strengths.

F. For existing bridges, the rater should review the original design plans as the first source of information for material strengths and stresses. If the material strengths are not explicitly stated on the design plans, ODOT Construction and Material Specifications (C&MS) applicable at the time of the bridge construction shall be reviewed. This may require investigations into old ASTM or AASHTO Material Specifications active at the time of construction.

G. The total thickness of the composite concrete slab shall be used in load rating for the calculations of section properties. Do not subtract for the monolithic wearing surface.

H. General information about ODOT Allowable Stresses in bending and shear and material strengths based on the year of construction is provided in BDM Table 927-1 and BDM Table 927-2.

I. The rater is cautioned to pay extra attention to the design plans and the year of construction, when determining material strengths for bridges built during transition years of BDM Table 927-1 and BDM Table 927-2 (e.g., for member type SS, years 1964-68, or 1988-93, etc.), as materials of the newer (or older) specification may have been substituted.

J. Any material stresses and specifications specified on the design plans shall supersede the values given in BDM Table 927-1 and BDM Table 927-2.

927.3.2 WHEN THE BRIDGE LOAD RATING SHALL BE DONE

The load rating of existing bridges shall be done as per the Scope of Services.

927.3.3 LOAD RATING OF EXISTING BURIED BRIDGES

A. The load rating analysis will be performed as per the Scope of Services.

B. Unless specified otherwise, structures shall be load rated for the Loads as per BDM Section 927.2.3.
927.3.4 LOAD RATING OF EXISTING NON-BURIED STRUCTURES

All structures, including flat slabs, arch structures, frames, box sections, etc., having a fill or pavement material of less than 2-ft on top of the structures shall be load rated according to the provisions of BDM Sections 911 through 925 (as applicable).

928 LOAD RATING OF NON-ODOT BRIDGES

A. Provisions of BDM Section 900 may also be applied to load rating of Non-ODOT buried and non-buried bridges at the discretion of the respective bridge owners.

B. The load rating files and reports of a Non-ODOT bridge shall be submitted to the respective bridge owners. The bridge owner shall keep the bridge load rating report in the bridge file for future reference and use.

C. Based on the field conditions and the load rating calculations, if the rating engineer determines a bridge should be posted for reduced load capacity, the engineer shall forward the recommendation to the respective bridge owner. Applicable portions of BDM Section 918, Bridge Posting for Reduced Load Limits may be followed.

D. It is the responsibility of the respective bridge owner (or designated consultant/rating engineer) to ensure that the load rating information is finally updated in the ODOT SMS.

929 CULVERT TYPE BRIDGES DESIGNED USING ASTM C1577 (LRFD), C1433 (LFD), C789 (LFD) AND C850 (LFD)

When all of the following conditions apply:

A. A structure is designed and manufactured by an AASHTO method using any of the above referred ASTM Specifications;

B. The ASTM Specifications are referenced via pay item in the design plans and the structure was built in accordance with the ASTM Specifications;

C. No changes to loading conditions or the structure conditions have occurred that could reduce the load rating below the design load level;

D. In case of an existing structure, a field evaluation has been completed and the structure has not developed excessive cracks, deflections or signs of deterioration;

E. The design plans and the relevant ASTM Specification are accessible and referenced or included in the individual bridge records to form a basis for assigned load rating under FHWA 23 CFR 650.309(c);

F. The main structural members of the bridge have not been damaged or repaired since the structure was originally built;

G. During the last inspection, the General Appraisal (GA) was not less than 5 and the bridge was neither posted nor closed.

Appropriate load rating factors may be assigned to the structure, as follows:

- Inventory Rating Factor for HL93 loading = 1.00
- Operating Rating Factor for HL93 loading = 1.30
- Ohio Legal Loads Rating Factor = 1.50 (150%)
- Method of Rating = Assigned Load & Resistance Factor Rating (LRFR) using HL93 loadings

OR

- Inventory Rating Factor for HS20 loading = 1.00
- Operating Rating Factor for HS20 loading = 1.30
- Ohio Legal Loads Rating Factor = 1.50 (150%)
- Method of Rating = Assigned Load Factor Rating (LFR) using HS20 loadings
A load rating summary of the assigned load rating (using BR100 Form, given as BDM Figure 921-1) demonstrating above conditions are met, is to be included in the bridge records. An Ohio PE shall sign, seal and date the Load Rating Summary Sheet.

If any of the above conditions (A through G) cannot be met for a bridge at any point during its service life, load ratings cannot be assigned and must be determined by the methods defined elsewhere in the BDM Section 900.

930 REFERENCES

A. AASHTO, LRFD Bridge Design Specifications, most current Edition and all subsequent Interims
B. AASHTO, the Manual for Bridge Evaluation, Third Edition and all subsequent Interims
C. AASHTO, Standard Specifications for Highway Bridges, 17th Edition
D. AASHTO, Guide Specifications for Fatigue Evaluation of Existing Steel Bridges, most current Edition and all subsequent Interims
E. AASHTO, Guide Specifications for Strength Evaluation of Existing Steel and Concrete Bridges
F. AASHTO, Manual for Maintenance Inspection of Bridges
G. AASHTO, Guide Specifications for Fracture Critical Non-Redundant Steel Bridge Members, most current Edition and all subsequent Interims
H. AASHTO Bridge Rating and AASHTO Bridge Design Software, developed by Baker Corp, Moon Township, Pittsburgh
I. WYDOT, BRASS-Culvert software developed by the Wyoming Department of Transportation
J. Duncan, J.M., 1979, “Design Studies For Aluminum Structural Plate Box Culverts,” Kaiser Aluminum and Chemical Sales, Inc.
L. NCSPA, “Load Rating & Structural Evaluation of In-Service Corrugated Steel Structures,” & Design Data Sheet No. 19, National Corrugated Steel Pipe Association (NCSPA, 202-452-1700)
Figure 931-1: Inventory and Operating Load Rating Flow Chart
(See Figure 931-2 for Load Rating Analysis Flow Chart)
Figure 931-2: Ohio Legal and Posting Load Rating Flow Chart
SECTION 1000 - ODOT SUPPLEMENT TO THE LRFD BRIDGE DESIGN SPECIFICATIONS

1001 LRFD SECTION 1 - INTRODUCTION

1001.1 S1.3.3 DUCTILITY

1001.2 S1.3.4 REDUNDANCY

1001.3 S1.3.5 OPERATIONAL IMPORTANCE

1002 LRFD SECTION 2 – GENERAL DESIGN AND LOCATION FEATURES

1002.1 S2.3.2.2 PROTECTION OF USERS

1002.2 S2.3.3.2 HIGHWAY VERTICAL

1002.3 S2.5.2.3 MAINTAINABILITY

1002.4 S2.5.2.4 RIDEABILITY

1002.5 S2.5.2.6 CRITERIA FOR DEFLECTION

1002.6 S2.5.2.6.3 OPTIONAL CRITERIA FOR SPAN-TO-DEPTH RATIOS

1002.7 S2.6.6.3 TYPE, SIZE AND NUMBER OF DRAINS

1002.8 S2.6.6.4 DISCHARGE FROM DECK DRAINS

1003 LRFD SECTION 3 – LOADS AND LOAD FACTORS

1003.1 S3.4.1 LOAD FACTORS AND LOAD COMBINATIONS

1003.2 S3.5.1 DEAD LOADS: DC, DW, AND EV

1003.3 S3.6.1.3.1 GENERAL

1003.4 S3.6.1.3.2 LOADING FOR OPTIONAL LIVE LOAD DEFLECTION EVALUATION

1003.5 S3.6.1.3.3 DESIGN LOADS FOR DECKS, DECK SYSTEMS, AND THE TOP SLABS OF BOX CULVERTS

1003.6 S3.6.1.3.4 DECK OVERHANG LOAD

1003.7 S3.6.1.4.2 FREQUENCY

1003.8 S3.6.1.6 PEDESTRIAN LOADS

1003.9 S3.6.2.1 GENERAL

1003.10 S3.6.5.1 PROTECTION OF STRUCTURES

1003.11 S3.10.2.1 GENERAL PROCEDURE

1003.12 S3.10.2.2 SITE SPECIFIC PROCEDURE

1003.13 S3.10.3.1 SITE CLASS DEFINITIONS

1003.14 S3.10.3.2 SITE FACTORS

1003.15 S3.10.6 SEISMIC PERFORMANCE ZONES

1003.16 S3.10.9.2 SEISMIC ZONE 1

1003.17 S3.10.9.5 LONGITUDINAL RESTRainers

1003.18 S3.11.2 COMPACTION

1003.19 S3.11.6.5 REDUCTION OF SURCHARGE

1003.20 S3.11.8 DOWNDRAg

1003.21 S3.12.2 UNIFORM TEMPERATURE

1004 LRFD SECTION 4 – STRUCTURAL ANALYSIS AND EVALUATION

1004.1 S4.4 ACCEPTABLE METHODS OF STRUCTURAL ANALYSIS

1004.2 S4.5.1 GENERAL

1004.3 S4.6.2.2.1 APPLICATION

1004.4 S4.6.2.5 EFFECTIVE LENGTH FACTOR, K

1004.5 S4.6.3 REFINED METHODS OF ANALYSIS

1004.6 S4.6.4.3 APPROXIMATE PROCEDURE

1004.7 S4.7.4.1 GENERAL

1004.8 S4.7.4.4 MINIMUM SUPPORT LENGTH REQUIREMENTS

1005 LRFD SECTION 5 – CONCRETE STRUCTURES

1005.1 S5.4.2.3.3 SHRINKAGE

1005.2 S5.4.3.3 SPECIAL APPLICATIONS

1005.3 S5.4.4.2 MODULUS OF ELASTICITY

1005.4 S5.5.3.1 GENERAL

1005.5 S5.6.3.4 MOMENT REDISTRIBUTION

1005.6 S5.6.4.6 SPIRALS AND TIES

1005.7 S5.6.7 CONTROL OF CRACKING BY DISTRIBUTION OF REINFORCEMENT

1005.8 S5.7.4.4 COHESION AND FRICTION

1005.9 S5.9.2.3.2 TENSION STRESSES
1005.10  S5.9.3.4 REFINED ESTIMATES OF TIME-DEPENDENT LOSSES................................. 10-9
1005.11  S5.9.4.1 PRETENSIONING STRAND................................................................. 10-10
1005.12  S5.9.4.3.3 PARTIALLY DEBONED STRANDS.................................................. 10-10
1005.13  S5.10.1 CONCRETE COVER.......................................................................... 10-10
1005.14  S5.10.2.2 SEISMIC HOOKS............................................................................. 10-10
1005.15  S5.10.3.1.1 CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE.................................................... 10-10
1005.16  S5.10.3.1.2 PRECAST CONCRETE................................................................. 10-10
1005.17  S5.10.4.3 TIES................................................................................................. 10-10
1005.18  S5.12.4 DIAPHRAGMS.................................................................................... 10-10
1005.19  S5.12.9.5.2 REINFORCING STEEL................................................................. 10-10
1006  LRFD SECTION 6 – STEEL STRUCTURES......................................................... 10-11
1006.1  S6.4.1 STRUCTURAL STEELS.......................................................................... 10-11
1006.2  S6.4.3.1 BOLTS................................................................................................. 10-11
1006.3  S6.6.1.2.3 DETAIL CATEGORIES................................................................. 10-11
1006.4  S6.6.1.2.5 FATIGUE RESISTANCE................................................................. 10-11
1006.5  S6.6.2 FRACTURE.......................................................................................... 10-11
1006.6  S6.7.2 DEAD LOAD CAMBER....................................................................... 10-11
1006.7  S6.10.1.1.1b STRESSES FOR SECTIONS IN POSITIVE FLEXURE........... 10-11
1006.8  S6.10.1.7 MINIMUM NEGATIVE FLEXURE CONCRETE DECK REINFORCEMENT 10-11
1006.9  S6.10.3.4 CONCRETE PLACEMENT............................................................. 10-11
1006.10  S6.10.7.3 DUCTILITY REQUIREMENT......................................................... 10-11
1006.11  S6.10.10.1 GENERAL.................................................................................. 10-11
1006.12  S6.10.10.1.1 TYPES...................................................................................... 10-11
1006.13  S6.10.10.1.4 COVER AND PENETRATION.................................................. 10-12
1006.14  S6.10.11.1.1 GENERAL................................................................................. 10-12
1006.15  S6.10.11.3 LONGITUDINAL STIFFENERS..................................................... 10-12
1006.16  S6.13.2.4.1 TYPE......................................................................................... 10-12
1006.17  S6.13.2.6.6 EDGE DISTANCES.................................................................... 10-12
1006.18  S6.13.2.8 SLIP RESISTANCE......................................................................... 10-12
1006.19  S6.13.6.1.4a GENERAL.................................................................................. 10-12
1007  LRFD SECTION 7 – ALUMINUM STRUCTURES............................................... 10-12
1008  LRFD SECTION 8 – WOOD STRUCTURES......................................................... 10-12
1009  LRFD SECTION 9 – DECKS AND DECK SYSTEMS............................................ 10-12
1009.1  S9.4.1 INTERFACE ACTION......................................................................... 10-12
1009.2  S9.5.1 GENERAL.......................................................................................... 10-12
1009.3  S9.6.1 METHODS OF ANALYSIS................................................................. 10-12
1009.4  S9.7.1.1 MINIMUM DEPTH AND COVER.................................................. 10-13
1009.5  S9.7.1.3 SKEWED DECKS............................................................................. 10-13
1009.6  S9.7.2 EMPIRICAL DESIGN.......................................................................... 10-13
1009.7  S9.7.4 STAY-IN-PLACE FORMWORK......................................................... 10-13
1009.8  S9.7.5.1 GENERAL...................................................................................... 10-13
1010  LRFD SECTION 10 – FOUNDATIONS............................................................... 10-13
1010.1  S10.4.2 SUBSURFACE EXPLORATION........................................................... 10-13
1010.2  S10.5.5.2.3 DRIVEN PILES............................................................................ 10-13
1010.3  S10.5.5.2.4 DRILLED SHAFTS...................................................................... 10-13
1010.4  S10.5.5.3.2 SCOUR........................................................................................ 10-13
1010.5  S10.6.1.2 BEARING DEPTH.......................................................................... 10-14
1010.6  S10.7.1.2 MINIMUM PILE SPACING, CLEARANCE, AND EMBEDMENT INTO CAP 10-14
1010.7  S10.7.1.3 PILES THROUGH EMBANKMENT FILL........................................ 10-14
1010.8  S10.7.1.4 BATTER PILES.............................................................................. 10-14
1010.9  S10.7.2.4 HORIZONTAL PILE FOUNDATION MOVEMENT........................ 10-14
1010.10 S10.7.3.2.3 PILES DRIVEN TO HARD ROCK............................................... 10-14
1010.11 S10.7.3.3 PILE LENGTH ESTIMATES FOR CONTRACT DOCUMENTS........ 10-14
1010.12 S10.7.3.6 SCOUR.......................................................................................... 10-14
1010.13 S10.7.3.7 DOWNDRAG.................................................................................. 10-14
1010.14 S10.7.3.8.2 STATIC LOAD TEST.................................................................... 10-14

10-ii
1010.15 S10.7.9 TEST PILES
1010.16 S10.8.1 GENERAL
1010.17 S10.8.1.2 SHAFT SPACING, CLEARANCE, AND EMBEDMENT INTO CAP
1010.18 S10.8.1.4 BATTERED SHAFTS
1011 LRFD SECTION 11 – ABUTMENTS, PIERS, AND WALLS
1011.1 S11.5.1 GENERAL
1011.2 S11.6.1.3 INTEGRAL ABUTMENTS
1011.3 S11.6.1.6 EXPANSION AND CONTRACTION JOINTS
1011.4 S11.7.2.2 COLLISION WALLS
1011.5 S11.10 MECHANICALLY STABILIZED EARTH WALLS
1011.6 S11.10.2.1 MINIMUM LENGTH OF SOIL REINFORCEMENT
1011.7 S11.10.2.2 MINIMUM FRONT FACE EMBEDMENT
1011.8 S11.10.8 DRAINAGE
1011.9 S11.10.11 MSE ABUTMENTS
1012 LRFD SECTION 12 – BURIED STRUCTURES AND TUNNEL LINERS
1013 LRFD SECTION 13 – RAILINGS
1013.1 S13.4 GENERAL
1013.2 S13.7.2 TEST LEVEL SELECTION CRITERIA
1013.3 S13.8.1 GEOMETRY
1013.4 SA13.4.1 DESIGN CASES
1013.5 SA13.4.2 DECKS SUPPORTING CONCRETE PARAPET RAILINGS
1013.6 SA13.4.3.1 OVERHANG DESIGN
1014 LRFD SECTION 14 – JOINTS AND BEARINGS
1014.1 S14.4.1 GENERAL
1014.2 S14.5.6 CONSIDERATIONS FOR SPECIFIC JOINT TYPES
1014.3 S14.6 REQUIREMENTS FOR BEARINGS
1014.4 S14.6.3.1 HORIZONTAL FORCE AND MOVEMENT
1014.5 S14.6.3.2 MOMENT
1014.6 S14.6.5.2 APPLICABILITY
1014.7 S14.6.5.3 DESIGN CRITERIA
1014.8 S14.7.5 STEEL-REINFORCED ELASTOMERIC BEARINGS – METHOD B
1014.9 S14.7.5.3.2 COMpressive STRESS
1014.10 S14.7.5.3.4 SHEAR DEFORMATION
1014.11 S14.7.5.3.7 SEISMIC AND OTHER EXTREME EVENT PROVISIONS
1014.12 S14.9 CORROSION PROTECTION
SECTION 1000 - ODOT SUPPLEMENT TO THE LRFD BRIDGE DESIGN SPECIFICATIONS

This section of the Bridge Design Manual is the ODOT Supplement to the current edition of the AASHTO LRFD Bridge Design Specifications. Designers shall use this section of the Bridge Design Manual as a complement to the AASHTO LRFD Bridge Design Specifications. This section contains ODOT exceptions and commentary to various provisions as well as recommendations for optional provisions. Supplemented AASHTO articles are identified by the letter “S” preceding the article number (e.g. S1.3.3 DUCTILITY, SA13.4.1 DESIGN CASES, etc.). References to AASHTO articles are presented in italics (e.g. 1.3.3 DUCTILITY, A13.4.1 DESIGN CASES, etc.). References to ODOT Bridge Design Manual sections are always preceded with the initials BDM (e.g. BDM Section 305).

1001 LRFD SECTION 1 - INTRODUCTION

1001.1 S1.3.3 DUCTILITY

For bridges and bridge components designed in accordance with the AASHTO LRFD Bridge Design Specifications, apply a ductility load modifier (ηD) equal to 1.00 for all limit states.

1001.2 S1.3.4 REDUNDANCY

Non-redundant designs should be avoided.

For the strength limit state only, apply a redundancy load modifier (ηR) equal to 1.05 for all elements and components designated as non-redundant. For elements and components designated as redundant, apply a redundancy load modifier (ηR) equal to 1.00 for all limit states.

The main members of superstructure types (a) and (k) as defined in Table 4.6.2.2.1-1 consisting of three or fewer longitudinal girder lines shall be considered non-redundant. The main members of type (a) and (k) superstructures consisting of four longitudinal girder lines spaced at 12.0-ft or more shall be considered non-redundant. Type (a) and (k) superstructures with four longitudinal girder lines spaced at less than 12.0-ft and type (a) and (k) superstructures with five or more longitudinal girder lines regardless of spacing shall be considered redundant. NCHRP Report 406, Redundancy in Highway Bridge Superstructures offers additional guidance for determining redundancy of other superstructure types.

The columns of single-column and two-column piers shall be considered non-redundant. The columns of cap-and-column piers with three or more columns shall be considered redundant. The stems of T-type piers with a stem height-to-width ratio of 3-to-1 or greater shall be considered non-redundant. Stems of wall-type and T-type piers, except as noted above, shall be considered redundant. NCHRP Report 458, Redundancy in Highway Bridge Substructures offers additional guidance for determining redundancy of other substructure types.

Refer to LRFD 10.5.5.2.3 for more information regarding redundancy of driven pile foundations.

Refer to LRFD 10.5.5.2.4 for more information regarding redundancy of drilled shaft foundations.

When determining redundancy in members, consideration shall only be given to the final design condition; temporary construction phases should be ignored.

The redundancy modifier shall be applied at the component level. For example, for a two-girder Type (a) or (k) superstructure, the 1.05 load modifier would apply only to the design of the girders. The redundancy modifier applied to the two-girder superstructure’s deck, cross-frames, expansion joints, bearings, substructure and foundation elements should be considered independently.

Designers are required to submit the Structure Type Study review submission and the Stage 2 review submission for bridge designs that include non-redundant or fracture critical elements to the Office of Structural Engineering.
1001.3 S1.3.5 OPERATIONAL IMPORTANCE

A bridge shall be considered a typical bridge with an operational importance load modifier ($\eta_I$) equal to 1.00 for all limit states except as noted below.

For bridges meeting one of the following criteria an operational importance load modifier ($\eta_I$) equal to 1.05 shall be applied at the strength limit states to all components except: railings; concrete slab-type superstructures; and concrete decks on beams and girders. An importance load modifier ($\eta_I$) equal to 1.00 shall be used for all other limit states.

A. Design ADT of 60,000 or greater, or
B. Detour length of 50 miles or greater, or
C. Any span length of 500-ft or greater.

For bridges meeting both of the following criteria, an operational importance load modifier ($\eta_I$) equal to 0.95 may be applied at the strength limit states to all components except concrete decks on beams and railings. An importance load modifier ($\eta_I$) equal to 1.00 shall be used for all other limit states.

A. Design ADT of 400 or less, and
B. Detour length of 10 miles or less.

The Detour length shall be shortest route available to emergency vehicles if the bridge is taken out of service.

1002 LRFD SECTION 2 – GENERAL DESIGN AND LOCATION FEATURES

1002.1 S2.3.2.2 PROTECTION OF USERS

For routes with design speeds in excess of 45 mph, pedestrian traffic and vehicular traffic shall be separated by a crash tested barrier system. For routes with design speeds of 45 mph or lower, the Department requires a crash tested barrier to separate vehicle and pedestrian traffic when the pedestrian railing does not meet NCHRP 350 crash testing requirements. Refer to BDM Section 309.4 for more information.

1002.2 S2.3.3 HIGHWAY VERTICAL

The Department’s requirements for vertical clearance are provided in the L&D, Vol. 1, Section 300. ODOT’s “Preferred” vertical clearances include 6.0-in for possible future overlays.

Apply the additional 1.0-ft of vertical clearance provided for sign supports and pedestrian overpasses to ODOT’s “Preferred” vertical clearance.

1002.3 S2.5.2.3 MAINTAINABILITY

For structures with High Load Multi-rotational (HLMR) bearings, the plans shall show the location of permanent or temporary jacking points and provide jacking forces in accordance with LRFD 3.4.3.1. Both the superstructure and substructure shall be designed for the location and forces provided. Jacking points and forces are not required for other bearing types.

1002.4 S2.5.2.4 RIDEABILITY

Where concrete decks without an initial overlay are used, the top 1.0-in of thickness shall be considered sacrificial to permit a maximum correction of the deck profile by grinding of 0.5-in and to compensate for a maximum thickness loss due to abrasion of 0.5-in. This top 1.0-in is commonly referred to as the monolithic wearing surface. Refer to BDM Section 309.1 for more information.

1002.5 S2.5.2.6 CRITERIA FOR DEFLECTION

Designers shall apply the deflection limits shown. Do not include the stiffness contribution of railings, sidewalks and median barriers into the design of the composite section.
**1002.6**  
**S2.5.2.6.3** **OPTIONAL CRITERIA FOR SPAN-TO-DEPTH RATIOS**  
Designers shall apply the minimum span-to-depth ratios shown in *Table 2.5.2.6.3-1*.  

**1002.7**  
**S2.6.6.3** **TYPE, SIZE AND NUMBER OF DRAINS**  
Refer to Section 1103 of the *L&D, Vol. 2* for ODOT’s design criteria for deck drainage.  

**1002.8**  
**S2.6.6.4** **DISCHARGE FROM DECK DRAINS**  
ODOT requires the minimum projection of scuppers below the lowest adjacent superstructure component to be 8.0-in. Refer to Standard Bridge Drawing *GSD-1-19* for more information.  

**1003**  
**LRFD SECTION 3 – LOADS AND LOAD FACTORS**  

**1003.1**  
**S3.4.1** **LOAD FACTORS AND LOAD COMBINATIONS**  
The load combinations and load factors specified in *Table 3.4.1-1* shall apply. If a bridge design warrants the use of a special design vehicle analysis, the Scope of Services will provide the necessary information. Otherwise, the Department does not require an analysis using a special design vehicle, and the Strength II limit state will not apply.  

**1003.2**  
**S3.5.1** **DEAD LOADS: DC, DW, AND EV**  
In lieu of more specific information, the assumed unit weight of normal weight reinforced concrete shall be 0.150-kcf.  

Design all bridges for a future wearing surface of 60-psf applied to the clear roadway width between curbs and/or barriers. Refer to BDM Section 303 for more information.  

**1003.3**  
**S3.6.1.3.1** **GENERAL**  
The investigation of load effects produced by two tandem vehicles spaced from 26.0-ft to 40.0-ft as specified in *Article C3.6.1.3.1* is not required.  

**1003.4**  
**S3.6.1.3.2** **LOADING FOR OPTIONAL LIVE LOAD DEFLECTION EVALUATION**  
The live load deflection criteria specified in *Article 2.5.2.6.2* applies.  

**1003.5**  
**S3.6.1.3.3** **DESIGN LOADS FOR DECKS, DECK SYSTEMS, AND THE TOP SLABS OF BOX CULVERTS**  
Use the approximate strip method of analysis. Do not apply the Empirical Design Method specified in *Article 9.7.2*. Refer to BDM Section 309.3.2 for more information.  

**1003.6**  
**S3.6.1.3.4** **DECK OVERHANG LOAD**  
This article does not apply. Design deck overhangs in accordance with BDM Section 309.3.2.  

**1003.7**  
**S3.6.1.4.2** **FREQUENCY**  
The ADTT shall be estimated as follows:  

\[
ADTT = ADTT_{20} \times 4
\]

Where:  

\[
ADTT = \text{the number of trucks per day in one direction averaged over the design life}
\]

\[
ADTT_{20} = \text{the number of trucks per day in one direction occurring in the design year (year 20)}
\]
1003.8 S3.6.1.6 PEDESTRIAN LOADS
For bridges that can accommodate service vehicles, refer to BDM Section 303.2 for loading requirements.

1003.9 S3.6.2.1 GENERAL
For deck joints at all limit states, the Dynamic Load Allowance, IM, shall be taken as 125% of the static effect of either the design truck or the design tandem.

1003.10 S3.6.5.1 PROTECTION OF STRUCTURES
Use the flow chart provided in BDM Figure S3.6.5.1 to determine protection requirements for substructures against vehicle collisions. Roadway geometry and/or accident experience, either at the site or at a comparable site, may be used to override the flow chart to determine inclusion or omission of protection.
Investigate Protection of Structures for Vehicle Collision (LRFD 3.6.5.1)

- **Low Speed (< 50 mph)**
  - Design Speed Limit
  - Obstruction located within Clear Zone? (L&D 600.2)
    - Yes
    - No Collision Protection Required
    - No
  - No

- **High Speed (≥ 50 mph)**
  - Obstruction located within 30-ft of roadway edge?
    - Yes
    - No Collision Protection Required
    - No

- **Substructure Redundant?**
  - Yes: Provide protection in accordance with L&D Vol. 1
  - No: Provide protection in accordance with LRFD 3.6.5.1

*Figure 1003-1*
1003.11 S3.10.2.1 GENERAL PROCEDURE

When required by BDM Section 303.1.4 to determine the seismologic data for a project location, Designers may use the Seismic maps, LRFD Figure 3.10.2.1-3 or the USGS US Seismic Design Maps web application using latitude and longitude.

1003.12 S3.10.2.2 SITE SPECIFIC PROCEDURE

This procedure is not required for Ohio.

1003.13 S3.10.3.1 SITE CLASS DEFINITIONS

In the absence of sufficient geotechnical information, Designers shall assume Site Class D for the project soil profile. Designers shall use blow counts corrected to an equivalent rod energy ration of 60%, $N_{60}$ as defined in the ODOT Specifications for Geotechnical Explorations for the average SPT blow count $\overline{N}$.

1003.14 S3.10.3.2 SITE FACTORS

Use the Site Factors for Site Class D in lieu of the Site Factors provided in LRFD 3.10.3.2 for Site Class E and F. All other Site Class types shall use Site Factors as defined in LRFD 3.10.3.2.

1003.15 S3.10.6 SEISMIC PERFORMANCE ZONES

All bridges in the state of Ohio are located within Seismic Performance Zone 1.

1003.16 S3.10.9.2 SEISMIC ZONE 1

For bridges assigned to Seismic Performance Zone 1, determine the minimum support length according to BDM Section 303.1.4.1.a and the horizontal design connection force according to LRFD 3.10.9.2 and BDM Section 303.1.4.1.b.

1003.17 S3.10.9.5 LONGITUDINAL RESTRainers

For bearing areas of existing structures, especially at intermediate superstructure hinges, not meeting the minimum support length requirements defined in BDM Section 303.1.4.1.a, longitudinal restrainers are required. Restraint loading shall be in accordance with BDM Section 303.1.4.1.b.

1003.18 S3.11.2 COMPACTION

The Department typically ignores the effect of additional earth pressure from mechanical compaction equipment on retaining walls. For situations requiring special compaction equipment by plan note, proposal note or special provision, contact the Office of Structural Engineering for additional guidance.

1003.19 S3.11.6.5 REDUCTION OF SURCHARGE

Do not reduce the Live Load Surcharge regardless of the presence of an approach slab.

1003.20 S3.11.8 DOW ndrag

Refer to BDM Section 305.3.2.2 for more information.
1003.21 S3.12.2 UNIFORM TEMPERATURE

To determine the thermal effects for all bridges, use the following ranges of temperatures:

A. Steel or Aluminum .............................................................. -30°F to 120°F
B. Concrete ............................................................................. 15°F to 95°F
C. Wood .................................................................................. 0°F to 75°F

The base construction temperature assumed for design shall be 60°F.

1004 LRFD SECTION 4 – STRUCTURAL ANALYSIS AND EVALUATION

1004.1 S4.4 ACCEPTABLE METHODS OF STRUCTURAL ANALYSIS

This Manual identifies various design conditions that require specific methods of analysis. Where analysis methods are dictated by this Manual, the Designer shall provide justification during the staged review process for designs that utilize alternative analysis methods. This justification shall include impacts to project cost and schedule; safety; constructability; etc. The Department reviewer may consult with the Office of Structural Engineering to determine the appropriateness of the justification. The Department is not responsible for engineering costs incurred as a result of unjustified alternative analysis methods. Where analysis methods are not dictated by this Manual, the selection of an appropriate analysis method utilized for the design of new structures is the responsibility of the Designer.

Regardless of the analysis method utilized for design, superstructures are required to be load rated in accordance with BDM Section 900. At the inventory level, the minimum rating factor for the HL-93 loading shall be 1.0.

Listing design software used for structural analysis in the structure general notes is not required.

1004.2 S4.5.1 GENERAL

Do not include the stiffness contribution of structurally continuous composite railings, curbs elevated medians and barriers in the structural analysis.

1004.3 S4.6.2.2.1 APPLICATION

Use the following live load distribution factor application guidelines for Table 4.6.2.2.1-1 and typical ODOT bridge types:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Typical ODOT Bridge Type</th>
<th>Applicable Table 4.6.2.2.1-1 Cross-section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Steel beam/girder</td>
<td>(a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Concrete I-beam</td>
<td>(k)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Composite Box beam</td>
<td>(f)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-composite box beam</td>
<td>(g)*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* - Use distribution factors that assume beams are connected only enough to prevent relative displacement at the interface. The tie rods specified in Standard Bridge Drawing PSBD-1-93 do not supply sufficient force to ensure units act together.

The 3.0-ft limit specified for the roadway part of the overhang, de, does not apply to the determination of the interior distribution factor for cross-sections (a) and (k).
**1004.4** S4.6.2.5 EFFECTIVE LENGTH FACTOR, K

In the absence of a refined analysis, the following values for G, as defined in C4.6.2.5, may be assumed:

A. For spread footings on rock .......................................................... G = 1.5
B. For spread footings on soil ........................................................... G = 5.0
C. For footings on multiple rows of piles or drilled shafts:
   - End Bearing .................................................................................. G = 1.0
   - Friction ...................................................................................... G = 1.5
D. For footings on a single row of drilled shafts or friction piles ....................... G = 1.0
E. For footings on a single row of end bearing piles .................................. refined analysis required

For columns supported on a single row of drilled shafts or friction piles, the effective column length shall include the unbraced length above grade and the depth below grade to the point of fixity. Refer to Article 10.7.3.13.4 to determine the depth to the point of fixity. For drilled shafts socketed into rock, the point of fixity should be no deeper than the top of rock.

The list above assumes that typical spread footings on rock are anchored when the footing is keyed at least 3-in into rock including unweathered shale.

**1004.5** S4.6.3 REFINED METHODS OF ANALYSIS

Refer to S4.4 for limitations placed on refined analysis methods.

**1004.6** S4.6.4.3 APPROXIMATE PROCEDURE

The approximate procedure for moment distribution as described in Appendix B6 is permitted.

Moment redistribution as described in Article 5.6.3.4 is not permitted.

**1004.7** S4.7.4.1 GENERAL

If the Designer elects to determine the seismic effects based on the stiffness of the structure and ground acceleration data in lieu of using the connection forces defined in LRFD 3.10.9.2 and BDM Section 303.1.4.1.b, modal analysis shall be performed in accordance with LRFD 4.7.4.3.2.

**1004.8** S4.7.4.4 MINIMUM SUPPORT LENGTH REQUIREMENTS

The minimum support length requirements shall be applied according to BDM Section 303.1.4.1.a.

**1005** LRFD SECTION 5 – CONCRETE STRUCTURES

**1005.1** S5.4.2.3.3 SHRINKAGE

Designers shall assume the relative humidity to be 70% in the absence of more precise data.

**1005.2** S5.4.3.3 SPECIAL APPLICATIONS

BDM Section 304.4 and C&MS 509.02 specify all reinforcing steel for structures to be epoxy coated.
1005.3  S5.4.4.2  MODULUS OF ELASTICITY

Designers shall assume the modulus of elasticity for prestressing strand to be 28,500-ksi in the absence of more precise data.

1005.4  S5.5.3.1  GENERAL

Fatigue need not be investigated for the design of longitudinal edge beams of slab bridges.

1005.5  S5.6.3.4  MOMENT REDISTRIBUTION

Moment redistribution is not permitted.

1005.6  S5.6.4.6  SPIRALS AND TIES

The ratio of spiral reinforcement to total volume of the concrete core ($\rho_S$) shall be taken as:

$$\rho_S = \frac{4A_S \sqrt{p^2 + (\pi d_S)^2}}{\pi p d_C^2}$$

Where:

- $A_S$ = Area of spiral reinforcement (in²)
- $p$ = Spiral pitch (in)
- $d_S$ = Centerline diameter of the spiral reinforcement = $d_C - $Bar dia. (in)
- $d_C$ = Diameter of the concrete core measured out-to-out of spiral reinforcement (in)

1005.7  S5.6.7  CONTROL OF CRACKING BY DISTRIBUTION OF REINFORCEMENT

Unless otherwise noted below, the exposure factor ($\gamma_e$) for reinforcing steel in cast-in-place concrete bridge decks and cast-in-place slab bridges shall be 0.75. The 1-in monolithic wearing surface, BDM Section 309.1, shall be deducted from both $d_c$ and $h$.

1005.8  S5.7.4.4  COHESION AND FRICTION

The top surface of composite prestressed concrete beams produced under Item 515 is intentionally roughened to an amplitude of 0.25-in.

1005.9  S5.9.2.3.2b  TENSION STRESSES

Designers shall assume a severe corrosive environment to determine the tensile stress limit for components with bonded prestressing tendons in non-segmentally constructed bridges.

1005.10  S5.9.3.4  REFINED ESTIMATES OF TIME-DEPENDENT LOSSES

The refined estimates for time-dependent losses presented in this article may be used for detail design of prestressed members without post-tensioning.

In the absence of more precise data, for prestressed members without post-tensioning, designers may assume the following ages:

A. Age at transfer ($t_i$) .......................................................... 0.75 days
B. Age at deck placement ($t_d$) ................................................ 45 days
C. Final age ($t_f$) ........................................................................ 10,000 days
1005.11 S5.9.4.1 PRETENSIONING STRAND
The minimum spacing of pretensioning strand shall be 2.0-in measured center-to-center of the strands.

1005.12 S5.9.4.3.3 PARTIALLY DEBONDED STRANDS
Refer to BDM Section 308.2.3.4.a.2 for additional debonded strand requirements.

1005.13 S5.10.1 CONCRETE COVER
The minimum concrete cover for reinforcing steel shall be provided according to BDM Section 304.4.8. No modification for W/C ratio shall be made.

1005.14 S5.10.2.2 SEISMIC HOOKS
Transverse reinforcement in plastic hinge zones of structures assigned to areas with $0.10 \leq S_{D1} \leq 0.15$ shall be detailed in accordance with LRFD 5.11.4.1.4. Plastic hinge zones shall be assumed to extend from the top and bottom of the column a distance taken as the greater of:

A. The maximum cross-sectional dimension of the column,
B. One-sixth of the clear height of the column, or
C. 18.0-in

1005.15 S5.10.3.1.1 CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE
The maximum nominal aggregate size permitted for structural concrete according to C&MS 499 is 1-in. When a maximum nominal aggregate size required for design purposes differs from C&MS 499, the Designer shall provide a plan note and specify the concrete pay item “As Per Plan”.

1005.16 S5.10.3.1.2 PRECAST CONCRETE
For prestressed concrete mixes, C&MS 515 allows the use of the following aggregate gradations: No. 57, 6, 67, 68, 7, 78 or 8. Unless more precise data is provided, assume the maximum nominal aggregate size according to the No. 57 gradation shown in C&MS Table 703.01.

When a maximum nominal aggregate size required for design purposes differs from the gradations specified in C&MS 515, the Designer shall provide a plan note and specify the prestressed concrete pay item “As Per Plan”.

1005.17 S5.10.4.3 TIES
Ties are required for T-type and wall-type piers. Refer to BDM Section 306.3.3.3 for more information.

1005.18 S5.12.4 DIAPHRAGMS
Refer to BDM Section 308.2.3.4.d for additional information.

1005.19 S5.12.9.5.2 REINFORCING STEEL
For 12.0-in, 14.0-in and 16.0-in diameter cast-in-place piles, the minimum wall thickness requirements of C&MS 507.06 provide sufficient longitudinal reinforcement to meet Article 5.12.9.5.2. Except as noted in BDM Section 306.3.3.2 for capped pile piers, no additional reinforcement is required. The additional steel required for capped pile piers shall extend from the pier cap to a minimum of 15-ft below the finished ground line or flow line but is not required to extend 10.0-ft below the plane where the soil provides adequate lateral restraint.

The cast-in-place concrete piling clear distance requirements specified in Article 5.12.9.5.2 do not apply to drilled shafts or piles for Capped Pile Piers. Refer to BDM Section 305.4.4.3 for reinforcing steel requirements in drilled shafts.
1006   LRFD SECTION 6 – STEEL STRUCTURES

1006.1   S6.4.1   STRUCTURAL STEELS

Refer to BDM Section 304.1 for steel selection criteria.

1006.2   S6.4.3.1   BOLTS

The use of ASTM A 490 bolts is prohibited.

1006.3   S6.6.1.2.3   DETAIL CATEGORIES

All components or details shall be designed for infinite life using the Fatigue I load combination.

1006.4   S6.6.1.2.5   FATIGUE RESISTANCE

As noted in BDM Section 1006.3, S6.6.1.2.3 above, all components and details shall be designed for infinite life using the Fatigue I load combination. Use of the Fatigue II load combination for finite life shall be avoided.

1006.5   S6.6.2   FRACTURE

The CVN requirements specified in C&MS 711.01 meet Temperature Zone 2.

The CVN requirements for HPS 70W steels are not provided in C&MS 711.01, but is available upon request.

1006.6   S6.7.2   DEAD LOAD CAMBER

Design camber shall not include an allowance for deflections cause by future wearing surface. C&MS 513.06 requires lateral bracing to be detailed to fit in the steel dead load condition with the webs of the primary members plumb.

1006.7   S6.10.1.1.1b   STRESSES FOR SECTIONS IN POSITIVE FLEXURE

Use the modular ratio (n) values provided in Article C6.10.1.1.1b.

1006.8   S6.10.1.7   MINIMUM NEGATIVE FLEXURE CONCRETE DECK REINFORCEMENT

Refer to BDM Section 309.3.4.1 for negative moment deck reinforcement requirements on non-composite members.

1006.9   S6.10.3.4   CONCRETE PLACEMENT

The minimum compression flange width requirement specified in C6.10.3.4 shall apply. For additional flange width requirements, refer to BDM Section 308.2.2.3.c.1.

1006.10   S6.10.7.3   DUCTILITY REQUIREMENT

The design haunch should not be included in the determination of D_p or D_t.

1006.11   S6.10.10.1   GENERAL

All composite designs for new steel beam and girder superstructures shall have shear connectors for the full length of the members.

1006.12   S6.10.10.1.1   TYPES

The use of channel sections as shear connectors is not permitted. Refer to BDM Section 308.2.2.1.1 for more information.
1006.13 S6.10.10.1.4 COVER AND PENETRATION

A detail for deep haunches is provided in the BDM Figure 403-1.

1006.14 S6.10.11.1.1 GENERAL

Violation of the 6tw requirement of this article due to the C&MS 513.13 requirements for clipping stiffeners and stiffener weld terminations is acceptable.

Refer to BDM Sections 308.2.2.2.a and 308.2.2.3.d for more information.

1006.15 S6.10.11.3 LONGITUDINAL STIFFENERS

BDM Section 308.2.2.3 prohibits the use of longitudinal stiffeners.

1006.16 S6.13.2.4.1 TYPE

Refer to BDM Section 308.2.2.1.j for hole requirements of galvanized members.

1006.17 S6.13.2.6.6 EDGE DISTANCES

Minimum edge distances shall be measured from the center of a fastener. Use the edge distances defined in BDM Section 308.2.2.1.j.2 in lieu of those provided in Table 6.13.2.6.6-1.

1006.18 S6.13.2.8 SLIP RESISTANCE

Refer to BDM Section 308.2.2.1.j for more information.

1006.19 S6.13.6.1.4a GENERAL

Holes larger than standard holes are required for galvanized members. Refer BDM Section 308.2.2.1.j for more information.

1007 LRFD SECTION 7 – ALUMINUM STRUCTURES

No ODOT comments have been made to this article.

1008 LRFD SECTION 8 – WOOD STRUCTURES

No ODOT comments have been made to this article.

1009 LRFD SECTION 9 – DECKS AND DECK SYSTEMS

1009.1 S9.4.1 INTERFACE ACTION

For non-composite decks, no physical connection method is required.

1009.2 S9.5.1 GENERAL

Designers shall ignore the structural contribution of concrete appurtenances for all limit states.

1009.3 S9.6.1 METHODS OF ANALYSIS

The approximate elastic method of analysis specified in Article 4.6.2.1 shall be used. The empirical and refined methods of analysis are prohibited.
1009.4 S9.7.1.1 MINIMUM DEPTH AND COVER

The minimum depth of a concrete deck is 8.5-in as specified in BDM Section 309.3.1.

The minimum cover shall be in accordance with BDM Section 304.4.8.

1009.5 S9.7.1.3 SKEWED DECKS

BDM Section 309.3.4.2 reduces this skew limitation to 15-degrees. This allowance does not apply to all superstructure types. Refer to BDM Section 309.3.4.2 for more information.

1009.6 S9.7.2 EMPIRICAL DESIGN

The Empirical methodology of concrete deck design is prohibited.

1009.7 S9.7.4 STAY-IN-PLACE FORMWORK

BDM Section 309.3.7 prohibits the use of stay-in-place formwork.

1009.8 S9.7.5.1 GENERAL

If precast deck slabs are used, the minimum depth (BDM Section 309.3.1) and cover (BDM Section 304.4.8) requirements apply.

1010 LRFD SECTION 10 – FOUNDATIONS

1010.1 S10.4.2 SUBSURFACE EXPLORATION


Table 10.4.2-1 is superseded by the “Specifications for Geotechnical Explorations”.

1010.2 S10.5.5.2.3 DRIVEN PILES

For the purpose of determining redundancy in pile groups, a pile group shall be defined as the piles supporting an entire substructure.

The resistance factor ($\phi_{\text{dyn}}$) for a single driven pile in axial compression, installed according to C&MS 507 and 523 shall be 0.70.

Refer to BDM Section 305.3 for more information.

1010.3 S10.5.5.2.4 DRILLED SHAFTS

For the purpose of determining redundancy of drilled shaft foundations, entire substructures supported on one or two shafts shall be considered non-redundant. For entire substructures supported on 5 or more drilled shafts, no increase to the resistance factors provided in Table 10.5.5.2.4-1 shall be made.

1010.4 S10.5.5.3.2 SCOUR

The foundation shall be designed so that the resistance remaining after the scour resulting from the check flood provides adequate foundation resistance to support the Extreme Event II Limit State loads with a resistance factor of 1.0. For uplift resistance of piles and shafts, the resistance factor shall be taken as 0.8. The loads applied to the substructure shall include any debris loads occurring during the flood event but shall not include any loading from ice or collision forces.
1010.5  S10.6.1.2  BEARING DEPTH
Minimum footing depth guidelines are provided in BDM Section 306.1.1.

1010.6  S10.7.1.2  MINIMUM PILE SPACING, CLEARANCE, AND EMBEDMENT INTO CAP
Refer to BDM Section 305.3.5.1 for specific pile spacing, clearance, and embedment requirements for typical ODOT substructure types.

1010.7  S10.7.1.3  PILES THROUGH EMBANKMENT FILL
Refer to BDM Section 305.3.5.7 for pre-drilling requirements.

1010.8  S10.7.1.4  BATTER PILES
Refer to BDM Section 305.3.5.8 for more information.

1010.9  S10.7.2.4  HORIZONTAL PILE FOUNDATION MOVEMENT
Where possible, use battered piles to resist the potential movement due to horizontal forces. Use Article 10.7.2.4 design procedures when Service I loads exceed the horizontal resistance of battered piles.

For drilled shafts, horizontal movement shall be determined according to Article 10.7.2.4. Battered drilled shafts are not permitted.

1010.10  S10.7.3.2.3  PILES DRIVEN TO HARD ROCK
For piles driven to refusal on bedrock, acceptable refusal occurs at a blow count of at least 20 blows per inch.

1010.11  S10.7.3.3  PILE LENGTH ESTIMATES FOR CONTRACT DOCUMENTS
Determine pile lengths for contract documents in accordance with BDM Section 305.3.5.2.

1010.12  S10.7.3.6  SCOUR
Determine the required pile resistance and estimated lengths for piling driven through material subjected to scour in accordance with BDM Section 305.3.2.1.

1010.13  S10.7.3.7  DOWNDRAg
Determine the required pile resistance and estimated lengths for piling subjected to downdrag loading in accordance with BDM Section 305.3.2.2.

1010.14  S10.7.3.8.2  STATIC LOAD TEST
Refer to C&MS 506 to determine the axial pile resistance for the test piles.

1010.15  S10.7.9  TEST PILES
Refer to BDM Sections 305.7 for specific ODOT pile testing requirements.
Refer to BDM Section 305.3.5.2 to determine pile order lengths.

1010.16  S10.8.1  GENERAL
Refer to BDM Section 305.4 for specific ODOT drilled shaft considerations.
**1010.17 S10.8.1.2 SHAFT SPACING, CLEARANCE, AND EMBEDMENT INTO CAP**

The minimum center-to-center spacing of axially-loaded, rock-socketed drilled shafts is 2.0 diameters. The minimum center-to-center spacing of axially-loaded, friction drilled shafts is 3.0 diameters. No further evaluation of axially-loaded shafts for interaction effects is required.

The interaction effects for laterally-loaded shafts shall be considered according to Article 10.8.2.3.

Refer to C&MS 524 for construction requirements for closely spaced drilled shafts.

**1010.18 S10.8.1.4 BATTERED SHAFTS**

The use of battered shafts is prohibited.

**1011 LRFD SECTION 11 – ABUTMENTS, PIERS, AND WALLS**

**1011.1 S11.5.1 GENERAL**

The design life for MSE walls shall be 100 years.

**1011.2 S11.6.1.3 INTEGRAL ABUTMENTS**

The maximum structure length for integral abutments shall be in accordance with BDM Section 306.2.2.5.

**1011.3 S11.6.1.6 EXPANSION AND CONTRACTION JOINTS**

BDM Section 306.2.5 does not require contraction joints in abutments.

**1011.4 S11.7.2.2 COLLISION WALLS**

Refer to BDM Section 310.6 for more information.

**1011.5 S11.10 MECHANICALLY STABILIZED EARTH WALLS**

Refer to BDM Sections 307.4 for more information.

**1011.6 S11.10.2.1 MINIMUM LENGTH OF SOIL REINFORCEMENT**

BDM Section 307.4 further defines the minimum length of soil reinforcement as the larger of: 70% of the wall height or 8-ft. The reinforcement length shall be uniform for the entire height of the wall facing.

**1011.7 S11.10.2.2 MINIMUM FRONT FACE EMBEDMENT**

The minimum depth shall be as defined in BDM Section 307.4. Table C11.10.2.2-1 does not apply.

**1011.8 S11.10.8 DRAINAGE**

Impervious membranes shall not be used.

**1011.9 S11.10.11 MSE ABUTMENTS**

The minimum distances from facing panels to abutments and footings do not apply. Refer to BDM Section 307.4 for more information.

Refer to BDM Sections 307.4 for additional information.

**1012 LRFD SECTION 12 – BURIED STRUCTURES AND TUNNEL LINERS**

No ODOT comments have been made to this article. Refer to the L&D, Vol. 2.
LRFD SECTION 13 – RAILINGS

GENERAL

Refer to BDM Section 309.4 for ODOT bridge railing warrants and railing design considerations.

TEST LEVEL SELECTION CRITERIA

Acceptance levels for standard ODOT bridge railings are listed in BDM Section 309.4.

GEOMETRY

If vandal protection fence is required, the fabric mesh shall have 1-in maximum openings. Refer to BDM Section 309.5 for more information.

DESIGN CASES

Observations made during full-scale crash testing indicate that the wheel closest to the point of impact loses contact with the surface of the pavement during the impacting event. For the duration of the impacting event, the vertical component of vehicle weight for the wheel closest to the point of impact is negligible. For Design Case 1 and 2, the load factor for vehicular live load (LL), including dynamic load allowance (IM), acting on the overhang shall be taken as 0.0 for the wheel load closest to the barrier and 1.0 for the wheel load furthest from the barrier. The position of the truck shall be in accordance with Article 3.6.1.3.1.

DECKS SUPPORTING CONCRETE PARAPET RAILINGS

For Design Case 1, the deck overhang shall be designed to resist a vehicular impact moment, $M_{CT}$, and coincidental axial tension force, $T_{CT}$, calculated as follows:

$$M_{CT} = \frac{RH}{L_C + 2H + 2X} \quad \text{and} \quad T_{CT} = \frac{R}{L_C + 2H + 2X}$$

Where:

- $R$ = Barrier resistance to lateral impact force (kips)
- $H$ = Height of the barrier (ft.)
- $L_C$ = Critical length of yield line failure pattern (ft.)
- $X$ = Lateral distance from toe of barrier to deck design section (ft.)

Assume the barrier resistance ($R$) to be the lesser of:

A. 1.33 times the transverse force ($F_t$) specified in Table A13.2-1, or
B. The calculated parapet resistance specified in Article A13.3.1

The transverse force selected for design shall be that which corresponds to the barrier’s crash tested acceptance level (i.e. Test Level). The following table provides design overhang data for standard ODOT barrier types:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Barrier System</th>
<th>$L_C$ (ft.)</th>
<th>$R$ (kip)</th>
<th>$H$ (ft.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SBR-1-13</td>
<td>12.7</td>
<td>165.0</td>
<td>3.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42&quot; BR-1-13</td>
<td>12.4</td>
<td>165.0</td>
<td>3.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36&quot; BR-1-13</td>
<td>8.8</td>
<td>72.0</td>
<td>3.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BR-2-98</td>
<td>10.0</td>
<td>72.0</td>
<td>2.5 (1)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(1) For BR-2-98, this height represents the maximum effective height of the railing resistance ($\bar{Y}$). Refer to Article A13.3.3 for more information.
1013.6 SA13.4.3.1 OVERHANG DESIGN

Refer to BDM Figure 309-3 and Figure 309-5 for the deck overhang reinforcement requirements for the TST-1-99 railing system. Alternative railing systems shall be considered for projects that do not meet the design assumptions for BDM Figure 309-3.

1014 LRFD SECTION 14 – JOINTS AND BEARINGS

1014.1 S14.4.1 GENERAL

Irreparable damage in accordance with BDM Section 303.1.4.1.c is permitted.

1014.2 S14.5.6 CONSIDERATIONS FOR SPECIFIC JOINT TYPES

Refer to BDM Section 309.6 for standard ODOT joint types and applications.

1014.3 S14.6 REQUIREMENTS FOR BEARINGS

Refer to BDM Section 306.4 for preferred ODOT bearing types and applications.

1014.4 S14.6.3.1 HORIZONTAL FORCE AND MOVEMENT

Bearings without directional seismic restraint are not required to accommodate seismic movements in the unrestrained direction. Irreparable damage due to seismic movement in accordance with BDM Section 303.1.4.1.c is permitted.

1014.5 S14.6.3.2 MOMENT

For elastomeric bearings utilizing 4 anchor bolts connecting load plates to the bearing seat, $M_u$, shall be taken as specified by Eq. 14.6.3.2-3.

For elastomeric bearings without anchor bolts and those with 2 anchor bolts centered at the centerline of bearing, no moment will be transferred from the superstructure to the substructure.

1014.6 S14.6.5.2 APPLICABILITY

A design strategy to reduce seismic design forces that permits the bearing to deform beyond its elastic limits during a seismic event without restraint is acceptable provided loss of span is prevented. As noted in BDM Section 303.1.4.1.b, Designers shall design the mechanisms for the Horizontal Connection Force that transfer horizontally applied superstructure loads to the substructure. These mechanisms are not required at every bearing location.

1014.7 S14.6.5.3 DESIGN CRITERIA

For bearings without directional seismic restraint, design for the horizontal connection force is not required.

Analysis of the load path for resistance to seismic design forces is not required.

1014.8 S14.7.5 STEEL-REINFORCED ELASTOMERIC BEARINGS – METHOD B

The preferred design of elastomeric bearings is Method A. Method B is recommended for use when specialized bearings are being considered. Since Method B designs have additional testing requirements versus Method A designs, these additional costs shall be factored into cost comparisons for Method A designs versus Method B designs versus specialized bearing designs.

The contract plans shall specify the method of bearing design. A sample plan note is provided in BDM Section 700.

1014.9 S14.7.5.3.2 COMPRESSIVE STRESS

The effect of impact shall be ignored.
1014.10 S14.7.5.3.4 SHEAR DEFORMATION
Designers shall assume the ambient temperature during setting is 60°F to calculate Δo.

1014.11 S14.7.5.3.7 SEISMIC AND OTHER EXTREME EVENT PROVISIONS
Anchor bolts for restrained elastomeric bearings shall be designed for the horizontal connection forces in the restrained directions in accordance with BDM Section 303.1.4.1.b. Elastomeric bearings, not otherwise requiring anchor bolts, do not require seismic anchoring and irreparable damage is permitted under BDM Section 303.1.4.1.c.

1014.12 S14.9 CORROSION PROTECTION
Refer to C&MS 516.03 for standard bearing corrosion protection requirement